



# **FUNDAMENTALS OF GEOMORPHOLOGY**

**RICHARD HUGGETT**

ROUTLEDGE FUNDAMENTALS PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY

**Also available as a printed book  
see title verso for ISBN details**

# FUNDAMENTALS OF GEOMORPHOLOGY

*Fundamentals of Geomorphology* is an engaging and comprehensive introduction to geomorphology, and explores the world's landforms from a broad systems perspective with an emphasis on change. The rich variety of landforms found on the Earth's surface are described and discussed, paying attention to the roles of geomorphic processes and historical events in understanding their development and to how particular geomorphic processes affect, and are affected by, humans.

Beginning with a consideration of the nature of geomorphology and the quest of process and historical geomorphologists (both of whose views are presented in the book), the author looks at the geomorphic system, moving on to discuss:

- Structure: landforms resulting from, or influenced by, the endogenic agencies of tectonic and volcanic processes, geological structures, and rock types.
- Process and form: landforms fashioned by the exogenic agencies of weathering, running water, flowing ice and meltwater, ground ice and frost, the wind and the sea.
- History: Earth surface history, giving a discussion of the origin of old plains; relict, exhumed, and stagnant landscape features; cycles of landscape change; the work of rivers, wind, and the sea in the past and the evolutionary aspects of landscape change.

*Fundamentals of Geomorphology* provides a stimulating and innovative perspective on the key topics and debates within the field of geomorphology. Written in an accessible and lively manner, it includes guides to further reading, chapter summaries, and an extensive glossary of key terms. The book is also illustrated throughout with over 200 informative diagrams and attractive photographs, including a colour plate section.

**Richard John Huggett** is Reader in Geography at the University of Manchester.



# ROUTLEDGE FUNDAMENTALS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY SERIES

Series Editor: John Gerrard

This new series of focused, introductory textbooks presents comprehensive, up-to-date introductions to the fundamental concepts, natural processes and human/environmental impacts within each of the core physical geography sub-disciplines. Uniformly designed, each volume contains student-friendly features: plentiful illustrations, boxed case studies, key concepts and summaries, further reading guides and a glossary.

Already published:

**Fundamentals of Biogeography**

*Richard John Huggett*

**Fundamentals of Soils**

*John Gerrard*

**Fundamentals of Hydrology**

*Tim Davie*

**Fundamentals of Geomorphology**

*Richard John Huggett*

# FUNDAMENTALS OF GEOMORPHOLOGY

*Richard John Huggett*

Routledge Fundamentals of Physical  
Geography



London and New York



First published 2003  
by Routledge  
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada  
by Routledge  
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001

*Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group*

This edition published in the Taylor & Francis e-Library, 2005.

“To purchase your own copy of this or any of Taylor & Francis or Routledge’s collection of thousands of eBooks please go to [www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk](http://www.eBookstore.tandf.co.uk).”

© 2003 Richard John Huggett

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data*  
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*  
Huggett, Richard J.  
Fundamentals of geomorphology / Richard John Huggett.  
p. cm. – (Routledge fundamentals of physical geography)  
Includes bibliographical references and index.  
1. Geomorphology. I. Title. II. Routledge fundamentals of physical geography series.  
GB401.5 .H845 2002  
551.41–dc21 2002075133

ISBN 0-203-47063-X Master e-book ISBN

ISBN 0-203-77887-1 (Adobe eReader Format)  
ISBN 0-415-24145-6 (hbk)  
ISBN 0-415-24146-4 (pbk)

for my family





# CONTENTS

<i>Series editor's preface</i>	ix
<i>Author's preface</i>	xi
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	xiii
<b>PART I INTRODUCING LANDFORMS AND LANDSCAPES</b>	<b>1</b>
1 WHAT IS GEOMORPHOLOGY?	3
2 THE GEOMORPHIC SYSTEM	35
<b>PART II STRUCTURE</b>	<b>65</b>
3 TECTONIC AND STRUCTURAL LANDFORMS I	67
4 TECTONIC AND STRUCTURAL LANDFORMS II	92
<b>PART III PROCESS AND FORM</b>	<b>111</b>
5 WEATHERING AND RELATED LANDFORMS	113
6 KARST LANDSCAPES	132
7 FLUVIAL LANDSCAPES	171
8 GLACIAL AND GLACIOFLUVIAL LANDSCAPES	209

viii CONTENTS

9 PERIGLACIAL LANDSCAPES	236
10 AEOLIAN LANDSCAPES	253
11 COASTAL LANDSCAPES	277
<b>PART IV HISTORY</b>	<b>311</b>
12 ANCIENT LANDSCAPES AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS	313
<i>Appendix</i>	343
<i>Glossary</i>	344
<i>References</i>	353
<i>Index</i>	375

## SERIES EDITOR'S PREFACE

We are presently living in a time of unparalleled change and when concern for the environment has never been greater. Global warming and climate change, possible rising sea levels, deforestation, desertification, and widespread soil erosion are just some of the issues of current concern. Although it is the role of human activity in such issues that is of most concern, this activity affects the operation of the natural processes that occur within the physical environment. Most of these processes and their effects are taught and researched within the academic discipline of physical geography. A knowledge and understanding of physical geography, and all it entails, is vitally important.

It is the aim of this *Fundamentals of Physical Geography Series* to provide, in five volumes, the fundamental nature of the physical processes that act on or just above the surface of the Earth. The volumes in the series are *Climatology*, *Geomorphology*, *Biogeography*, *Hydrology*, and *Soils*. The topics are treated in sufficient breadth and depth to provide the coverage expected in a *Fundamentals* series. Each volume leads into the topic by outlining the approach adopted. This is important because there may be several ways of approaching individual topics. Although each volume is complete in itself, there are many explicit and implicit references to the topics covered in the other volumes. Thus, the five volumes together provide a comprehensive insight into the totality that is physical geography.

The flexibility provided by separate volumes has been designed to meet the demand created by the variety of courses currently operating in higher education institutions. The advent of modular courses has meant that physical geography is now rarely taught, in its entirety, in an 'all-embracing' course but is generally split into its main components. This is also the case with many Advanced Level syllabuses. Thus students and teachers are being frustrated increasingly by lack of suitable books and are having to recommend texts of which only a small part might be relevant to their needs. Such texts also tend to lack the detail required. It is the aim of this series to provide individual volumes of sufficient breadth and depth to fulfil new demands. The volumes should also be of use to teachers of sixth forms, where modular syllabuses are also becoming common.

Each volume has been written by higher education teachers with a wealth of experience in all aspects of the topics they cover and a proven ability in presenting information in a lively and interesting way. Each volume provides a comprehensive coverage of the subject matter using clear text divided into easily



accessible sections and subsections. Tables, figures, and photographs are used where appropriate as well as boxed case studies and summary notes. References to important previous studies and results are included but are used sparingly to avoid overloading the text. Suggestions for further reading are also provided. The main target readership is introductory-level undergraduate students of physical geography or environmental science, but there will be much of interest to students from other disciplines and it is also hoped that sixth-form teachers will be able to use the information that is provided in each volume.

John Gerrard

# AUTHOR'S PREFACE

Geomorphology has always been a favourite subject of mine. For the first twelve years of my life I lived in North London, and I recall playing by urban rivers and in disused quarries. During the cricket season, Saturday and Sunday afternoons would be spent exploring the landscape around the grounds where my father was playing cricket. H. W. ('Masher') Martin, the head of geography and geology at Hertford Grammar School, whose 'digressions' during classes were tremendously educational, aroused my first formal interest in landforms. The sixth-form field-trips to the Forest of Dean and the Lake District were unforgettable. While at University College London, I was lucky enough to come under the tutelage of Eric H. Brown, Claudio Vita-Finzi, Andrew Warren, and Ron Cooke, to whom I am indebted for a remarkable six years as an undergraduate and postgraduate. Since arriving at Manchester, I have taught several courses with large geomorphological components but have seen myself very much as a physical geographer with a dislike of disciplinary boundaries and the fashion for overspecialization. Nonetheless, I thought that writing a new, student-friendly geomorphological text would pose an interesting challenge and, with *Fundamentals of Biogeography*, make a useful accompaniment to my more academic works.

In writing *Fundamentals of Geomorphology*, I have tried to combine process geomorphology, which has dominated the subject for the last several decades, with the less fashionable but fast-resurging historical geomorphology. Few would question the astounding achievements of process studies, but plate-tectonics theory and a reliable calendar of events have given historical studies a huge boost. I also feel that too many books get far too bogged down in process equations: there is a grandeur in the diversity of physical forms found at the Earth's surface and a wonderment to be had in seeing them. So, while explaining geomorphic processes and not shying away from equations, I have tried to capture the richness of landform types and the pleasure to be had in trying to understand how they form. I also discuss the interactions between landforms, geomorphic processes, and humans, which, it seems to me, is an important aspect of geomorphology today.

The book is quadripartite. Part I introduces landforms and landscapes, studying the nature of geomorphology and outlining the geomorphic system. It then divides the material into three parts: structure, form and process, and history. William Morris Davis established the logic of this scheme a century ago. The argument is that any landform depends upon the structure of the rocks – including their

composition and structural attitude – that it is formed in or on, the processes acting upon it, and the time over which it has been evolving. Part II looks at tectonic and structural landforms. Part II investigates process and form, with chapters on weathering and related landforms, karst landscapes, fluvial landscapes, glacial landscapes, periglacial landscapes, aeolian landscapes, and coastal landscapes. Each of these chapters, excepting the one on weathering, considers the environments in which the landscapes occur, the processes involved in their formation, the landforms they contain, and how they affect, and are affected by, humans. Part IV examines the role of history in understanding landscapes and landform evolution, examining some great achievements of modern historical geomorphology.

There are several people to whom I wish to say 'thanks': Nick Scarle, for drawing all the diagrams and handling the photographic material. Andrew Mould at Routledge, for taking on another Huggett book. Six anonymous reviewers, for the thoughtful and perceptive comments on an embarrassingly rough draft of the work that led to several major improvements, particularly in the overall structure; any remaining shortcomings and omissions are of course down to me. A small army of colleagues, identified individually on the plate captions, for kindly providing me with slides. Jonathan D. Phillips, for helping me to explain his 'Eleven Principles of Earth Surface Systems' in simple terms. Clive Agnew and the other staff at Manchester, for friendship and assistance, and in particular Kate Richardson for making several invaluable suggestions about the structure and content of Chapter 1. As always, Derek Davenport, for discussing all manner of things. And finally, my wife and family, who understand the ups and downs of book-writing and give unbounded support.

Richard Huggett  
Poynton  
March 2002



# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author and publisher would like to thank the following for granting permission to reproduce material in this work:

The copyright of photographs remains held by the individuals who kindly supplied them (please see photograph captions for individual names); Figure 1.2 after Figure 3.10 from S. A. Schumm (1991) *To Interpret the Earth: Ten Ways to be Wrong* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press), reproduced by permission of Cambridge University Press; Figures 1.3, 4.5, 4.8, 4.10, 4.16, and 4.17 after Figures 11.11, 11.25, 11.26, 11.36, 16.3, and 16.16 from C. R. Twidale and E. M. Campbell (1993) *Australian Landforms: Structure, Process and Time* (Adelaide: Gleneagles Publishing), reproduced by permission of C. R. Twidale; Figure 1.5 after Figure 4 from R. H. Johnson (1980) 'Hillslope stability and landslide hazard – a case study from Longdendale, north Derbyshire, England' in *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association, London* (Vol. 91, pp. 315–25), reproduced by permission of the Geologists' Association; Figure 1.9 from Figure 6.1 from R. J. Chorley and B. A. Kennedy (1971) *Physical Geography: A Systems Approach* (London: Prentice Hall), reproduced by permission of Richard J. Chorley and Barbara A. Kennedy; Figure 4.12 after Figure 4.9 from M. A. Summerfield (1991) *Global Geomorphology: An Introduction to the Study of Landforms* (Harlow, Essex: Longman), © M. A. Summerfield, reprinted by permission of Pearson Education Limited; Figure 5.1 after Figures 3.3 and 3.5 from G. Taylor and R. A. Eggleton (2001) *Regolith Geology and Geomorphology* (Chichester: John Wiley & Sons), reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons Limited; Figure 6.1 after 'Plan of Poole's Cavern' from D. G. Allsop (1992) *Visitor's Guide to Poole's Cavern* (Buxton, Derbyshire: Buxton and District Civic Association), after a survey by P. Deakin and the Eldon Pothole Club, reproduced by permission of Poole's Cavern and Country Park; Figures 6.6, 6.7, and 6.9 after Figures 9.3, 9.13, and 9.30 from D. C. Ford and P. W. Williams (1989) *Karst Geomorphology and Hydrology* (London: Chapman & Hall), reproduced with kind permission of Kluwer Academic Publishers and Derek Ford; Figure 7.10 after Figure 14.1 from F. Ahnert (1998) *Introduction to Geomorphology* (London: Arnold), reproduced by permission of Hodder & Stoughton Educational and Verlag Eugen Ulmer, Stuttgart (the original German language publishers); Figures 7.14, 7.18, 9.3, and 11.5 after Figures 8.3, 8.5, 8.13, 11.3, and 17.14 from K. W. Butzer (1976) *Geomorphology from the Earth* (New York: Harper & Row), reproduced by permission

of Addison Wesley Longman, USA; Figure 7.19 after Figure 6 from J. Warburton and M. Danks (1998) 'Historical and contemporary channel change, Swinhope Burn' in J. Warburton (ed.) *Geomorphological Studies in the North Pennines: Field Guide*, pp. 77–91 (Durham: Department of Geography, University of Durham, British Geomorphological Research Group), reproduced by permission of Jeff Warburton; Figures 8.4 and 11.6 after Figures 6.9 and 12.22 from A. S. Trenhaile (1998) *Geomorphology: A Canadian Perspective* (Toronto: Oxford University Press), reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press, Canada.

Every effort has been made to contact copyright holders for their permission to reprint material in this book. The publishers would be grateful to hear from any copyright holder who is not here acknowledged and will undertake to rectify any errors or omissions in future editions of this book.

## **Part I**

# **INTRODUCING LANDFORMS AND LANDSCAPES**



# WHAT IS GEOMORPHOLOGY?

---

Geomorphology is the study of landforms and the processes that create them. This chapter covers:

- historical, process, and applied geomorphology
  - the form of the land
  - land-forming processes and geomorphic systems
  - the history of landforms
  - methodological isms
- 

## INTRODUCING GEOMORPHOLOGY

The word geomorphology is derived from three Greek words: γῆ (the Earth), μορφή (form), and λόγος (discourse). Geomorphology is therefore ‘a discourse on Earth forms’. It is the study of Earth’s physical land-surface features, its landforms – rivers, hills, plains, beaches, sand dunes, and myriad others. Some workers include submarine landforms within the scope of geomorphology. And some would add the landforms of other terrestrial-type planets and satellites in the Solar System – Mars, the Moon, Venus, and so on. Geomorphology was first used as a term to describe the morphology of the Earth’s surface in the 1870s and 1880s (e.g. de Margerie 1886, 315). It was originally defined as ‘the genetic

study of topographic forms’ (McGee 1888, 547), and was used in popular parlance by 1896.

Despite the modern acquisition of its name, geomorphology is a venerable discipline. Ancient Greek and Roman philosophers wondered how mountains and other surface features in the natural landscape had formed. Aristotle, Herodotus, Seneca, Strabo, Xenophanes, and many others discoursed on topics such as the origin of river valleys and deltas, and the presence of seashells in mountains. Xenophanes of Colophon (c. 580–480 BC) speculated that, as seashells are found on the tops of mountains, the surface of the Earth must have risen and fallen. Herodotus (c. 484–420 BC) thought that the lower part of Egypt was a former marine bay, reputedly saying ‘Egypt is the gift of the river’, referring to the

year-by-year accumulation of river-borne silt in the Nile delta region. Aristotle (384–322 BC) conjectured that land and sea change places, with areas that are now dry land once being sea and areas that are now sea once being dry land. Strabo (64/63 BC–AD 23?) observed that the land rises and falls, and suggested that the size of a river delta depends on the nature of its catchment, the largest deltas being found where the catchment areas are large and the surface rocks within it are weak. Lucius Annaeus Seneca (4 BC–AD 65) appears to have appreciated that rivers possess the power to erode their valleys. About a millennium later, the illustrious Arab scholar ibn-Sina, also known as Avicenna (980–1037), who translated Aristotle, propounded the view that some mountains are produced by differential erosion, running water and wind hollowing out softer rocks. During the Renaissance, many scholars debated Earth history. Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519) believed that changes in the levels of land and sea explained the presence of fossil marine shells in mountains. He also opined that valleys were cut by streams and that streams carried material from one place and deposited it elsewhere. In the eighteenth century, Giovanni Targioni-Tozzetti (1712–84) recognized evidence of stream erosion, arguing that the valleys of the Arno, Val di Chaina, and Ombrosa in Italy were excavated by rivers and floods resulting from the bursting of barrier lakes and suggested that the irregular courses of streams are related to the differences in the rocks in which they are cut, a process that is now called differential erosion. Jean-Étienne Guettard (1715–86) argued that streams destroy mountains and the sediment produced in the process builds floodplains before being carried to the sea. He also pointed to the efficacy of marine erosion, noting the rapid destruction of chalk cliffs in northern France by the sea, and the fact that the mountains of the Auvergne were extinct volcanoes. Horace-Bénédict de Saussure (1740–99) contended that valleys were produced by the streams that flow within them, and that glaciers may erode rocks. From these early ideas on the origin of landforms arose modern geomorphology (see Chorley *et al.* 1964 for details on the development of the subject).

Geomorphology investigates landforms and the processes that fashion them. A large corpus of geomorphologists expends much sweat in researching relationships between landforms and the processes acting on them now. These are the **process** or **functional geomorphologists**. Many geomorphic processes affect, and are affected by, human activities. This rich area of enquiry, which is largely an extension of process geomorphology, is explored by **applied geomorphologists**. Many landforms have a long history and their present form is not always related to the current processes acting upon them. The nature and rate of geomorphic processes change with time and some landforms were produced under different environmental conditions, surviving today as relict features. In high latitudes, many landforms are relicts from the Quaternary glaciations, but, in parts of the world, some landforms survive from millions and hundreds of millions of years ago. Geomorphology, then, has an important historical dimension, which is the domain of the **historical geomorphologists**. In short, modern geomorphologists study three chief aspects of landforms – **form**, **process**, and **history**. The first two are sometimes termed functional geomorphology, the last historical geomorphology (Chorley 1978). Process studies have enjoyed a hegemony for some three or four decades. Historical studies were sidelined by process studies but are making a strong comeback. Although process and historical studies dominate much modern geomorphological enquiry, particularly in English-speaking nations, other types of study exist. For example, **structural geomorphologists**, who were once a very influential group, argued that underlying geological structures are the key to understanding many landforms. **Climatic geomorphologists**, who are found mainly in France and Germany, believe that climate exerts a profound influence on landforms, each climatic region creating a distinguishing suite of landforms.

### **Historical geomorphology**

Traditionally, historical geomorphologists strove to work out landscape history by mapping morpho-

logical and sedimentary features. Their golden rule was the dictum that ‘**the present is the key to the past**’. This was a warrant to assume that the effects of geomorphic processes seen in action today may be legitimately used to infer the causes of assumed landscape changes in the past. Before reliable dating techniques were available, such studies were difficult and largely educated guesswork. However, the brilliant successes of early historical geomorphologists should not be overlooked.

### William Morris Davis

The ‘**geographical cycle**’, expounded by **William Morris Davis**, was the first modern theory of landscape evolution (e.g. Davis 1889, 1899, 1909). It assumed that uplift takes place quickly. The raw topography is then gradually worn down by geomorphic processes, without further complications from tectonic movements. Furthermore, slopes within landscapes decline through time – maximum slope angles slowly lessen (though few field studies have substantiated this claim). So, topography is reduced, little by little, to an extensive flat region close to base level – a **peneplain** – with occasional hills called **monadnocks** after Mount Monadnock in New Hampshire, USA, which are local erosional remnants, standing conspicuously above the general level. The reduction process creates a time sequence of landforms that progresses through the stages of **youth**, **maturity**, and **old age**. However, these terms, borrowed from biology, are misleading and much censured (e.g. Ollier 1967; Ollier and Pain 1996, 204–5). The ‘geographical cycle’ was designed to account for the development of humid temperate landforms produced by prolonged wearing down of uplifted rocks offering uniform resistance to erosion. It was extended to other landforms, including arid landscapes, glacial landscapes, periglacial landscapes, to landforms produced by shore processes, and to karst landscapes.

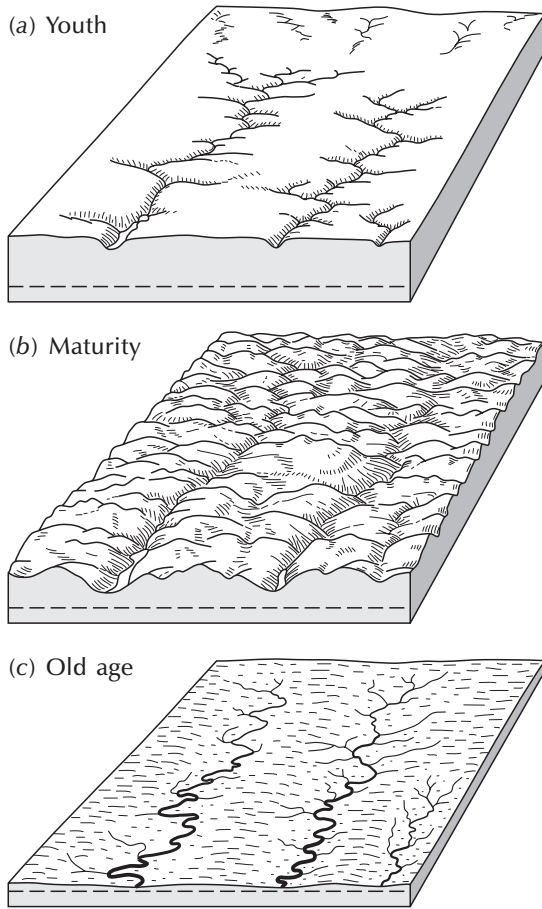
William Morris Davis’s ‘geographical cycle’ – in which landscapes are seen to evolve through stages of youth, maturity, and old age – must be

regarded as a classic work, even if it is now known to be flawed (Figure 1.1). Its appeal seems to have lain in its theoretical tenor and in its simplicity (Chorley 1965). It had an all-pervasive influence on geomorphological thought and spawned the once highly influential field of denudation chronology. The work of denudation chronologists, who worked mainly with morphological evidence, has subsequently been criticized for seeing flat surfaces everywhere.

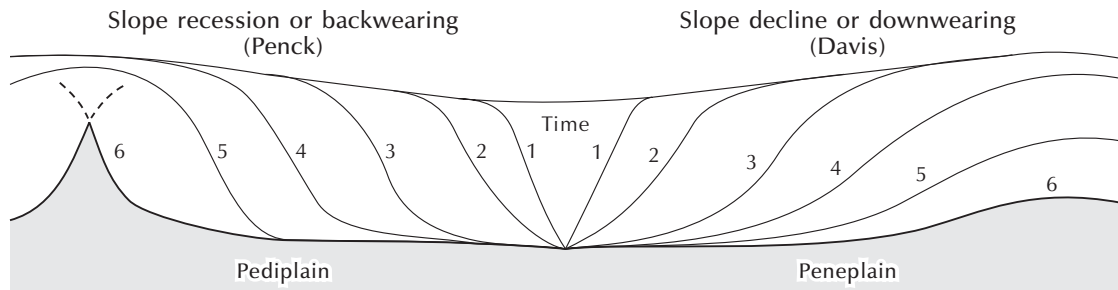
### Walther Penck

A variation on Davis’s scheme was offered by **Walther Penck**. According to the Davisian model, uplift and planation take place alternately. But, in many landscapes, uplift and denudation occur at the same time. The continuous and gradual interaction of tectonic processes and denudation leads to a different model of landscape evolution, in which the evolution of individual slopes is thought to determine the evolution of the entire landscape (Penck 1924, 1953). Three main slope forms evolve with different combinations of uplift and denudation rates. First, convex slope profiles, resulting from waxing development (*aufsteigende Entwicklung*), form when the uplift rate exceeds the denudation rate. Second, straight slopes, resulting from stationary (or steady-state) development (*gleichförmige Entwicklung*), form when uplift and denudation rates match one another. And third, concave slopes, resulting from waning development (*absteigende Entwicklung*), form when the uplift rate is less than the denudation rate. Later work has shown that valley-side shape depends not on the simple interplay of erosion rates and uplift rates, but on slope materials and the nature of slope-eroding processes.

According to Penck’s arguments, slopes may either recede at the original gradient or else flatten, according to circumstances. Many textbooks claim that Penck advocated ‘parallel retreat of slopes’, but this is a false belief (see Simons 1962). Penck (1953, 135–6) argued that a steep rock face would move upslope, maintaining its original gradient, but would soon be eliminated by a growing basal slope.



*Figure 1.1* William Morris Davis's idealized 'geographical cycle' in which a landscape evolves through 'life-stages' to produce a peneplain. (a) Youth: a few 'consequent' streams (p. 97), V-shaped valley cross-sections, limited floodplain formation, large areas of poorly drained terrain between streams with lakes and marshes, waterfalls and rapids common where streams cross more resistant beds, stream divides broad and ill-defined, some meanders on the original surface. (b) Maturity: well-integrated drainage system, some streams exploiting lines of weak rocks, master streams have attained grade (p. 191), waterfalls, rapids, lakes, and marshes largely eliminated, floodplains common on valley floors and bearing meandering rivers, valley no wider than the width of meander belts, relief (difference in elevation between highest and lowest points) is at a maximum, hillslopes and valley sides dominate the landscape. (c) Old age: trunk streams more important again, very broad and gently sloping valleys, floodplains extensive and carrying rivers with broadly meandering courses, valleys much wider than the width of meander belts, areas between streams reduce in height and stream divides not so sharp as in the maturity stage, lakes, swamps, and marshes lie on the floodplains, mass-wasting dominates fluvial processes, stream adjustments to rocks types now vague, extensive areas lie at or near the base level of erosion.  
*Source:* Adapted from Holmes (1965, 473)



*Figure 1.2* Slope recession, which produces a pediplain (p. 315) and slope decline, which produces a peneplain.  
*Source:* Adapted from Gossman (1970)



If the cliff face was the scarp of a tableland, however, it would take a long time to disappear. He reasoned that the basal slope is replaced by a lower-angle slope that starts growing from the bottom of the basal slope. Continued slope replacement then leads to a flattening of slopes, with steeper sections formed during earlier stages of development sometimes surviving in summit areas (Penck 1953, 136–41). In short, Penck's complicated analysis predicted both **slope recession** and **slope decline**, a result that extends Davis's simple idea of **slope decline** (Figure 1.2). Field studies have confirmed that slope retreat is common in a wide range of situations. However, a slope that is actively eroded at its base (by a river or by the sea) may decline if the basal erosion should stop.

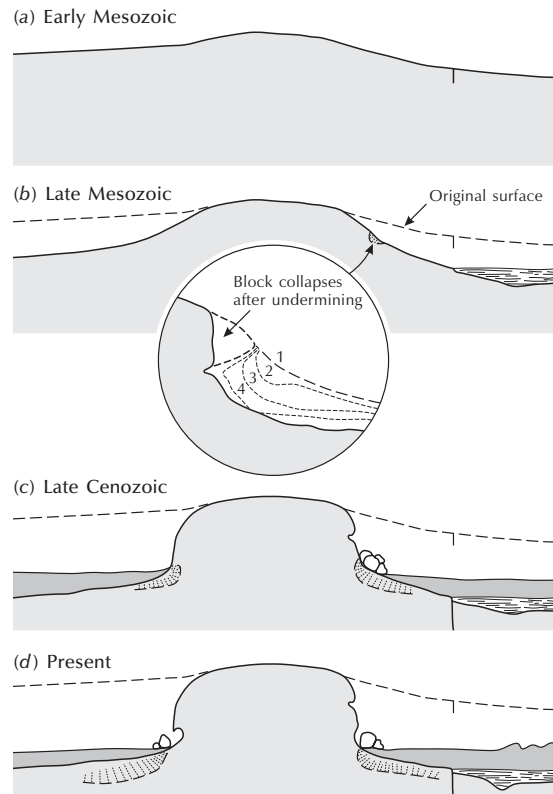
### Eduard Brückner and Albrecht Penck

Other early historical geomorphologists used geologically young sediments to interpret Pleistocene events. **Eduard Brückner** and **Albrecht Penck's** (Walther's father) work on glacial effects on the Bavarian Alps and their forelands provided the first insights into the effects of the Pleistocene ice ages on relief (Penck and Brückner 1901–9). Their classic river-terrace sequence gave names to the main glacial stages – Donau, Gunz, Mindel, Riss, and Würm – and fathered Quaternary geomorphology.

### Uluru: a case study

It is perhaps easiest to explain modern historical geomorphology by way of an example. Take Uluru (Ayers Rock), arguably the most famous landform in Australia and one of the best-known in the world, ranking alongside the Grand Canyon, the Matterhorn, and the Niagara Falls (Box 1.1). On seeing Uluru, no geomorphologist can fail to wonder how it formed. A picture of its history has been pieced together by geomorphologists, partly by a process of elimination (Twidale and Campbell 1993, 247–51). Uluru cannot be the result of faulting of the rocks in which it is formed, since its scarps are not related to faults in the bedrock. Nor is it the product of a

resistant lithology (the composition of the rock of which it is made), because similar bedrock underlies the adjacent plains, although the rocks comprising Uluru were folded during the Middle Palaeozoic orogeny (mountain-building episode) and later, which may have imparted a degree of resistance to erosion. Some investigators deem Uluru to be the last remnant of scarp retreat that has eaten away the surrounding bedrock. A more believable explanation is that Uluru began beneath the land surface and was exposed in stages (Figure 1.3). There is evidence that Cretaceous topography was a surface of low relief, with a bedrock valley occupying the area between



*Figure 1.3* Possible evolution of Uluru (Ayers Rock) from the Early Mesozoic era to the present. The numbers in the Late Mesozoic enlarged section are stages of undermining.

*Source:* After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 251)

**Box 1.1****ULURU (AYERS ROCK), CENTRAL AUSTRALIA – A FAMOUS LANDFORM WITH A HISTORY TO REVEAL**

Uluru is an ‘island mountain’ or inselberg sitting 863 m above sea level and rising 300–340 m above the surrounding desert plain (Twidale and Campbell 1993, 247–51) (Plate 1.1a). It is made of green–grey arkosic sandstone beds formed during the Cambrian period. Uluru’s red colour is due to a thin coating of iron oxide. The sandstone beds dip almost vertically. The summit rolls broadly, with ribs and corrugations associated with minor ridges running parallel to the strike of the beds and with dimples associated with the formation of many basins. The steep sides of Uluru are fretted and sculpted, with many huge caves, especially on the southern slope, and with flared slopes up to 4 m high, again well developed on the southern base (Plate 1.1b). Other curious features include ‘The Brain’, which results from a breach in the outer skin of Uluru and the exposure of the dipping beds, and the ‘Kangaroo Tail’, which is one of several sheet fractures up to 2 m thick. The surface is mostly covered with thin rock flakes or scales. The plains surrounding Uluru are formed on alluvial (river-deposited) and aeolian (wind-deposited) sediments. To the south, they are quite thick (tens of metres), but to the north and west, they are very thin (absent or just a few metres thick) and, in several places, the steep bedrock walls give way to rock platforms and even, in Little Ayers Rock, blocks and boulders resting on a small bedrock dome. Some 24 km west-north-west of Uluru lie the Olgas, a group of domes and turrets rising from the desert plains and formed in conglomerate. Borings between Uluru and the Olgas have revealed that the plain is underlain by a broad and shallow valley cut in Cambrian beds and filled with later sediments, the oldest of which are swamp deposits of Late Cretaceous age.



*Plate 1.1* Ayers Rock, central Australia. (a) General view. (b) Caves in the rock face. Notice the large cave towards the base.

*(Photograph by Kate Richardson)*

the Olgas and Uluru in Late Cretaceous times, and low hills on either side of the valley marking the present sites of the Olgas and Uluru. Water running off these hills would have rotted the bedrock underneath the adjoining plains. The weathering front (the depth at which weathered and unweathered rock meet) would have become steep and deep. In the zone where the water table fluctuated, intense weathering would have produced deep indentations in the bedrock, which are seen today as gaping caves on the southern bounding slopes. Later, the plains were lowered, which exposed the upper parts of the steep bounding slopes, including the deep indentations that now stand 35–65 m above the level of the plain. At this time, the plain was some 4 m higher than at present. Flared slopes were initiated beneath it, and these were exposed when the plain reached its present level. Uluru has thus taken about 70 million years to attain its present form.

### Process geomorphology

Process geomorphology is the study of the processes responsible for landform development. In the modern era, the first process geomorphologist, carrying on the tradition started by Leonardo da Vinci (p. 4), was Grove Karl Gilbert. In his treatise on the Henry Mountains of Utah, USA, Gilbert discussed the mechanics of fluvial processes (Gilbert 1877), and later he investigated the transport of debris by running water (Gilbert 1914). Up to about 1950, when the subject grew apace, important contributors to process geomorphology included Ralph Alger Bagnold (p. 255), who considered the physics of blown sand and desert dunes, and Filip Hjulstrøm (p. 178), who investigated fluvial processes. After 1950, several ‘big players’ emerged that set process geomorphology moving apace. Arthur N. Strahler was instrumental in establishing process geomorphology, his 1952 paper called ‘Dynamic basis of geomorphology’ being a landmark publication. John T. Hack, developing Gilbert’s ideas, prosecuted the notions of **dynamic equilibrium** and **steady state**, arguing that a landscape should

attain a steady state, a condition in which land-surface form does not change despite material being added by tectonic uplift and removed by a constant set of geomorphic processes. And he contended that, in an erosional landscape, dynamic equilibrium prevails where all slopes, both hillslopes and river slopes, are adjusted to each other (cf. Gilbert 1877, 123–4; Hack 1960, 81), and ‘the forms and processes are in a steady state of balance and may be considered as time independent’ (Hack 1960, 85). Luna B. Leopold and M. Gordon Wolman made notable contributions to the field of fluvial geomorphology (e.g. Leopold *et al.* 1964). Stanley A. Schumm, another fluvial geomorphologist, refined notions of landscape stability to include **thresholds** and dynamically **metastable states** and made an important contribution to the understanding of timescales (p. 30). Stanley W. Trimble worked on historical and modern **sediment budgets** in small catchments (e.g. Trimble 1983). Richard J. Chorley brought process geomorphology to the UK and demonstrated the power of a **systems approach** to the subject.

Process geomorphologists have done their subject at least three great services. First, they have built up a database of process rates in various parts of the globe. Second, they have built increasingly refined models for predicting the short-term (and in some cases long-term) changes in landforms. Third, they have generated some enormously powerful ideas about stability and instability in geomorphic systems (see pp. 19–20).

### Measuring geomorphic processes

Some geomorphic processes have a long record of measurement. The oldest year-by-year record is the flood levels of the River Nile in lower Egypt. Yearly readings at Cairo are available from the time of Muhammad, and some stone-inscribed records date from the first dynasty of the pharaohs, around 3,100 BC. The amount of sediment annually carried down the Mississippi River was gauged during the 1840s, and the rates of modern denudation in some of the world’s major rivers were estimated in the

1860s. The first efforts to measure weathering rates were made in the late nineteenth century. Measurements of the dissolved load of rivers enabled estimates of chemical denudation rates to be made in the first half of the twentieth century and patchy efforts were made to widen the range of processes measured in the field. But it was the quantitative revolution in geomorphology, started in the 1940s, that was largely responsible for the measuring of process rates in different environments. Since about 1950, the attempts to quantify geomorphic processes in the field have grown fast. An early example is the work of Anders Rapp (1960), who tried to quantify all the slope processes active in a subarctic environment and assess their comparative significance. His studies enabled him to conclude that the most powerful agent of removal was running water bearing material in solution. An increasing number of hillslopes and drainage basins have been instrumented, that is, had measuring devices installed to record a range of geomorphic processes. The instruments used on hillslopes and in geomorphology generally are explained in several books (e.g. Goudie 1994). Interestingly, some of the instrumented catchments established in the 1960s have recently received unexpected attention from scientists studying global warming, because records lasting decades in climatically sensitive areas – high latitudes and high altitudes – are invaluable. However, after half a century of intensive field measurements, some areas, including Europe and North America, still have better coverage than other areas. And field measurement programmes should ideally be ongoing and work on as fine a resolution as practicable, because rates measured at a particular place may vary through time and may not be representative of nearby places.

### Modelling geomorphic processes

Since the 1960s and 1970s, process studies have been largely directed towards the construction of models for predicting short-term changes in landforms, that is, changes happening over human timescales. Such models have drawn heavily on

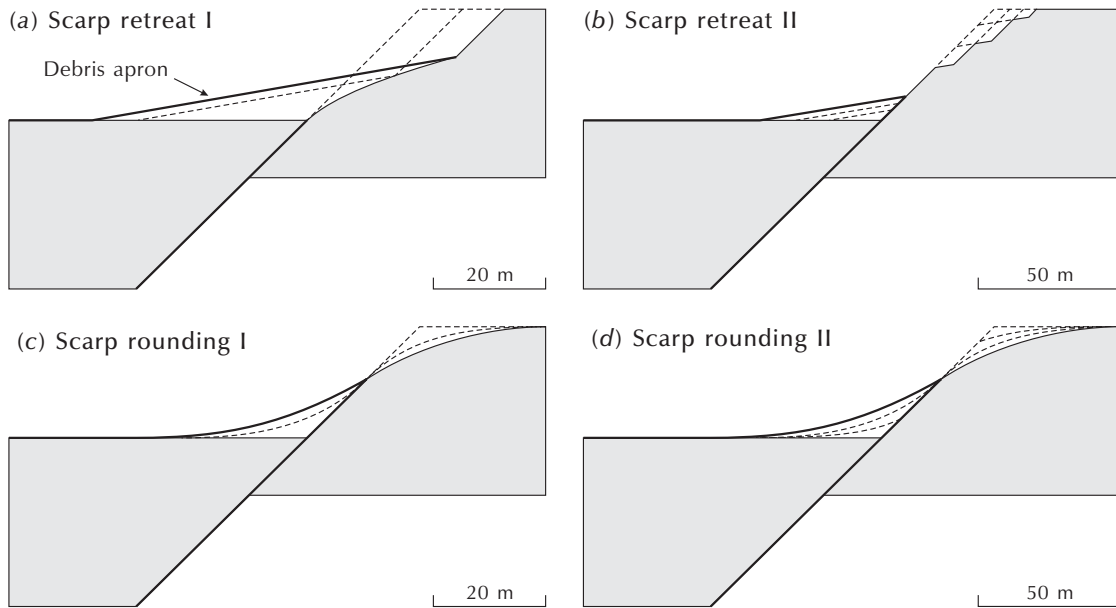
soil engineering, for example in the case of slope stability, and hydraulic engineering in the cases of flow and sediment entrainment and deposition in rivers. Nonetheless, some geomorphologists, including Michael J. Kirkby and Jonathan D. Phillips, have carved out a niche for themselves in the modelling department. An example of a geomorphic model is shown in Figure 1.4.

### Process studies and global environmental change

With the current craze for taking a global view, process geomorphology has found natural links with other Earth and life sciences. Main thrusts of research investigate (1) energy and mass fluxes and (2) the response of landforms to climate, hydrology, tectonics, and land use (Slaymaker 2000b, 5). The focus on mass and energy fluxes explores the short-term links between land-surface systems and climate that are forged through the storages and movements of energy, water, biogeochemicals, and sediments. Longer-term and broader-scale interconnections between landforms and climate, water budgets, vegetation cover, tectonics, and human activity are a focus for process geomorphologists who take a historical perspective and investigate the causes and effects of changing processes regimes during the Quaternary.

### Applied geomorphology

Applied geomorphology studies the interactions of humans with landscapes and landforms. Process geomorphologists, armed with their models, have contributed to the investigation of worrying problems associated with the human impacts on landscapes. They have studied coastal erosion and beach management (e.g. Bird 1996; Viles and Spencer 1996), soil erosion, the weathering of buildings, landslide protection, river management and river channel restoration (e.g. Brookes and Shields 1996), and the planning and design of landfill sites (e.g. Gray 1993). Other process geomorphologists have tackled more general applied issues.



*Figure 1.4* Example of a geomorphic model: the predicted evolution of a fault scarp according to assumptions made about slope processes. (a) Parallel scarp retreat with deposition of debris at the base. The scarp is produced by a single movement along the fault. (b) Parallel scarp retreat with deposition at the base. The scarp is produced by four separate episodes of movement along the fault. In cases (a) and (b) it is assumed that debris starts to move downslope once a threshold angle is reached and then comes to rest where the scarp slope is less than the threshold angle. Allowance is made for the packing density of the debris and for material transported beyond the debris apron. (c) Rounding of a fault scarp that has been produced by one episode of displacement along the fault. (d) Rounding of a fault scarp that has been produced by four separate episodes of movement along the fault. In cases (c) and (d), it is assumed that the volume of debris transported downslope is proportional to the local slope gradient. *Source:* Adapted from Nash (1981)

*Geomorphology in Environmental Planning* (Hooke 1988), for example, considered the interaction between geomorphology and public policies, with contributions on rural land-use and soil erosion, urban land-use, slope management, river management, coastal management, and policy formulation. *Geomorphology in Environmental Management* (Cooke 1990), as its title suggests, looked at the role played by geomorphology in management aspects of the environment. *Geomorphology and Land Management in a Changing Environment* (McGregor and Thompson 1995) focused upon problems of managing land against a background of environmental change. The conservation of ancient and modern landforms is an expanding aspect of applied geomorphology.

Three aspects of applied geomorphology have been brought into a sharp focus by the impending environmental change associated with global warming (Slaymaker 2000b) and illustrate the value of geomorphological know-how. First, applied geomorphologists are ideally placed to work on the mitigation of natural hazards of geomorphic origin, which may well increase in magnitude and frequency during the twenty-first century and beyond. Landslides and debris flows may become more common, soil erosion may become more severe and the sediment load of some rivers increase, some beaches and cliffs may erode faster, coastal lowlands may become submerged, and frozen ground in the tundra environments may thaw. Applied geomorphologists

can address all these potentially damaging changes. Second, a worrying aspect of global warming is its effect on natural resources – water, vegetation, crops, and so on. Applied geomorphologists, armed with such techniques as terrain mapping, remote sensing, and geographical information systems, can contribute to environmental management programmes. Third, applied geomorphologists are able to translate the predictions of global and regional temperature rises into predictions of critical boundary changes, such as the poleward shift of the permafrost line and the tree-line, which can then guide decisions about tailoring economic activity to minimize the effects of global environmental change.

## FORM

The two main approaches to form in geomorphology are description (field description and morphology mapping) and mathematical representation (geomorphometry).

### Field description and morphological mapping

The only way fully to appreciate landforms is to go into the field and see them. Much can be learnt from the now seemingly old-fashioned techniques of field description, field sketching, and map reading and map making.

The mapping of landforms is an art (see Dackombe and Gardiner 1983, 13–20, 28–41; Evans 1994). Landforms vary enormously in shape and size. Some, such as karst depressions and volcanoes, may be represented as points. Others, such as faults and rivers, are linear features that are best depicted as lines. In other cases, areal properties may be of prime concern and suitable means of spatial representation must be employed. Areal properties are captured by morphological maps. **Morphological mapping** attempts to identify basic landform units in the field, on aerial photographs, or on maps. It sees the ground surface as an assemblage of landform elements. **Landform elements**

are recognized as simply curved geometric surfaces lacking inflections (complicated kinks) and are considered in relation to upslope, downslope, and lateral elements. They go by a plethora of names – facets, sites, land elements, terrain components, and facies. The ‘site’ (Linton 1951) was an elaboration of the ‘facet’ (Wooldridge 1932), and involved altitude, extent, slope, curvature, ruggedness, and relation to the water table. The other terms were coined in the 1960s (see Speight 1974). Figure 1.5 shows the land surface of Longdendale in the Pennines, England, represented as a morphological map. The map combines landform elements derived from a nine-unit land-surface model with depictions of deep-seated mass movements and superficial mass movements. Digital elevation models, which lie within the ambits of landform morphometry and are dealt with below, have greatly extended, but by no means replaced, the classic work on landform elements and their descriptors as prosecuted by the morphological mappers.

### Geomorphometry

A branch of geomorphology – **landform morphometry** or **geomorphometry** – studies quantitatively the form of the land surface. Geomorphometry in the modern era can be traced to the work of Alexander von Humboldt and Carl Ritter in the early and mid-nineteenth century (see Pike 1999). It had a strong post-war tradition in North America and the UK, and it has been ‘re-invented’ with the advent of remotely sensed images and Geographical Information Systems (GIS) software. The contributions of geomorphometry to geomorphology and cognate fields are legion. Geomorphometry is an important component of terrain analysis and surface modelling. Its specific applications include measuring the morphometry of continental ice surfaces, characterizing glacial troughs, mapping sea-floor terrain types, guiding missiles, assessing soil erosion, analysing wildfire propagation, and mapping ecoregions (Pike 1995, 1999). It also contributes to engineering, transportation, public works, and military operations.



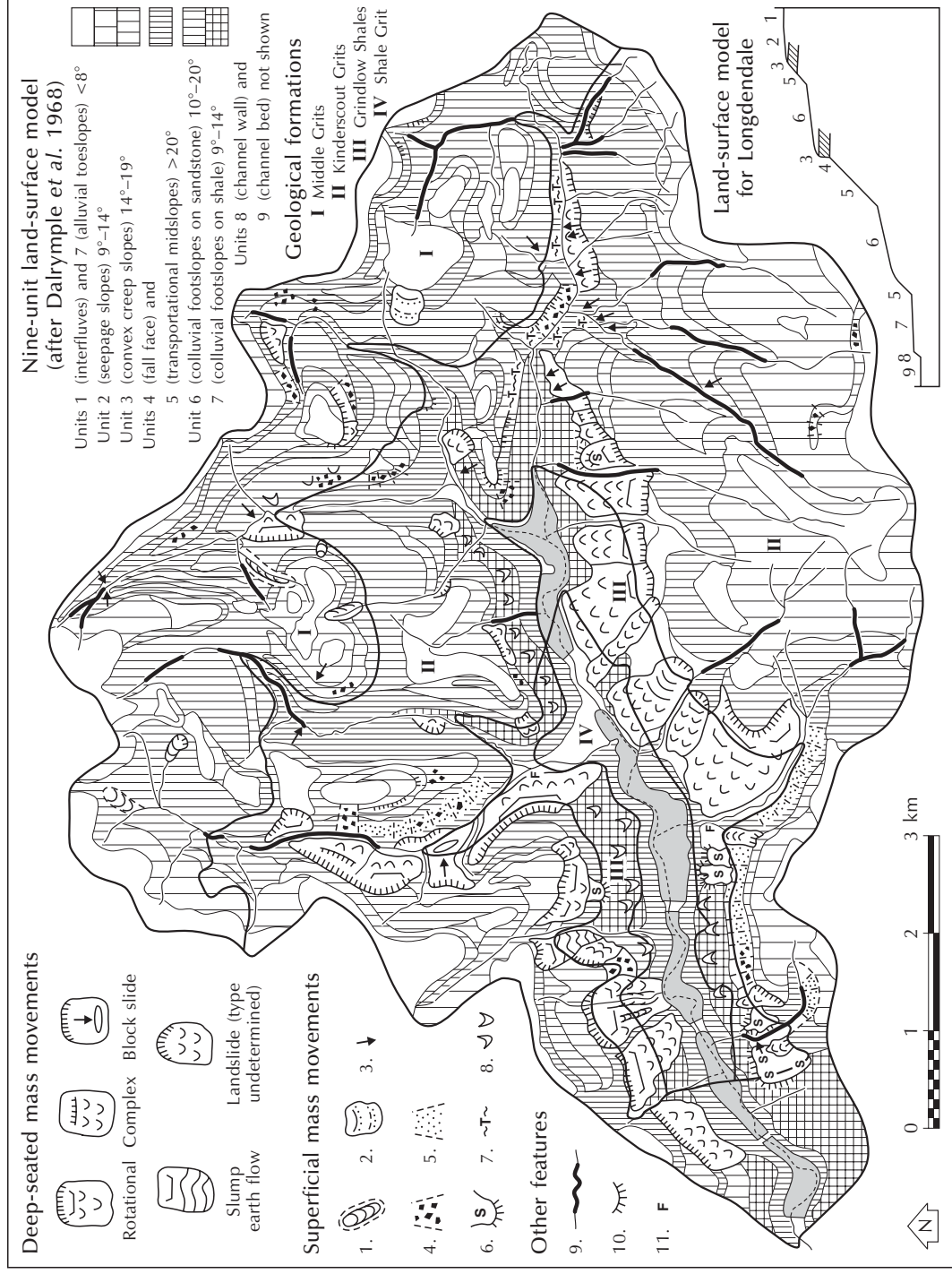


Figure 1.5 Morphological map of Longdendale, north Derbyshire, England. The map portrays units of a nine-unit land-surface model, types of mass movement, and geological formations. The superficial mass movements are: 1 Muddflow, earthflow, or peat burst; 2 Soil slump; 3 Minor soil slump; 4 Rockfall; 5 Scree; 6 Solifluction lobe; 7 Terracettes; 8 Soil creep or block creep and soliflucted material. The other features are: 9 Incised stream; 10 Rock cliff; 11 Valley-floor alluvial fan. Source: After Johnson (1980)

## Digital elevation models

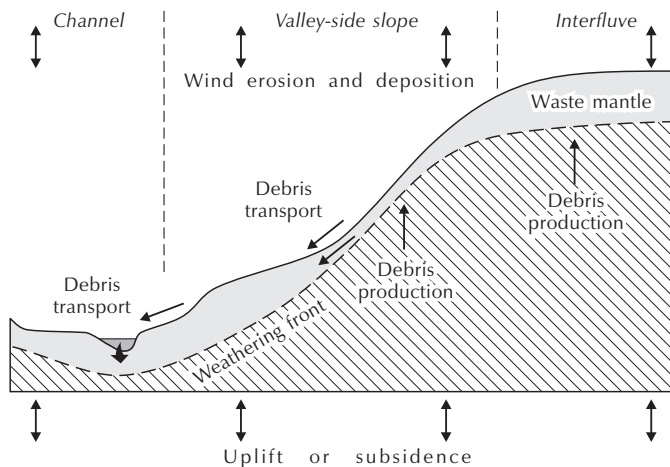
The resurgence of geomorphometry since the 1970s is in large measure owing to two developments: first, the light-speed development and use of GIS, which allow input, storage, and manipulation of digital data representing spatial and aspatial features of the Earth's surface; and second, the development of **Electronic Distance Measurement (EDM)** in surveying and, more recently, the **Global Positioning System (GPS)**, which made the very time-consuming process of making large-scale maps much quicker and more fun. The spatial form of surface topography is modelled in several ways. Digital representations are referred to as either **Digital Elevation Models (DEMs)** or **Digital Terrain Models (DTMs)**. A DEM is 'an ordered array of numbers that represent the spatial distribution of elevations above some arbitrary datum in a landscape' (Moore *et al.* 1991, 4). DTMs are 'ordered arrays of numbers that represent the spatial distribution of terrain attributes' (Moore *et al.* 1991, 4). DEMs are, therefore, a subset of DTMs. Topographic elements of a landscape can be computed directly from a DEM and these are often classified into primary (or first-order) and secondary (or second-order) attributes (Moore *et al.* 1993; Evans 1980). **Primary attributes** are calculated directly from the digital elevation data. Slope, aspect, plan curvature, and profile curvature are all examples of primary attributes (Table 1.1).

**Secondary attributes** combine primary attributes. They are indices describing or characterizing the spatial variability of specific landscape processes. Indices of soil erosion potential and soil wetness are both examples of secondary attributes (Table 1.1). DEMs, although they provide descriptors of land-surface form, may be linked to process studies since they allow the spatial variability of form-controlled processes to be mapped in detail. Further details of DEMs and their applications are given in several recent books (e.g. Wilson and Gallant 2000; Huggett and Cheesman 2002).

## PROCESS

### Geomorphic systems

Process geomorphologists commonly adopt a systems approach to their subject. To illustrate what this approach entails, take the example of a hillslope system? A hillslope extends from an interfluvial crest, along a valley side, to a sloping valley floor. It may be regarded as a system insofar as it consists of things (rock waste, organic matter, and so forth) arranged in a particular way. The arrangement is seemingly meaningful, rather than haphazard, because it may be explained in terms of physical processes (Figure 1.6). The 'things' of which a hillslope is composed may be described by such variables as particle size,



*Figure 1.6* A hillslope as a system, showing storages (waste mantle), inputs (e.g. wind deposition and debris production), outputs (e.g. wind erosion), throughputs (debris transport), and units (channel, valley-side slope, interfluvial).



Table 1.1 Primary and secondary attributes that can be computed from DEMs

<i>Attribute</i>	<i>Definition</i>	<i>Applications</i>
<i>Primary attributes</i>		
Altitude	Height above mean sea level or local reference point	Climate variables (e.g. pressure, temperature), vegetation and soil patterns, material volumes, cut-and-fill and visibility calculations, potential energy determination
Slope	Rate of change of elevation – gradient	Steepness of topography, overland and subsurface flow, resistance to uphill transport, geomorphology, soil water content
Aspect	Compass direction of steepest downhill slope – azimuth of slope	Solar insolation and irradiance, evapotranspiration
Profile curvature	Rate of change of slope	Flow acceleration, erosion and deposition patterns and rate, soil and land evaluation indices, terrain unit classification
Plan curvature	Rate of change of aspect	Converging and diverging flow, soil water characteristics, terrain unit classification
Upslope slope	Mean slope of upslope area	Runoff velocity
Dispersal slope	Mean slope of dispersal area	Rate of soil drainage
Catchment slope	Average slope over the catchment	Time of concentration
Upslope area	Catchment area above a small length of contour	Runoff volume, steady-state runoff rate
Dispersal area	Area downslope from a small length of contour	Soil drainage rate
Catchment area	Area draining to catchment outlet	Runoff volume
Specific catchment area	Upslope area per unit width of contour	Runoff volume draining out of catchment, soil characteristics, soil water content, geomorphology
Flow path length	Maximum distance of water flow to a point in the catchment	Erosion rates, sediment yield, time of concentration
Upslope length	Mean length of flowpaths to a point in the catchment	Flow acceleration, erosion rates
Dispersal length	Distance from a point in the catchment to the outlet	Soil drainage impedance
Catchment length	Distance from highest point to outlet	Overland flow attenuation
Local drain direction (l <sub>dd</sub> )	Direction of steepest downhill flow	Calculation of catchment attributes as a function of stream topology. Computing lateral transport of materials over a locally defined network
Stream length	Length of longest path along local drainage direction upstream of a given cell	Flow acceleration, erosion rates, sediment yield

Table 1.1 (continued)

Attribute	Definition	Applications
Stream channel	Cells with flowing water or cells with more than a given number of upstream elements	Location of flow, erosion and sedimentation, flow intensity
Ridge	Cells with no upstream contributing area	Drainage divides, soil erosion, connectivity
<i>Secondary attributes</i>		
Wetness Index	$\ln = \frac{A_s}{\tan b}$ where $A_s$ is specific catchment and $b$ is slope	Index of moisture retention
Irradiance	Amount of solar energy received per unit area	Soil and vegetation studies, evapotranspiration

Source: Adapted from Huggett and Cheesman (2002, 20)

soil moisture content, vegetation cover, and slope angle. These variables, and many others, interact to form a regular and connected whole: a hillslope, and the mantle of debris on it, records a propensity towards reciprocal adjustment among a complex set of variables. The complex set of variables include rock type, which influences weathering rates, the geotechnical properties of the soil, and rates of infiltration; climate, which influences slope hydrology and so the routing of water over and through the hillslope mantle; tectonic activity, which may alter base level; and the geometry of the hillslope, which, acting mainly through slope angle and distance from the divide, influences the rates of processes such as landsliding, creep, solifluction, and wash. Change in any of the variables will tend to cause a readjustment of hillslope form and process.

### Isolated, open, and closed systems

Systems of all kinds may be regarded as open, closed, or isolated according to how they interact, or do not interact, with their surroundings (Huggett 1985, 5–7). An **isolated system** is, traditionally, taken to mean a system that is completely cut off from its

surroundings and that cannot therefore import or export matter or energy. A **closed system** has boundaries open to the passage of energy but not of matter. An **open system** has boundaries across which energy and materials may move. Most geomorphic systems, including hillslopes, may be thought of as open systems as they exchange energy and matter with their surroundings.

### Internal and external system variables

Any geomorphic system has **internal** and **external variables**. Take a drainage basin. Soil wetness, streamflow, and other variables lying inside the system are endogenous or internal variables. Precipitation, solar radiation, tectonic uplift, and other such variables originating outside the system and affecting drainage basin dynamics are exogenous or external variables. Interestingly, all geomorphic systems can be thought of as resulting from a basic antagonism between **endogenic (tectonic and volcanic)** processes driven by geological forces and **exogenic (geomorphic)** processes driven by climatic forces (Scheidegger 1979). In short, tectonic processes create land and climatically influenced

weathering and erosion destroy it. The events between the creation and the final destruction are what fascinate geomorphologists.

Systems are mental constructs and have been defined in various ways. Two conceptions of systems are important in geomorphology: systems as process and form structures and systems as simple and complex structures (Huggett 1985, 4–5, 17–44).

### Geomorphic systems as form and process structures

Three kinds of geomorphic system may be identified: form systems, process systems, and form and process systems.

1 **Form systems.** **Form or morphological systems** are defined as sets of form variables that are deemed to interrelate in a meaningful way in terms of system origin or system function. Several measurements could be made to describe the form of a hillslope system. Form elements would include measures of anything on a hillslope that has size, shape, or physical properties. A simple characterization of hillslope form is shown in Figure 1.7a, which depicts a cliff with a talus slope at its base. All that could be learnt from this ‘form system’ is that the talus lies below the cliff; no causal connections between

the processes linking the cliff and talus slope are inferred. Sophisticated characterizations of hillslope and land-surface forms may be made using digital terrain models (Table 1.1).

2 **Process systems.** **Process systems**, which are also called **cascading** or **flow systems**, are defined as ‘interconnected pathways of transport of energy or matter or both, together with such storages of energy and matter as may be required’ (Strahler 1980, 10). An example is a hillslope represented as a store of materials: weathering of bedrock and wind deposition adds materials to the store, and erosion by wind and fluvial erosion at the slope base removes materials from the store. The materials pass through the system and in doing so link the morphological components. In the case of the cliff and talus slope, it could be assumed that rocks and debris fall from the cliff and deliver energy and rock debris to the talus below (Figure 1.7b).

3 **Form and process systems.** **Process–form systems**, also styled **process–response systems**, are defined as an energy-flow system linked to a form system in such a way that system processes may alter the system form and, in turn, the changed system form alters the system processes. A hillslope may be viewed in this way with slope form variables and slope process variables interacting. In the cliff-and-talus example, rock

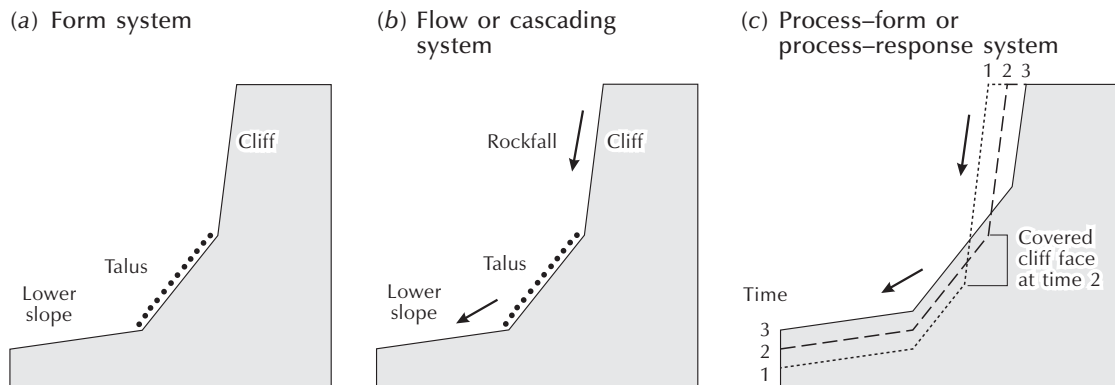


Figure 1.7 A cliff and talus slope viewed as (a) a form system, (b) a flow or cascading system, and (c) or process–form or process–response system. Details are given in the text.

falling off the cliff builds up the talus store (Figure 1.7c). However, as the talus store increases in size, so it begins to bury the cliff face, reducing the area that supplies debris. In consequence, the rate of talus growth diminishes and the system changes at an ever-decreasing rate. The process described is an example of negative feedback, which is an important facet of many process–form systems (Box 1.2).

### Geomorphic systems as simple or complex structures

Three main types of system are recognized under this heading: simple systems, complex but disorganized systems, and complex and organized systems.

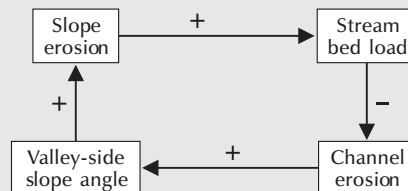
1 **Simple systems.** The first two of these types have a long and illustrious history of study. Since at least the seventeenth-century revolution in science, astronomers have referred to a set of heavenly bodies connected together and acting upon each other according to certain laws as a system. The Solar System is the Sun and its planets. The Uranian system is Uranus and its moons. These structures may be thought of as simple systems. In geomorphology, a few boulders resting on a talus slope may be thought of as a simple system. The conditions needed to dislodge the boulders, and their fate after dislodgement, can be predicted from mechanical laws involving forces, resistances, and equations of motion, in much the same way that the motion

#### Box 1.2

#### NEGATIVE AND POSITIVE FEEDBACK

**Negative feedback** is said to occur when a change in a system sets in motion a sequence of changes that eventually neutralize the effects of the original change, so stabilizing the system. An example occurs in a drainage basin system, where increased channel erosion leads to a steepening of valley-side slopes, which accelerates slope erosion, which increases stream bed load, which reduces channel erosion (Figure 1.8a). The reduced channel erosion then stimulates a sequence of events that stabilizes the system and counteracts the effects of the original change. Some geomorphic systems also display **positive feedback** relationships, characterized by an original change being magnified and the system being made unstable. An example is an eroding hillslope, where the slope erosion causes a reduction in infiltration capacity of water, which increases the amount of surface runoff, which promotes even more slope erosion (Figure 1.8b). In short, a ‘vicious circle’ is created and the system, being unstabilized, continues changing.

(a) Negative feedback loop



(b) Positive feedback loop

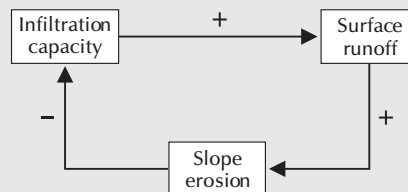


Figure 1.8 Feedback relationships in geomorphic systems. (a) Negative feedback in a valley-side slope–stream system. (b) Positive feedback in an eroding hillslope system. Details of the relationships are given in the text.

of the planets around the Sun can be predicted from Newtonian laws.

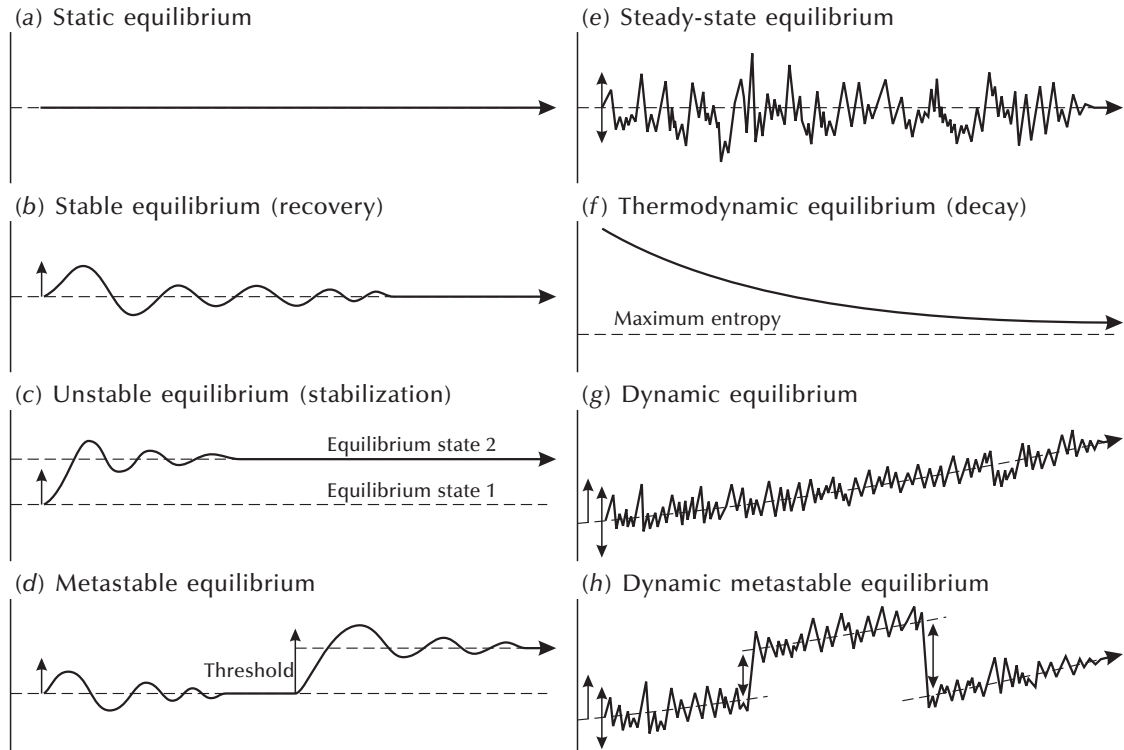
- 2 In a **complex but disorganized system**, a vast number of objects are seen to interact in a weak and haphazard way. An example is a gas in a jar. This system might comprise upward of  $10^{23}$  molecules colliding with each other. In the same way, the countless individual particles in a hillslope mantle could be regarded as a complex but rather disorganized system. In both the gas and the hillslope mantle, the interactions are somewhat haphazard and far too numerous to study individually, so aggregate measures must be employed (see Huggett 1985, 74–7; Scheidegger 1991, 251–8).
- 3 In a third and more recent conception of systems, objects are seen to interact strongly with one another to form **systems of a complex and organized nature**. Most biological and ecological systems are of this kind. Many structures in geomorphology display high degrees of regularity and rich connections and may be thought of as complexly organized systems. A hillslope represented as a process–form system could be placed into this category. Other examples include soils, rivers, and beaches.

### **Geomorphic system dynamics: equilibrium and steady state**

The idea of dynamic equilibrium and steady state, as developed by John T. Hack from Grove Karl Gilbert's notion, was a condition in which land-surface form stays the same despite material being added by tectonic uplift and removed by a constant set of geomorphic processes, and that prevails in an erosional landscape where all slopes, both hillslopes and river slopes, are adjusted to each other (p. 9). In practice, this early notion of dynamic equilibrium was difficult to apply to landscapes and other forms of equilibrium were advanced (Howard 1988) (Figure 1.9). Of these, **dynamic metastable equilibrium** has proved to be salutary. It suggests that, once perturbed by environmental changes or random internal fluctuations that cause the crossing

of internal **thresholds** (Box 1.3), a landscape will respond in a complex manner (Schumm 1979). A stream, for instance, if it should be forced away from a steady state, will adjust to the change. However, the nature of the adjustment may vary in different parts of the stream and at different times. Douglas Creek in western Colorado, USA, was subject to overgrazing during the 'cowboy era' (Womack and Schumm 1977). It has been cutting into its channel bed since about 1882. The manner of incision has been complex, with discontinuous episodes of downcutting interrupted by phases of deposition, and with the erosion–deposition sequence varying from one cross-section to another. Trees have been used to date terraces at several locations. The terraces are unpaired (p. 199), which is not what would be expected from a classic case of river incision, and they are discontinuous in a downstream direction. This kind of study serves to dispel for ever the simplistic cause-and-effect view of landscape evolution in which change is seen as a simple response to an altered input. It shows that landscape dynamics may involve abrupt and discontinuous behaviour involving flips between quasi-stable states as system thresholds are crossed.

The latest views on landscape stability (or lack of it) come from the field of **dynamic systems theory**, which embraces the buzzwords **complexity** and **chaos**. The argument runs that steady states in the landscape may be rare because landscapes are inherently unstable. Any balance obtaining in a steady state is readily disrupted by any process that reinforces itself, so keeping the system changing through a positive feedback circuit. This idea is formalized as an 'instability principle'. This principle recognizes that, in many landscapes, accidental deviations from a 'balanced' condition tend to be self-reinforcing (Scheidegger 1983). This explains why cirques tend to grow, sinkholes increase in size, and longitudinal mountain valley profiles become stepped. The intrinsic instability of landscapes is borne out by mathematical analyses that point to the chaotic nature of much landscape change (e.g. Phillips 1999; Scheidegger 1994). Jonathan D. Phillips's (1999, 139–46) investigation into the



*Figure 1.9* Types of equilibrium in geomorphology. (a) Static equilibrium occurs when a system is in balance over a time period and no change in state occurs. (b) Stable equilibrium records a tendency to revert to a previous state after a small disturbance. (c) Unstable equilibrium occurs when a small disturbance forces a system towards a new equilibrium state where stabilization occurs. (d) Metastable equilibrium arises when a system crosses an internal or external system threshold (p. 19), so driving it to a new state. (e) Steady-state equilibrium obtains when a system constantly fluctuates about a mean equilibrium state. (f) Thermodynamic equilibrium is the tendency of some systems towards a state of maximum entropy, as in the gradual dissipation of heat by the Universe and its possible eventual 'heat death' and in the reduction of a mountain mass to a peneplain during a prolonged period of no uplift. (g) Dynamic equilibrium may be thought of as balanced fluctuations about a mean state that changes in a definite direction (a trending mean). (h) Dynamic metastable equilibrium combines dynamic and metastable tendencies, with balanced fluctuations about a trending mean flipping to new trending mean values when thresholds are crossed. *Source:* After Chorley and Kennedy (1971, 202)

nature of Earth surface systems, which includes geomorphic systems, is particularly revealing and will be discussed in the final chapter.

### Magnitude and frequency

Interesting debates centre around the variations in process rates through time. The 'tame' end of this

debate concerns arguments over **magnitude** and **frequency** (Box 1.4), the pertinent question here being which events perform the most geomorphic work: small and infrequent events, medium and moderately frequent events, or big but rare events? The first work on this issue concluded, albeit provisionally until further field work was carried out, that events occurring once or twice a year

**Box 1.3****THRESHOLDS**

A threshold separates different states of a system. It marks some kind of transition in the behaviour, operation, or state of a system. Everyday examples abound. Water in a boiling kettle crosses a temperature threshold in changing from a liquid to a gas. Similarly, ice taken out of a refrigerator and placed upon a table in a room with an air temperature of 10°C will melt because a temperature threshold has been crossed. In both examples, the huge differences in state – solid water to liquid water, and liquid water to water vapour – may result from tiny changes of temperature. Many geomorphic processes operate only after a threshold has been crossed. Landslides, for instance, require a critical slope angle, all other factors being constant, before they occur. Stanley A. Schumm (1979) made a powerful distinction between **external** and **internal system thresholds**. A geomorphic system will not cross an external threshold unless it is forced to do so by a

change in an external variable. A prime example is the response of a geomorphic system to climatic change. Climate is the external variable. If, say, runoff were to increase beyond a critical level, then the geomorphic system might suddenly respond by reorganizing itself into a new state. No change in an external variable is required for a geomorphic system to cross an internal threshold. Rather, some chance fluctuation in an internal variable within a geomorphic system may take a system across an internal threshold and lead to its reorganization. This appears to happen in some river channels where an initial disturbance by, say, overgrazing in the river catchment triggers a complex response in the river channel: a complicated pattern of erosion and deposition occurs with phases of alluviation and downcutting taking place concurrently in different parts of the channel system (see p. 19).

perform most geomorphic work (Wolman and Miller 1960). Some later work has highlighted the geomorphic significance of rare events. Large-scale anomalies in atmospheric circulation systems very occasionally produce short-lived superfloods that have long-term effects on landscapes (Baker 1977, 1983; Partridge and Baker 1987). Another study revealed that low-frequency, high-magnitude events greatly affect stream channels (Gupta 1983).

The 'wilder' end engages hot arguments over **gradualism** and **catastrophism** (Huggett 1989, 1997a). The crux of the gradualist–catastrophist debate is the seemingly innocuous question: have the present rates of geomorphic processes remained much the same throughout Earth surface history? Gradualists claim that process rates have been uniform in the past, not varying much beyond their

present levels. Catastrophists make the counterclaim that the rates of geomorphic processes have differed in the past, and on occasions some of them have acted with suddenness and extreme violence, pointing to the effects of massive volcanic explosions, the impacts of asteroids and comets, and the landsliding of whole mountainsides into the sea. The dichotomy between gradualists and catastrophists polarizes the spectrum of possible rates of change. It suggests that there is either gradual and gentle change, or else abrupt and violent change. In fact, all grades between these two extremes, and combinations of gentle and violent processes, are conceivable. It seems reasonable to suggest that land-surface history has involved a combination of gentle and violent processes.

**Box 1.4**

**MAGNITUDE AND FREQUENCY**

As a rule of thumb, bigger floods, stronger winds, higher waves, and so forth occur less often than their smaller, weaker, and lower counterparts. Indeed, graphs showing the relationship between the frequency and magnitude of many geomorphic processes are right-skewed, which means that a lot of low-magnitude events occur in comparison with the smaller number of high-magnitude events, and a very few very high-magnitude events. The frequency with which an event of a specific magnitude occurs is expressed as the **return period** or **recurrence interval**. The recurrence interval is calculated as the average

length of time between events of a given magnitude. Take the case of river floods. Observations may produce a dataset comprising the maximum discharge for each year over a period of years. To compute the **flood–frequency relationships**, the peak discharges are listed according to magnitude, with the highest discharge first. The recurrence interval is then calculated using the equation

$$T = \frac{n + 1}{m}$$

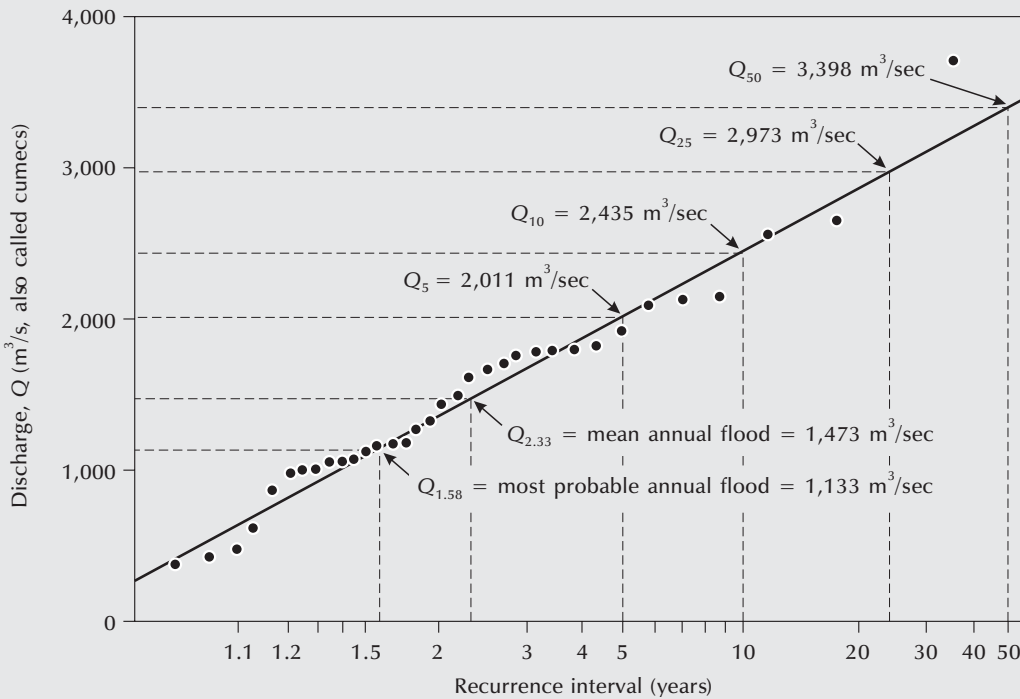


Figure 1.10 Magnitude–frequency plot of annual floods on the Wabash River, at Lafayette, Indiana, USA. See text for details.

Source: Adapted from Dury (1969)



where  $T$  is the recurrence interval,  $n$  is the number of years of record, and  $m$  is the magnitude of the flood (with  $m = 1$  at the highest recorded discharge). Each flood is then plotted against its recurrence interval on Gumbel graph paper and the points connected to form a frequency curve (Figure 1.10). If a flood of a particular magnitude has a recurrence interval of 10 years, it would mean that there is a 1-in-10 (10 per cent) chance that a flood of this magnitude (2,435 cumecs in the Wabash River example shown in Figure 1.10)

will occur in any year. It also means that, on average, one such flood will occur every 10 years. The magnitudes of 5-year, 10-year, 25-year, and 50-year floods are helpful for engineering work, flood control, and flood alleviation. The 2.33-year flood ( $Q_{2.33}$ ) is the mean annual flood (1,473 cumecs in the example), the 2.0-year flood ( $Q_{2.0}$ ) is the median annual flood (not shown), and the 1.58-year flood ( $Q_{1.58}$ ) is the most probable annual flood (1,133 cumecs in the example).

## HISTORY

Historical geomorphologists study landform evolution or changes in landforms over medium and long timescales, well beyond the span of an individual human's experience – centuries, millennia, millions and hundreds of millions of years. Such considerations go well beyond the short-term predictions of the process modellers. They bring in the historical dimension of the subject with all its attendant assumptions and methods. Historical geomorphology relies mainly on the form of the land surface and on the sedimentary record for its databases.

### Reconstructing geomorphic history

The problem with measuring geomorphic processes is that, although it establishes current operative processes and their rates, it does not provide a dependable guide to processes that were in action a million years ago, ten thousand years ago, or even a hundred years ago. Some landform features may be inherited from the past and are not currently forming. In upland Britain, for instance, hillslopes sometimes bear ridges and channels that were fashioned by ice and meltwater during the last ice age. In trying to work out the long-term evolution of landforms and landscapes, geomorphologists have three options open to them – modelling,

chronosequence studies, and stratigraphic reconstruction.

Mathematical models of the hillslopes predict what happens if a particular combination of slope processes is allowed to run on a hillslope for millions of years, given assumptions about the initial shape of the hillslope, tectonic uplift, tectonic subsidence, and conditions at the slope base (the presence or absence of a river, lake, or sea). Some geomorphologists would argue that these models are of limited worth because environmental conditions will not stay constant, or even approximately constant, for that long. Nonetheless, the models do show the broad patterns of hillslope and land-surface change that occur under particular process regimes. A discussion of hillslope modelling is beyond the scope of this book, but the interested reader who is unfamiliar with the topic could do no better than try the computer-assisted learning (CAL) module on Simulating Slope Development from the *GeographyCAL* software available at [www.le.ac.uk/cti/Tltp/roll.htm](http://www.le.ac.uk/cti/Tltp/roll.htm).

### Stratigraphic and environmental reconstruction

Fortunately for researchers into past landscapes, several archives of past environmental conditions exist: tree rings, lake sediments, polar ice cores, mid-latitude ice cores, coral deposits, loess, ocean cores, pollen, palaeosols, sedimentary rocks, and

historical records (see Huggett 1997b, 8–21). Sedimentary deposits are an especially valuable source of information about past landscapes. In some cases, geomorphologists may apply the **principles of stratigraphy** to the deposits to establish a relative sequence of events. Colluvium for example, which builds up towards a hillslope base, is commonly deposited episodically. The result is that distinct layers are evident in a section, the upper layers being progressively younger than the lower layers. If such techniques as **radiocarbon dating** or **dendrochronology** can date these sediments, then they may provide an absolute timescale for the past activities on the hillslope, or at least the past activities that have left traces in the sedimentary record (Box 1.5). Recognizing the origin of the deposits may also be possible – glacial, periglacial, colluvial, or whatever. And sometimes, geomorphologists use techniques of environmental

reconstruction to establish the climatic and other environmental conditions at the time of sediment deposition.

Environmental reconstruction techniques have been given a fillip by the recent global environmental change agenda. A core project of the IGBP (International Geosphere–Biosphere Programme) is called **Past Global Changes (PAGES)**. It concentrates on two slices of time: (1) the last 2,000 years of Earth history, with a temporal resolution of decades, years, and even months; and (2) the last several hundred thousand years, covering glacial–interglacial cycles, in the hope of providing insights into the processes that induce global change (IGBP 1990). Examples of geomorphological contributions to environmental change over timescales may be found in the book *Geomorphology, Human Activity and Global Environmental Change* edited by Olav Slaymaker (2000a).

### Box 1.5

#### DATING TECHNIQUES

A broad range of methods is now available for dating events in Earth history (Table 1.2). Some are more precise than others. Four categories are recognized: numerical-age methods, calibrated-age methods, relative-age methods, and correlated-age methods. **Numerical-age methods** produce results on a ratio (or absolute) timescale, pinpointing the times when environmental change occurred. This information is crucial to a deep appreciation of environmental change: without dates, nothing much of use can be said about rates. **Calibrated-age** methods may provide approximate numerical ages. Some of these methods are refined and enable age categories to be assigned to deposits by measuring changes since deposition in such environmental factors as soil genesis or rock weathering (see McCarrroll 1991). **Relative-age methods** furnish an age sequence, simply putting events in the correct order. They assemble the

‘pages of Earth history’ in a numerical sequence. The Rosetta stone of relative-age methods is the principle of stratigraphic superposition. This states that, in undeformed sedimentary sequences, the lower strata are older than the upper strata. Some kind of marker must be used to match stratigraphic sequences from different places. Traditionally, fossils have been employed for this purpose. Distinctive fossils or fossil assemblages can be correlated between regions by identifying strata that were laid down contemporaneously. This was how the stratigraphic column was first erected by such celebrated geologists as William (‘Strata’) Smith (1769–1839). Although this technique was remarkably successful in establishing the broad development of Phanerozoic sedimentary rocks, and rested on the sound principle of superposition, it is beset by problems (see Vita-Finzi 1973, 5–15). It is best used in partnership

Table 1.2 Methods for dating Quaternary materials

<i>Method</i>	<i>Age range (years)</i>	<i>Basis of method</i>	<i>Materials needed</i>
<i>Sidereal methods</i>			
Dendrochronology	0–5,000	Growth rings of live trees or correlating ring-width chronology with other trees	Trees and cultural materials (e.g. ships' timbers)
Varve chronology	0–200,000	Counting seasonal sediment layers back from the present, or correlating a past sequence with a continuous chronology	Glacial, lacustrine, marine, soil, and wetland deposits
Sclerochronology <sup>1</sup>	0–800	Counting annual growth bands in corals and molluscs	Marine fossiliferous deposits
<i>Isotopic methods</i>			
Radiocarbon	100–60,000	Radioactive decay of carbon-14 to nitrogen-14 in organic tissue or carbonates	A variety of chemical and biogenic sediments
Cosmogenic nuclides <sup>1</sup>	200–8,000,000 <sup>2</sup>	Formation, accumulation, and decay of cosmogenic nuclides in rocks or soils exposed to cosmic radiation	Surfaces of landforms
Potassium–argon, argon–argon	10,000–10,000,000+	Radioactive decay of potassium-40 trapped in potassium-bearing silicate minerals during crystallization to argon-40	Non-biogenic lacustrine deposits and soils, igneous and metamorphic rocks
Uranium series	100–400,000 <sup>3</sup>	Radioactive decay of uranium and daughter nuclides in biogenic chemical and sedimentary minerals	Chemical deposits and biogenic deposits except those in wetlands
Lead-210	<200	Radioactive decay of lead-210 to lead-206	Chemical deposits and wetland biogenic deposits
Uranium–lead, thorium–lead <sup>1</sup>	10,000–10,000,000+	Using normalized lead isotopes to detect small enrichments of radiogenic lead from uranium and thorium	Lava
<i>Radiogenic methods</i>			
Fission-track	2,000–10,000,000+ <sup>4</sup>	Accumulation of damage trails (fission tracks) from natural fission decay of trace uranium-238 in zircon, apatite, or glass	Cultural materials, igneous rocks
Luminescence	100–300,000	Accumulation of electrons in crystal lattice defects of silicate minerals resulting from natural radiation	Aeolian deposits, fluvial deposits, marine chemical and clastic deposits, cultural materials, silicic igneous rocks

<i>Table 1.2 (continued)</i>			
<i>Method</i>	<i>Age range (years)</i>	<i>Basis of method</i>	<i>Materials needed</i>
Electron-spin resonance	1,000–1,000,000	Accumulation of electrical charges in crystal lattice defects in silicate minerals resulting from natural radiation	Cultural materials, terrestrial and marine fossils, igneous rocks
<i>Chemical and biological methods</i>			
Amino-acid racemization	500–1,000,000	Racemization of L-amino acids to D-amino acids in fossil organic material	Terrestrial and marine plant and animals remains
Obsidian hydration	100–1,000,000	Increase in thickness of hydration rind on obsidian surface	Cultural materials, fluvial gravels, glacial deposits, clastic deposits in lakes and seas, silicic igneous and pyroclastic rocks
Lichenometry <sup>1</sup>	100–10,000	Growth of lichens on freshly exposed rock surfaces	Exposed landforms supporting lichens
<i>Geomorphic methods</i>			
Soil-profile development	8,000–200,000	Systematic changes in soil properties owing to weathering and pedogenic processes	Soils and most landforms
Rock and mineral weathering	0–300,000	Systematic alteration of rocks and minerals owing to exposure to weathering agents	Landforms
Scarp morphology <sup>1</sup>	2,000–20,000	Progressive change in scarp profile (from steep and angular to gentle and rounded) resulting from surface processes	Fault scarp and other landforms with scarp-like features (e.g. terraces)
<i>Correlation methods</i>			
<i>Palaeomagnetism</i>			
Secular variation	0–10,000	Secular variation of the Earth's magnetic field recorded in magnetic minerals	Suitable cultural materials, sediments and rocks
Reversal stratigraphy	800,000–10,000,000+	Reversals of the Earth's magnetic field recorded in magnetic minerals	Suitable sediments and igneous rocks
Tephrochronology	0–10,000,000+	Recognition of individual tephra by their unique properties, and the correlation of these with a dated chronology	Pyroclastic rocks
<i>Palaeontology</i>			
Evolution of microfossil rodents	8,000–8,000,000	Progressive evolution of microfossil rodents	Terrestrial animals' remains

Marine zoogeography	30,000–300,000	Climatically induced zoogeographical range shifts of marine invertebrates	Marine fossiliferous deposits
Climatic correlations <sup>1</sup>	1,000–500,000	Correlation of landforms and deposits with global climate changes of known age	Most sedimentary materials and landforms

**Notes:**<sup>1</sup> Experimental method<sup>2</sup> Depends on nuclide used (beryllium-10, aluminium-26, chlorine-36, helium-3, carbon-14)<sup>3</sup> Depends on series (uranium-234–uranium-230, uranium-235–protactinium-231)<sup>4</sup> Depends on material used (zircon and glass, apatite)Source: Adapted from Sowers *et al.* (2000, 567)

with numerical-age methods. Used conjointly, relative-age methods and numerical-age methods have helped to establish and calibrate the geological timetable (see Appendix). **Correlated-age methods** do not directly measure age, but suggest ages by showing an equivalence to independently dated deposits and events.

Dating techniques may be grouped under six headings: sidereal, isotopic, radiogenic, chemical and biological, geomorphic, and correlation (Colman and Pierce 2000). As a rule, sidereal, isotopic, and radiogenic methods give numerical ages, chemical and biological and geomorphic methods give calibrated or relative ages, and correlation methods give correlated ages. However, some methods defy such ready classification. For instance, measurements of amino-acid racemization may yield results as relative age, calibrated age, correlated age, or numerical age, depending on the extent to which calibration and control of environmental variables constrain the reaction rates. Another complication is that, although isotopic and radiogenic methods normally produce numerical ages, some of them are experimental or empirical and need calibration to produce numerical ages.

### Sidereal methods

Sidereal methods, also called calendar or annual methods, determine calendar dates or count

annual events. Apart from historical records, the three sidereal methods are:

- **Dendrochronology** or **tree-ring dating**. Tree rings grow each year. By taking a core from a tree (or suitable timbers from buildings, ships, and so on) and counting the rings, a highly accurate dendrochronological timescale can be established and cross-referenced with carbon-14 dating. For example, an 8,000-year carbon-14 record has been pieced together from tree rings in bristlecone pine (*Pinus aristata*).
- **Varve chronology**. The distinct layers of sediments (varves) found in many lakes, especially glacial lakes, are produced annually. In some lakes, the varve sequences run back thousands of years. Varves have also been discerned in geological rock formations, even in Precambrian sediments.
- **Sclerochronology**. This is an experimental method based upon the counting of annual growth bands in corals and molluscs.

### Isotopic methods

These measure changes in isotopic composition due to radioactive decay or growth or both. The environmental record contains a range of 'atomic clocks'. These tick precisely as a parent isotope decays radioactively into a daughter isotope. The ratio between parent and daughter isotopes allows

age to be determined with a fair degree of accuracy, although there is always some margin of error, usually in the range  $\pm 5$ –20 per cent. The decay rate of a radioactive isotope declines exponentially. The time taken for the number of atoms originally present to be reduced by half is called the **half-life**. Fortunately, the half-lives of suitable radioactive isotopes vary enormously. The more important isotopic transformations have the following half-lives: 5,730 years for carbon-14, 75,000 years for thorium-230, 250,000 years for uranium-234, 1.3 billion years for potassium-40, 4.5 billion years for uranium-238, and 47 billion years for rubidium-87. These isotopes are found in environmental materials.

- **Radiocarbon.** Carbon-14 occurs in wood, charcoal, peat, bone, animal tissue, shells, speleothems, groundwater, seawater, and ice. It is a boon to archaeologists and Quaternary palaeoecologists, providing relatively reliable dates in late Pleistocene and Holocene times.
- **Cosmogenic nuclides.** Radioactive beryllium-10 is produced in quartz grains by cosmic radiation. The concentration of beryllium-10 in surface materials containing quartz, in boulders for instance, is proportional to the length of exposure. This technique gives a very precise age determination. Aluminium-26, chlorine-36, helium-3, and carbon-14 are being used experimentally in a similar manner.
- **Potassium–argon.** This is a method based on the radioactive decay of potassium-40 trapped in potassium-bearing silicate minerals during crystallization to argon-40.
- **Uranium series.** This is a method based on the radioactive decay of uranium and daughter nuclides in biogenic chemical and sedimentary minerals.
- **Lead-210.** This is a method based on radioactive decay of lead-210 to lead-206.
- **Uranium–lead.** This method uses normalized lead isotopes to detect small enrichments of radiogenic lead from uranium and thorium.

### Radiogenic methods

These methods measure the cumulative effects of radioactive decay, such as crystal damage and electron energy tracks.

- **Fission-track.** The spontaneous nuclear fission of uranium-238 damages uranium-bearing minerals such as apatite, zircon, sphene, and glass. The damage is cumulative. Damaged areas can be etched out of the crystal lattice by acid, and the fission tracks counted under a microscope. The density of tracks depends upon the amount of parent isotope and the time elapsed since the tracks were first preserved, which only starts below a critical temperature that varies from mineral to mineral.
- **Luminescence.** This is a measure of the background radiation to which quartz or feldspar crystals have been exposed since their burial. Irradiated samples are exposed to heat (thermoluminescence – TL) or to particular wavelengths of light (optically stimulated luminescence – OSL) and give off light – luminescence – in proportion to the total absorbed radiation dose. This in turn is proportional to the age. Suitable materials for dating include loess, dune sand, and colluvium.
- **Electron-spin resonance.** This method measures the accumulation of electrical charges in crystal lattice defects in silicate minerals resulting from natural radiation.

### Chemical and biological methods

These methods measure the outcome of time-dependent chemical or biological processes.

- **Amino-acid racemization.** This method is based upon time-dependent chemical changes (called racemization) occurring in the proteins preserved in organic remains. The rate of racemization is influenced by temperature, so samples from sites of uniform temperature, such as deep caves, are needed.

- **Obsidian hydration.** A method based upon the increase in thickness of a hydration rind on an obsidian surface.
- **Lichenometry.** A method based upon the growth of lichens on freshly exposed rock surfaces. It may use the largest lichen and degree of lichen cover growing on coarse deposits.

### Geomorphological methods

These methods gauge the cumulative results of complex and interrelated physical, chemical, and biological processes on the landscape.

- **Soil-profile development.** A method that utilizes systematic changes in soil properties owing to weathering and pedogenic processes. It uses measures of the degree of soil development, such as A-horizon thickness and organic content, B-horizon development, or an overall Profile Development Index.
- **Rock and mineral weathering.** A method that utilizes the systematic alteration of rocks and minerals owing to exposure to weathering agents.
- **Scarp form.** A method based on the progressive change in scarp profile (from steep and angular to gentle and rounded) resulting from surface geomorphic processes.

### Correlation methods

These methods substantiate age equivalence using time-independent properties.

- **Palaeomagnetism.** Some minerals or particles containing iron are susceptible to the Earth's magnetic field when heated above a critical level – the Curie temperature. Minerals or particles in rocks that have been heated above their critical level preserve the magnetic-field alignment prevailing at the time of their formation. Where the rocks can be dated by independent means, a palaeomagnetic timescale may be constructed. This timescale may be applied elsewhere using palaeomagnetic evidence alone.
- **Tephrochronology.** This method recognizes individual tephra (p. 84) by their unique properties and correlates them with a dated chronology.
- **Palaeontology.** This experimental method uses either the progressive evolution of a species or shifts in zoogeographical regions.
- **Climatic correlations.** This method correlates landforms and deposits with global climatic changes of known age.

### Landform chronosequences

Another option open to the historical geomorphologist is to find a site where a set of landforms differ from place to place and where that spatial sequence of landforms may be interpreted as a time sequence. Such sequences are called **topographic chronosequences** and the procedure is sometimes referred to as **space–time substitution** or, using a term borrowed from physics, **ergodicity**.

Charles Darwin used the chronosequence method to test his ideas on coral-reef formation. He thought that barrier reefs, fringing reefs, and atolls occurring

at different places represented different evolutionary stages of island development applicable to any subsiding volcanic peak in tropical waters. William Morris Davis applied this evolutionary schema to landforms in different places and derived what he deemed was a time sequence of landform development – the geographical cycle – running from youth, through maturity, to senility. This seductively simple approach is open to misuse. The temptation is to fit the landforms into some preconceived view of landscape change, even though other sequences might be constructed. The significance of this problem is highlighted by a study of



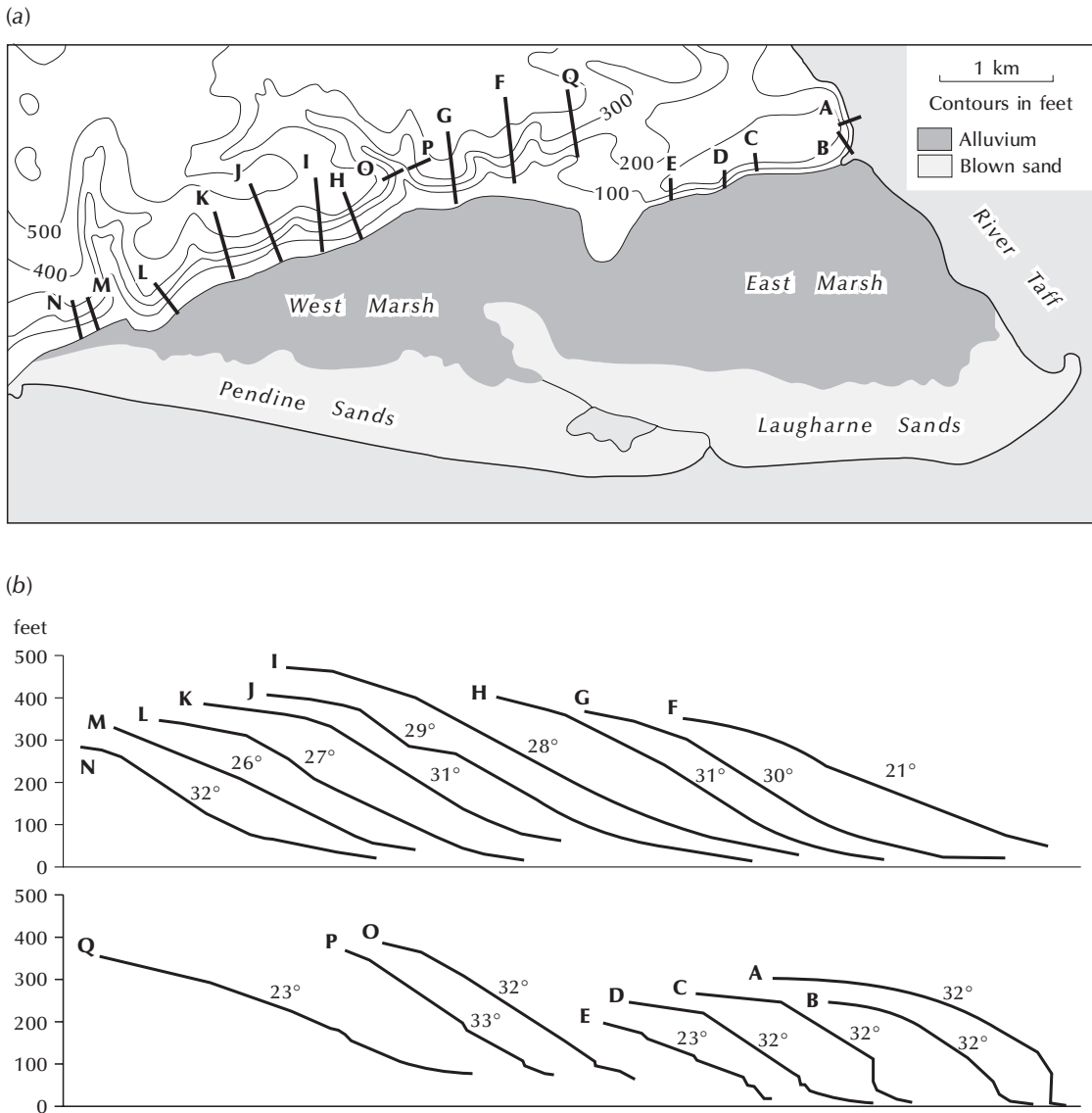
south-west African landforms since Mesozoic times (Gilchrist *et al.* 1994). It was found that several styles of landscape evolution were consistent with the observed history of the region. Users of the method must also be warned that not all spatial differences are temporal differences – factors other than time exert a strong influence on the form of the land surface, and landforms of the same age might differ through historical accidents. Moreover, it pays to be aware of **equifinality**, the idea that different sets of processes may produce the same landform. The converse of this idea is that land form is an unreliable guide to process. Given these consequential difficulties, it is best to treat chronosequences circumspectly.

Trustworthy topographic chronosequences are rare. The best examples are normally found in artificial landscapes, though there are some landscapes in which, by quirks of history, spatial differences can be translated into time sequences. Occasionally, field conditions lead to adjacent hillslopes being progressively removed from the action of a fluvial or marine process at their bases. This has happened along a segment of the South Wales coast, in the British Isles, where cliffs are formed in Old Red Sandstone (Savigear 1952, 1956). Originally, the coast between Gilman Point and the Taff estuary was exposed to wave action. A sand spit started to grow. Wind-blown and marsh deposits accumulated between the spit and the original shoreline, causing the sea progressively to abandon the cliff base from west to east. The present cliffs are thus a topographic chronosequence: the cliffs furthest west have been subject to subaerial denudation without waves cutting their base the longest, while those to the east are progressively younger (Figure 1.11). Slope profiles along Port Hudson bluff, on the Mississippi River in Louisiana, southern USA, reveal a chronosequence (Brunsden and Kesel 1973). The Mississippi River was undercutting the entire bluff segment in 1722. Since then, the channel has shifted about 3 km downstream with a concomitant cessation of undercutting. The changing conditions at the slope bases have reduced the mean slope angle from 40° to 22°.

### The question of scale

A big problem faced by geomorphologists is that as the size of geomorphic systems increases, the explanations of their behaviour may change. Take the case of a fluvial system. The form and function of a larger-scale drainage network require a different explanation from a smaller-scale meandering river within the network, and an even smaller-scale point bar along the meander requires a different explanation again. The process could carry on down through bedforms on the point bar, to the position and nature of individual sediment grains within the bedforms (cf. Schumm 1985a, 1991, 49). A similar problem applies to the time dimension. Geomorphic systems may be studied in action today. Such studies are short-term, lasting for a few years or decades. Yet geomorphic systems have a history that goes back centuries, millennia, or millions of years. Using the results of short-term studies to predict how geomorphic systems will change over long periods is difficult. Stanley A. Schumm (1985, 1991) tried to resolve the **scale problem**, and in doing so established some links between process and historical studies. He argued that, as the size and age of a landform increase, so present conditions can explain fewer of its properties and geomorphologists must infer more about its past. Figure 1.12 summarizes his idea. Evidently, such small-scale landforms and processes as sediment movement and river bedforms may be understood with recent historical information. River channel morphology may have a considerable historical component, as when rivers flow on alluvial plain surfaces that events during the Pleistocene determined. Large-scale landforms, such as structurally controlled drainage networks and mountains ranges, are explained mainly by historical information. A corollary of this idea is that the older and bigger a landform, the less accurate will be predictions and postdictions about it based upon present conditions. It also shows that an understanding of landforms requires a variable mix of process geomorphology and historical geomorphology, and that the two subjects should work together rather than stand in polar opposition.





*Figure 1.11* A topographic chronosequence in South Wales. (a) The coast between Gilman Point and the Taff estuary. The sand spit has grown progressively from west to east so that the cliffs to the west have been longest protected from wave action. (b) The general form of the hillslope profiles located on Figure 1.11a. Cliff profiles become progressively older in alphabetical order, A–N.

*Source:* From Huggett (1997b, 238) after Savigear (1952, 1956)

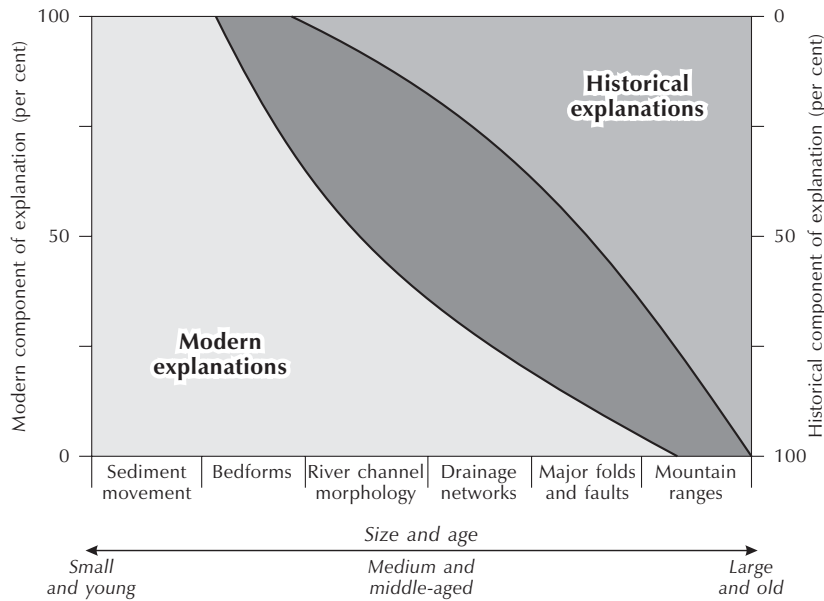


Figure 1.12 The components of historical explanation needed to account for geomorphic events of increasing size and age. The top right of the diagram contains purely historical explanations, while the bottom left contains purely modern explanations. The two explanations overlap in the middle zone, the top curve showing the maximum extent of modern explanations and the lower curve showing the maximum extent of historical explanations. Source: After Schumm (1985b; 1991, 53)

### UNIFORMITY AND NON-UNIFORMITY: A NOTE ON METHODOLOGY

Process and historical geomorphologists alike face a problem with their methodological base. In practising their trades, all scientists, including geomorphologists, follow rules. These rules, or guidelines, were established by scientific practitioners. They advise scientists how to go about the business of making scientific enquiries. In other words, they are guidelines concerned with scientific methodology or procedures. The foremost guideline – the **uniformity of law** – is the premise from which all scientists work. It is the presupposition that natural laws are invariant in time and space. In simple terms, this means that, throughout Earth history, the laws of physics, chemistry, and biology have always been the same. Water has always flowed downhill, carbon dioxide has always been a greenhouse gas, and most living things have always depended upon carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Three other guidelines are relevant to geomor-

phology. Unlike the uniformity of law, which is a universally accepted basis for scientific investigation, they are substantial claims or suppositions about how the Earth works and are open to interpretation. First, the **principle of simplicity** or, as it is commonly called in geomorphology, the **uniformity of process** states that no extra, fanciful, or unknown causes should be invoked if available processes will do the job. It is the supposition of **actualism**, the belief that past events are the outcome of processes seen in operation today. However, the dogma of actualism is being challenged and its flip-side – **non-actualism** – is gaining ground. Some geologists and geomorphologists are coming round to the view that the circumstances under which processes acted in the past were very different from those experienced today, and that those differences greatly influence the interpretation of past processes. So, before the evolution of land plants, and especially the grasses, the processes of weathering, erosion, and deposition would have occurred in a different context and Palaeozoic deserts, or even Permian deserts, may not directly

correspond to modern deserts. The second substantive claim concerns the rate of Earth surface processes, two extreme views being **gradualism** and **catastrophism** (p. 21). The third substantive claim concerns the changing state of the Earth's surface, **steady-statism** arguing for a more or less constant state, or at least cyclical changes about a fairly invariant mean state, and **directionalism** arguing in favour of directional changes.

**Uniformitarianism** is a widely used, but too often loosely used, term in geomorphology. A common mistake is to equate uniformitarianism with actualism. Uniformitarianism was a system of assumptions about Earth history argued by Charles Lyell, the nineteenth-century geologist. Lyell articulately advocated three 'uniformities', as well as the uniformity of law: the uniformity of process (actualism), the uniformity of rate (gradualism), and the uniformity of state (steady-statism). Plainly, extended to geomorphology, uniformitarianism, as introduced by Lyell, is a set of beliefs about Earth surface processes and states. Other sets of beliefs are possible. The diametric opposite of Lyell's uniformitarian position would be a belief in the non-uniformity of process (non-actualism), the non-uniformity of rate (catastrophism), and the non-uniformity of state (directionalism). All other combinations of assumption are possible and give rise to different 'systems of Earth history' (Huggett 1997a). The various systems may be tested against field evidence. To be sure, directionalism was accepted even before Lyell's death, and non-actualism and, in particular, catastrophism are discussed in geomorphological circles.

## SUMMARY

Geomorphology is the study of landforms. Three key elements of geomorphology are land form, geomorphic process, and land-surface history. The three

main brands of geomorphology are process (or functional) geomorphology, applied geomorphology, and historical geomorphology. Other brands include structural geomorphology and climatic geomorphology. Form is described by morphological maps or, more recently, by geomorphometry. Geomorphometry today uses digital elevation models and is a sophisticated discipline. Process geomorphologists, armed with a powerful combination of predictive models, field observations, and laboratory experiments, study geomorphic processes in depth. They commonly use a systems approach to their subject. Form systems, flow or cascading systems, and process-form or process-response systems are all recognized. Negative feedback and positive feedback relationships are significant features in the dynamics of geomorphic systems. The great achievements of process geomorphology include notions of stability, instability, and thresholds in landscapes, the last two of which belie simplistic ideas on cause and effect in landscape evolution. Uncertainty surrounds the issue of geomorphic process rates. Magnitude and frequency impinge on part of this uncertainty. At first it was believed that medium-magnitude and medium-frequency events did the greatest geomorphic work. Some studies now suggest that rare events such as immense floods may have long-lasting effects on landforms. Land-surface history is the domain of the historical geomorphologist. Some early historical work was criticized for reading too much into purely morphological evidence. Nonetheless, historical geomorphologists had some great successes by combining careful field observation with the analysis of the sedimentary record. Historical geomorphologists reconstruct past changes in landscapes using the methods of environmental and stratigraphic reconstruction or topographic chronosequences, often hand in hand with dating techniques. Geomorphology has engaged in methodological debates over the extent to which the present is a key to the past and the rates of Earth surface processes.

---

### ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 To what extent do process geomorphology and historical geomorphology inform each other?**
  - 2 Discuss the pros and cons of a 'systems approach' in geomorphology.**
  - 3 Explain the different types of equilibrium and non-equilibrium recognized in geomorphic systems.**
- 

### FURTHER READING

Ahnert, F. (1998) *Introduction to Geomorphology*. London: Arnold.

A good starting text with many unusual examples.

Bloom, A. L. (1998) *Geomorphology: A Systematic Analysis of Late Cenozoic Landforms*, 3rd edn. Upper Saddle River, N.J. and London: Prentice Hall.

A sound text with a focus on North America.

Goudie, A. S. (ed.) (1994) *Geomorphological Techniques*, 2nd edn. London and New York: Routledge. Covers the topics not covered by the present book – how geomorphologists measure form and process.

Ritter, D. F., Kochel, R. C., and Miller, J. R. (1995) *Process Geomorphology*, 3rd edn. Dubuque, Ill. and London: William C. Brown.

A good, well-illustrated, basic text with a fondness for North America examples.

Strahler, A. H. and Strahler, A. N. (1994) *Introducing Physical Geography*. New York: John Wiley & Sons. Comprehensive and accessible coverage of all aspects of physical geography if a general background is needed.

Summerfield, M. A. (1991) *Global Geomorphology: An Introduction to the Study of Landforms*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.

A classic after just ten years. Includes material on the geomorphology of other planets.

Thorn, C. E. (1988) *An Introduction to Theoretical Geomorphology*. Boston: Unwin Hyman.

A very clear discussion of the big theoretical issues in geomorphology. Well worth a look.

## 2

# THE GEOMORPHIC SYSTEM

---

The Earth's topography results from the interplay of many processes, some originating inside the Earth, some outside it, and some on it. This chapter covers:

- grand cycles of water and rock
- the wearing away of the land surface
- the building up of the land surface
- humans and denudation

The Earth's surface in action: mountain uplift and global cooling

Over the last 40 million years, the uplift of mountains has been a very active process. During that time, the Tibetan Plateau has been raised by up to 4,000 m, with at least 2,000 m in the last 10 million years. Two-thirds of the uplift of the Sierra Nevada in the USA has occurred in the past 10 million years. Similar changes have taken place (and are still taking place) in other mountainous areas of the North American west, in the Bolivian Andes, and in the New Zealand Alps. This period of active mountain building seems to be linked to global climatic change, in part through airflow modification and in part through weathering. Young mountains weather and erode quickly. Weathering processes remove carbon dioxide from the atmosphere by converting it to soluble carbonates. The carbonates are carried to the oceans, where they are deposited and buried. It seems likely that enough carbon dioxide was scrubbed from the atmosphere by the growth of the Himalaya to cause a global climatic cooling that culminated in the Quaternary ice ages (Raymo and Ruddiman 1992; Ruddiman 1997). This shows how important the geomorphic system can be to environmental change.

---

## ROCK AND WATER CYCLES

The Earth's surface – the **toposphere** – sits at the interfaces of the solid lithosphere, the gaseous atmosphere, and the watery hydrosphere. It is also the site where many living things dwell. Gases, liquids, and solids are exchanged between these spheres in three grand cycles, two of which – the **water or hydrological cycle** and the **rock cycle** – are crucial to understanding landform evolution. The third grand cycle – the **biogeochemical cycle** – is the circulation of chemical elements (carbon, oxygen, sodium, calcium, and so on) through the upper mantle, crust, and ecosphere, but is less significant to landform development, although some biogeochemical cycles regulate the composition of the atmosphere, which in turn can affect weathering.

### Water cycle

The **hydrosphere** – the surface and near-surface waters of the Earth – is made of **meteoric water**. The water cycle is the circulation of meteoric water through the hydrosphere, atmosphere, and upper parts of the crust. It is linked to the circulation of deep-seated, **juvenile water** associated with magma production and the rock cycle. Juvenile water ascends from deep rock layers through volcanoes, where it issues into the meteoric zone for the first time. On the other hand, meteoric water held in hydrous minerals and pore spaces in sediments, known as **connate water**, may be removed from the meteoric cycle at subduction sites, where it is carried deep inside the Earth.

The land phase of the water cycle is of special interest to geomorphologists. It sees water transferred from the atmosphere to the land and then from the land back to the atmosphere and to the sea. It includes a **surface drainage system** and a **subsurface drainage system**. Water flowing within these drainage systems tends to be organized within **drainage basins**, which are also called **watersheds** in the USA and **catchments** in the UK. The basin water system may be viewed as a

set of water stores that receive inputs from the atmosphere and deep inflow from deep groundwater storage, that lose outputs through evaporation and streamflow and deep outflow, and that are linked by internal flows. In summary, the basin water runs like this. Precipitation entering the system is stored on the soil surface, or is intercepted by vegetation and stored there, or falls directly into a stream channel. From the vegetation it runs down branches and trunks (stemflow), or drips off leaves and branches (leaf and stem drip), or it is evaporated. From the soil surface, it flows over the surface (overland flow), infiltrates the soil, or is evaporated. Once in the soil, water may move laterally down hillsides (through-flow, pipeflow, interflow) to feed rivers, or may move downwards to recharge groundwater storage, or may evaporate. Groundwater may rise by capillary action to top up the soil water store, or may flow into a stream (baseflow), or may exchange water with deep storage.

### Rock cycle

The **rock cycle** is the repeated creation and destruction of crustal material – rocks and minerals (Box 2.1). Volcanoes, folding, faulting, and uplift all bring igneous and other rocks, water, and gases to the base of the atmosphere and hydrosphere. Once exposed to the air and meteoric water, these rocks begin to decompose and disintegrate by the action of weathering. The weathering products are transported by gravity, by wind, and by water to oceans. Deposition occurs on the ocean floor. Burial of the loose sediments leads to compaction, cementation, and recrystallization and so to the formation of sedimentary rocks. Deep burial may convert sedimentary rocks into metamorphic rocks. Other deep-seated processes may produce granite. If uplifted, intruded or extruded, and exposed at the land surface, the loose sediments, consolidated sediments, metamorphic rocks, and granite may join in the next round of the rock cycle.

Volcanic action, folding, faulting, and uplift may all impart potential energy to the toposphere, creating the 'raw relief' on which geomorphic agents

**Box 2.1****ROCKS AND MINERALS**

The average composition by weight of chemical elements in the lithosphere is oxygen 47 per cent, silicon 28 per cent, aluminium 8.1 per cent, iron 5.0 per cent, calcium 3.6 per cent, sodium 2.8 per cent, potassium 2.6 per cent, magnesium 2.1 per cent, and the remaining eighty-three elements 0.8 per cent. These elements combine to form **minerals**. The chief minerals in the lithosphere are **feldspars** (aluminium silicates with potassium, sodium, or calcium), **quartz** (a form of silicon dioxide), **clay minerals** (complex aluminium silicates), **iron minerals** such as limonite and hematite, and **ferromagnesian minerals** (complex iron, magnesium, and calcium silicates). **Ore deposits** consist of common minerals precipitated from hot fluids. They include pyrite (iron sulphide), galena (lead sulphide), blende or sphalerite (zinc sulphide), and cinnabar (mercury sulphide).

**Rocks** are mixtures of crystalline forms of minerals. There are three main types: igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic.

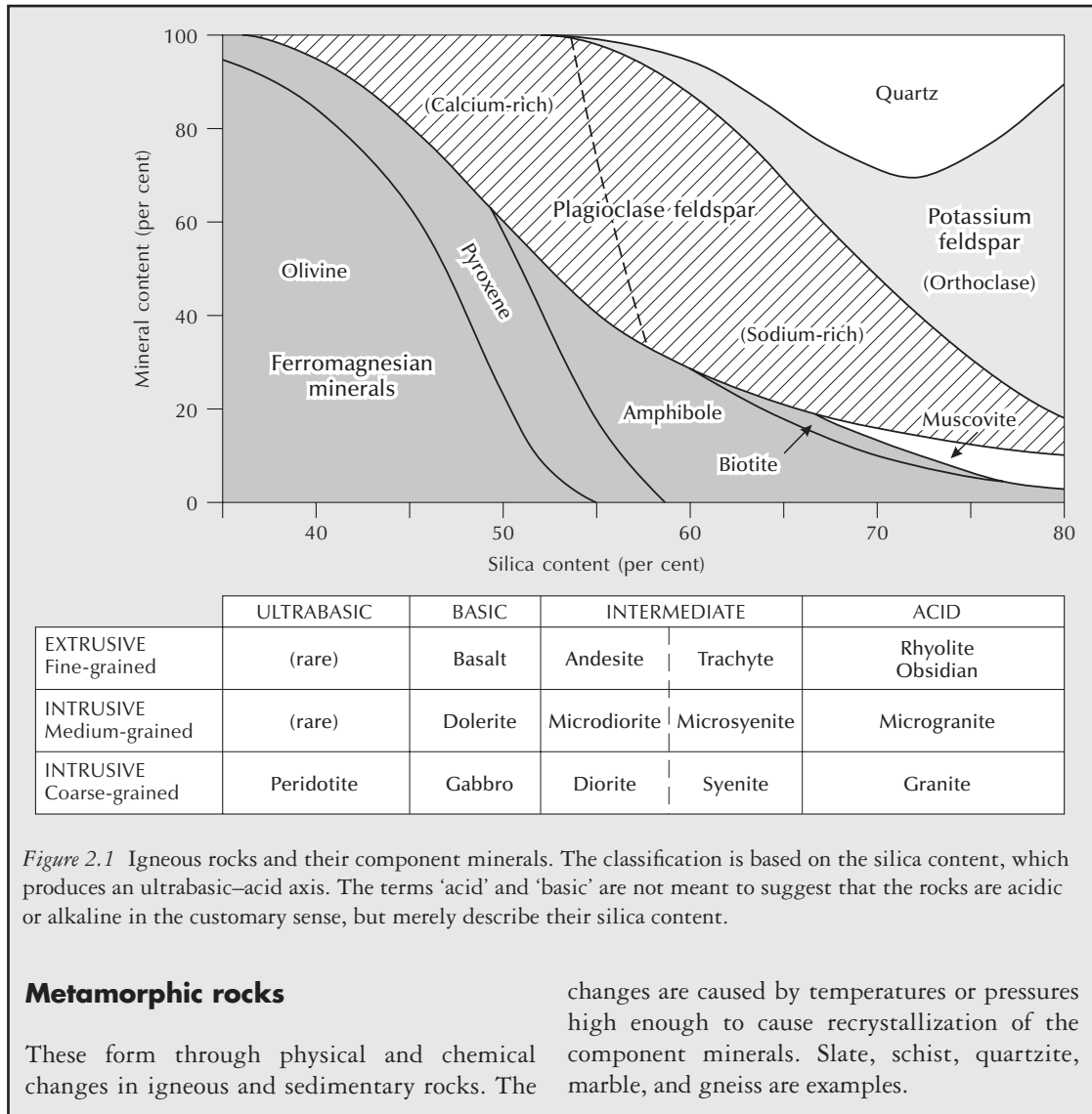
**Igneous rocks**

These form by solidification of molten rock (magma). They have varied compositions (Figure 2.1). Most igneous rocks consist of **silicate minerals**, especially those of the felsic mineral group, which consists of quartz and feldspars (potash and plagioclase). **Felsic minerals** have silicon, aluminium, potassium, calcium, and sodium as the dominant elements. Other important mineral groups are the **micas**, **amphiboles**, and **pyroxenes**. All three groups contain aluminium, magnesium, iron, and potassium or calcium as major elements. Olivine is a magnesium and iron silicate. The micas, amphiboles

(mainly hornblende), pyroxenes, and olivine constitute the **mafic minerals**, which are mostly darker in colour and denser than the felsic minerals. **Felsic rocks** include diorite, tonalite, granodiorite, rhyolite, andesite, dacite, and granite. **Mafic rocks** include gabbro and basalt. **Ultramafic rocks**, which are denser still than mafic rocks, include peridotite and serpentinite. Much of the lithosphere below the crust is made of peridotite. Eclogite is an ultramafic rock that forms deep in the crust, nodules of which are sometimes carried to the surface by volcanic action. At about 400 km below the surface, olivine undergoes a phase change (it fits into a more tightly packed crystal lattice whilst keeping the same chemical composition) to spinel, a denser silicate mineral. In turn, at about 670 km depth, spinel undergoes a phase change into perovskite, which is probably the chief mantle constituent and the most abundant mineral in the Earth.

**Sedimentary rocks**

These are layered accumulations of mineral particles that are derived mostly from weathering and erosion of pre-existing rocks. They are clastic, organic, or chemical in origin. **Clastic sedimentary rocks** are unconsolidated or indurated sediments (boulders, gravel, sand, silt, clay) derived from geomorphic processes. Conglomerate, breccia, sandstone, mudstone, claystone, and shale are examples. **Organic sedimentary rocks** and **mineral fuels** form from organic materials. Examples are coal, petroleum, and natural gas. **Chemical sedimentary rocks** form by chemical precipitation in oceans, seas, lakes, caves, and, less commonly, rivers. Limestone, dolomite, chert, tufa, and evaporites are examples.



*Figure 2.1* Igneous rocks and their component minerals. The classification is based on the silica content, which produces an ultrabasic–acid axis. The terms ‘acid’ and ‘basic’ are not meant to suggest that the rocks are acidic or alkaline in the customary sense, but merely describe their silica content.

### Metamorphic rocks

These form through physical and chemical changes in igneous and sedimentary rocks. The

changes are caused by temperatures or pressures high enough to cause recrystallization of the component minerals. Slate, schist, quartzite, marble, and gneiss are examples.

may act to fashion the marvellously multifarious array of landforms found on the Earth’s surface – the physical toposphere. Geomorphic or exogenic agents are wind, water, waves, and ice, which act from outside or above the toposphere and are contrasted to the endogenic (tectonic and volcanic) agents, which act upon the toposphere from inside the planet.

The surface phase, and particularly the land-surface phase, of the rock cycle is the domain of geomorphologists. The flux of materials across the land surface is, overall, unidirectional and is better regarded as a cascade than a cycle. The basics of the **land-surface debris cascade** are as follows. Weathering agents move into the soil and rock



along a weathering front, and in doing so fresh rock is brought into the system. Material may be added to the land surface by deposition, having been borne by wind, water, ice, or animals. All the materials in the system are subject to transformations by the complex processes of weathering. Some weathering products revert to a rock-like state by further transformations: under the right conditions, some chemicals precipitate out from solution to form hardpans and crusts. And many organisms produce

resistant organic and inorganic materials to shield or to support their bodies. The weathered mantle may remain in place or it may move downhill. It may creep, slide, slump, or flow downhill under the influence of gravity (mass movements) or it may be washed or carried downhill by moving water. It may also be eroded by the wind and taken elsewhere.

The land-surface debris cascade produces landforms. It does so partly by selectively weathering and eroding weaker rocks (Box 2.2).

### Box 2.2

#### ROCKS AND RELIEF

The ability of rocks to resist the agents of denudation depends upon such factors as particle size, hardness, porosity, permeability, the degree to which particles are cemented, and mineralogy. **Particle size** determines the surface area exposed to chemical attack: gravels and sands weather slowly compared with silts and clays. The hardness, mineralogy, and degree of rock cementation influences the rate at which weathering decomposes and disintegrates them: a siliceous sandstone is more resistant to weathering than a calcareous sandstone. **Permeability** is an important property in shaping weathering because it determines the rate at which water seeps into a rock body and dictates the internal surface area exposed to weathering (Table 2.1).

As a general rule, igneous and metamorphic rocks are resistant to weathering and erosion. They tend to form the basements of cratons, but where they are exposed at the surface or thrust through the overlying sedimentary cover by tectonic movements, they often give rise to resistant hills. English examples are the Malvern Hills in Hereford and Worcester, which have a long and narrow core of gneisses, and Charnwood Forest in the Midlands, which is formed of Precambrian volcanic and plutonic rocks. The strongest igneous and metamorphic rocks are quartzite, dolerite,

gabbro, and basalt, followed by marble, granite, and gneiss. These resistant rocks tend to form relief features in landscapes. The quartz-dolerite Whin Sill of northern England is in places a prominent topographic feature (p. 83). Basalt may cap plateaux and other sedimentary hill features. Slate is a moderately strong rock, while schist is weak.

Sedimentary rocks vary greatly in their ability to resist weathering and erosion. The weakest of them are chalk and rock salt. However, the permeability of chalk compensates for its weakness and chalk resists denudation, sometimes with the help of more resistant bands within it, to form cuestas, as in the North and South Downs of south-east England. Coal, claystone, and siltstone are weak rocks that offer little resistance to erosion and tend to form vales. An example from south-east England is the lowland developed on the thick Weald Clay. Sandstone is a moderately strong rock that may form scarps and cliffs. Whether or not it does so depends upon the nature of the sandstone and the environment in which it is found (e.g. Robinson and Williams 1994). Clay-rich or silty sandstones are often cemented weakly and the clay reduces their permeability. In temperate European environments, they weather and are eroded readily and form low relief, as is the case with the Sandgate Beds of the Lower Greensand, south-east

Table 2.1 Porosities and permeabilities of rocks and sediments

<i>Material</i>	<i>Representative porosity (per cent void space)</i>	<i>Permeability range (litres/day/m<sup>2</sup>)</i>
<i>Unconsolidated</i>		
Clay	50–60	0.0004–0.04
Silt and glacial till	20–40	0.04–400
Alluvial sands	30–40	400–400,000
Alluvial gravels	25–35	400,000–40,000,000
<i>Indurated: sedimentary</i>		
Shale	5–15	0.000004–0.004
Siltstone	5–20	0.0004–40
Sandstone	5–25	0.04–4,000
Conglomerate	5–25	0.04–4,000
Limestone	0.1–10	0.004–400
<i>Indurated: igneous and metamorphic</i>		
Volcanic (basalt)	0.001–50	0.004–40
Granite (weathered)	0.001–10	0.0004–0.4
Granite (fresh)	0.0001–1	0.000004–0.0004
Slate	0.001–1	0.000004–0.004
Schist	0.001–1	0.00004–0.04
Gneiss	0.0001–1	0.000004–0.004
Tuff	10–80	0.0004–40

Source: Adapted from Waltz (1969)

England. In arid regions, they may produce prominent cuestas. Weakly cemented sands and sandstones that contain larger amounts of quartz often form higher ground in temperate Europe, probably because their greater porosity reduces runoff and erosion. A case in point is the Folkestone Sands of south-east England, which form a low-relief feature in the northern and western margins of the Weald, though it is overshadowed by the impressive Hythe Beds cuesta. Interestingly, the Hythe Beds comprise incoherent sands over much of the Weald, but in the west and north-west they contain sandstones and chert beds, and in the north and north-east the sands are partly replaced by interbedded sandy

limestones and loosely cemented sandstones. These resistant bands produce a discontinuous cuesta that is absent in the south-eastern Weald but elsewhere rises to form splendid ramparts at Hindhead (273 m), Blackdown (280 m), and Leith Hill (294 m), which tower above the Low Weald (Jones 1981, 18). However, in general, hillslopes on the aforementioned sandstones are rarely steep and almost always covered with soil. Massive and more strongly cemented sandstones and gritstones normally form steep slopes and commonly bear steep cliffs and isolated pillars. They do so throughout the world.

Details of the influence of rocks upon relief will be discussed in Chapters 3 and 4.

## Biogeochemical cycles

The biosphere powers a global cycle of carbon, oxygen, hydrogen, nitrogen, and other mineral elements. These minerals circulate with the ecosphere and are exchanged between the ecosphere and its environment. The circulations are called **biogeochemical cycles**. The land phase of these cycles is intimately linked with water and debris movements.

## Interacting cycles

The water cycle and the rock cycle interact (Figure 2.2). John Playfair was perhaps the first person to recognize this crucial interaction in the Earth system, and he was perhaps the great-grandfather of

Earth System Science (Box 2.3). Here is how he described it in old-fashioned but most elegant language:

We have long been accustomed to admire that beautiful contrivance in Nature, by which the water of the ocean, drawn up in vapour by the atmosphere, imparts in its descent, fertility to the earth, and becomes the great cause of vegetation and of life; but now we find, that this vapour not only fertilizes, but creates the soil; prepares it from the soil rock, and, after employing it in the great operations of the surface, carries it back into the regions where all its mineral characters are renewed. Thus, the circulation of moisture through the air, is a prime mover, not only in the annual succession of seasons, but in the great geological cycle, by which the waste and reproduction of entire continents is circumscribed.

(Playfair 1802, 128)

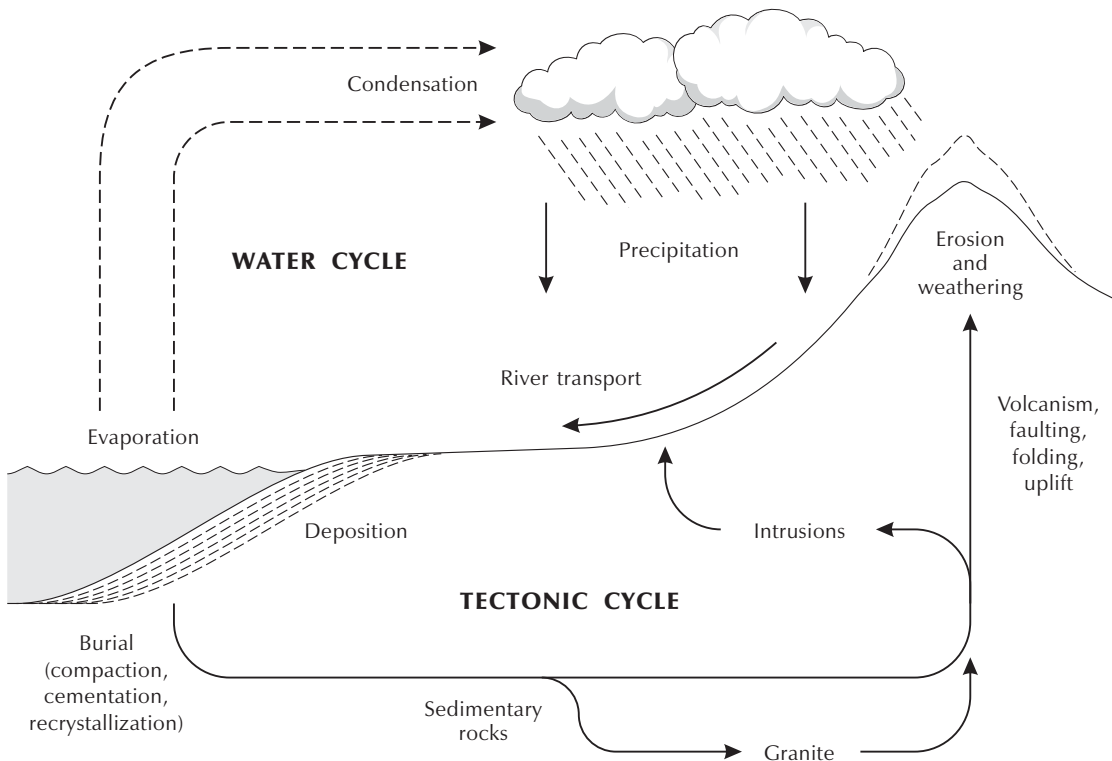


Figure 2.2 The rock cycle, the water cycle, and their interaction.

**Box 2.3**

**EARTH SYSTEM SCIENCE**

Earth system science takes the view that all the terrestrial spheres interact in a basic way: the solid Earth (lithosphere, mantle, and core), atmosphere, hydrosphere, pedosphere, and biosphere are interdependent (Figure 2.3). From a geomorphological perspective, a key suggestion of this view is that denudation processes are a major link between crustal tectonic processes and the atmosphere and

hydrosphere (Beaumont *et al.* 2000). Plate tectonic processes are driven primarily by the mantle convection, but the denudational link with the atmosphere–hydrosphere system has a large effect. In turn, the atmosphere is influenced by tectonic processes acting through the climatic effects of mountain ranges. Similarly, the Earth’s climate depends upon ocean circulation patterns, which

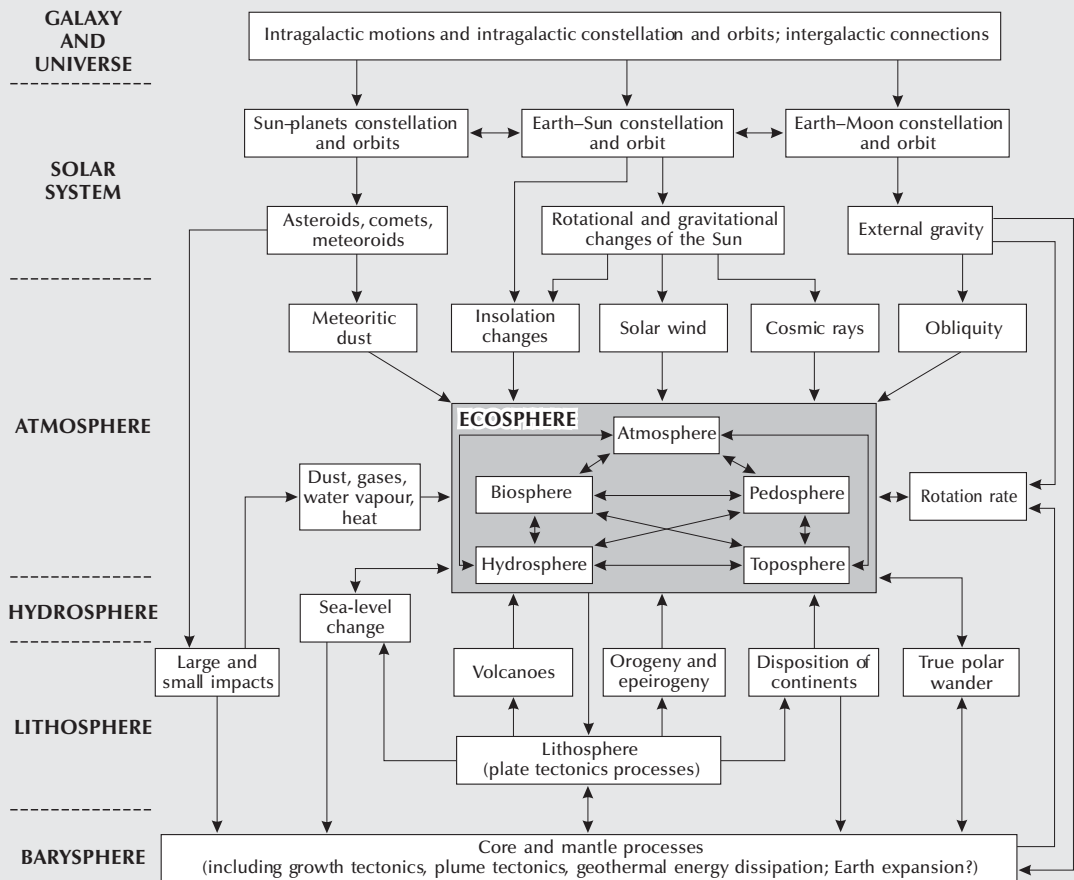


Figure 2.3 Interacting terrestrial spheres and their cosmic and geological settings.  
 Source: Adapted from Huggett (1991, 1995, 1997b)

in turn are influenced by the distribution of continents and oceans and, ultimately, upon long-term changes in mantle convection.

The denudational link works through weathering, the carbon cycle, and the unloading of crustal material. Growing mountains and plateaux influence chemical weathering rates. As mountains grow, atmospheric carbon dioxide combines with the fresh rocks during weathering and is carried to the sea. Global cooling during the Cenozoic era may have been instigated by the uplift of the Tibetan plateau (p. 35). Increase in chemical weathering associated with this uplift has caused a decrease in atmospheric carbon dioxide concen-

trations over the last 40 million years (Raymo and Ruddiman 1992; Ruddiman 1997). The interaction of continental drift, runoff, and weathering has also affected global climates during the last 570 million years (Otto-Bliesner 1995). A different effect is caused by the removal of surface material by erosion along passive margins, as in the Western Ghats in India. Unburdened by part of its surficial layers, and in conjunction with the deposition of sediment in offshore basins, the lithosphere rises by 'flexural rebound', promoting the growth of escarpments, which wear back and are separated from inland plateaux that wear down (p. 76).

## DENUDEATION

**Weathering** is the decay of rocks by biological, chemical, and mechanical agents with little or no transport. It produces a mantle of rock waste. The **weathered mantle** may stay in place, or it may move down hillslopes, down rivers, and down submarine slopes. This downslope movement is caused by gravity and by fluid forces. The term **mass wasting** is sometimes used to describe all processes that lower the ground surface. It is also used more specifically as a synonym of **mass movement**, which is the bulk transfer of bodies of rock debris down slopes under the influence of gravity. **Erosion**, which is derived from the Latin (*erodere*, to gnaw; *erosus*, eaten away), is the sum of all destructive processes by which weathering products are picked up (entrained) and carried by transporting media – ice, water, and wind. Most geomorphologists regard transport as an integral part of erosion, although it could be argued, somewhat pedantically, that erosion is simply the acquisition of material by mobile agencies and does not include transport. Water is a widespread transporting agent, ice far less so. Moving air may erode and carry sediments in all subaerial environments. It is most effective where vegetation cover is scanty or absent. Winds may carry sediments up slopes and

over large distances (see Simonson 1995). Dust-sized particles may travel around the globe. **Denudation**, which is derived from the Latin *denudare*, meaning 'to lay bare', is the conjoint action of weathering and erosion, which processes simultaneously wear away the land surface.

Water and ice in the pedosphere may be regarded as liquid and solid components of the weathered mantle. Weathered products, along with water and ice, tend to flow downhill along lines of least resistance, which typically lie at right angles to the topographic contours. The flowlines run from mountain and hill summits to sea floors. In moving down a flowline, the relative proportion of water to sediment alters. On hillslopes, there is little, if any, water to a large body of sediment. Mass movements prevail. These take place under the influence of gravity, without the aid of moving water, ice, or air. In glaciers, rivers, and seas, there is a large body of water that bears some suspended and dissolved sediment. Movement is achieved by glacial, fluvial, and marine transport.

The remainder of this section will consider the flow of rock water under the influence of gravity. Sediment movement by flowing water and ice, by the wind, and by the sea will be tackled in later chapters.

### Stress and strain

Earth materials are subject to stress and strain. A **stress** is any force that tends to move materials downslope. Gravity is the main force, but forces in a soil body are also set up by swelling and shrinking, expansion and contraction, ice-crystal growth, and the activities of animals and plants. The stress of a body of soil on a slope depends largely upon the mass of the soil body,  $m$ , and the angle of slope,  $\alpha$  (alpha):

$$\text{Stress} = m \sin \alpha$$

**Strain** is the effect of stress upon a soil body. It may be spread uniformly throughout the body, or it may focus around joints where fracture may occur. It may affect individual particles or the entire soil column.

Materials possess an inherent resistance against downslope movement. Friction is a force that acts against gravity and resists movement. It depends on the roughness of the plane between the soil and the underlying material. Downslope movement of a soil body can occur only when the applied stress is large enough to overcome the maximum frictional resistance. Friction is expressed as a coefficient,  $\mu$  (mu), which is equal to the angle at which sliding begins (called the **angle of plane sliding friction**). In addition to friction, cohesion between particles resists downslope movement. Cohesion measures the tendency of particles within the soil body to stick together. It arises through capillary suction of water in pores, compaction (which may cause small grains to interlock), chemical bonds (mainly **Van der Waals bonds**), plant root systems, and the presence of such cements as carbonates, silica, and iron oxides. Soil particles affect the mass cohesion of a soil body by tending to stick together and also by generating friction between one another, which is called the **internal friction** or **shearing resistance** and is determined by particle size, shape, and the degree to which particles touch each other. The **Mohr–Coulomb** equation defines the shear stress that a body of soil on a slope can withstand before it moves:

$$\tau_s = c + \sigma \tan \phi$$

where  $\tau_s$  (tau-s) is the **shear strength** of the soil,  $c$  is soil cohesion,  $\sigma$  (sigma) is the **normal stress** (at right-angles to the slope), and  $\phi$  (phi) is the **angle of internal friction** or **shearing resistance**. The angle  $\phi$  is not necessarily the slope angle but is the angle of internal friction within the slope mass and represents the angle of contact between the particles making up the soil or unconsolidated mass and the underlying surface. All unconsolidated materials tend to fail at angles less than the slope angle upon which they rest, loosely compacted materials failing at lower angles than compacted materials. The shear strength is modified by the pressure of water in the soil voids, that is, the **pore water pressure**,  $\xi$  (xi):

$$\tau_s = c + (\sigma - \xi) \tan \phi$$

This accounts for the common occurrence of slope failures after heavy rain, when pore water pressures are high and effective normal stresses ( $\sigma - \xi$ ) low. On 10 and 11 January 1999, a large portion of the upper part of Beachy Head, Sussex, England, collapsed (cf. p. 277). The rockfall appears to have resulted from increased pore pressures in the chalk following a wetter than normal year in 1998 and rain falling on most days in the fortnight before the fall.

The Mohr–Coulomb equation can be used to define the shear strength of a unit of rock resting on a failure plane and the susceptibility of that material to landsliding, providing the effects of fractures and joints are included. Whenever the stress applied to a soil or rock body is greater than the shear strength, the material will fail and move downslope. A scheme for defining the **intact rock strength** (the strength of rock excluding the effects of joints and fractures) has been devised. Intact strength is easily measured using a Schmidt hammer, which measures the rebound of a known impact from a rock surface. Rock mass strength may be assessed using intact rock strength and other factors (weathering, joint spacing, joint orientations, joint width, joint continuity and infill, and groundwater

outflow). Combining these factors gives a rock mass strength rating ranging from very strong, through strong, moderate, and weak, to very weak (see Selby 1980).

### Soil behaviour

Materials are classed as rigid solids, elastic solids, plastics, or fluids. Each of these classes reacts differently to stress: they each have a characteristic relationship between the rate of deformation (strain rate) and the applied stress (shear stress) (Figure 2.4). Solids and liquids are easy to define. A perfect Newtonian **fluid** starts to deform immediately a stress is applied, the strain rate increasing linearly with the shear stress at a rate determined by the viscosity. **Solids** may have any amount of stress applied and remain rigid until the strength of the material is overstepped, at which point it will either deform or fracture depending on the rate at which the stress is applied. If a bar of hard toffee is suddenly struck, it behaves as a **rigid solid** and fractures. If gentle pressure is applied to it for some time, it behaves as an **elastic solid** and deforms reversibly before fracturing. Earth materials behave elastically when small stresses are applied to them. Perfect **plastic solids** resist deformation until the shear stress reaches a threshold value called the yield limit. Once beyond the yield stress, deformation of plastic bodies is unlimited and they do not revert to

their original shape once the stress is withdrawn. **Liquids** include water and liquefied soils or sediments, that is soil and sediments that behave as fluids.

An easy way of appreciating the rheology (response to stress) of different materials is to imagine a rubber ball, a clay ball, a glob of honey, and a cubic crystal of rock salt (cf. Selby 1982, 74). When dropped from the same height on to a hard floor, the elastic ball deforms on impact but quickly recovers its shape; the plastic clay sticks to the floor as a blob; the viscous honey spreads slowly over the floor; and the brittle rock salt crystal shatters and fragments are strewn over the floor.

Soil materials can behave as solids, elastic solids, plastics, or even fluids, in accordance with how much water they contain. In soils, clay content, along with the air and water content of voids, determines the mechanical behaviour. The **shrinkage limit** defines the point below which soils preserve a constant volume upon drying and behave as a solid. The **plastic limit** is minimum moisture content at which the soil can be moulded. The **liquid limit** is the point at which, owing to a high moisture content, the soil becomes a suspension of particles in water and will flow under its own weight. The three limits separating different kinds of soil behaviour – shrinkage limit, plastic limit, and fluid limit – are known as **Atterberg limits**, after the Swedish soil scientist who first investigated

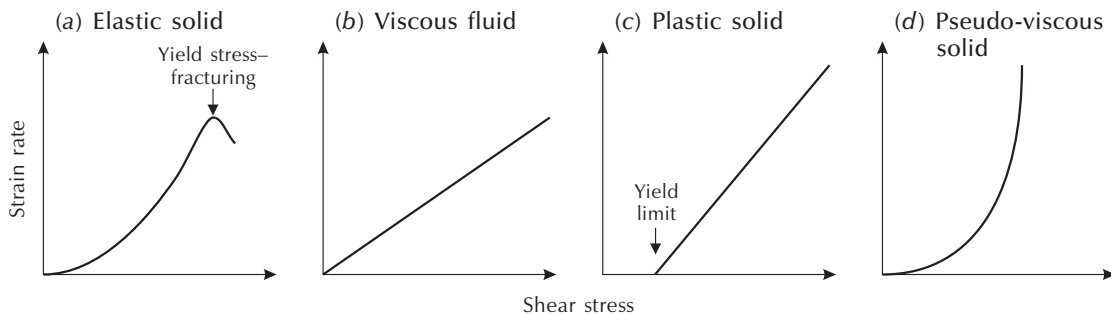


Figure 2.4 Stress–strain relationships in Earth materials. (a) Elastic solids (rocks). (b) Viscous fluids (water and fluidized sediments). (c) Plastic solids (some soil materials). (d) Pseudo-viscous solids (ice).

Source: Adapted from Leopold *et al.* (1964, 31)



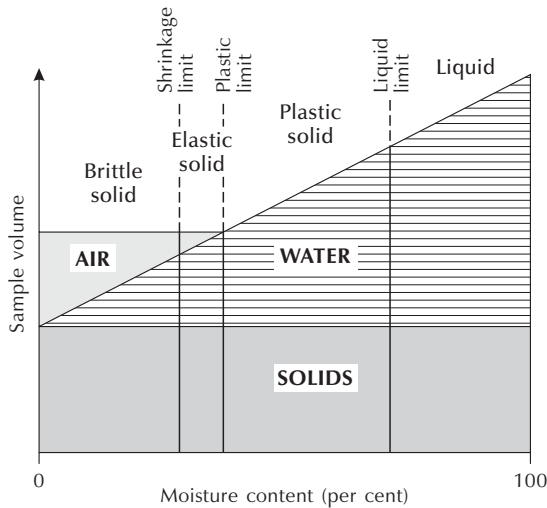


Figure 2.5 The composition of soil, ranging from air-filled pores, to water-filled pores, to a liquid. The Atterberg or soil limits are shown.

Source: Adapted from Selby (1982, 76)

them (Figure 2.5). The **plasticity index**, defined as the liquid limit minus the plastic limit, is an important indicator of potential slope instability. It shows the moisture range over which a soil will behave as a plastic. The higher the index, the less stable the slope.

Some soils, which are referred to as **quick clays** or **sensitive soils**, have a honeycomb structure that allows water content to go above the liquid limit. If such soils are subject to high shear stresses, perhaps owing to an earthquake or to burial, they may collapse suddenly, squeezing out water and turning the soil into a fluid. Quick clays are commonly associated with large and swift flows of slope materials. A saturated mass of sand may also be liquefied by a violent shaking, as given by a seismic shock.

### Mass movements

Mass movements may be classified in many ways. Table 2.2 summarizes a scheme recognizing six basic types and several subtypes, which is based upon the

chief mechanisms involved (creep, flow, slide, heave, fall, and subsidence) and the water content of the moving body (very low, low, moderate, high, very high, and extremely high):

- 1 **Rock creep** and **continuous creep** are the very slow plastic deformation of soil or rock. They result from stress applied by the weight of the soil or rock body and usually occur at depth, below the weathered mantle. They should not be confused with soil creep, which is a form of heave (see below).
- 2 **Flow** involves shear through the soil, rock, or snow and ice debris. The rate of flow is slow at the base of the flowing body and increases towards the surface. Most movement occurs as turbulent motion. Flows are classed as **avalanches** (the rapid downslope movement of earth, rock, ice, or snow), **debris flows**, **earthflows**, or **mudflows** according to the predominant materials – snow and ice, rock debris, sandy material, or clay. Dry flows may also occur; water and ice flow. **Solifluction** and **gelifluction** – the downslope movement of saturated soil, the latter over permanently frozen subsoil – are the slowest flows. A **debris flow** is a fast-moving body of sediment particles with water or air or both that often has the consistency of wet cement. Debris flows occur as a series of surges lasting from a few seconds to several hours that move at 1 to 20 m/s. They may flow several kilometres beyond their source areas (Figure 2.6a). Some are powerful enough to destroy buildings and snap off trees that lie in their paths. **Mudflows** triggered by water saturating the debris on the sides of volcanoes are called **lahars**. When Mount St Helens, USA, exploded on 18 May 1980 a huge debris avalanche mobilized a huge body of sediment into a remarkable lahar that ran 60 km from the volcano down the north and south forks of the Toutle River, damaging 300 km of road and forty-eight road bridges in the process.
- 3 **Slides** are a widespread form of mass movement. They take place along clear-cut shear planes and

Table 2.2 Mass movements and fluid movements

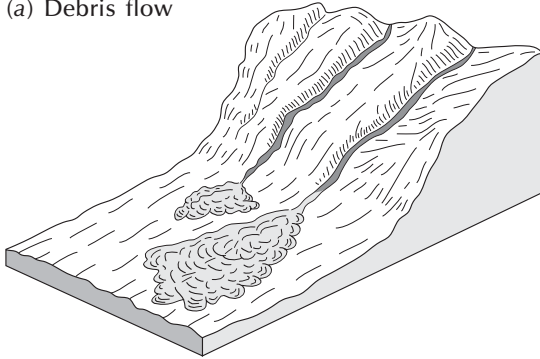
Main mechanism	Water content					
	Very low	Low	Moderate	High	Very high	Extremely high
Creep		Rock creep Continuous creep				
Flow	Dry flow	Slow earthflow Debris avalanche (struzstrom) Snow avalanche (slab avalanche) Sluff (small, loose snow avalanche)		Solifluction Gelifluction  Debris flow	Rapid earthflow Rainwash Sheet wash	Mudflow Slush avalanche  Ice flow  Rill wash  River flow Lake currents
Slide (translational)		Debris slide Earth slide Debris block slide Earth block slide Rockslide Rock block slide	Debris slide Earth slide Debris block slide Earth block slide		Rapids (in part) Ice sliding	
Slide (rotational)		Rock slump	Debris slump Earth slump			
Heave		Soil creep Talus creep				
Fall		Rockfall Debris fall (topple) Earth fall (topple)				Waterfall Ice fall
Subsidence		Cavity collapse Settlement				

Source: From Huggett (1997b, 1996), partly adapted from Varnes (1978)

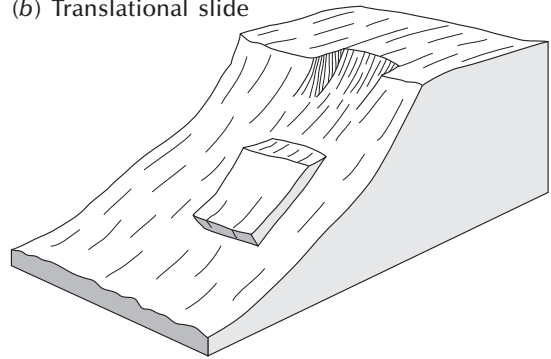
are usually ten times longer than they are wide. Two subtypes are translational slides and rotational slides. **Translational slides** occur along planar shear planes and include debris slides, earth slides, earth block slides, rock slides, and rock block slides (Figure 2.6b). **Rotational slides**, also called **slumps**, occur along concave shear planes, normally under conditions of low to moderate water content and are commonest on thick, uniform materials such as clays (Figure 2.6c; Plate 2.1). They include rock slumps, debris slumps, and earth slumps.

4 **Heave** is produced by alternating phases of expansion and contraction caused by heating and cooling, wetting and drying, and by the burrowing activities of animals. Material moves downslope during the cycles because expansion lifts material at right-angles to the slope but contraction drops it nearly vertically under the influence of gravity. Heave is classed as **soil creep** (finer material) or **talus creep** (coarser material). **Frost creep** occurs when the expansion and contraction is effectuated by freezing and thawing (p. 241). **Terracettes** frequently occur on steep,

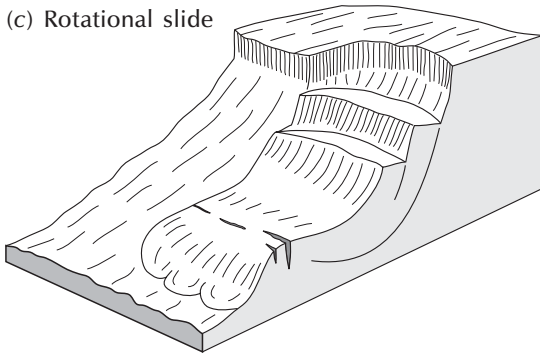
(a) Debris flow



(b) Translational slide



(c) Rotational slide



(d) Rockfall

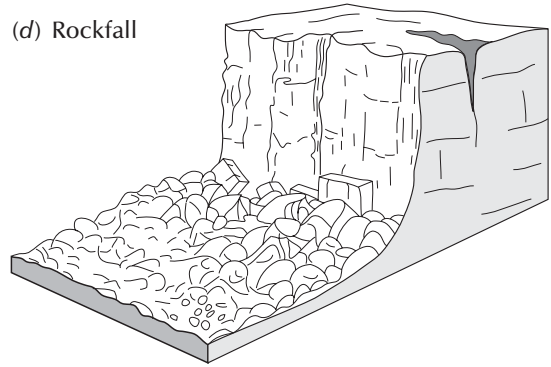


Figure 2.6 Some mass movements. (a) Flow. (b) Translational slide. (c) Rotational slide or slump. (d) Fall.



Plate 2.1 Shallow rotational landslide, Rockies foothills, Wyoming, USA.  
(Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos)

grassy slopes. They may be produced by soil creep, although shallow landslides may be an important factor in their formation.

- 5 **Fall** is the downward movement of rock, or occasionally soil, through the air. Soil may topple from cohesive soil bodies, as in river banks. **Rock-falls** are more common, especially in landscapes with steep, towering rock slopes and cliffs (Figure 2.6d). Water and ice may also fall as waterfalls and icefalls. **Debris falls** and **earth falls**, also called debris and earth **topples**, occur, for example, along river banks.
- 6 **Subsidence** occurs in two ways: cavity collapse and settlement. First, in **cavity collapse**, rock or soil plummets into underground cavities, as in karst terrain (p. 146), in lava tubes, or in mining areas. In **settlement**, the ground surface is lowered progressively by compaction, often as a result of groundwater withdrawal or earthquake vibrations.

### Gravity tectonics

Mass movements may occur on geological scales. Large rock bodies slide or spread under the influence of gravity to produce such large-scale features as **thrusts** and **nappes**. Most of the huge nappes in the European Alps and other intercontinental orogens are probably the product of massive **gravity slides**. Tectonic denudation is a term that describes the unloading of mountains by gravity sliding and spreading. The slides are slow, being only about 100 m/yr under optimal conditions (that is, over such layers as salt that offer little frictional resistance).

### DEPOSITION

Eroded material is moved by gravitational and fluid forces. Where the transporting capacity is insufficient to carry the solid sediment load, or where the chemical environment leads to the precipitation of the solute load, **deposition** of sediment occurs. Sedimentary bodies occur where deposition outpaces erosion, and where chemical precipitation exceeds

solutional loss. Three types of sediment are recognized: clastic sediments, chemical sediments, and biogenic sediments.

### Sediments

Sediments are material temporarily resting at or near the Earth's surface. Sedimentary material is derived from weathering, from volcanic activity, from the impact of cosmic bodies, and from biological processes. Nearly all sediments accumulate in neat layers that obligingly record their own history of deposition. In the fullness of Earth history, deposition has produced the geological or stratigraphic column (see Appendix). If the maximum known sedimentary thickness for each Phanerozoic period is summed, about 140,000 m of sediment results (Holmes 1965, 157).

#### Clastic sediments

**Clastic** or **detrital sediments** form through rock weathering. Weathering attacks rocks chemically and physically and so softens, weakens, and breaks them. The process releases fragments or particles of rock, which range from clay to large boulders. These particles may accumulate *in situ* to form a regolith. Once transported by a fluid medium (air, water, or ice) they become clastic sediments.

Clastic sediments are normally grouped according to their size. Loose sediments and their cemented or compacted equivalents have different names (Table 2.3). The coarsest loose fragments (2 mm or more in diameter) are called **rudaceous deposits**. They comprise gravels of various kinds – boulders, pebbles, cobbles, granules – and sometimes form distinct deposits such as glacial till. When indurated, these coarse deposits form rudaceous sedimentary rocks. Examples are conglomerate, which consists largely of rounded fragments held together by a cement, breccia, which consists largely of angular fragments cemented together, and gritstone. Loose fragments in the size range 2–0.0625 mm (the lower size limit varies a little between different systems) are sands or **arenaceous**

Table 2.3 Size grades of sedimentary particles

Particle names		Particle diameter		Deposits	
		$\phi$ (phi) units <sup>a</sup>	mm	Unconsolidated examples	Consolidated examples
Gravel <sup>b</sup>	Boulders	<-8	>256	<i>Rudaceous deposits</i>	Conglomerate, breccia, gritstone
	Cobbles	-6 to -8	64-256	Till	
	Pebbles	-2 to -6	4-64		
	Granules	-1 to -2	2-4		
Sand	Very coarse sand	0 to -1	1-2	<i>Arenaceous deposits</i>	Sandstone, arkose, greywacke, flags
	Coarse sand	1 to 0	0.5-1	Sand	
	Medium sand	2 to 1	0.25-0.5		
	Fine sand	3 to 2	0.125-0.25		
	Very fine sand	4 to 3	0.0625-0.125		
Silt		8 to 4	0.002-0.0625	<i>Argillaceous deposits</i>	
Clay		>8	<0.002	Clay, mud, silt	Siltstone, claystone, mudstone, shale, marl

**Notes:**

<sup>a</sup> The phi scale expresses the particle diameter,  $d$ , as the negative logarithm to the base 2:  $\phi = -\log_2 d$

<sup>b</sup> The subdivisions of coarse particles vary according to authorities

**deposits.** Indurated sands are known as arenaceous sedimentary rocks. They include sandstone, arkose, greywacke, and flags. Loose fragments smaller than 0.0625 mm are silts and clays and form **argillaceous deposits**. Silt is loose particles with a diameter in the range 0.0625–0.002 mm. Clay is loose and colloidal material smaller than 0.002 mm in diameter. Indurated equivalents are termed argillaceous rocks (which embrace silts and clays). Examples are claystone, siltstone, mudstone, shale, and marl. Clay-sized particles are often made of clay minerals, but they may also be made of other mineral fragments.

### Chemical sediments

The materials in chemical sediments are derived mainly from weathering, which releases mineral matter in solution and in solid form. Under suitable conditions, the soluble material is precipitated chemically. The precipitation usually takes place *in*

*situ* within soils, sediments, or water bodies (oceans, seas, lakes, and, less commonly, rivers). **Iron oxides** and **hydroxides** precipitate on the sea-floor as chamosite, a green iron silicate. On land, iron released by weathering goes into solution and, under suitable conditions, precipitates to form various minerals, including siderite, limonite (bog iron), and vivianite. **Calcium carbonate** carried in ground-water precipitates in caves and grottoes as sheets of flowstone or as stalagmites, stalactites, and columns of dripstone (p. 163). It sometimes precipitates around springs, where it encrusts plants to produce tufa or travertine (p. 153). **Evaporites** form by soluble-salt precipitation in low-lying land areas and inland seas. They include halite or rock salt (sodium chloride), gypsum (hydrated calcium sulphate), anhydrite (calcium sulphate), carnallite (hydrated chloride of potassium and magnesium), and sylvite (potassium chloride). Evaporite deposits occur where clastic additions are low and evaporation high. At present, evaporites are forming in the

Arabian Gulf, in salt flats or *sabkhas*, and around the margins of inland lakes, such as Salt Lake, Utah. Salt flat deposits are known in the geological record, but the massive evaporite accumulations, which include the Permian Zechstein Basin of northern Europe and the North Sea, may be deep-water deposits, at least in part.

Chemicals precipitated in soils and sediments often form hard layers called **duricrusts**. These occur as hard nodules or crusts, or simply as hard layers. The chief types are mentioned on p. 122.

### Biogenic sediments

Ultimately, the chemicals in **biogenic sediments** and **mineral fuels** are derived from rock, water, and air. They are incorporated into organic bodies and may accumulate after the organisms die. Limestone is a common biogenic rock. It is formed by the shells of organisms that extract calcium carbonate from seawater. **Chalk** is a fine-grained and generally friable variety of limestone. Some organisms extract a little magnesium as well as calcium to construct their shells – these produce magnesian limestones. **Dolomite** is a calcium–magnesium carbonate. Other organisms, including diatoms, radiolarians, and sponges, utilize silica. These are sources of **siliceous deposits** such as chert and flint and siliceous ooze.

The organic parts of dead organisms may accumulate to form a variety of biogenic sediments. The chief varieties are **organic muds** (consisting of finely divided plant detritus) and **peats** (called **coal** when lithified). Traditionally, organic materials are divided into sedimentary (transported) and sedentary (residual). Sedimentary organic materials are called **dy**, **gyttja**, and **alluvial peat**. **Dy** and **gyttja** are Swedish words that have no English equivalent. **Dy** is a gelatinous, acidic sediment formed in humic lakes and pools by the flocculation and precipitation of dissolved humic materials. **Gyttja** comprises several biologically produced sedimentary oozes. It is commonly subdivided into organic, calcareous, and siliceous types. Sedentary organic materials are **peats**, of which there are many types.

### Sedimentary environments

The three main sedimentary environments are **terrestrial**, **shallow marine**, and **deep marine**. Each of these is dominated by a single sedimentary process: gravity-driven flows (dry and wet) in terrestrial environments; fluid flows (tidal movements and wave-induced currents) in shallow marine environments; and suspension settling and unidirectional flow created by density currents in deep marine environments (Fraser 1989). Transition zones separate the three main sedimentary environments. The **coastal transition zone** separates the terrestrial and shallow marine environments; the **shelf-edge–upper-slope transition zone** separates the shallow and the deep marine environments.

Sediments accumulate in all terrestrial and marine environments to produce depositional landforms. As a rule, the land is a **sediment source** and the ocean is a **sediment sink**. Nonetheless, there are extensive bodies of sediments on land and many erosional features on the ocean floor. Sedimentary deposits are usually named after the processes responsible for creating them. Wind produces **aeolian deposits**, rain and rivers produce **fluvial deposits**, lakes produce **lacustrine deposits**, ice produces **glacial deposits**, and the sea produces **marine deposits**. Some deposits have mixed provenance, as in **glaciofluvial deposits** and **glaciomarine deposits**.

On land, the most pervasive ‘sedimentary body’ is the **weathered mantle** or **regolith**. The thickness of the regolith depends upon the rate at which the weathering front advances into fresh bedrock and the net rate of erosional loss (the difference between sediment carried in and sediment carried out by water and wind). At sites where thick bodies of terrestrial sediments accumulate, as in some alluvial plains, the materials would normally be called sediments rather than regolith. But regolith and thick sedimentary bodies are both the products of geomorphic processes. They are thus distinct from the underlying bedrock, which is a production of lithospheric processes.

Unconsolidated weathered material in the regolith is transported by gravity, water, and wind across



hillslopes and down river valleys. Local accumulations form stores of sediment. Sediment stored on slopes is called **talus**, **colluvium**, and **talluvium**. Talus is made of large rock fragments, colluvium of finer material, and talluvium of a fine and coarse material mix. Sediment stored in valleys is called **alluvium**. It occurs in alluvial fans and in floodplains. All these slope and valley stores, except for talus, are fluvial deposits (transported by flowing water).

## DENUATION AND CLIMATE

Measurements of the amount of sediment annually carried down the Mississippi River were made during the 1840s, and the rates of modern denudation in some of the world's major rivers were worked out by Archibald Geikie in the 1860s. Measurements of the dissolved load of rivers enabled estimates of chemical denudation rates to be made in the first few decades of the twentieth century. Not until after the 'quantitative revolution' in geomorphology, which started in the 1940s, were rates of geomorphic processes measured in different

environments and a global picture of denudation rates pieced together.

## Mechanical denudation

### Measuring denudation rates

Overall rates of **denudation** are judged from the dissolved and suspended loads of rivers, from reservoir sedimentation, and from the rates of geological sedimentation. Figure 2.7a depicts the pattern of sediment yield from the world's major drainage basins, and Figure 2.7b displays the annual discharge of sediment from the world's major rivers to the sea. It should be emphasized that these figures do not measure the total rate of soil erosion, since much sediment is eroded from upland areas and deposited on lowlands where it remains in store, so delaying for a long time its arrival at the sea (Milliman and Meade 1983). Table 2.4 shows the breakdown of chemical and mechanical denudation by continent.

Table 2.4 Chemical and mechanical denudation of the continents

Continent	Chemical denudation <sup>a</sup>		Mechanical denudation <sup>b</sup>		Ratio of mechanical to chemical denudation	Specific discharge (t/s/km <sup>2</sup> )
	Drainage area (10 <sup>6</sup> km <sup>2</sup> )	Solute yield (t/km <sup>2</sup> /yr)	Drainage area (10 <sup>6</sup> km <sup>2</sup> )	Solute yield (t/km <sup>2</sup> /yr)		
Africa	17.55	9.12	15.34	35	3.84	6.1
North America	21.5	33.44	17.50 <sup>c</sup>	84	2.51	8.1
South America	16.4	29.76	17.90	97	3.26	21.2
Asia	31.46	46.22	16.88	380	8.22	12.5
Europe	8.3	49.16	15.78 <sup>d</sup>	58	1.18	9.7
Oceania	4.7	54.04	5.20	1,028 <sup>e</sup>	19.02	16.1

*Notes:*

<sup>a</sup> Data from Meybeck (1979, annex 3)

<sup>b</sup> Data from Milliman and Meade (1983, Table 4)

<sup>c</sup> Includes Central America

<sup>d</sup> Milliman and Meade separate Europe (4.61 × 10<sup>6</sup> km<sup>2</sup>) and Eurasian Arctic (11.17 × 10<sup>6</sup> km<sup>2</sup>)

<sup>e</sup> The sediment yield for Australia is a mere 28 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr, whereas the yield for large Pacific islands is 1,028 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr

Source: After Huggett (1991, 87)



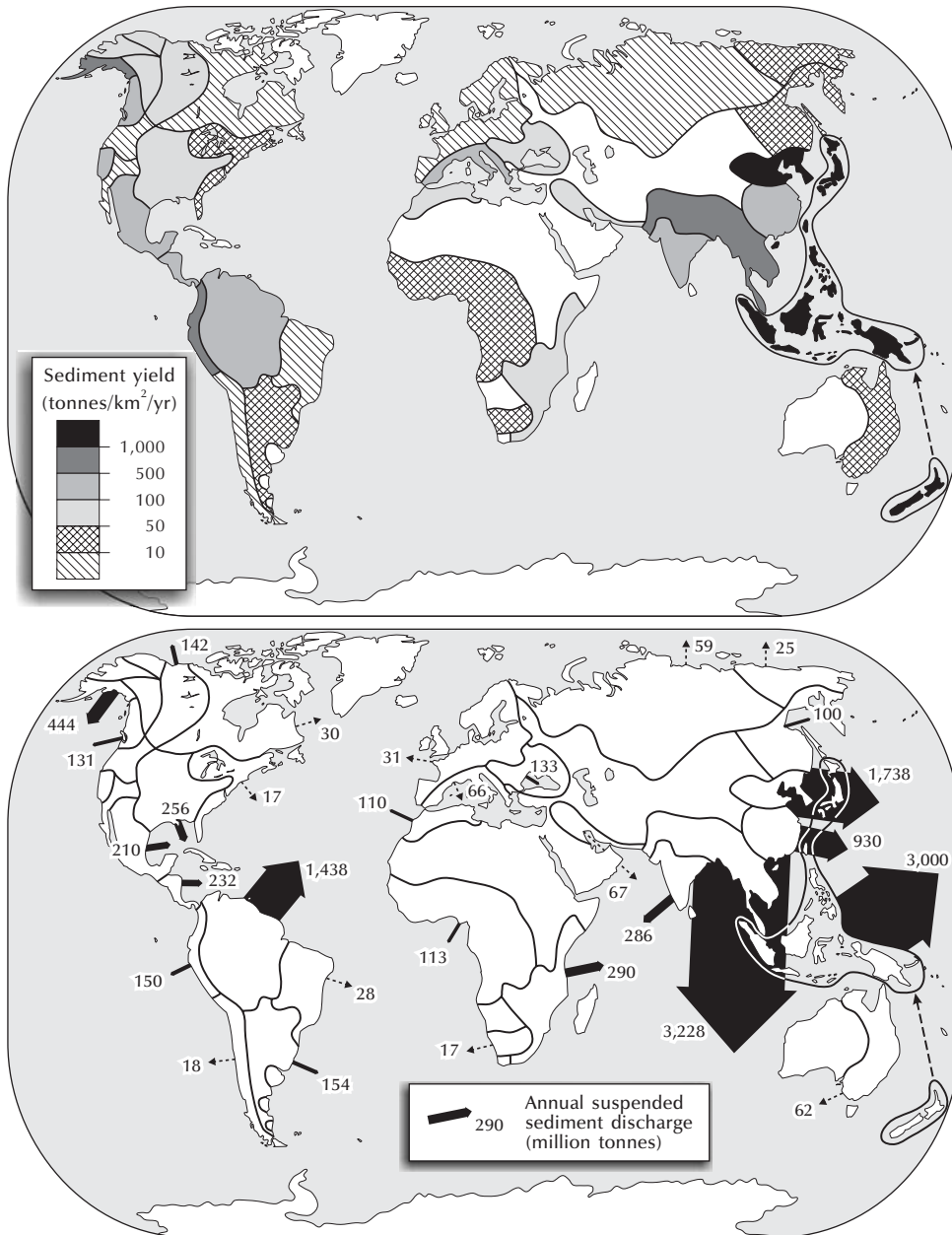


Figure 2.7 (a) Sediment yield of the world's chief drainage basins. Blank spaces indicate essentially no discharge to the ocean. (b) Annual discharge of suspended sediment from large drainage basins of the world. The width of the arrows corresponds to relative discharge. Numbers refer to average annual input in millions of tonnes. The direction of the arrows does not indicate the direction of sediment movement.

Source: Adapted from Milliman and Meade (1983)

### Factors controlling denudation rates

The controls on mechanical denudation are so complex and the data so sketchy that it is challenging to attempt to assess the comparative roles of the variables involved. Undaunted, some researchers have tried to make sense of the available data (e.g. Fournier 1960; Strakhov 1967). Frédéric Fournier (1960), using sediment data from seventy-eight drainage basins, correlated suspended **sediment yield** with a climatic parameter,  $p^2/P$ , where  $p$  is the rainfall of the month with the highest rainfall and  $P$  is the mean annual rainfall. Although, as might be expected, sediment yields increased as rainfall increased, a better degree of explanation was found when basins were grouped into relief classes. Fournier fitted an empirical equation to the data:

$$\log E = -1.56 + 2.65 \log(p^2/P + 0.46 \log \bar{H} \tan \theta)$$

where  $E$  is suspended sediment yield ( $t/km^2/yr$ ),  $p^2/P$  is the climatic factor (mm),  $\bar{H}$  is mean height of a drainage basin, and  $\tan \theta$  (theta) is the tangent of the mean slope of a drainage basin. Applying this equation, Fournier mapped the distribution of world mechanical erosion. His map portrayed maximum rates in the seasonally humid tropics, declining in equatorial regions where there is no seasonal effect, and also declining in arid regions, where total runoff is low.

John D. Milliman (1980) identified several natural factors that appear to control the suspended sediment load of rivers: drainage basin relief, drainage basin area, specific discharge, drainage basin geology, climate, and the presence of lakes. The climatic factor influences suspended sediment load through mean annual temperature, total rainfall, and the seasonality of rainfall. Heavy rainfall tends to generate high runoff, but heavy seasonal rainfall, as in the monsoon climate of southern Asia, is very efficacious in producing a big load of suspended sediment. On the other hand, in areas of high, year-round rainfall, such as the Congo basin, sediment loads are not necessarily high. In arid regions, low rainfall produces little river discharge and low sediment yields, but, owing to

the lack of water, suspended sediment concentrations may still be high. This is the case for many Australian rivers. The greatest suspended sediment yields come from mountainous tropical islands, areas with active glaciers, mountainous areas near coasts, and areas draining loess soils: they are not determined directly by climate (Berner and Berner 1987, 183). As one might expect, sediments deposited on inner continental shelves reflect climatic differences in source basins: mud is most abundant off areas with high temperature and high rainfall; sand is everywhere abundant but especially so in areas of moderate temperature and rainfall and in all arid areas save those with extremely cold climates; gravel is most common off areas with low temperature; and rock is most common off cold areas (Hayes 1967).

Large amounts of quartz, in association with high ratios of silica to alumina, in river sediments indicate intense tropical weathering regimes. Work carried out on the chemistry of river sediments has revealed patterns attributable to differing weathering regimes in (1) the tropical zone and (2) the temperate and frigid zones. River sands with high quartz and high silica-to-alumina ratios occur mainly in tropical river basins of low relief, where weathering is intense enough (or has proceeded uninterrupted long enough) to eliminate any differences arising from rock type, while river sands with low quartz content but high silica-to-alumina ratios occur chiefly in the basins located in temperate and frigid regions (Potter 1978). A basic distinction between tropical regions, with intense weathering regimes, and temperate and frigid regions, with less intense weathering regimes, is also brought out by the composition of the particulate load of rivers (Martin and Meybeck 1979). The tropical rivers studied had high concentrations of iron and aluminium relative to soluble elements because their particulate load was derived from soils in which soluble material had been thoroughly leached. The temperate and arctic rivers studied had lower concentrations of iron and aluminium in suspended matter relative to soluble elements because a smaller fraction of the soluble constituents

had been removed. This broad pattern will almost certainly be distorted by the effects of relief and rock type. Indeed, the particulate load (p. 177) data include exceptions to the rule: some of their tropical rivers have high calcium concentrations, probably owing to the occurrence of limestone within the basin. Moreover, in explaining the generally low concentrations of calcium in sediments of tropical rivers, it should be borne in mind that carbonate rocks are more abundant in the temperate zone than in the tropical zone (cf. Figure 6.2).

### Climate and slope process rates

Extensive field measurements since about 1960 show that slope processes appear to vary considerably with climate (Young 1974; Saunders and Young 1983; Young and Saunders 1986). **Soil creep** in temperate maritime climates shifts about 0.5 to 2.0 mm/year of material in the upper 20 to 25 cm of regolith; in temperate continental climates rates run in places a little higher at 2 to 15 mm/year, probably owing to more severe freezing of the ground in winter. Generalizations about the rates of soil creep in other climatic zones are as yet unforthcoming owing to the paucity of data. In mediterranean, semi-arid, and savannah climates, creep is probably far less important than surface wash as a denuder of the landscape and probably contributes significantly to slope retreat only where soils are wet, as in substantially curved convexities or in seepage zones. Such studies as have been made in tropical sites indicate a rate of around 4 to 5 mm/year. **Solifluction**, which includes frost creep caused by heaving and gelifluction, occurs 10 to 100 times more rapidly than soil creep and affects material down to about 50 cm, typical rates falling within the range 10 to 100 mm/year. Wet conditions and silty soils favour solifluction: clays are too cohesive and sands drain too readily. Solifluction is highly seasonal, most of it occurring during the summer months. The rate of **surface wash**, which comprises rainsplash and surface flow, is determined very much by the degree of vegetation cover, and its relation to climate is not clear. The range is 0.002

to 0.2 mm/year. It is an especially important denudational agent in semi-arid and (probably) arid environments, and makes a significant contribution to denudation in tropical rain forests. **Solution** (chemical denudation) probably removes as much material from slopes as all other processes combined. Rates are not so well documented as for other slope processes but typical values, expressed as surface lowering rates, are as follows: in temperate climates on siliceous rocks, 2 to 100 mm/millennium, and on limestones, 2 to 500 mm/millennium. In other climates data are fragmentary, but often fall in the range 2 to 20 mm/millennium and show little clear relationship with temperature or rainfall. On slopes where **landslides** are active, the removal rates are very high irrespective of climate, running at between 500 and 5,000 mm/millennium.

Overall rates of denudation do show a relationship with climate, providing infrequent but extreme values are ignored and a correction is made for the effects of relief (Table 2.5). Valley glaciation is substantially faster than normal erosion in any climate, though not necessarily so erosion by ice sheets. The wide spread of denudation rates in polar and montane environments may reflect the large range of rainfall encountered. The lowest minimum and, possibly, the lowest maximum rates of denudation occur in humid temperate climates, where creep rates are slow, wash is very slow due to the dense cover of vegetation, and solution is fairly slow because of the low temperatures. Other conditions being the same, the rate of denudation in temperate continental climates is somewhat brisker. Semi-arid, savannah, and tropical landscapes all appear to denude fairly rapidly. Clearly, further long-term studies of denudational processes in all climatic zones are needed to obtain a clearer picture of the global pattern of denudation.

### Chemical denudation

The controls on the rates of chemical denudation are perhaps easier to ascertain than the controls on the rates of mechanical denudation. Reliable estimates of the loss of material from continents in solution

Table 2.5 Rates of denudation in climatic zones

Climate	Relief	Typical range for denudation rate (mm/millennium)	
		Minimum	Maximum
Glacial	Normal (= ice sheets)	50	200
	Steep (= valley glaciers)	1,000	5,000
Polar and montane	Mostly steep	10	1,000
Temperate maritime	Mostly normal	5	100
Temperate continental	Normal	10	100
	Steep	100	200 +
Mediterranean	—	10	?
Semi-arid	Normal	100	1,000
Arid	—	10	?
Subtropical	—	10?	1,000?
Savannah	—	100	500
Tropical rain forest	Normal	10	100
	Steep	100	1,000
Any climate	Badlands	1,000	1,000,000

Source: Adapted from Saunders and Young (1983)

have been available for several decades (e.g. Livingstone 1963), though more recent estimates overcome some of the deficiencies in the older data sets. It is clear from the data in Table 2.4 that the amount of material removed in solution from continents is not directly related to the average specific discharge (discharge per unit area). South America has the highest specific discharge but the second-lowest chemical denudation rate. Europe has a relatively low specific discharge but the second-highest chemical denudation rate. On the other hand, Africa has the lowest specific discharge and the lowest chemical denudation rate. In short, the continents show differences in resistance to being worn away that cannot be accounted for merely in terms of climatic differences.

The primary controls on chemical denudation of the continents can be elicited from data on the chemical composition of the world's major rivers (Table 2.6). The differences in solute composition of river water between continents result partly from differences of **relief** and **lithology**, and partly from **climatic differences**. Waters draining off the continents are dominated by calcium ions and

bicarbonate ions. These chemical species account for the dilute waters of South America and the more concentrated waters of Europe. Dissolved silica and chlorine concentrations show no consistent relationship with total dissolved solids. The reciprocal relation between calcium ion concentrations and dissolved silica concentrations suggests a degree of control by rock type: Europe and North America are underlain chiefly by sedimentary rocks, whereas Africa and South America are underlain mainly by crystalline rocks. However, because the continents are for the most part formed of a heterogeneous mixture of rocks, it would be unwise to read too much into these figures and to overplay this interpretation.

The natural chemical composition of river water is affected by many factors: the amount and nature of rainfall and evaporation, drainage basin geology and weathering history, average temperature, relief, and biota (Berner and Berner 1987, 1993). According to Ronald J. Gibbs (1970, 1973), who plotted total dissolved solids of some major rivers against the content of calcium plus sodium, there are three chief types of surface waters:

Table 2.6 Average composition of river waters by continents<sup>a</sup> (mg/l)

Continent	SiO <sub>2</sub>	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	Mg <sup>2+</sup>	Na <sup>+</sup>	K <sup>+</sup>	Cl <sup>-</sup>	SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	Σi <sup>b</sup>
Africa	12.0	5.25	2.15	3.8	1.4	3.35	3.15	26.7	45.8
North America	7.2	20.1	4.9	6.45	1.5	7.0	14.9	71.4	126.3
South America	10.3	6.3	1.4	3.3	1.0	4.1	3.5	24.4	44.0
Asia	11.0	16.6	4.3	6.6	1.55	7.6	9.7	66.2	112.5
Europe	6.8	24.2	5.2	3.15	1.05	4.65	15.1	80.1	133.5
Oceania	16.3	15.0	3.8	7.0	1.05	5.9	6.5	65.1	104.5
World	10.4	13.4	3.35	5.15	1.3	5.75	8.25	52	89.2

*Notes:*<sup>a</sup> The concentrations are exoreic runoff with human inputs deducted<sup>b</sup> Σi is the sum of the other materials

Source: Adapted from Meybeck (1979)

- 1 Waters with low total dissolved solid loads (about 10 mg/l) but large loads of dissolved calcium and sodium, such as the Matari and Negro Rivers, which depend very much on the amount and composition of precipitation.
- 2 Waters with intermediate total dissolved solid loads (about 100–1,000 mg/l) but low to medium loads of dissolved calcium and sodium, such as the Nile and Danube Rivers, which are influenced strongly by the weathering of rocks.
- 3 Waters with high total dissolved solid loads (about 10,000 mg/l) and high loads of dissolved calcium and sodium, which are determined primarily by evaporation and fractional crystallization and which are exemplified by the Rio Grande and Pecos River.

lithology, and climate (Meybeck 1987). Chemical transport, measured as the sum of major ions plus dissolved silica, increases with increasing specific runoff but the load for a given runoff depends on underlying rock type (Figure 2.8a). Individual solutes show a similar pattern. Dissolved silica is interesting because, though the rate of increase with increasing specific discharge is roughly the same in all climates, the actual amount of dissolved silica increases with increasing temperature (Figure 2.8b). This situation suggests that, although lithology, distance to the ocean, and climate all affect solute concentration in rivers, transport rates, especially in the major rivers, depend first and foremost on specific river runoff (itself related to climatic factors) and then on lithology.

This classification has been the subject of much debate (see Berner and Berner 1987, 197–205), but it seems undeniable that climate does have a role in determining the composition of river water, a fact borne out by the origin of solutes entering the oceans. Chemical erosion is greatest in mountainous regions of humid temperate and tropical zones. Consequently, most of the dissolved ionic load going into the oceans originates from mountainous areas, while 74 per cent of silica comes from the tropical zone alone.

Further work has clarified the association between chemical weathering, mechanical weathering,

### Regional and global patterns of denudation

Enormous variations in sediment and solute loads of rivers occur within particular regions owing to the local effects of rock type, vegetation cover, and so forth. Attempts to account for regional variations of denudation have met with more success than attempts to explain global patterns, largely because coverage of measuring stations is better and it is easier to take factors other than climate into consideration. Positive correlations between suspended sediment yields and mean annual rainfall and mean

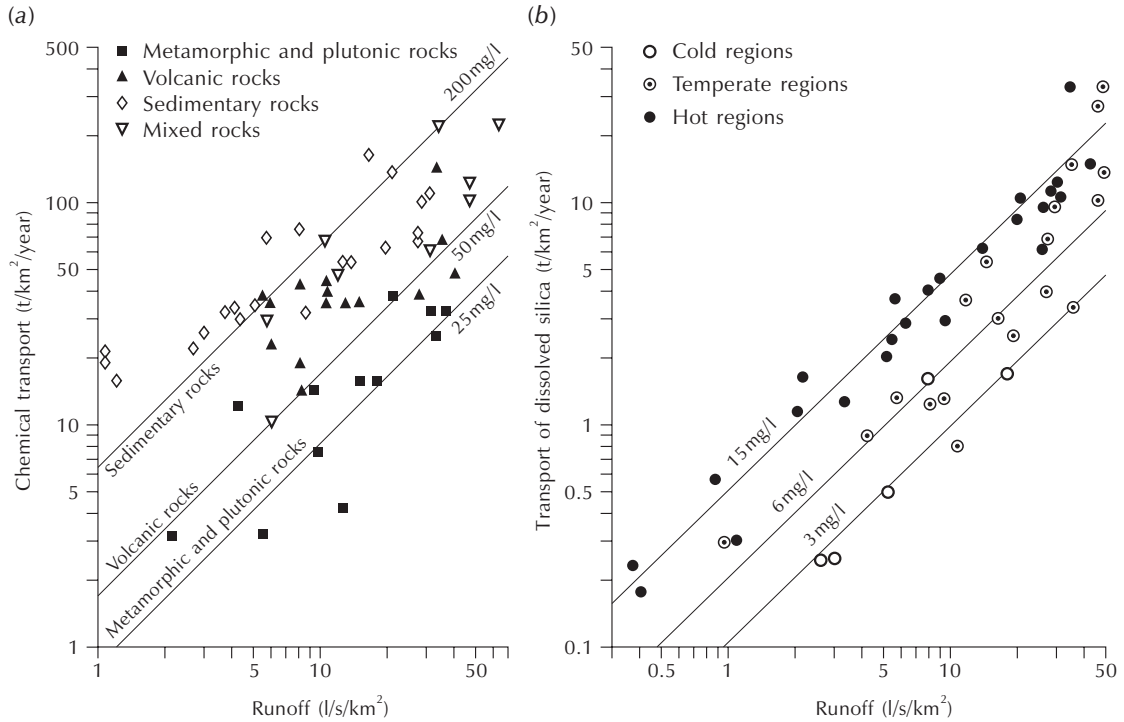


Figure 2.8 Dissolved loads in relation to runoff. (a) Chemical transport of all major ions plus dissolved silica versus runoff (specific discharge) for various major drainage basins underlain by sedimentary, volcanic, and metamorphic and plutonic rocks. (b) Evolution of the specific transport of dissolved silica for cold, temperate, and hot regions. Source: Adapted from Meybeck (1987)

annual runoff have been established for drainage basins in all parts of the world, and simply demonstrate the fact that the more water that enters the system, the greater the erosivity. Like suspended sediment loads, solute loads exhibit striking local variations about the global trend. The effects of rock type in particular become far more pronounced in smaller regions. For example, dissolved loads in Great Britain range from 10 to more than 200 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr, and the national pattern is influenced far more by lithology than by the amount of annual runoff (Walling and Webb 1986). Very high solute loads are associated with outcrops of soluble rocks. An exceedingly high solute load of 6,000 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr has been recorded in the River Cana, which drains an area of halite deposits in Amazonia; and a load of

750 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr has been measured in an area draining karst terrain in Papua New Guinea.

All the general and detailed summaries of global and regional sediment yield (e.g. Fournier 1960; Jansson 1988; Milliman and Meade 1983; Summerfield and Hulton 1994) split into two camps of opinion concerning the chief determinants of erosion at large scales. Camp one sees relief as the prime factor influencing denudation rates, with climate playing a secondary role. Camp two casts climate in the leading role and relegates relief to a supporting part. Everybody seems to agree that either relief or climate, as measured by surrogates of rainfall erosivity, is the major control of erosion rates on a global scale. The problem is deciding on the relative contribution made by each factor. Jonathan



D. Phillips (1990) set about the task of solving this problem by considering three questions: (1) whether indeed relief and climate are major determinants of soil loss; (2) if so, whether relief or climate is the more important determinant at the global scale; and (3) whether other factors known to influence soil loss at a local scale have a significant effect at the global scale. Phillips's results showed that slope gradient (the relief factor) is the main determinant of soil loss, explaining about 70 per cent of the maximum expected variation within global erosion rates. Climate, measured as rainfall erosivity, was less important but with relief (slope gradient) and a runoff factor accounted for 99 per cent of the maximum expected variation. The importance of a runoff factor, represented by a variable describing retention of precipitation (which is independent of climatic influences on runoff) was surprising. It was more important than the precipitation factors. Given Phillips's findings, it may pay to probe more carefully the fact that the variation in sediment yield within climatic zones is greater than the variation between climatic zones (Jansson 1988). At local scales, the influence of vegetation cover may play a critical role in dictating soil erosion rates (e.g. Thornes 1990).

Niels Hovius (1998) collated data on fourteen climatic and topographic variables used in previous studies for ninety-seven major catchments around the world. He found that none of the variables correlated well with sediment yield, which suggests that no single variable is an overriding determinant of sediment yield. However, sediment yield was successfully predicted by a combination of variables in a multiple regression equation. A five-term model explained 49 per cent of the variation in sediment yield:

$$\ln E = 3.585 - 0.416 \ln A + 4.26 \times 10^{-4} H_{max} + 0.150T + 0.095T_{range} + 0.0015R$$

where  $E$  is specific sediment yield ( $t/km^2/yr$ ),  $A$  is drainage area ( $km^2$ ),  $H_{max}$  is the maximum elevation of the catchment (m),  $T$  is the mean annual temperature ( $^{\circ}C$ ),  $T_{range}$  is the annual temperature

range ( $^{\circ}C$ ), and  $R$  is the specific runoff ( $mm/yr$ ). Of course, 51 per cent of the variation in sediment yield remains unexplained by the five-term model. One factor that might explain some of this unaccounted variation is the supply of erodible material, which, in geological terms, is largely determined by the uplift of rocks. Inputs of new matter by uplift should explain additional variation beyond that explained by the erosivity of materials.

A global survey of chemical and physical erosion data drew several interesting conclusions about the comparative roles of tectonics, the environment, and humans in explain regional variations (Stallard 1995). Four chief points emerged from this study. First, in tectonically active mountain belts, dissolved loads are dominated by carbonate and evaporite weathering and solid loads are dominated by the erosion of poorly lithified sediment. In such regions, human activities may increase physical erosion by orders of magnitude for short periods. About 1,000 m of uplift every million years is needed to sustain the observed chemical and physical erosion rates. Second, in old mountain belts, physical erosion is lower than in young mountain belts of comparable relief, perhaps because the weakest rocks have been stripped by earlier erosion. Third, on shields, chemical and physical erosion are very slow because weak rocks are little exposed owing to former erosion. And, finally, a basic distinction may be drawn between areas where soil development and sediment storage occur (terrains where erosion is limited by transport capacity) and areas of rapid erosion (terrains where erosion is limited by the production of fresh sediment by weathering).

## HUMANS AND DENUDATION

Humans affect, and are affected by, many sections of the land-surface debris cascade. Of all the issues that could be discussed at this point, three will serve to show how humans are affected by mass movements, how they affect soil erosion, and how they move materials from one place to another,



changing the configuration of the land surface in the process.

### Mass movements as a hazard

Any geomorphic process of sufficient magnitude that occurs suddenly and without warning is a danger to humans. Landslides, debris flows, rock-falls, and many other mass movements take their toll on human life. Most textbooks on geomorphology catalogue such disasters. A typical case is the Mount Huascarán debris avalanches.

At 6,768 m, **Mount Huascarán** is Peru's highest mountain. Its peaks are snow and ice covered. In 1962, some 2,000,000 m<sup>3</sup> of ice avalanched from the mountain slopes and mixed with mud and water. The resulting debris avalanche, estimated to have a volume of 10,000,000 m<sup>3</sup>, rushed down the Rio Shacsha valley at 100 km/hr carrying boulders weighing up to 2,000 tonnes. It killed 4,000 people, mainly in the town of Ranrahirca. Eight years later, on 31 May 1970, an earthquake of about magnitude 7.7 on the Richter scale, whose epicentre lay 30 km off the Peruvian coast where the Nazca plate is being subducted, released another massive debris avalanche that started as a sliding mass about a kilometre wide and 1.5 km long. The avalanche swept about 18 km to the village of Yungay at up to 320 km/hr, picking up glacial deposits *en route* where it crossed a glacial moraine. It bore boulders the size of houses. By the time it reached Yungay, it had picked up enough fine sediment and water to become a mudflow consisting of 50–100 million tonnes of water, mud, and rocks with a 1-km wide front. Yungay and Ranrahirca were buried. Some 1,800 people died in Yungay and 17,000 in Ranrahirca.

### Soil erosion

Soil erosion has become a global issue because of its environmental consequences, including pollution and sedimentation. Major pollution problems may occur from relatively moderate and frequent erosion events in both temperate and tropical climates. The

control and prevention of erosion are needed in almost every country of the world under almost all land-cover types. Prevention of soil erosion means reducing the rate of soil loss to approximately the rate that would exist under natural conditions. It is crucially important and depends upon the implementation of suitable soil conservation strategies (Morgan 1995). **Soil conservation strategies** demand a thorough understanding of the processes of erosion and the ability to provide predictions of soil loss, which is where geomorphologists have a key role to play. Factors affecting the rate of soil erosion include rainfall, runoff, wind, soil, slope, land cover, and the presence or absence of conservation strategies.

Soil erosion is an area where geomorphological modelling has had a degree of success. One of the first and widely used empirical models was the **Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE)** (Box 2.4). The USLE has been widely used, especially in the USA, for predicting sheet and rill erosion in national assessments of soil erosion. However, empirical models predict soil erosion on a single slope according to statistical relationships between important factors and are rather approximate. Models based on the physics of soil erosion were developed during the 1980s to provide better results. Two types of physically based model have evolved – lumped models and distributed models (see Huggett and Cheesman 2002, 156–9). **Lumped models** are non-spatial, predicting the overall or average response of a watershed. **Distributed models** are spatial, which means that they predict the spatial distribution of runoff and sediment movement over the land surface during individual storm events, as well as predicting total runoff and soil loss (Table 2.7). Many physically based soil-erosion models have benefited from GIS technology.

### Humans as geomorphic agents

Humans transfer materials from the natural environment to the urban and industrial built environment. The role of human activity in geomorphic processes

Table 2.7 Examples of physically based soil-erosion models

Model	Use	References
<i>Lumped or non-spatial models</i>		
CREAMS (Chemicals, Runoff and Erosion from Agricultural Management Systems)	Field-scale model for assessing non-point-source pollution and the effects of different agricultural practices	Knisel (1980)
WEPP (Water Erosion Prediction Project)	Designed to replace ULSE in routine assessments of soil erosion	Nearing <i>et al.</i> (1989)
EUROSEM (European Soil Erosion Model)	Predicts transport, erosion, and deposition of sediment throughout a storm event	Morgan (1994)
<i>Distributed or spatial models</i>		
ANSWERS (Areal Nonpoint Source Watershed Environment Response Simulation)	Models surface runoff and soil erosion within a catchment	Beasley <i>et al.</i> (1980)
LISEM (Limburg Soil Erosion Model)	Hydrological and soil erosion model, incorporating raster GIS, that may be used for planning and conservation purposes	De Roo <i>et al.</i> (1996)

**Box 2.4****THE UNIVERSAL SOIL LOSS EQUATION (USLE)**

The USLE (Wischmeier and Smith 1978) predicts soil loss from information about (1) the potential erosivity of rainfall and (2) the erodibility of the soil surface. The equation is usually written as:

$$E = R \times K \times L \times S \times C \times P$$

where  $E$  is the mean annual rainfall loss,  $R$  is the rainfall erosivity factor,  $K$  is the soil erodibility factor,  $L$  is the slope length factor,  $S$  is the slope steepness factor,  $C$  is the crop management factor, and  $P$  is the erosion control practice factor. The **rainfall erosivity factor** is often expressed as a rainfall erosion index,  $EI_{30}$ , where  $E$  is rainstorm energy and  $I$  is rainfall intensity during a specified period, usually 30 minutes. **Soil erodibility**,  $K$ , is defined as the erosion rate (per unit of erosion index,  $EI_{30}$ ) on a specific soil in a cultivated continuous fallow on a 9 per cent slope on a plot

22.6 m long. **Slope length**,  $L$ , and **slope steepness**,  $S$ , are commonly combined to produce a single index,  $LS$ , that represents the ratio of soil loss under a given slope steepness and slope length to the soil loss from a standard 9 per cent, 22.6-m long slope. **Crop management**,  $C$ , is given as the ratio of soil loss from a field with a specific cropping-management strategy compared with the standard continuous cultivated fallow. **Erosion control**,  $P$ , is the ratio of soil loss with contouring strip cultivation or terracing to that of straight row, up-and-down slope farming systems. The measurements of the standard plot – a slope length of 22.6 m (72½ feet), 9 per cent gradient, with a bare fallow land-use ploughed up and down the slope – seem very arbitrary and indeed are historical accidents. They are derived from the condition common at experimental field stations where measured soil losses provided the basic data

for calibrating the equation. It was convenient to use a plot area of 1/100 acre and a plot width of 6 feet, which meant that the plot length must be 72½ feet.

To use the USLE, a range of erosion measurements must be made, which are usually taken on small, bounded plots. The problem here is that the plot itself affects the erosion rate. On small plots, all material that starts to move is collected and measured. Moreover, the evacuation of water and sediment at the slope base may itself trigger

erosion, with rills eating back through the plot, picking up and transporting new sources of sediment in the process. Another difficulty lies in the assumption that actual slopes are uniform and behave like small plots. Natural slopes usually have a complex topography that creates local erosion and deposition of sediment. For these reasons, erosion plots established to provide the empirical data needed to apply the USLE almost always overestimate the soil-loss rate from hillslopes by a factor twice to ten times the natural rate.

was recognized by Robert Lionel Sherlock who, in his book *Man as a Geological Agent: An Account of His Action on Inanimate Nature* (1922), furnished many illustrations of the quantities of material involved in mining, construction, and urban development. It is now known that human activity transforms natural landscapes and is a potent geomorphic agent. In Britain, such processes as direct excavation, urban development, and waste dumping are driving landscape change (Douglas and Lawson 2001). Some 688 to 972 million tonnes of Earth-surface material is shifted deliberately each year, the precise figure depending on whether or not the replacement of overburden in opencast mining is taken into account. British rivers export only 10

million tonnes of sediment to the surrounding seas, and some 40 million tonnes are exported in solution. The astonishing fact is that the deliberate human transfers move nearly fourteen times more material than natural processes. The British land surface is changing faster than at any time since the last ice age, and perhaps faster than at any time in the last 60 million years.

Globally, every year, humans move about 57 billion tonnes of material through mineral extraction processes. Rivers transport around 22 billion tonnes of sediment to the oceans annually, so the human cargo of sediment exceeds the river load by a factor of nearly three (Douglas and Lawson 2001). A breakdown of the figures is given in Table 2.8. The

Table 2.8 Natural and mining-induced erosion rates of the continents

Continent	Natural erosion (Mt/yr) <sup>a</sup>	Hard coal, 1885 (Mt)	Brown coal and lignite, 1995 (Mt)	Iron ores, 1995 (Mt)	Copper ores, 1995 (Mt)
North and Central America	2,996	4,413	1,139	348	1,314
South America	2,201	180	1	712	1,337
Europe	967	3,467	6,771	587	529
Asia	17,966	8,990	1,287	1,097	679
Africa	1,789	993		156	286
Australia	267	944	505	457	296
Total	26,156	18,987	9,703	3,357	4,442

Note: <sup>a</sup> Mt = megatonnes (= 1 million tonnes)

Source: Adapted from Douglas and Lawson (2001)

data suggest that, in excavating and filling portions of the Earth's surface, humans are at present the most efficient geomorphic agent on the planet. Even where rivers, such as the Mekong, Ganges, and Yangtze, bear the sediment from accelerated erosion within their catchments, they still discharge a smaller mass of materials than the global production of an individual mineral commodity in a single year (Douglas 1990). Moreover, fluvial sediment discharges to the oceans from the continents are either similar in magnitude to, or smaller than, the total movement of materials for minerals production on those continents.

## SUMMARY

Three grand cycles of matter affect Earth surface processes – the water cycle (evaporation, condensation, precipitation, and runoff), the rock cycle (uplift, weathering, erosion, deposition, and lithification), and the biogeochemical cycles. Denudation encompasses weathering and erosion. Erosive agents – ice, water, and wind – pick up weathered debris, transport it, and deposit it. Weathered debris may move downslope under its own weight, a process called mass wasting. Gravity-driven mass wasting is determined largely by the relationships between stress and strain in Earth materials, and by the rheological behaviour of brittle solids, elastic solids, plastic solids, and liquids. Mass movements occur in six ways: creep, flow, slide, heave, fall, and subsidence. Half-mountain-sized mass movements are the subject of gravity tectonics. Eroded materials eventually come to rest. Deposition occurs in several ways to produce different classes of sediment: clastic (solid fragments), chemical (precipitated materials), or biogenic (produced by living things). Sediments accumulate in three main environments: the land surface (terrestrial sediments); around continental edges (shallow marine sediments); and on the open ocean floor (deep marine sediments). Climate partly determines denudation (weathering and erosion). In addition, geological and topographic factors affect

mechanical denudation. Climate, rock type, topographic factors, and organisms influence chemical denudation. Humans are vulnerable to fast-moving bodies of sediment, and landslides, debris flows, and so forth kill humans every year. Human activities may accelerate the erosion of soil, which causes problems of pollution and sedimentation in rivers and lakes, and around coasts. Conservation practices, which are often informed by predictive models, go some way to countering human-exacerbated soil loss. Humans are very powerful geomorphic agents and currently move more material than natural processes.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 To what extent are the Earth's grand 'cycles' interconnected?**
  - 2 How important are substrates in explaining land form?**
  - 3 Assess the relative importance of the factors that influence denudation rates.**
- 

## FURTHER READING

Goudie, A. (1995) *The Changing Earth: Rates of Geomorphological Process*. Oxford and Cambridge, Mass.: Blackwell.

A good survey of spatial and temporal variations in the rates at which geomorphic processes operate.

Selby, M. J. (1993) *Hillslope Materials and Processes*, 2nd edn. With a contribution by A. P. W. Hodder. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

An excellent account of the geomorphology of hillslopes.

Thornes, J. B. (ed.) (1990) *Vegetation and Erosion: Processes and Environments*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

A collection of essays that, as the title suggests, consider the effects of vegetation on erosion in different environments.



**Part II**

**STRUCTURE**





## TECTONIC AND STRUCTURAL LANDFORMS I

---

Volcanic and plutonic processes and structures stamp their mark on many large and small landforms. This chapter looks at:

- How molten rock (magma) produces volcanic landforms and landforms related to deep-seated (plutonic) processes
- How tectonic plates bear characteristic large-scale landforms at their active and passive margins and in their interiors

Geological forces in action: the birth of Surtsey

On 8 November 1963, episodic volcanic eruptions began to occur 33 km south of the Icelandic mainland and 20 km south-west of the island of Heimaey (Moore 1985; Thorarinsson 1964). To begin with, the eruptions were explosive as water and magma mixed. They produced dark clouds of ash and steam that shot to a few hundred metres, and on occasions 10 km, into the air above the growing island. Base surges and fallout of glassy tephra from the volcano built a tuff ring. On 31 January 1964, a new vent appeared 400 m to the north-west. The new vent produced a new tuff ring that protected the old vent from seawater. This encouraged the eruptions at the old vent to settle down into a gentle effusion of pillow lava and ejections of lava fountains. The lava, an alkali olivine basalt, built up the island to the south and protected the unconsolidated tephra from wave action. After 17 May 1965, Surtsey was quiet until 19 August 1966, when activity started afresh at new vents at the older tuff ring on the east side of the island and fresh lava moved southwards. The eruptions stopped on 5 June 1967. They had lasted three-and-a-half years. Thus was the island of Surtsey created from about a cubic kilometre of ash and lava, of which only 9 per cent breached the ocean surface. It was named after the giant of fire in Icelandic mythology. Surtsey is about 1.5 km in diameter with an area of 2.8 km<sup>2</sup>. Between 1967 and 1991, Surtsey subsided about 1.1 m (Moore *et al.* 1992), probably because the volcanic material compacted, the sea-floor sediments under the volcano compacted, and possibly because the lithosphere was pushed downwards by the weight of the volcano. Today, the highest point on Surtsey is 174 m above sea level.

---

The ascent of internal energy originating in the Earth's core impels a complicated set of geological processes. Deep-seated lithospheric, and ultimately baryspheric, processes and structures influence the shape and dynamics of the toposphere. The primary surface features of the globe are in very large measure the product of geological processes. This primary tectonic influence is manifest in the structure of mountain chains, volcanoes, island arcs, and other large-scale structures exposed at the Earth's surface, as well as in smaller features such as fault scarps.

Endogenic landforms may be tectonic or structural in origin (Twidale 1971, 1). **Tectonic landforms** are productions of the Earth's interior processes without the intervention of the forces of denudation. They include volcanic cones and craters, fault scarps, and mountain ranges. The influence of tectonic processes on landforms, particularly at continental and large regional scales, is the subject matter of **morphotectonics**. **Tectonic geomorphology** investigates the effects of active tectonic processes – faulting, tilting, folding, uplift, and subsidence – upon landforms. A recent and prolific development in geomorphology is the idea of 'tectonic predesign'. Several landscape features, patently of exogenic origin, have tectonic or endogenic features stamped on them (or, literally speaking, stamped under them). Tectonic predesign arises from the tendency of erosion and other exogenic processes to follow stress patterns in the lithosphere (Hantke and Scheidegger 1999). The resulting landscape features are not fashioned directly by the stress fields. Rather, the exogenic processes act preferentially in conformity with the lithospheric stress (see p. 99). The conformity is either with the direction of a shear or, where there is a free surface, in the direction of a principle stress.

Few landforms are purely tectonic in origin: exogenous forces – weathering, gravity, running water, glaciers, waves, or wind – act on tectonic landforms, picking out less resistant rocks or lines of weakness, to produce **structural landforms**. An example is a volcanic plug, which is created when one part of a volcano is weathered and eroded

more than another. A breached anticline is another example. Most textbooks on geomorphology abound with examples of structural landforms. Even in the Scottish Highlands, many present landscape features, which resulted from Tertiary etching, are closely adjusted to underlying rock types and structures (Hall 1991). Such passive influences of geological structures upon landforms are called **structural geomorphology**.

## PLATE TECTONICS AND VOLCANISM

The outer shell of the solid Earth – the **lithosphere** – is not a single, unbroken shell of rock; it is a set of snugly tailored **plates** (Figure 3.1). At present there are seven large plates, all with an area over 100 million km<sup>2</sup>. They are the African, North American, South American, Antarctic, Australian–Indian, Eurasian, and Pacific plates. Two dozen or so smaller plates have areas in the range 1–10 million km<sup>2</sup>. They include the Nazca, Cocos, Philippine, Caribbean, Arabian, Somali, Juan de Fuca, Caroline, Bismarck, and Scotia plates, and a host of **micro-plates** or **platelets**. In places, continental margins coincide with plate boundaries. Where they do, as along the western edge of the American continents, they are called **active margins**. Where they do not, but rather lie inside plates, they are called **passive margins**. The breakup of Pangaea created many passive margins, including the east coast of South America and the west coast of Africa. Passive margins are sometimes designated rifted margins where plate motion has been divergent, and sheared margins where plate motion has been transform, that is, where adjacent crustal blocks have moved in opposite directions. The distinction between active and passive margins is crucial to interpreting some large-scale features of the toposphere.

Earth's tectonic plates are continuously created at mid-ocean ridges and destroyed at subduction sites, and are ever on the move. Their motions explain virtually all tectonic forces that affect the lithosphere and thus the Earth's surface. Indeed, plate tectonics provides a good explanation for the

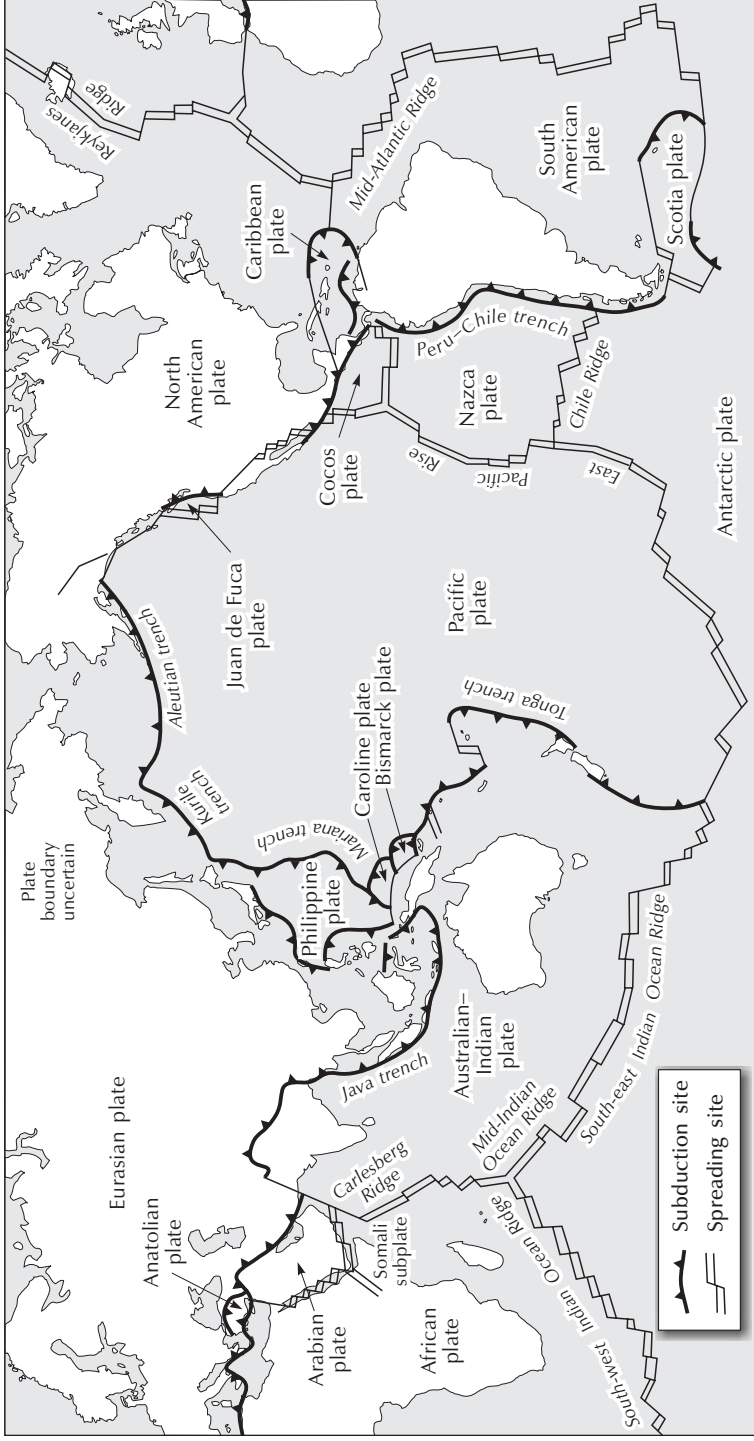


Figure 3.1 Tectonic plates, spreading sites, and subduction sites.  
 Source: Adapted from Ollier (1996)

primary topographic features of the Earth: the division between continents and oceans, the disposition of mountain ranges, and the placement of sedimentary basins at plate boundaries.

### Plate tectonic processes

Changes in the Earth's crust are currently explained by the plate tectonic model. This model is thought satisfactorily to explain geological structures, the distribution and variation of igneous and metamorphic activity, and sedimentary facies. In fact, it explains all major aspects of the Earth's long-term tectonic evolution (e.g. Kearey and Vine 1990). The plate tectonic model comprises two tectonic 'styles'. The first involves the oceanic plates and the second involves the continental plates.

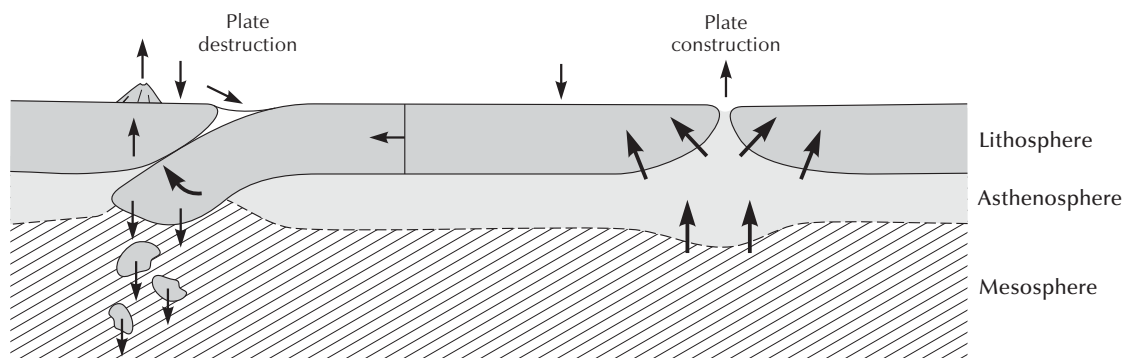
#### Oceanic plate tectonics

The **oceanic plates** are linked into the cooling and recycling system comprising the mesosphere, asthenosphere, and lithosphere beneath the ocean floors. The chief cooling mechanism is subduction. New oceanic lithosphere is formed by volcanic eruptions along mid-ocean ridges. The newly formed material moves away from the ridges. In doing so, it cools, contracts, and thickens. Eventually, the oceanic lithosphere becomes denser than the underlying mantle and sinks. The sinking takes place along subduction zones. These are associated with earthquakes and volcanicity. Cold oceanic slabs may sink well into the mesosphere, perhaps as much as 670 km or below the surface. Indeed, subducted material may accumulate to form 'lithospheric graveyards' (Engelbreton *et al.* 1992).

It is uncertain why plates should move. Several **driving mechanisms** are plausible. Basaltic lava upwelling at a mid-ocean ridge may push adjacent lithospheric plates to either side. Or, as elevation tends to decrease and slab thickness to increase away from construction sites, the plate may move by gravity sliding. Another possibility, currently thought to be the primary driving mechanism, is that the cold, sinking slab at subduction sites pulls

the rest of the plate behind it. In this scenario, mid-ocean ridges stem from passive spreading – the oceanic lithosphere is stretched and thinned by the tectonic pull of older and denser lithosphere sinking into the mantle at a subduction site; this would explain why sea-floor tends to spread more rapidly in plates attached to long subduction zones. As well as these three mechanisms, or perhaps instead of them, mantle convection may be the number one motive force, though this now seems unlikely as many spreading sites do not sit over upwelling mantle convection cells. If the mantle-convection model were correct, mid-ocean ridges should display a consistent pattern of gravity anomalies, which they do not, and would probably not develop fractures (transform faults). But, although convection is perhaps not the master driver of plate motions, it does occur. There is some disagreement about the depth of the convective cell. It could be confined to the asthenosphere, the upper mantle, or the entire mantle (upper and lower). Whole mantle convection (Davies 1977, 1992) has gained much support, although it now seems that whole mantle convection and a shallower circulation may both operate.

The lithosphere may be regarded as the cool surface layer of the **Earth's convective system** (Park 1988, 5). As part of a convective system, it cannot be considered in isolation (Figure 3.2). It gains material from the asthenosphere, which in turn is fed by uprising material from the underlying mesosphere, at constructive plate boundaries. It migrates laterally from mid-ocean ridge axes as cool, relatively rigid, rock. Then, at destructive plate boundaries, it loses material to the asthenosphere and mesosphere. The fate of the subducted material is not clear. It meets with resistance in penetrating the lower mantle, but is driven on by its thermal inertia and continues to sink, though more slowly than in the upper mantle, causing accumulations of slab material (Fukao *et al.* 1994). Some slab material may eventually be recycled to create new lithosphere, although the basalt erupted at mid-ocean ridges shows a few signs of being new material that has not passed through a rock cycle before: it



*Figure 3.2* Interactions between the asthenosphere, lithosphere, and mesosphere. The lithosphere gains material from the asthenosphere at constructive plate boundaries. It loses material to the mesosphere at destructive plate boundaries. Material in the lithosphere moves laterally relative to the constructive and destructive sites.

*Source:* Adapted from Park (1988)

has a remarkably consistent composition, which is difficult to account for by recycling, and emits such gases as helium that seem to be arriving at the surface for the first time; on the other hand, it is not 'primitive' and formed in a single step by melting of mantle materials – its manufacture requires several stages (Francis 1993, 49). It is worth noting that the transformation of rock from mesosphere, through the asthenosphere, to the lithosphere chiefly entails temperature and viscosity (rheidity) changes. Material changes do occur: partial melting in the asthenosphere generates magmas that rise into the lithosphere, and volatiles enter and leave the system.

### Continental plate tectonics

The **continental lithosphere** does not take part in the mantle-convection process. It is 150 km thick and consists of buoyant low-density crust (the tectosphere) and relatively buoyant upper mantle. It therefore floats on the underlying asthenosphere. Continents break up and reassemble, but they remain floating at the surface. They move in response to lateral mantle movements, gliding serenely over the Earth's surface. In breaking up, small fragments of continent sometimes shear off; these are called **terranes**. They drift around until they meet another continent, to which they become attached (rather

than being subducted) or possibly are sheared along it. As they may come from a different continent than the one they are attached to, they are called **exotic** or **suspect terranes** (p. 80). Most of the western seaboard of North America appears to consist of these exotic terranes. In moving, continents have a tendency to drift away from mantle hot zones, some of which they may have produced: stationary continents insulate the underlying mantle, causing it to warm. This warming may eventually lead to a large continent breaking into several smaller ones. Most continents are now sitting on, or moving towards, cold parts of the mantle. An exception is Africa, which was the core of Pangaea. Continental drift leads to collisions between continental blocks and to the overriding of oceanic lithosphere by continental lithosphere along subduction zones.

Continents are affected by, and affect, underlying mantle and adjacent plates. They are maintained against erosion (rejuvenated in a sense) by the welding of sedimentary prisms to continental margins through metamorphism, by the stacking of thrust sheets, by the sweeping up of microcontinents and island arcs at their leading edges, and by the addition of magma through intrusions and extrusions (Condie 1989). The relative movement of continents over the Phanerozoic aeon is now fairly well established, though pre-Pangaeon

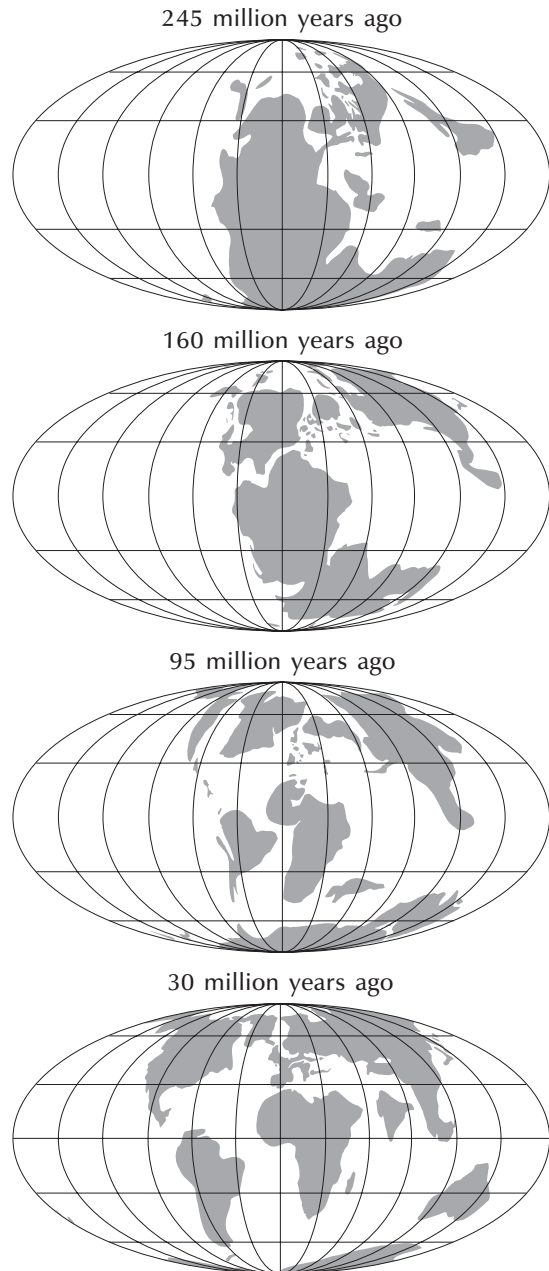
reconstructions are less reliable than post-Pangaeian reconstructions. Figure 3.3 charts the probable breakup of Pangaea.

### Diastrophic processes

Traditionally, tectonic (or geotectonic) forces are divided into two groups: (1) diastrophic forces and (2) volcanic and plutonic forces. **Diastrophic forces** lead to the folding, faulting, uplift, and subsidence of the lithosphere. **Volcanic forces** lead to the extrusion of magma onto the Earth's surface as lava and to minor intrusions (e.g. dykes and sills) into other rocks. **Plutonic forces**, which originate deep in the Earth, produce major intrusions (plutons) and associated veins.

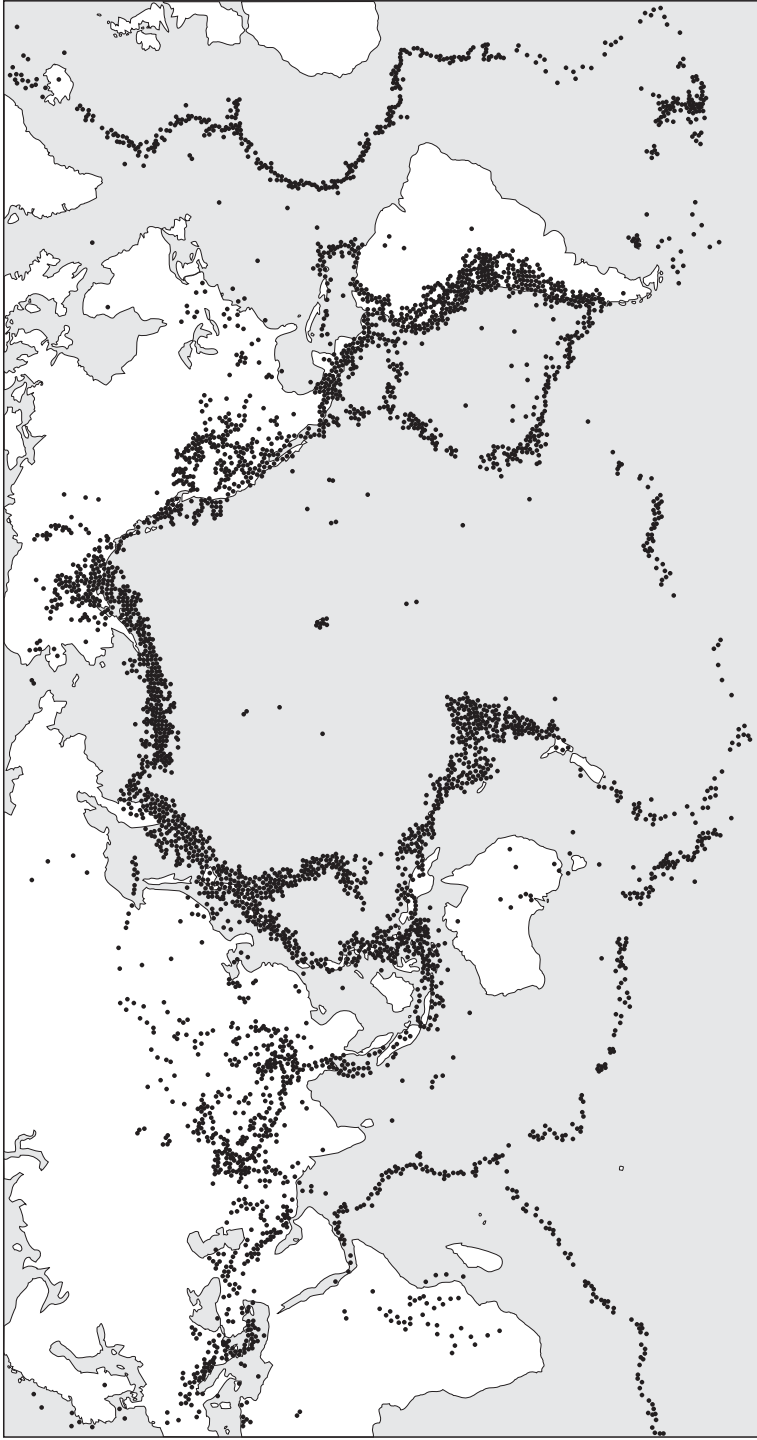
Diastrophic forces may deform the lithosphere through folding, faulting, uplift, and subsidence. They are responsible for some of the major features of the physical toposphere. Two categories of **diastrophism** are recognized: orogeny and epeirogeny. **Orogeny** is mountain building and uplift as a solely structural or tectonic idea. It excludes the erosion that produces high peaks and deep valleys. **Epeirogeny** is the upheaval or depression of large areas of cratons without significant folding or fracture. The only folding associated with epeirogeny is the broadest of undulations. Epeirogeny includes **isostatic movements**, such as the rebound of land after an ice sheet has melted, and **cymatogeny**, which is the arching, and sometimes doming, of rocks with little deformation over 10–1,000 km.

The many tectonic forces in the lithosphere are primarily created by the relative motion of adjacent plates. Indeed, relative plate motions underlie almost all surface tectonic processes. Plate boundaries are particularly important for understanding geotectonics. They are sites of strain and associated with faulting, earthquakes, and, in some instances, mountain building (Figure 3.4). Most



*Figure 3.3* Changing arrangement of continents over the last 245 million years, showing the breakup of Pangaea, during the Early Triassic period; during the Callovian age (Middle Jurassic); during the Cenomanian age (Late Cretaceous); and during the Oligocene epoch. All maps use Mollweide's equal-area projection.

*Source:* Adapted from maps in Smith *et al.* (1994)



*Figure 3.4* Global distribution of earthquakes.  
*Source:* Adapted from Ollier (1996)



boundaries sit between two adjacent plates, but, in places, three plates come into contact. This happens where the North American, South American, and Eurasian plates meet (Figure 3.1). Such Y-shaped boundaries are known as **triple junctions**. Three plate-boundary types produce distinctive tectonic regimes:

- 1 **Divergent plate boundaries** at construction sites, which lie along mid-ocean ridges, are associated with divergent tectonic regimes involving shallow, low-magnitude earthquakes. The ridge height depends primarily on the spreading rate. Incipient divergence occurs within continents, including Africa, and creates rift valleys, which are linear fault systems and, like mid-ocean ridges, are prone to shallow earthquakes and volcanism (p. 105). Volcanoes at divergent boundaries produce basalt.
- 2 **Convergent plate boundaries** vary according to the nature of the converging plates. Convergent tectonic regimes are equally varied; they normally lead to partial melting and the production of granite and the eruption of andesite and rhyolite. A collision between two slabs of oceanic lithosphere is marked by an oceanic trench, a volcanic island arc, and a dipping planar region of seismic activity (a **Benioff zone**) with earthquakes of varying magnitude. An example is the Scotia arc, lying at the junctions of the Scotia and South American plates. Subduction of oceanic lithosphere beneath continental lithosphere is manifest in two ways: first, as an oceanic trench, a dipping zone of seismic activity, and volcanicity in an **orogenic mountain belt** (or **orogen**) lying on the continental lithosphere next to the oceanic trench (as in western South America); and second, as **intra-oceanic arcs** of volcanic islands (as in parts of the western Pacific Ocean). In a few cases of continent–ocean collision, a slab of ocean floor has overridden rather than underridden the continent. This process, called **obduction**, has produced the Troödos Mountain region of Cyprus. Collisions of continental lithosphere result in crustal

thickening and the production of a mountain belt, but little subduction. A fine example is the Himalaya, produced by India's colliding with Asia. Divergence and convergence may occur obliquely. Oblique divergence is normally accommodated by transform offsets along a mid-oceanic ridge crest, and oblique convergence by the complex microplate adjustments along plate boundaries. An example is found in the Betic cordillera, Spain, where the African and Iberian plates slipped by one another from the Jurassic to Tertiary periods.

- 3 **Conservative or transform plate boundaries** occur where adjoining plates move sideways past each other along a transform fault without any convergent or divergent motion. They are associated with strike-slip tectonic regimes and with shallow earthquakes of variable magnitude. They occur as fracture zones along mid-ocean ridges and as **strike-slip fault zones** within continental lithosphere. A prime example of the latter is the San Andreas fault system in California.

Tectonic activity also occurs within lithospheric plates, and not just at plate edges. This is called **within-plate tectonics** to distinguish it from plate-boundary tectonics.

### Volcanic and plutonic processes

Volcanic forces are either intrusive or extrusive forces. **Intrusive forces** are found within the lithosphere and produce such features as batholiths, dykes, and sills. The deep-seated, major intrusions – batholiths and stocks – result from plutonic processes, while the minor, nearer-surface intrusions such as dykes and sills, which occur as independent bodies or as offshoots from plutonic intrusions, result from hypabyssal processes. **Extrusive forces** occur at the very top of the lithosphere and lead to exhalations, eruptions, and explosions of materials through volcanic vents, all of which are the result of volcanic processes.

## The location of volcanoes

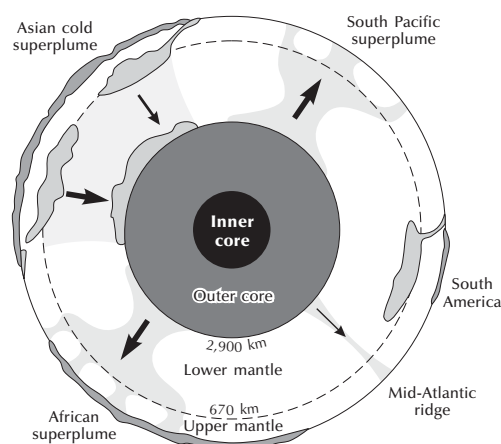
Most volcanoes are sited at plate boundaries. A few, including the Cape Verde volcano group in the southern Atlantic Ocean and the Tibesti Mountains in Saharan Africa, occur within plates. These **'hot-spot' volcanoes** are surface expressions of thermal mantle plumes. Hot-spots are characterized by topographic bumps (typically 500–1,200 m high and 1,000–1,500 km wide), volcanoes, high gravity anomalies, and high heat flow. Commonly, a mantle plume stays in the same position while a plate slowly slips over it. In the ocean, this produces a chain of volcanic islands, or a **hot-spot trace**, as in the Hawaiian Islands. On continents, it produces a string of volcanoes. Such a volcanic string is found in the Snake River Plain province of North America, where a hot-spot currently sitting below Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming, has created an 80-km-wide band across 450 km of continental crust, producing prodigious quantities of basalt in the process. Even more voluminous are **continental flood basalts**. These occupy large tracts of land in far-flung places. The Siberian province covers more than 340,000 km<sup>2</sup>. India's Deccan Traps once covered about 1,500,000 km<sup>2</sup>; erosion has left about 500,000 km<sup>2</sup>.

## Mantle plumes

**Mantle plumes** appear to play a major role in plate tectonics. Their growth is triggered by thermal instabilities at the core–mantle boundary, although they may also originate at the boundary between the upper and lower mantle. Mantle plumes may be hundreds of kilometres in diameter and rise towards the Earth's surface. A plume consists of a leading 'glob' of hot material that is followed by a 'stalk'. On approaching the lithosphere, the plume head is forced to mushroom beneath the lithosphere, spreading sideways and downwards a little. The plume temperature is 250–300°C hotter than the surrounding upper mantle, so that 10–20 per cent of the surrounding rock is melted. This melted rock may then run onto the Earth's surface as flood basalt,

as occurred in India during the Cretaceous period when the Deccan Traps were formed.

**Superplumes** may form. One appears to have done so beneath the Pacific Ocean during the middle of the Cretaceous period (Larson 1991). It rose rapidly from the core–mantle boundary about 125 million years ago. Production tailed off by 80 million years ago, but it did not stop until 50 million years later. It is possible that superplumes are caused by cold, subducted oceanic crust on both edges of a tectonic plate accumulating at the top of the lower mantle. These two cold pools of rock then sink to the hot layer just above the core and a giant plume is squeezed out between them. **Plume tectonics** may be the dominant style of convection in the major part of the mantle. Two super-upwellings (the South Pacific and African superplumes) and one super-downwelling (the Asian cold plume) appear to prevail (Figure 3.5).



*Figure 3.5* A possible grand circulation of Earth materials. Oceanic lithosphere, created at mid-ocean ridges, is subducted into the deeper mantle. It stagnates at around 670 km and accumulates for 100–400 million years. Eventually, gravitational collapse forms a cold downwelling onto the outer core, as in the Asian cold superplume, which leads to mantle upwelling occurring elsewhere, as in the South Pacific and African hot superplumes.

*Source:* Adapted from Fukao *et al.* (1994)

## LANDFORMS RELATED TO TECTONIC PLATES

Large-scale landforms are primarily determined by tectonic processes, though their detailed surface form is partly shaped by water, wind, and ice. They may be classified in many ways. One scheme is based on crustal types: continental shields, continental platforms, rift systems, and orogenic belts. It is convenient to discuss these large units under three headings – plate interiors, passive plate margins, and active plate margins.

### Plate-interior landforms

The broad, central parts of continents are called **cratons**. They are somewhat stable, continental shield areas with a basement of Precambrian rocks that are largely unaffected by orogenic forces but are subject to epeirogeny. The main large-scale landforms associated with these areas are basins, plateaux (upwarps and swells), rift valleys, and intracontinental volcanoes. Equally important landforms are found along passive continental margins, that is, margins of continents created when formerly single land masses split in two, as happened to Africa and South America when the supercontinent Pangaea broke apart.

**Intra-cratonic basins** may be 1,000 km or more across. Some, such as the Lake Eyre basin of Australia and the Chad and Kalahari basins of Africa, are enclosed and internally drained. Others, such as the region drained by the Congo river systems, are breached by one or more major rivers.

Some continents, and particularly Africa, possess extensive **plateaux** sitting well above the average height of continental platforms. The Ahaggar Plateau and Tibesti Plateau in North Africa are examples. These plateaux appear to have been uplifted without rifting occurring but with some volcanic activity.

**Continental rifting** occurs at sites where the continental crust is stretched and faulted. The rift valley running north–south along much of East Africa is probably the most famous example, and its

formation is linked with domal uplift. Volcanic activity is often associated with continental rifting. It is also associated with hot-spots.

### Passive-margin landforms

**Passive or Atlantic-type margins** have three main topographic and structural features: a marginal bulge falling directly into the sea, or bounded by a ‘great escarpment’; a broad coastal plain and low plateau; or a complex of blocks and basins (Battiau-Queney 1991).

Distinctive landforms of passive margins are **great escarpments**. These are extraordinary topographic features. The great escarpment in southern Africa in places stands more than 1,000 m high. Great escarpments often separate soft relief on inland plateaux from highly dissected relief beyond the escarpment foot. Not all passive margins bear great escarpments, but many do (Figure 3.6). A great escarpment has even been identified in Norway, where the valleys deeply incised into the escarpment, although modified by glaciers, are still recognizable (Lidmar-Bergström *et al.* 2000). Some passive margins that lack great escarpments do possess low marginal upwarps flanked by a significant break of slope. The **Fall Line** on the eastern seaboard of North America marks an increase in stream gradient and in places forms a distinct escarpment.

Interesting questions about passive-margin landforms are starting to be answered. The Western Ghats, which fringe the west coast of peninsular India, are a great escarpment bordering the Deccan Plateau. The ridge crests stand 500–1,900 m tall and display a remarkable continuity for 1,500 km, despite structural variations. The continuity suggests a single, post-Cretaceous process of scarp recession and shoulder uplift (Gunnell and Fleitout 2000). A possible explanation involves denudation and backwearing of the margin, which promotes flexural upwarp and shoulder uplift (Figure 3.7). Shoulder uplift could also be effected by tectonic processes driven by forces inside the Earth.

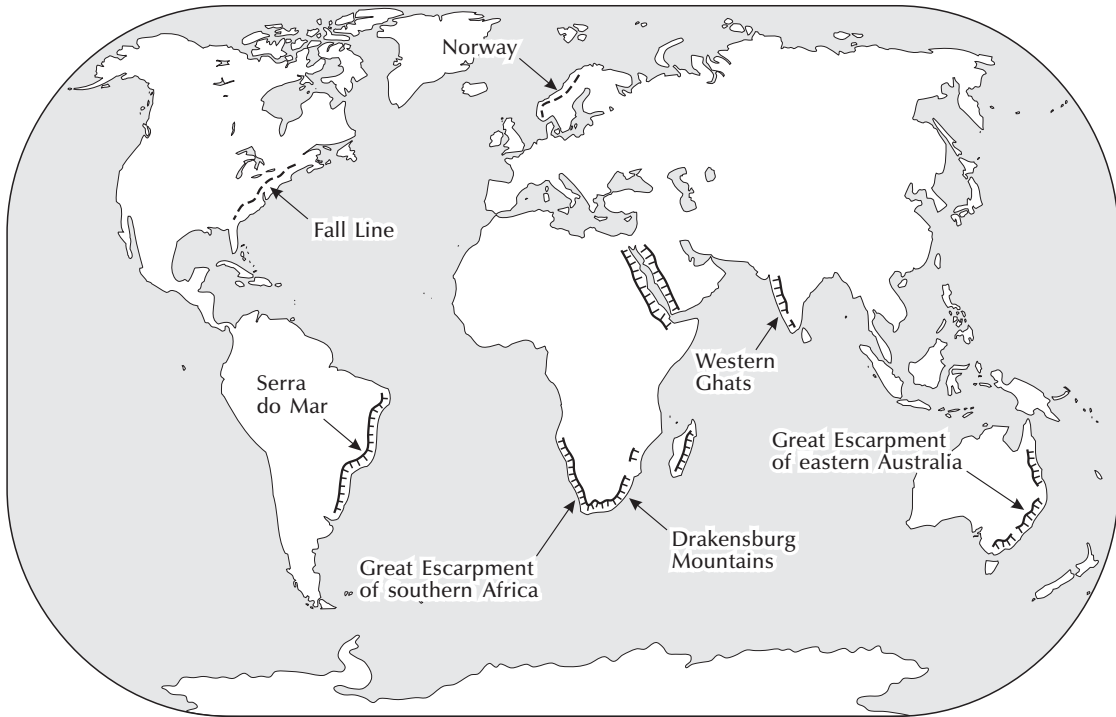


Figure 3.6 Great escarpments on passive margins.

Source: Adapted from Summerfield (1991, 86)

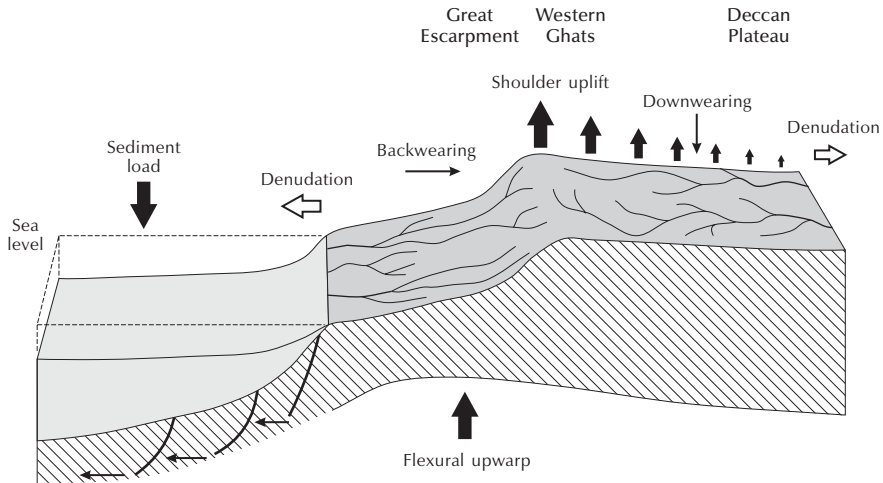


Figure 3.7 Conceptual model of passive-margin denudation and shoulder uplift by flexural rebound based on the Western Ghats, India.

Source: Adapted from Gunnell and Fleitout (2000)

### Active-margin landforms

Where tectonic plates converge or slide past each other, the continental margins are said to be **active**. They may be called **Pacific-type margins** as they are common around the Pacific Ocean's rim.

The basic landforms connected with convergent margins are island arcs and orogens. Their specific form depends upon (1) what it is that is doing the converging – two continents, a continent and an island arc, or two island arcs; and (2) whether subduction of oceanic crust occurs or a collision occurs. **Subduction** is deemed to create steady-state margins in the sense that oceanic crust is subducted indefinitely while a continent or island arc resists subduction. **Collisions** are deemed to occur when the continents or island arcs crash into one other but tend to resist subduction.

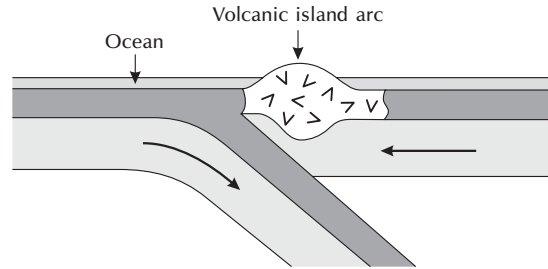
### Steady-state margins

Steady-state margins produce two major landforms – intra-oceanic island arcs and continental-margin orogens (Figure 3.8).

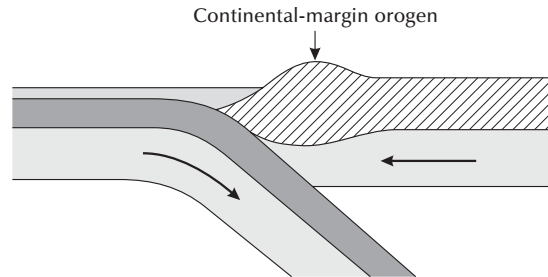
**Intra-oceanic island arcs** result from oceanic lithosphere being subducted beneath another oceanic plate. The heating of the plate that is subducted produces volcanoes and other thermal effects that build the island arc. Currently, about twenty intra-oceanic island arcs sit at subduction zones. Most of these lie in the western Pacific Ocean and include the Aleutian Arc, the Marianas Arc, the Celebes Arc, the Solomon Arc, and the Tonga Arc. The arcs build relief through the large-scale intrusion of igneous rocks and volcanic activity. A deep trench often forms ahead of the arc at the point where the oceanic lithosphere starts plunging into the mantle. The Mariana Trench, at  $-11,033$  m the deepest known place on the Earth's surface, is an example.

**Continental-margin orogens** form when oceanic lithosphere is subducted beneath continental lithosphere. The Andes of South America are probably the finest example of this type of orogen. Indeed, the orogen is sometimes called an Andean-type orogen, as well as a Cordilleran-type orogen. Continental-

(a) Intra-oceanic island arc



(b) Continental-margin orogen



Oceanic crust
  Continental crust
 
 ↙  
 ↘  
 ↙  
 ↘
  Volcanic rocks

Figure 3.8 The two kinds of steady-state margin.

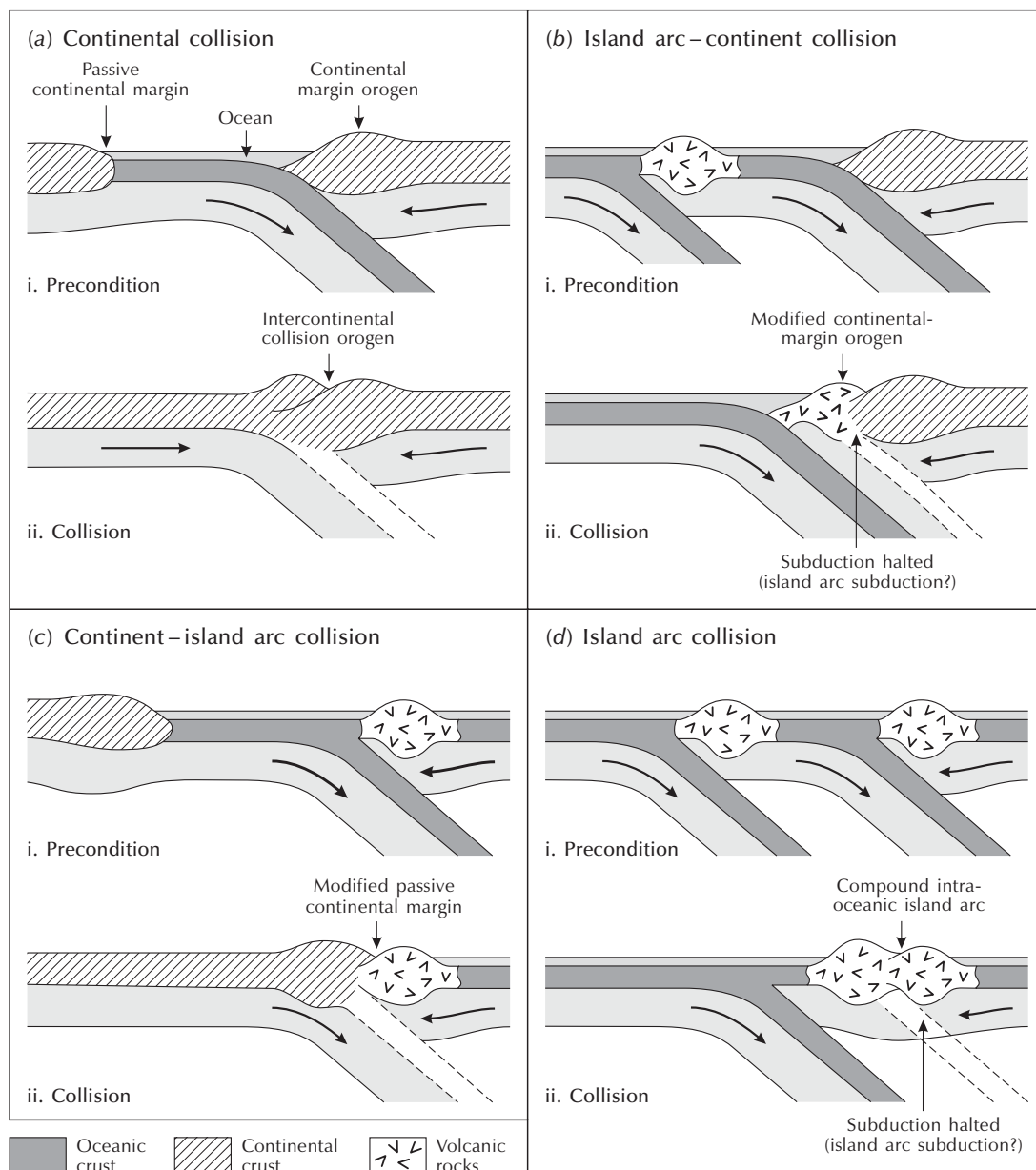
(a) Intra-oceanic island arc, formed where an oceanic plate is subducted beneath another oceanic plate. These are common in the western Pacific Ocean. (b) A continental margin orogen, formed where an oceanic plate is subducted beneath a continental plate. An example is the Andes.

Source: Adapted from Summerfield (1991, 58)

margin island arcs form if the continental crust is below sea level. An example is the Sumatra–Java section of the Sunda Arc in the East Indies.

### Collision margins

Landforms of collision margins are varied and depend upon the properties of the colliding plate boundaries. Four types of collision are possible: a continent colliding with another continent; an island arc colliding with a continent; a continent colliding with an island arc; and an island arc colliding with an island arc (Figure 3.9):



**Figure 3.9** Four kinds of collisional margin. (a) Intercontinental collision orogen, formed where two continental plates collide. An example is the Himalaya. (b) Modified continental-margin orogen, formed where an intra-oceanic island arc moves into a subduction zone bounded by continental crust. (c) Modified passive continental margin, formed where a continent moves towards a subduction zone associated with an intra-oceanic island arc. (d) Compound intra-oceanic island arc, formed by the collision of two intra-oceanic island arcs.

Source: Adapted from Summerfield (1991, 59–60)

- 1 Continent–continent collisions create **inter-continental collision orogens**. A splendid example is the Himalaya. The collision of India with Asia produced an orogen running over 2,500 km.
- 2 Island arc–continent collisions occur where an island arc moves towards a subduction zone adjacent to a continent. The result is a **modified continental-margin orogen**.
- 3 Continent–islands arc collisions occur when continents drift towards subductions zones connected with intra-oceanic island arcs. The continent resists significant subduction and a **modified passive continental margin** results. Northern New Guinea may be an example.
- 4 Island arc–island arc collisions are not well understood because there are no present examples from which to work out the processes involved. However, the outcome would probably be a **compound intra-oceanic island arc**.

### Transform margins

Rather than colliding, some plates slip by one another along **transform** or **oblique-slip faults**. Convergent and divergent forces occur at transform margins. Divergent or transtensional forces may lead to **pull-apart basins**, of which the Salton Sea trough in the southern San Andreas Fault system, California, USA, is a good example (Figure 3.10a). Convergent or transpressional forces may produce **transverse orogens**, of which the 3,000-m San Gabriel and San Bernardino Mountains (collectively called the Transverse Ranges) in California are examples (Figure 3.10b). As transform faults are often sinuous, pull-apart basins and transverse orogens may occur near to each other. The bending of originally straight faults also leads to spays and wedges of crust. Along **anastomosing faults**, movement may produce upthrust blocks and down-sagging ponds (Figure 3.11). All these transform margin features made be rendered more complex by a change in the dominant direction of stress. A classic area of transform margin complexity is the southern section of the San Andreas fault system.

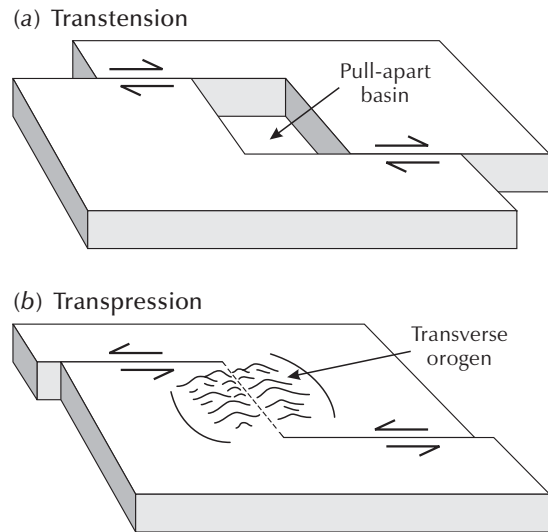


Figure 3.10 Landforms associated with oblique-slip faults. (a) Pull-apart basin formed by transtension. (b) Transverse orogen formed by transpression.

Some 1,000 km of movement has occurred along the fault over the last 25 million years. The individual faults branch, join, and sidestep each other, producing many areas of uplift and subsidence.

### Terranes

Slivens of continental crust that somehow become detached and then travel independently of their parent body, sometimes over great distances, may eventually become attached to another body of continental crust. Such wandering slivers go by several names: allochthonous terranes, displaced terranes, exotic terranes, native terranes, and suspect terranes. **Exotic** or **allochthonous terranes** are known to have originated from a continent different from that against which they now rest. **Suspect terranes** may be exotic but their exoticism cannot be confirmed. **Native terranes** are manifestly related to the continental margin against which they presently sit. Over 70 per cent of the North American Cordillera is composed of displaced terranes, most of which travelled thousands of



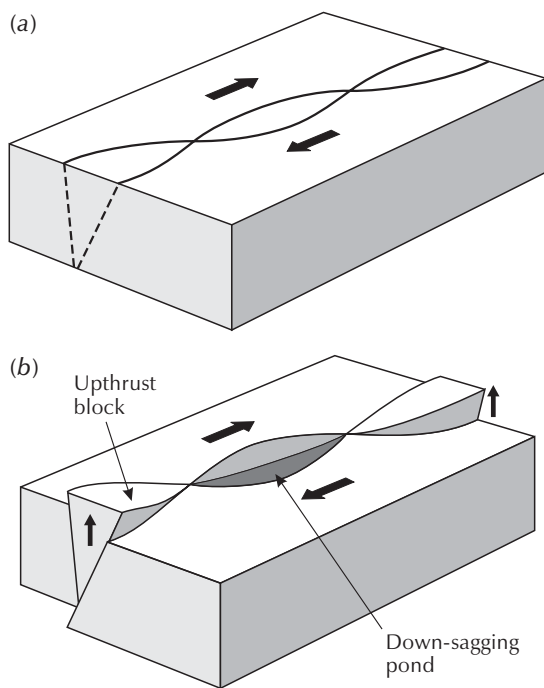


Figure 3.11 Landforms produced by anastomosing faults. (a) Anastomosing faults before movement. (b) Anastomosing faults after movement with upthrust blocks and down-sagging ponds.

Source: Adapted from Kingma (1958)

kilometres and joined the margin of the North American craton during the Mesozoic and Cenozoic eras (Coney *et al.* 1980). Many displaced terranes also occur in the Alps and Himalaya, including Adria and Sicily in Italy (Nur and Ben-Avraham 1982).

## VOLCANIC AND PLUTONIC LANDFORMS

Magma may be extruded onto the Earth's surface or intruded into country rock, which is an existing rock into which a new rock is introduced or found. Lava extruded from volcanic vents may build landforms directly. On the other hand, lava could be

buried beneath sediments and re-exposed by erosion at a later date and then influence landform development. Intruded rocks, which must be mobile but not necessarily molten, may have a direct effect on landforms by causing doming of the surface, but otherwise they do not create landforms until they are exposed by erosion.

## Intrusions

Intrusions form where molten and mobile igneous rocks cool and solidify without breaching the ground surface to form a volcano. They are said to be active when they force a space in rocks for themselves, and passive when they fill already existing spaces in rocks.

## Batholiths and lopoliths

The larger intrusions – batholiths, lopoliths, and stocks – are roughly circular or oval in plan and have a surface exposure of over 100 km<sup>2</sup> (Figure 3.12). They tend to be deep-seated and are usually composed of coarse-grained plutonic rocks.

**Batholiths**, also called **bosses** or **plutons** (Figure 3.12a), are often granitic in composition. The granite rises to the surface over millions of years through diapirs, that is, hot plumes of rock ascending through cooler and denser country rock. Enormous granite batholiths often underlie and support the most elevated sections of continental-margin orogens, as in the Andes. Mount Kinabalu, which at 4,101 m is the highest mountain in South-East Asia, was formed 1.5 million years ago by the intrusion of an adamellite (granitic) pluton into the surrounding Tertiary sediments. Batholiths may cause a doming of sediments and the ground surface. This has occurred in the Wicklow Mountains, Ireland, where the Leinster granite has led to the doming of the overlying Lower Palaeozoic strata. Once erosion exposes granite batholiths, weathering penetrates the joints. The joint pattern consists initially of three sets of more or less orthogonal joints, but unloading effects pressure release in the top 100 m or so of the batholith and a secondary set

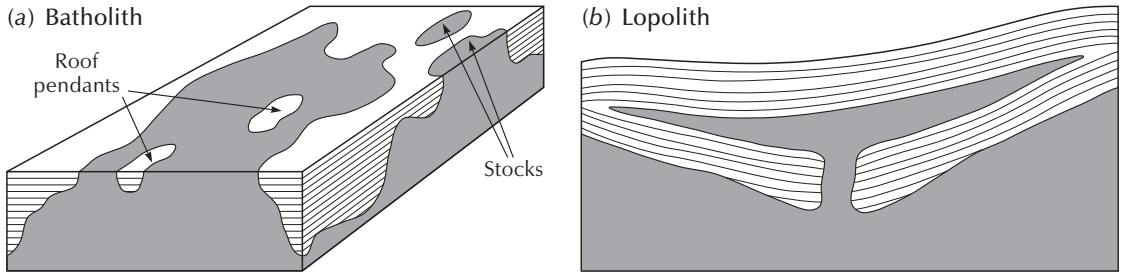


Figure 3.12 Major intrusions. (a) Batholith with stocks and roof pendants. (b) Lopolith.  
 Source: Adapted from Sparks (1971, 68, 90)

of joints appears lying approximately parallel to the surface. These joints play a key role in the development of weathering landforms and drainage patterns (p. 108).

**Lopoliths** are vast, saucer-shaped, and layered intrusions of basic rocks, typically of a gabbro-type composition (Figure 3.12b). In Tasmania, dolerite magma intruded flat Permian and Triassic sediments, lifting them as a roof. In the process, the dolerite formed several very large and shallow saucers, each cradling a raft of sediments. Lopoliths are seldom as large as batholiths. Their erosion produces a series of inward-facing scarps. The type example is the Duluth gabbro, which runs from the south-western corner of Lake Superior, Minnesota, USA, for 120 miles to the north-east, and has an estimated volume of 200,000 km<sup>3</sup>. In

South Africa, the Precambrian Bushveld Complex, originally interpreted as one huge lopolith, is a cluster of lopoliths.

**Stocks** or **plugs** are the largest intrusive bodies of basic rocks. They are discordant and are the solidified remains of magma chambers. One stock in Hawaii is about 20 km long and 12 km wide at the surface and is 1 km deep.

**Dykes, sills, laccoliths, and other minor intrusions**

Smaller intrusions are found alongside the larger forms and extrusive volcanic features (Figure 3.13a). They are classed as concordant where they run along the bedding planes of pre-existing strata, or as discordant where they cut through the bedding

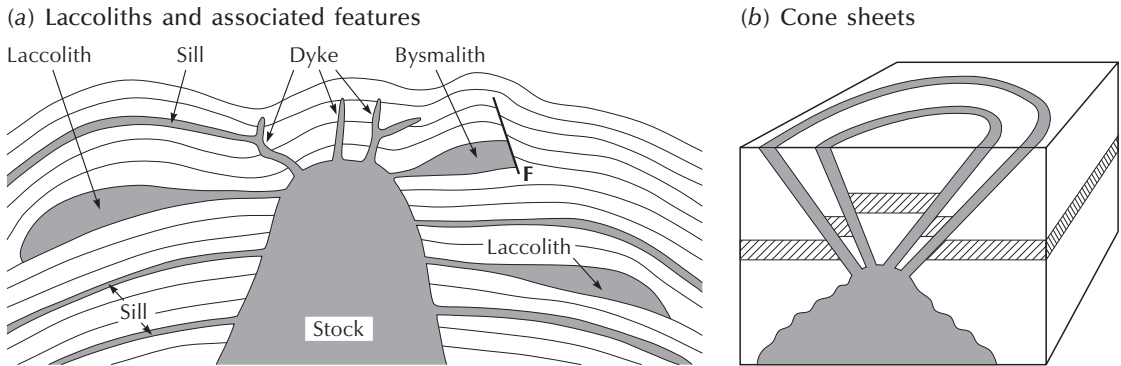


Figure 3.13 Minor intrusions. (a) Laccoliths and associated features (dykes, sills, and bysmaliths). (b) Cone sheets.  
 Source: Adapted from Sparks (1971, 90, 101)

planes. Their form depends upon the configuration of the fractures and lines of weakness in the country rock and upon the viscosity of the intruding magma. If exposed by erosion, small intrusions can produce landforms, especially when they are composed of rock that is harder than the surrounding rock.

**Dykes** are discordant intrusions, characteristically 1 to 10 m wide, and commonly composed of dolerite (Figure 3.13a). They often occur in swarms. Along the coast of Arran, Scotland, a swarm of 525 dykes occurs along a 24-km section, the average dyke thickness being 3.5 m. When exposed, they form linear features that may cut across the grain of the relief. The Great Dyke of Zimbabwe is over 500 km long and averages 6–8 km wide. On occasions, dykes radiate out from a central supply point to form **cone sheets** (Figure 3.13b). **Necks** and **pipes** are the cylindrical feeders of volcanoes and appear to occur in a zone close to the ground surface. They are more common in acid igneous rocks than in basalts. They may represent the last stage of what was mainly a dyke eruption.

**Sills** are concordant intrusions and frequently form resistant, tabular bands within sedimentary beds, although they may cross beds to spread along other bedding planes (Figure 3.13a). They may be hundreds of metres thick, as they are in Tasmania, but are normally between 10 and 30 m. Sills composed of basic rocks often have a limited extent, but they may extend for thousands of square kilometres. Dolerite sills in the Karoo sediments of South Africa underlie an area over 500,000 km<sup>2</sup> and constitute 15–25 per cent of the rock column in the area. In general, sills form harder members of strata into which they are intruded. When eroded, they may form escarpments or ledges in plateau regions and encourage waterfalls where they cut across river courses. In addition, their jointing may add a distinctive feature to the relief, as in the quartz-dolerite Whin Sill of northern England, which was intruded into Carboniferous sediments. Inland, the Whin Sill causes waterfalls on some streams and in places is a prominent topographic feature, as where Hadrian's Wall sits upon it. Near the north Northumberland coast, it forms small scarps and

crag, some of which are used as the sites of castles, for instance Lindisfarne Castle and Dunstanburgh Castle. It also affects the coastal scenery at Bamburgh and the Farne Islands. The Farne Islands are tilted slabs of Whin Sill dolerite.

**Laccoliths** are sills that have thickened to produce domes (Figure 3.13a). The doming arches the overlying rocks. **Bysmaliths** are laccoliths that have been faulted (Figure 3.13a). The Henry Mountains, Utah, USA, are a famous set of predominantly diorite-porphry laccoliths and associated features that appear to spread out from central discordant stocks into mainly Mesozoic shales and sandstones. The uplift connected with the intrusion of the stocks and laccoliths has produced several peaks lying about 1,500 m above the level of the Colorado Plateau. Eroded bysmaliths and laccoliths may produce relief features. Traprain Law, a prominent hill, is a phonolite laccolith lying 32 km east of Edinburgh in Scotland. However, the adjacent trachyte laccolith at Pencraig Wood has little topographic expression.

**Phacoliths** are lens-shaped masses seated in anticlinal crests and synclinal troughs (Figure 3.14a). They extend along the direction of anticlinal and synclinal axes and, unlike laccoliths, which tend to be circular in plan, are elongated. Eroded phacoliths may produce relief features. Corndon Hill, which lies east of Montgomery in Powys, Wales, is a circular phacolith made of Ordovician dolerite (Figure 3.14b).

## Volcanoes

Volcanoes erupt lava onto the land surface explosively and effusively. They also exhale gases. The landforms built by eruptions depend primarily upon whether rock is blown out or poured out of the volcano, and, for effusive volcanoes, the viscosity of the lava. Explosive or pyroclastic volcanoes blow **pyroclastic rocks** (solid fragments, loosely termed **ash** and **pumice**) out of a vent, while effusive volcanoes pour out **lava**. Runny (low viscosity) lava spreads out over a large area, while sticky (high viscosity) lava oozes out and spreads very little. Mixed-eruption volcanoes combine explosive phases

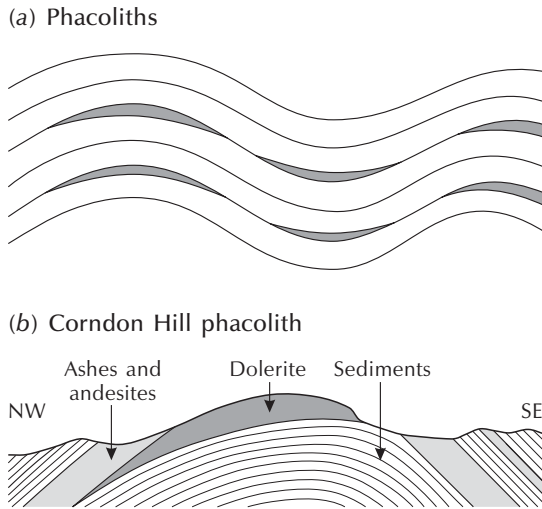


Figure 3.14 Phacoliths. (a) Occurrence in anticlinal crests and synclinal troughs. (b) Corndon Hill, near Montgomery in Wales, an eroded phacolith. Source: Adapted from Sparks (1971, 93, 94)

with phases of lava production. Pyroclastic rocks that fall to the ground from eruption clouds are called **tephra** (from the Greek for ashes), while both lavas and pyroclastic rocks that have a fragmented, cindery texture are called **scoria** (from the Greek for refuse).

Pyroclastic volcanoes

Explosive or **pyroclastic volcanoes** produce fragments of lava that accumulate around the volcanic

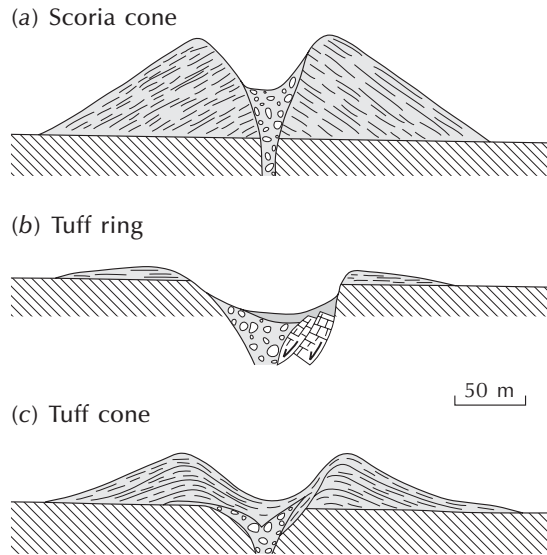


Figure 3.15 Pyroclastic volcanoes. (a) Scoria cone. (b) Tuff ring. (c) Tuff cone. Source: Adapted from Wohletz and Sheridan (1983)

vent to produce scoria mounds and other topographic forms (Figure 3.15; Plate 3.1). Pyroclastic flows and the deposits they produce are varied. **Tephra** is a term covering three types of pyroclastic material of differing grain size. Ashes are particles less than 4 mm in diameter, lapilli (from the Italian for 'little stones') are between 4 and 32 mm in diameter, and blocks are larger than 32 mm. The main types of pyroclastic flow and their related deposits are shown in Table 3.1. Notice that two

Table 3.1 Pyroclastic flows and deposits

Pyroclastic flow	Pyroclastic deposit
Column collapse	
Pumice flow	Ignimbrite; pumice and ash deposit
Scoria flow	Scoria and ash deposit
Semi-vesicular andesite flow	Semi-vesicular andesite and ash deposit
<i>Lava flow and dome collapse (explosive and gravitational)</i>	
Block and ash flow; <i>nuée ardente</i>	Block and ash deposit

Source: Adapted from Wright et al. (1980)



*Plate 3.1* Cinder cone, Mono Craters, California, USA.

Cinder cones are the simplest of volcanoes. They are built of cinder that falls around a vent to form a circular or oval cone, no more than 300 m or so high, usually with a bowl-shaped crater sitting at the top.

(*Photograph by Kate Richardson*)

chief mechanisms trigger pyroclastic flows: (1) column collapse and (2) lava flow and dome collapse. The first of these involves the catastrophic collapse of convecting columns of erupted material that stream upwards into the atmosphere from volcanic vents. The second involves the explosive or gravitational collapse of lava flows or domes. **Pumice** contains the most vesicles (empty spaces) and blocks the least. **Ignimbrites** (derived from two Latin words to mean ‘fire cloud rock’) are deposits of pumice, which may cover large areas in volcanic regions around the world. The pumiceous pyroclastic flows that produce them may run uphill, so that ignimbrite deposits often surmount topography and fill valleys and hills alike, although valleys often contain deposits tens of metres thick known as valley pond ignimbrite, while hills bear an ignimbrite veneer up to 5 m thick. A *nuée ardente* is a pyroclastic flow or ‘glowing avalanche’ of volcanic blocks and ash derived from dense rock.

**Scoria cones** are mounds of scoria, seldom more than 200–300 m high, with a crater in the middle (Figure 3.15a). Young scoria cones have slopes of  $33^\circ$ , which is the angle of rest for loose scoria. They are produced by monogenetic volcanoes – that is, volcanoes created by a solitary eruptive episode that may last hours or years – under dry conditions (i.e. there is no interaction between the lava and water).

They occur as elements of scoria cone fields or as parasitic vents on the flanks of larger volcanoes. Dozens sit on the flanks of Mount Etna. Once the eruption ceases, the volcanic vent is sealed off by solidification and the volcano never erupts again. Monte Nuovo, near Naples, is a scoria cone that grew 130 m in a few days in 1538; San Benedicto, Mexico, grew 300 m in 1952. Scoria mounds are like scoria cones but bear no apparent crater. An example is the Anakies, Victoria, Australia. **Nested scoria cones** occur where one scoria cone grows within another.

**Maars** are formed in a similar way to scoria cones but involve the interaction between magma and a water-bearing stratum – an aquifer. The result of this combination is explosive. In the simplest case, an explosion occurs in the phreatic or groundwater zone and blasts upwards to the surface creating a large hole in the ground. Thirty craters about a kilometre across were formed in this way in the Eifel region of Germany. These craters are now filled by lakes known as maars, which gave their name to the landforms. Some maars are the surface expression of **diatremes**, that is, vertical pipes blasted through basement rocks and that contain rock fragments of all sorts and conditions. Diatremes are common in the Swabian Alps region of Germany, where more than 300 occur within an area of 1,600 km<sup>2</sup>. Being

some 15 to 20 million years old, the surface expression of these particular diatremes is subdued, but some form faint depressions.

**Tuff rings** are produced by near-surface subterranean explosions where magma and water mix, but instead of being holes in the ground, they are surface accumulations of highly fragmented basaltic scoria (Figure 3.15b). A first-rate example is Cerro Xico, which lies just 15 km from the centre of Mexico City. It formed in the basin of shallow Lake Texcoco before it was drained by the Spanish in the sixteenth century. **Tuff cones** are smaller and steeper versions of tuff rings (Figure 3.15c). An example is El Caldera, which lies a few kilometres from Cerro Xico.

### Mixed-eruption volcanoes

As their name suggests, **mixed-eruption volcanoes** are produced by a mixture of lava eruptions and scoria deposits (Figure 3.16). They are built of layers of lava and scoria and are sometimes known as **strato-volcanoes**. The simplest form of strato-volcano is a simple cone, which is a scoria cone that

carries on erupting. The result is a single vent at the summit and a stunningly symmetrical cone, as seen on Mount Mayon in the Philippines and Mount Fuji, Japan. Lava flows often adorn the summit regions of simple cones. Composite cones have experienced a more complex evolutionary history, despite which they retain a radial symmetry about a single locus of activity. In the history of Mount Vesuvius, Italy, for instance, a former cone (now Monte Somma) was demolished by the eruption of AD 79 and a younger cone grew in its place. Mount Etna is a huge composite volcano, standing 3,308 m high with several summit vents and innumerable parasitic monogenetic vents on its flanks.

Another level of complexity is found in **compound or multiple volcanoes**. Compound volcanoes consist, not of a single cone, but of a collection of cones intermixed with domes and craters covering large areas. Nevado Ojos del Salado, at 6,885 m the world's highest volcano, covers an area of around 70 km<sup>2</sup> on the frontier between Chile and Argentina and consists of at least a dozen cones.

**Volcano complexes** are even more complex than compound volcanoes. They are so muddled that it

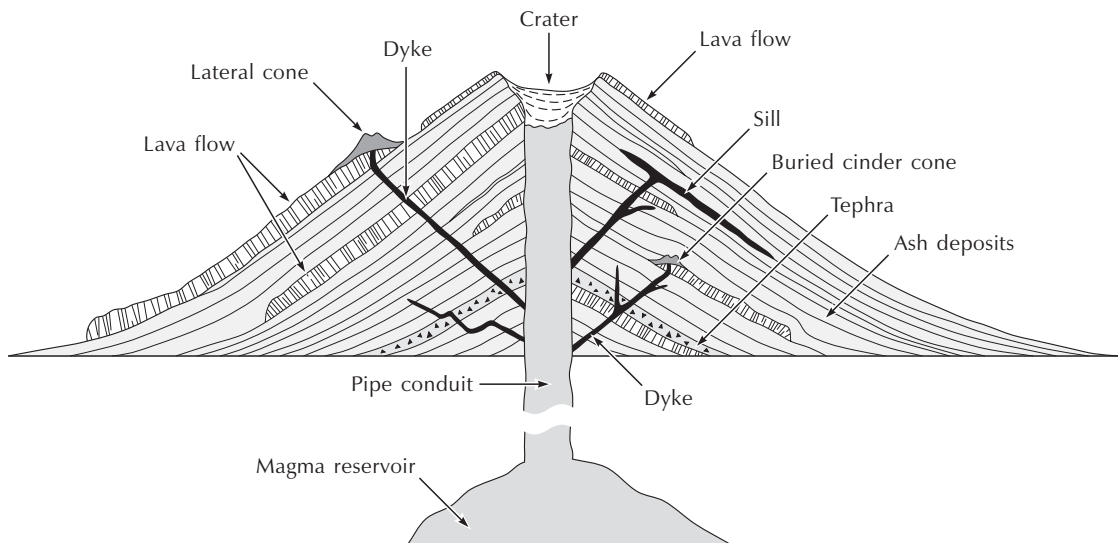


Figure 3.16 The structure of a typical strato-volcano.

Source: Adapted from MacDonald (1972, 23)



is difficult to identify the source of the magma. In essence, they are associations of major and minor volcanic centres and their related lavas flows and pyroclastic rocks. An example is Cordon Punta Negra, Chile, where at least twenty-five small cones with well-developed summit craters are present in an area of some 500 km<sup>2</sup>. None of the cones is more than a few hundred metres tall and some of the older ones are almost buried beneath a jumbled mass of lavas, the origin of whose vents is difficult to trace.

### Basic-lava volcanoes – shields

Basic lava, such as basalt, is very fluid and spreads readily, so raising volcanoes of low gradient (often less than 10°) and usually convex profile. Basic-lava volcanoes are composed almost wholly of lava, with little or no addition of pyroclastic material or talus. Several types of basic-lava volcano are recognized: lava shields, lava domes, lava cones, lava mounds, and lava discs (Figure 3.17). Classic examples of **lava shields** are found on the Hawaiian Islands. Mauna Loa and Mauna Kea rise nearly 9 km from the Pacific floor. **Lava domes** are smaller than, and often occur on, lava shields. Individual peaks on Hawaii, such as Mauna Kea, are lava domes. **Lava cones** are even smaller. Mount Hamilton, Victoria, Australia is an example. **Lava mounds** bear no signs of craters. **Lava discs** are aberrant forms, examples of which are found in Victoria, Australia.

### Acid-lava volcanoes – lava domes

Acid lava, formed for instance of dacite or rhyolite or trachyte, is very viscous. It moves sluggishly and forms thick, steep-sided, dome-shaped extrusions. Volcanoes erupting acidic lava often explode, and even where extrusion takes place, it is often accompanied by some explosive activity so that the extrusions are surrounded by a low cone of ejecta. Indeed, the extrusion commonly represents the last phase in an explosive eruptive cycle.

Extrusions of acid lava take the form of various kinds of lava dome: cumulo-domes and tholoids, coulées, Peléean domes, and upheaved plugs (Figure

(a) Lava shield



(b) Lava dome



(c) Lava cone



(d) Lava mound



(e) Lava disc

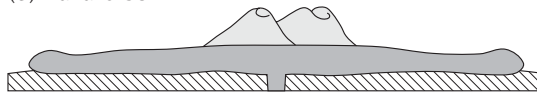


Figure 3.17 Types of basaltic volcano, not drawn to scale.

Source: Adapted from Ollier (1969, 21)

3.18). **Cumulo-domes** are isolated low lava domes that resemble upturned bowls (Figure 3.18a). The Puy Grand Sarcoui in the Auvergne, France, the mamelons of Réunion, in the Indian Ocean, and the tortas ('cakes') of the central Andes are examples. A larger example is Lassen Peak, California, which has a diameter of 2.5 km. **Tholoids**, although they sound like an alien race in a *Star Trek* episode, are cumulo-domes within large craters and derive their name from the Greek *tholos*, a 'domed building'. Their growth is often associated with *nuée ardente* eruptions, which wipe out towns unfortunate enough to lie in their paths. A tholoid sits in the crater of Mount Egmont, New Zealand. **Coulées** are dome-lava-flow hybrids. They form where thick extrusions ooze onto steep slopes and flow downhill (Figure 3.18b). The Chao lava in northern Chile is a huge



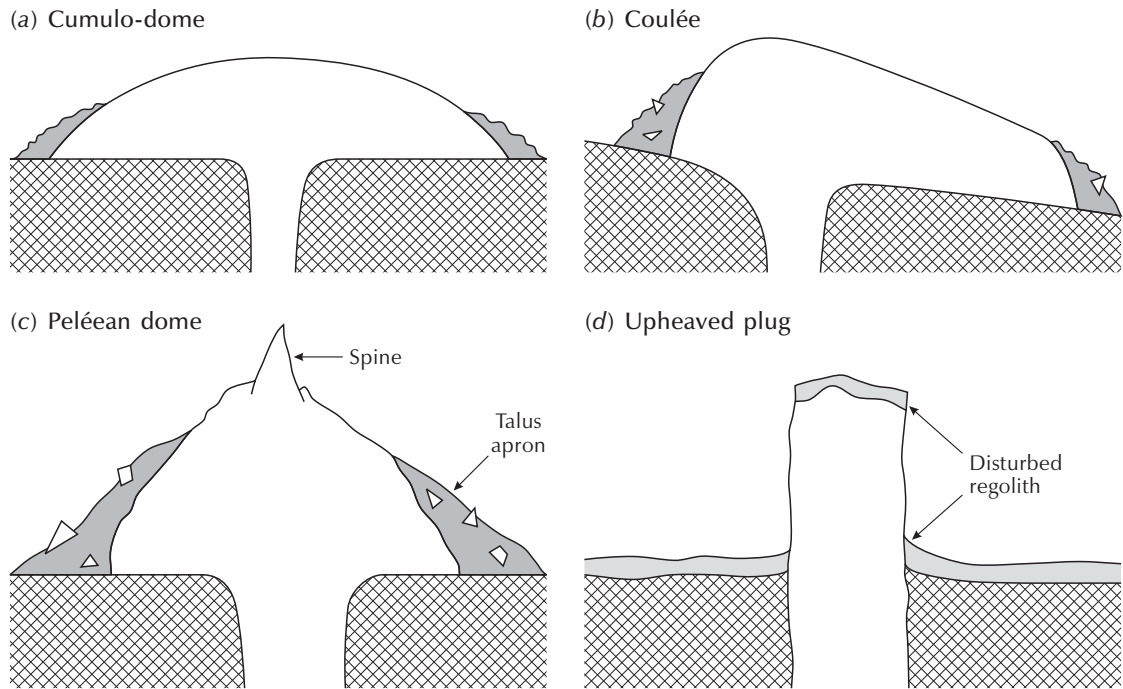


Figure 3.18 Lava domes. (a) Cumulo-dome. (b) Coulée. (c) Peléean dome. (d) Upheaved plug. Not drawn to scale. Source: Adapted from Blake (1989)

example with a lava volume of  $24 \text{ km}^3$ . **Peléean domes** (Figure 3.18c) are typified by Mont Pelée, Martinique, a lava dome that grew in the vent of the volcano after the catastrophic eruption that occurred on 8 May 1902, when a *nuée ardente* destroyed Saint Pierre. The dome is craggy, with lava spines on the top, and a collar of debris around the sides. **Upheaved plugs**, also called **plug domes** or **pitons**, are produced by the most viscous of lavas. They look like a monolith poking out of the ground, which is what they are (Figure 3.18d). Some upheaved plugs bear a topping of country rock. Two upheaved plugs with country-rock cappings appeared on the Usu volcano, Japan, the first in 1910, which was named Meiji Sin-Zan or 'Roof Mountain', and the second in 1943, which was named Showa Sin-Zan or 'New Roof Mountain'.

## Calderas

**Calderas** are depressions in volcanic areas or over volcanic centres (Figure 3.19). They are productions of vast explosions or tectonic sinking, sometimes after an eruption. An enormous caldera formed in Yellowstone National Park, USA, some 600,000 years ago when some  $1,000 \text{ km}^3$  of pyroclastic material was erupted leaving a depression some 70 km across. Another large caldera was formed some 74,000 years ago in northern Sumatra by a massive volcanic eruption, the ash from which was deposited 2,000 km away in India. The Toda caldera is about 100 km long and 30 km wide and now filled by Lake Toba. It is a **resurgent caldera**, which means that, after the initial subsidence amounting to about 2 km, the central floor has slowly risen again to produce Samosir Island. Large silicic calderas commonly occur in clusters or complexes.

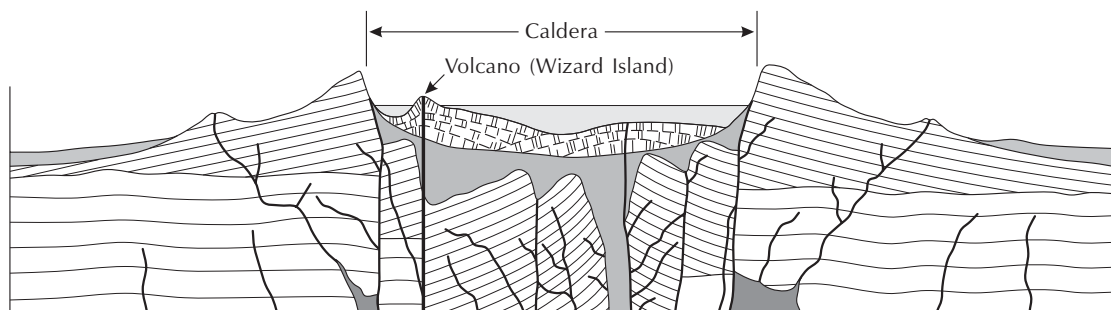


Figure 3.19 Crater Lake caldera, Oregon, USA.  
Source: Adapted from MacDonald (1972, 301)

A case is the caldera complex found in the San Juan volcanic field, south-western Colorado, USA, which contains at least eighteen separate calderas between 22 and 30 million years old. Ignimbrites from these calderas cover 25,000 km<sup>2</sup>.

### Indirect effects of volcanoes

Volcanoes have several indirect impacts of landforms. Two important effects are **drainage modification** and **relief inversion**.

Radial drainage patterns often develop on volcanoes, and the pattern may last well after the volcano has been eroded. In addition, volcanoes bury pre-existing landscapes under lava and, in doing so, may radically alter the drainage patterns. A good example is the diversion of the drainage in the central African rift valley (Figure 3.20). Five million years ago, volcanoes associated with the construction of the Virunga Mountains impounded Lake Kivu. Formerly, drainage was northward to join the Nile by way of Lake Albert (Figure 3.20a). When stopped from flowing northwards by the Virunga Mountains, the waters eventually overflowed Lake Kivu and spilled southwards at the southern end of the rift through the Ruzizi River into Lake Tanganyika (Figure 3.20b). From Lake Tanganyika, the waters reached the River Congo through the River Lukuga, and so were diverted from the Mediterranean via the Nile to the Atlantic via the Congo (King 1942, 153–4).

It is not uncommon for lava flows to set in train a sequence of events that ultimately inverts the relief – valleys become hills and hills become valleys. Lava tends to flow down established valleys. Erosion then reduces the adjacent hillside leaving the more resistant volcanic rock as a ridge between two valleys. Such inverted relief is remarkably common (Pain and Ollier 1995). On Eigg, a small Hebridean island in Scotland, a Tertiary rhyolite lava flow originally filled a river valley eroded into older basalt lavas. The rhyolite is now preserved on the Scur of Eigg, an imposing 400-m high and 5-km long ridge standing well above the existing valleys.

### SUMMARY

Geological processes and geological structures stamp their marks on, or in many cases under, landforms of all sizes. Tectonic processes, unaided by denudational processes, produce such tectonic landforms as volcanoes. Tectonic predesign is the idea that many landforms are adjusted to underlying tectonic features, and especially joint patterns. Structural landforms form when the agencies of denudation exploit 'weak spots' in rocks, including joints and softer beds. Plate tectonic processes dictate the gross landforms of the Earth – continents, oceans, mountain ranges, large plateaux, and so on – and many smaller landforms. Diastrophic forces fold, fault, lift up, and cast down rocks. Orogeny is a

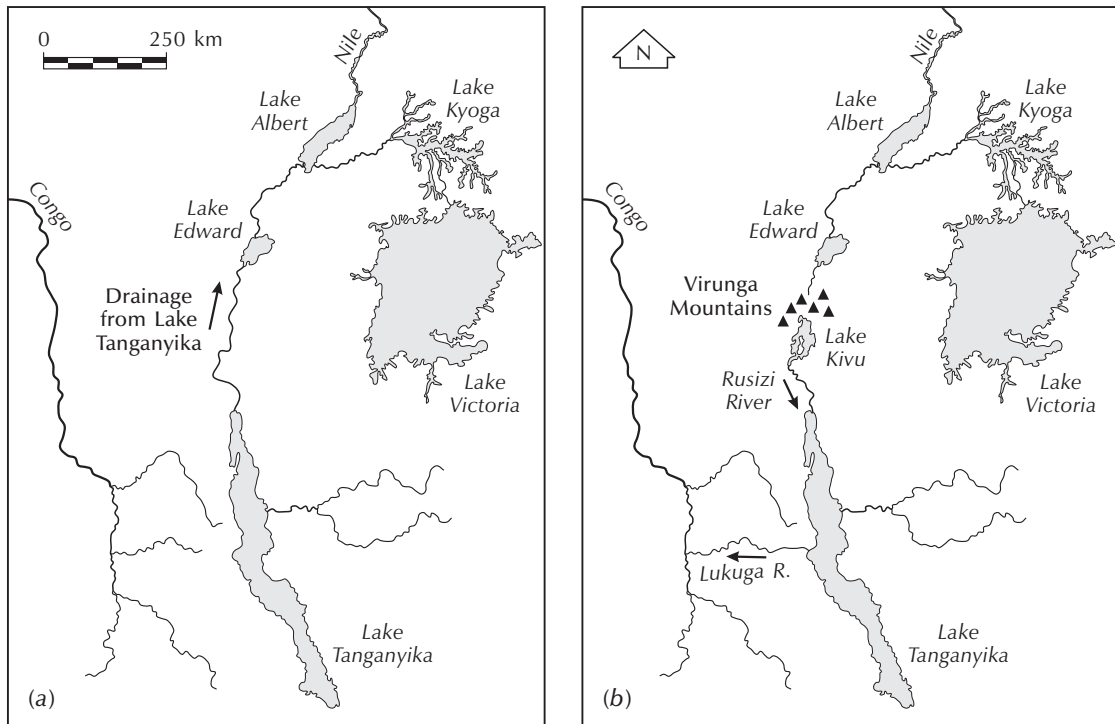


Figure 3.20 Drainage diversion by volcanoes in central Africa. (a) The Nile drainage through the Western Rift before the eruptions that built the Virunga Mountains. (b) The Nile drainage after the formation of the Virunga Mountains.

Source: Adapted from Francis (1993, 366)

diastrophic process that builds mountains. Epeirogeny is a diastrophic process that upheaves or depresses large areas of continental cores without causing much folding or faulting. The boundaries of tectonic plates are crucial to understanding many large-scale landforms: divergent boundaries, convergent boundaries, and transform boundaries are associated with characteristic topographic features. Incipient divergent boundaries may produce rift valleys. Mature divergent boundaries on continents are associated with passive margins and great escarpments. Convergent boundaries produce volcanic arcs, oceanic trenches, and mountain belts (orogens). Transform boundaries produce fracture zones with accompanying strike-slip faults and other features.

Plutonic and hypabyssal forces intrude molten rock (magma) into the deep and near-surface layers of the Earth respectively, while volcanic forces extrude it onto the Earth's surface. Mantle plumes, which normally grow from the core–mantle boundary, appear to direct many plate tectonic processes. Volcanic and plutonic landforms arise from the injection of magma into rocks and the effusion and ejection of magma above the ground. Intrusions include batholiths and lopoliths, dykes and sills, laccoliths and phacoliths, all of which may express themselves in topographic features (hills, basins, domes, and so on). Extrusions and ejections produce volcanoes of various types, which are tectonic landforms.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 Explain the landforms associated with active margins.**
  - 2 Explain the landforms associated with passive margins.**
  - 3 Examine the factors that determine the major relief features of the Earth's surface.**
- 

## FURTHER READING

Burbank, D. W. and Anderson, R. S. (2001) *Tectonic Geomorphology: A Frontier in Earth Science*. Malden, Mass.: Blackwell Science.

A detailed and insightful discussion of one of geomorphology's latest developments, but not easy for trainee geomorphologists.

Godard, A., Lagasquie, J.-J., and Lageat, Y. (2001) *Basement Regions*. Translated by Yanni Gunnell. Heidelberg: Springer.

An insight into modern French geomorphology.

Huggett, R. J. (1997) *Environmental Change: The Evolving Ecosphere*. London: Routledge.

You may find some of the material in here of use – I did!

Ruddiman, W. F. (ed.) (1997) *Tectonic Uplift and Climatic Change*. New York: Plenum Press.

A detailed account of the connections between tectonics, weathering, and climate.

Summerfield, M. A. (ed.) (2000) *Geomorphology and Global Tectonics*, pp. 321–38. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

Not easy for the beginner, but a dip into this volume will reward the student with an enticing peep at one of geomorphology's fast-growing fields.

# 4

## TECTONIC AND STRUCTURAL LANDFORMS II

---

The folding, faulting, and jointing of rocks creates many large and small landforms. This chapter looks at:

- How the folding of rocks produces scarps and vales and drainage patterns
  - How faults and joints in rocks act as sites of weathering and produce large features such as rift valleys
- 

### LANDFORMS ASSOCIATED WITH FOLDS

#### Flat beds

Stratified rocks may stay horizontal or they may be folded. Sedimentary rocks that remain more or less horizontal once the sea has retreated or after they have been uplifted form characteristic landforms (Table 4.1). If the beds stay flat and are not dissected by river valleys, they form large sedimentary plains (**sediplains**). Many of the flat riverine plains of the Channel Country, south-western Queensland, Australia, are of this type. If the beds stay flat but are dissected by river valleys, they form plateaux, plains, and stepped topography (Colour Plate 1, inserted between pp. 210–11). In sedimentary terrain, **plateaux** are extensive areas of low relief

that sit above surrounding lower land, from which they are isolated by scarps (see Figure 4.4, p. 97). They are normally crowned by a bed of hard rock called **caprock**. A **mesa** or **table** is a small plateau, but there is no fine dividing line between a mesa and a plateau. A **butte** is a very small plateau, and a mesa becomes a butte when the maximum diameter of its flat top is less than its height above the encircling plain. When eventually the caprock is eroded away, a butte may become an isolated tower, a jagged peak, or a rounded hill, depending on the caprock thickness. In **stepped topography**, scarps display a sequence of structural benches, produced by harder beds, and steep bluffs where softer beds have been eaten away (see Colour Plate 10, inserted between pp. 210–11).

Table 4.1 Landforms associated with sedimentary rocks

<i>Formative conditions</i>	<i>Landform</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Horizontal beds</i>		
Not dissected by rivers	Sediplain	Large sedimentary plain
Dissected by rivers with thin caprock	Plateau	Extensive flat area formed on caprock, surrounded by lower land and flanked by scarps
	Mesa or table	Small, steep-sided, flat-topped plateau
	Butte	Very small, steep-sided, flat-topped plateau
	Isolated tower, rounded peak, jagged hill, domed plateau	Residual forms produced when caprock has been eroded
	Stepped scarp	A scarp with many bluffs, debris slopes, and structural benches
	Ribbed scarp	A stepped scarp developed in thin-bedded strata
	Debris slope	A slope cut in bedrock lying beneath the bluff and covered with a sometimes patchy veneer of debris from it
Dissected by rivers with thick caprock	Bluffs, often with peculiar weathering patterns	Straight bluffs breached only by major rivers. Weathering patterns include elephant skin weathering, crocodile skin weathering, fretted surfaces, tafoni, large hollows at the bluff base
<i>Folded beds</i>		
Primary folds at various stages of erosion	Anticlinal hills or Jura-type relief	Folded surfaces that directly mirror the underlying geological structures
	Inverted relief	Structural lows occupy high areas (e.g. a perched syncline) and structural highs low areas (e.g. an anticlinal valley)
	Planated relief	Highly eroded folds
	Appalachian-type relief	Planated relief that is uplifted and dissected, leaving vestiges of the plains high in the relief
Differential erosion of folded sedimentary sequences	Ridge and valley topography	Terrain with ridges and valleys generally following the strike of the beds and so the pattern of folding (includes breached anticlines and domes)
	Cuesta	Ridge formed in gently dipping strata with an asymmetrical cross-section of escarpment and dip slope
	Homoclinal ridge or strike ridge	Ridge formed in moderately dipping strata with just about asymmetrical cross-section
	Hogback	Ridge formed in steeply dipping strata with symmetrical cross-section
	Escarpment (scarp face, scarp slope)	The side of a ridge that cuts across the strata. Picks out lithological variations in the strata
	Dip slope	The side of a ridge that accords with the dip of the strata
	Flatiron (revet crag)	A roughly triangular facet produced by regularly spaced streams eating into a dip slope or ridge (especially a cuesta or homoclinal ridge)

Source: Partly after discussion in Twidale and Campbell (1993, 187–211)

### Folded beds

**Anticlines** are arches in strata, while **synclines** are troughs (Figure 4.1). In **recumbent anticlines**, the beds are folded over. **Isoclinal folding** occurs where a series of overfolds are arranged such that their limbs dip in the same direction. **Monoclines** are the simple folds in which beds are flexed from one level to another. An example is the Isle of Wight monocline, England, which runs from east to west across the island with Cretaceous rocks sitting at a lower level to the north than to the south. In nearly all cases, monoclines are very asymmetrical anticlines with much elongated arch and trough limbs. Anticlines, monoclines, and synclines form through shearing or tangential or lateral pressures applied to sedimentary rocks. **Domes**, which may be regarded as double anticlines, and **basins**, which may be regarded as double synclines, are formed if additional forces come from other directions. Domes are also termed **periclines**. An example is the Chaldon pericline in Dorset, England, in which rings of progressively younger rocks – Wealden Beds, Upper Greensand, and Chalk – outcrop around a core of Upper Jurassic Portland and Purbeck beds. Domed structures also form where the crust is thrust

upwards, although these forms are usually simpler than those formed by more complex pressure distributions. Domes are found, too, where plugs of light material, such as salt, rise through the overlying strata as **diapirs**.

Folds may be symmetrical or asymmetrical, open or tight, simple or complex. Relief formed directly by folds is rare, but some **anticlinal hills** do exist. The 11-km long Mount Stewart–Halcombe anticline near Wellington, New Zealand, is formed in Late Pleistocene sediments of the coastal plain. It has an even crest, the surfaces of both its flanks run parallel to the dip of the underlying beds (Box 4.1), and its arched surface replicates the fold (Ollier 1981, 59). Even anticlinal hills exposed by erosion are not that common, although many anticlinal hills in the Jura Mountains remain barely breached by rivers.

The commonest landforms connected with folding are **breached anticlines** and **breached domes**. This is because once the crest of an anticline (or the top of a dome) is exposed, it is subject to erosion. The strike ridges on each side tend to be archetypal dip and scarp slopes, with a typical drainage pattern, and between the streams that cross the strike, the dipping strata have the characteristic

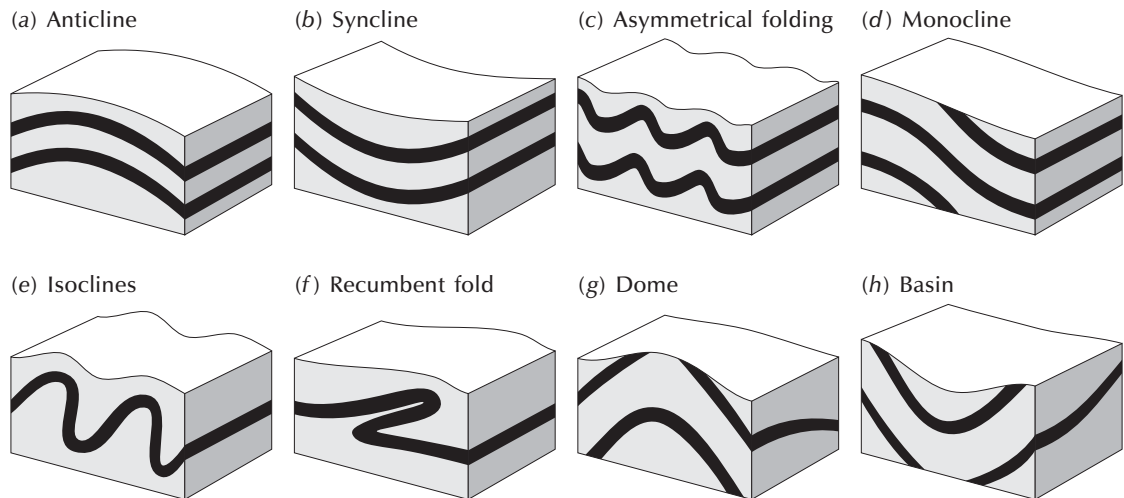


Figure 4.1 Structures formed in folded strata.



**Box 4.1****DIP, STRIKE, AND PLUNGE**

In tilted beds, the bedding planes are said to **dip**. The dip or true dip of a bed is given as the maximum angle between the bed and the horizontal (Figure 4.2a). The **strike** is the direction at right angles to the dip measured as an azimuth (compass direction) in the horizontal plane.

An anticlinal axis that is tilted is said to **pitch** or **plunge** (Figure 4.2b). The angle of plunge is the angle between the anticlinal axis and a horizontal plane. Plunging anticlines can be thought of as elongated domes. Synclinal axes may also plunge.

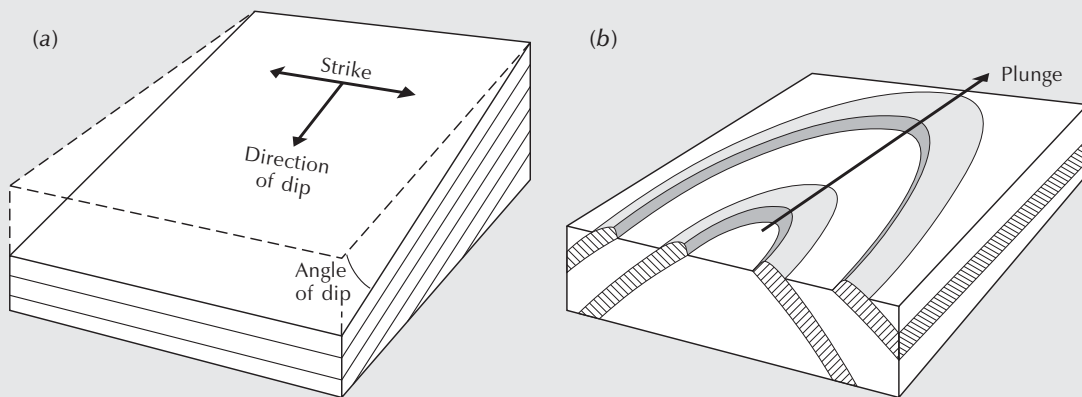


Figure 4.2 Terms relating to sedimentary structures. (a) Dip and strike. (b) Plunge.

forms of **flatirons**, which are triangular facets with their bases parallel to the strike and their apices pointing up the dip of the rock. The strike ridges are very long where the folds are horizontal, but they form concentric rings where the folds form a dome. The scarp and vale sequence of the Kentish Weald, England, is a classic case of a breached anticline (Figure 4.3). Structural basins may be surrounded by strike ridges, with the flatirons pointing in the opposite direction.

Where strata of differing resistance are inclined over a broad area, several landforms develop according to the dip of the beds (Figure 4.4). **Cuestas** form in beds dipping gently, perhaps up to 5 degrees. They are asymmetrical forms characterized by an **escarpment** or **scarp**, which normally forms

steep slopes of cliffs, crowned by more resistant beds, and a **dip slope**, which runs along the dip of the strata. **Homoclinal ridges**, or **strike ridges**, are only just asymmetrical and develop in more steeply tilted strata with a dip between 10 and 30 degrees. **Hogbacks** are symmetrical forms that develop where the strata dip very steeply at 40 degrees plus. They are named after the Hog's Back, a ridge of almost vertically dipping chalk in the North Downs, England.

On a larger scale, large warps in the ground surface form **major swells** about 1,000 km across. In Africa, eleven basins, including the Congo basin, Sudan basin, and Karoo basin, are separated by raised rims and major faults.

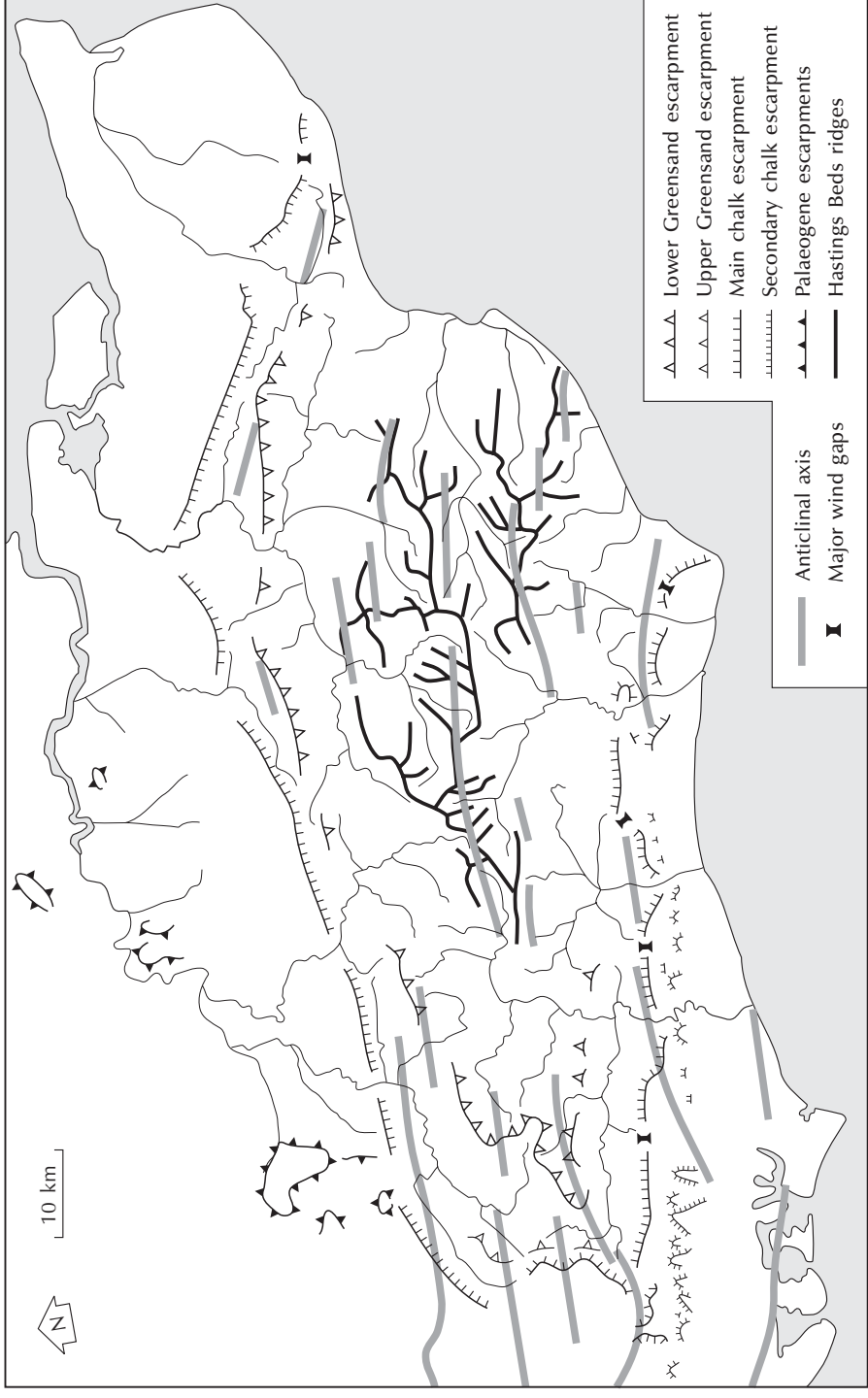


Figure 4.3 Some structurally influenced topographic features in south-east England.  
 Source: Adapted from Jones (1981, 38)

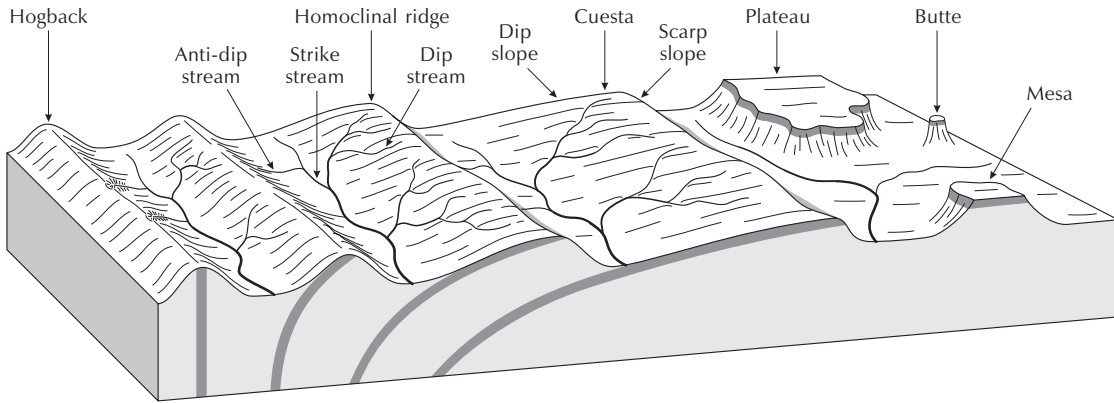


Figure 4.4 Landforms associated with dipping and horizontal strata – cuesta, homoclinal or strike ridge, hogback, butte, mesa, and plateau. The chief streams found in landscapes with dipping strata – strike streams, anti-dip streams, and dip streams – are shown. Notice that a cuesta consists of a dip slope and a steeper escarpment or scarp slope. The black band represents a hard rock formation that caps the butte, mesa, and plateau.

### Folds, rivers, and drainage patterns

Individual streams were once described according to their relationship with the initial surface upon which they developed. A **consequent stream** flowed down, and was a consequence of, the slope of the presumed original land surface. Streams that developed subsequently along lines of weakness, such as soft strata or faults running along the strike of the rocks, were called **subsequent streams**. Subsequent streams carved out new valleys and created new slopes drained by **secondary consequent** or **resequent streams**, which flowed in the same direction as the consequent stream, and **obsequent streams**, which flowed in the opposite direction. This nomenclature is defunct, since it draws upon a presumed time-sequence in the origin of different streams. In reality, the entire land area is drained from the start, and it is patently not the case that some parts remain undrained until main drainage channels have evolved.

Modern stream nomenclature rests upon structural control of drainage development (Figure 4.4). In regions where a sequence of strata of differing resistance is tilted, streams commonly develop along the strike. **Strike streams** gouge out strike valleys,

which are separated by strike ridges. Tributaries to the strike streams enter almost at right angles. Those that run down the dip slope are called **dip streams** and those that run counter to the dip slope are called **anti-dip streams**. The length of dip and anti-dip streams depends upon the angle of dip. Where dip is gentle, dip streams are longer than anti-dip streams. Where the dip is very steep, as in hogbacks, the dip streams and anti-dip streams will be roughly the same length, but often the drainage density is higher on the anti-dip slope and the contours are more crenulated because the anti-dip streams take advantage of joints in the hard stratum while dip streams simply run over the surface.

Most stream networks are adapted to regional slope and geological structures, picking out the main fractures in the underlying rocks. The high degree of conformity between stream networks and geological structure is evident in the seven chief drainage patterns (Morisawa 1985), although an eighth category – **irregular** or **complex drainage**, which displays no unambiguous pattern – could be added, as could a ninth – **deranged drainage**, which forms on newly exposed land, such as that exposed beneath a retreating ice sheet, where there is almost no structural or bedrock control and

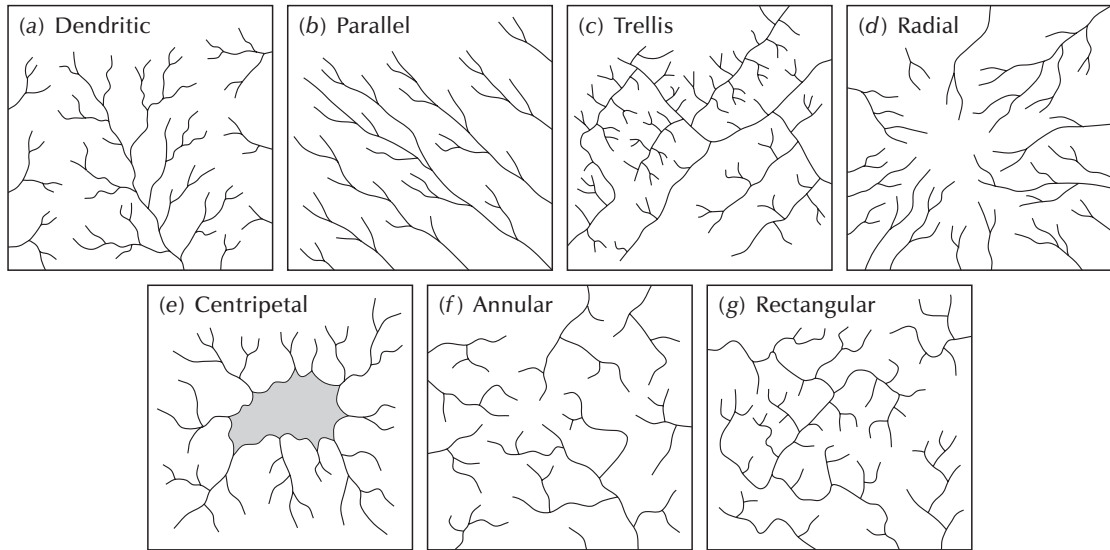


Figure 4.5 Drainage patterns controlled by structure or slope.  
 Source: After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 342)

drainage is characterized by irregular stream courses with short tributaries, lakes, and swamps. Figure 4.5 shows the major types of drainage pattern and their relationship to structural controls:

- 1 **Dendritic drainage** has a spreading, tree-like pattern with an irregular branching of tributaries in many directions and at almost any angle. It occurs mostly on horizontal and uniformly resistant strata and unconsolidated sediments and on homogeneous igneous rocks where there are no structural controls. Pinnate drainage, which is associated with very steep slopes, is a special dendritic pattern wherein the tributaries are more or less parallel and join the main stream at acute angles.
- 2 **Parallel drainage** displays regularly spaced and more or less parallel main streams with tributaries joining at acute angles. Parallel dip streams dominate the pattern. It develops where strata are uniformly resistant and the regional slope is marked, or where there is strong structural control exerted by a series of closely spaced faults, monoclines, or isoclines.
- 3 **Trellis drainage** has a dominant drainage direction with a secondary direction parallel to it, so that primary tributaries join main streams at right angles and secondary tributaries run parallel to the main streams. It is associated with alternating bands of hard and soft dipping or folded beds or recently deposited and aligned glacial debris. Fold mountains tend to have trellis drainage patterns. An example is the Appalachian Mountains, USA, where alternating weak and strong strata have been truncated by stream erosion.
- 4 **Radial drainage** has streams flowing outwards in all directions from a central elevated tract. It is found on topographic domes, such as volcanic cones and other sorts of isolated conical hills. On a large scale, radial drainage networks form on rifted continental margins over mantle plumes, which create lithospheric domes (Cox 1989; Kent 1991). A postulated Deccan plume beneath India caused the growth of a topographic dome, the eastern half of which is now gone (Figure 4.6a). Most of the rivers rise close to the west coast and drain eastwards into the Bay of Bengal,

except those in the north, which drain north-eastwards into the Ganges, and a few that flow westwards or south-westwards (possibly along failed rift arms). Mantle plumes beneath southern Brazil and southern Africa would account for many features of the drainage patterns in those regions (Figure 4.6b–c).

- 5 **Centripetal drainage** has all streams flowing towards the lowest central point in a basin floor. It occurs in calderas, craters, dolines, and tectonic basins. A large area of internal drainage lies on the central Tibetan Plateau.
- 6 **Annular drainage** has main streams arranged in a circular pattern with subsidiary streams lying at right angles to them. It evolves in a breached or dissected dome or basin in which erosion exposes concentrically arranged hard and soft bands of rock. An example is found in the Woolhope Dome in Hereford and Worcester, England.
- 7 **Rectangular drainage** displays a perpendicular network of streams with tributaries and main streams joining at right angles. It is less regular than trellis drainage, and is controlled by joints and faults. Rectangular drainage is common along the Norwegian coast and in portions of the Adirondack Mountains, USA. Angulate drainage is a variant of rectangular drainage and occurs where joints or faults join each other at acute or obtuse angles rather than at right angles.

Recent investigations by Adrian E. Scheidegger reveal a strong **tectonic control** on drainage lines in some landscapes. In eastern Nepal, joint orientations, which strike consistently east to west, in large measure determine the orientation of rivers (Scheidegger 1999). In south-western Ontario, Canada, the Proterozoic basement (Canadian Shield), which lies under Pleistocene glacial sediments, carries a network of buried bedrock channels. The orientation of these channels shows a statistically significant relationship with the orientation of regional bedrock joints that formed in response to the mid-continent stress field. Postglacial river valleys in the area are also orientated in a similar

direction to the bedrock joints. Both the bedrock channels and modern river channels bear the hallmarks of tectonically pre-designed landforms (Eyles and Scheidegger 1995; Eyles *et al.* 1997; Hantke and Scheidegger 1999).

### Anomalous drainage patterns

Anomalous drainage bucks structural controls, flowing across geological and topographic units. A common anomalous pattern is where a major stream flows across a mountain range when just a short distance away is an easier route. In the Appalachian Mountains, north-east USA, the structural controls are aligned south-west to north-east but main rivers, including the Susquehanna, run north-west to south-east. Such **transverse drainage** has prompted a variety of hypotheses: diversion, capture or piracy, antecedence, superimposition, stream persistence, and valley impression.

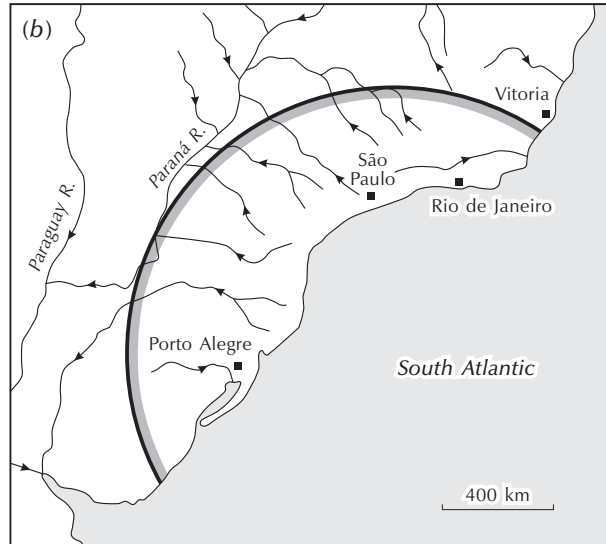
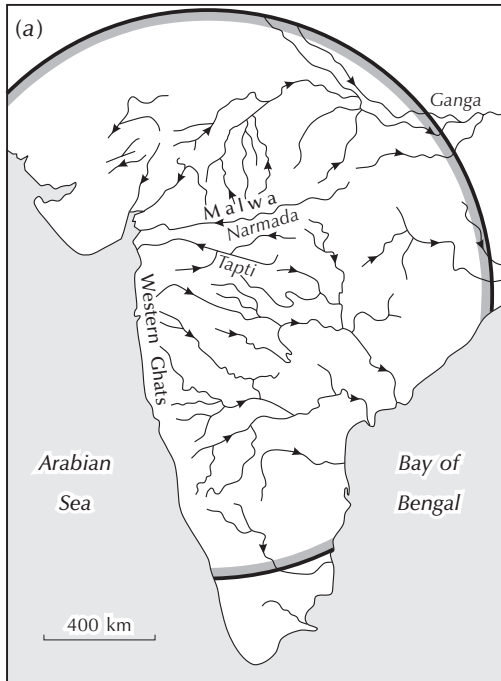
### Diverted rivers

Glacial ice, uplifted fault blocks, gentle folding, and lava flows may all cause major **river diversions**. Glacial ice is the most common agent of river diversions. Where it flows across or against the regional slope of the land, the natural drainage is blocked and proglacial or ice-dammed marginal lakes grow. Continental diversion of drainage took place during the last glaciation across northern Eurasia (Figure 4.7; cf. p. 232).

The Murray River was forced to go around the Cadell Fault Block, which was uplifted in the Late Pleistocene near Echuca, Victoria, Australia (Figure 4.8a). The Diamantina River, north-west Queensland, Australia, was diverted by Pleistocene uplift along the Selwyn Upwarp (Figure 4.8b). Faults may also divert drainage (see p. 106).

### Captured rivers

Trellis drainage patterns, which are characteristic of folded mountain belts, result from the **capture** of strike streams by dip or anti-dip streams working



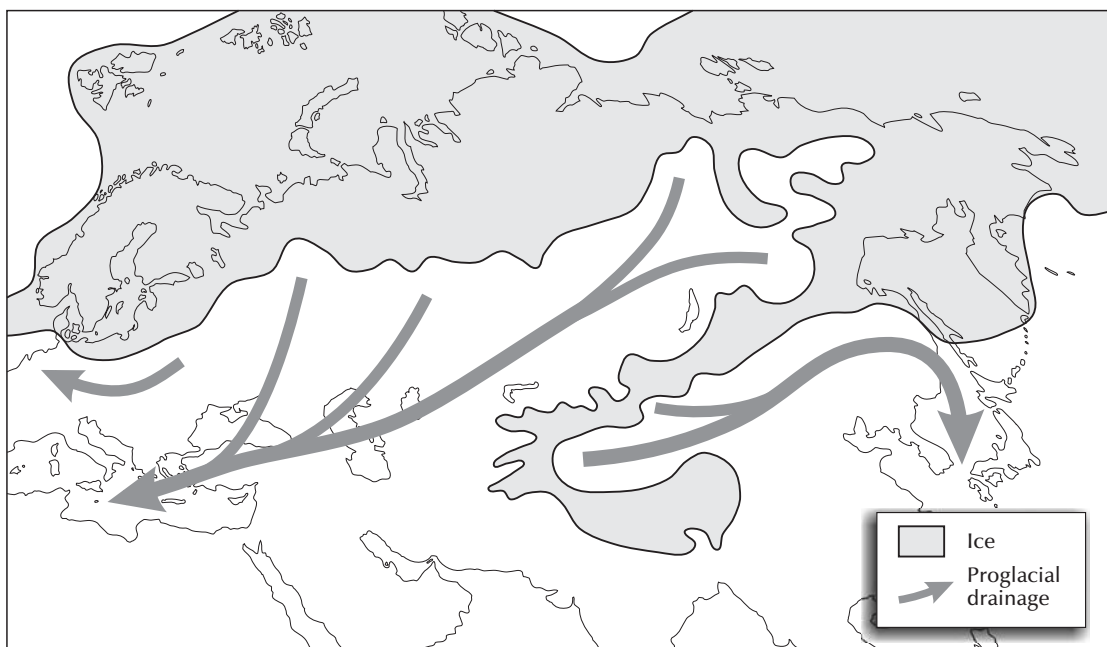


Figure 4.7 Proglacial drainage systems in northern Eurasia during the last glaciation.

Source: Adapted from Grosswald (1998)

headwards and breaching ridges or ranges. Capture is often shown by abrupt changes in stream course, or what are called **elbows of capture**.

#### Antecedent rivers

An **antecedent stream** develops on a land surface before uplift by folding or faulting occurs. When

uplift does occur, the stream is able to cut down fast enough to hold its existing course and carves out a gorge in a raised block of land. The River Brahmaputra in the Himalaya is probably an antecedent river, but proving its antecedence is difficult. The problem of proof applies to most suspected cases of antecedent rivers.

Figure 4.6 Drainage patterns influenced by mantle plumes. (a) The drainage pattern of peninsular India with the postulated Deccan plume superimposed. Most of the peninsula preserves dome-flank drainage. The Gulf of Cambay, Narmada, and Tapti systems exhibit rift-related drainage. (b) The drainage pattern of southern Brazil with superimposed plume. Dome-flank drainage is dominant except near Porto Alegre. (c) The drainage pattern in south-eastern and south-western Africa with the Paraná plume (left) and Karoo plume (right) superimposed. Rivers over the Paraná plume show an irregular dome-flank pattern drainage eastwards into the Kalahari. Notice that the Orange River gorge is formed where antecedent drainage has cut through younger uplift. Rivers over the Karoo plume display preserved dome-flank drainage west of the Drakensberg escarpment. The dotted line separates dome-flank drainage in the south from rift-related drainage in the north.

Source: Adapted from Cox (1989)



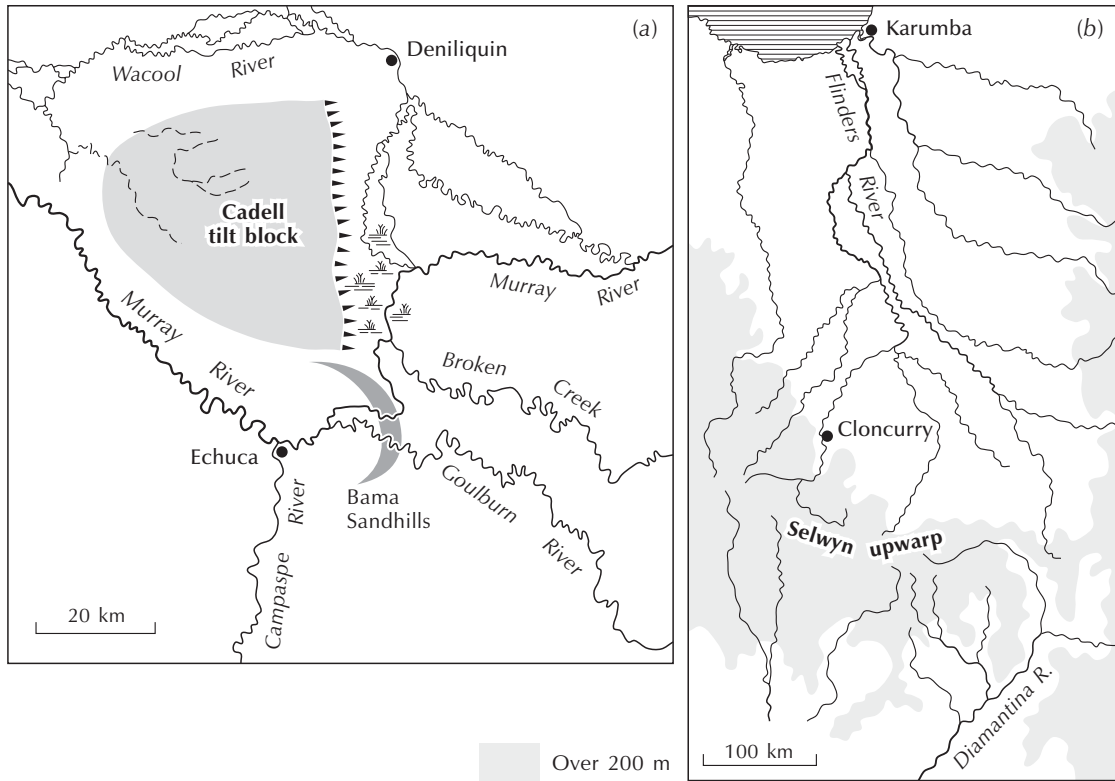


Figure 4.8 River diversions in Australia. (a) The diversion of the Murray River near Echuca, Victoria. (b) The diversion of the Diamantina River, northern Queensland, owing to the Selwyn Upwarp.

Source: After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 80, 346)

### Superimposed rivers

**Superimposed drainage** occurs when a drainage network established on one geological formation cuts down to, and is inherited by, a lower geological formation. The superimposed pattern may be discordant with the structure of the formation upon which it is impressed. A prime example comes from the English Lake District (Figure 4.9). The present radial drainage pattern is a response to the doming of Carboniferous, and possibly Cretaceous, limestones. The streams cut through the base of the Carboniferous limestone and into the underlying Palaeozoic folded metamorphic rock and granite. The radial drainage pattern has endured on the

much-deformed structure of the bedrock over which the streams now flow, and is anomalous with respect to their Palaeozoic base.

### Persistent rivers

Streams adjusted to a particular structure may, on downcutting, meet a different structure. A strike stream flowing around the snout of a plunging anticline, for example, may erode down a few hundred metres and be held up by a harder formation (Figure 4.10). The stream may then be diverted or, if it is powerful enough, incise a gorge in the resistant strata and form a breached snout.

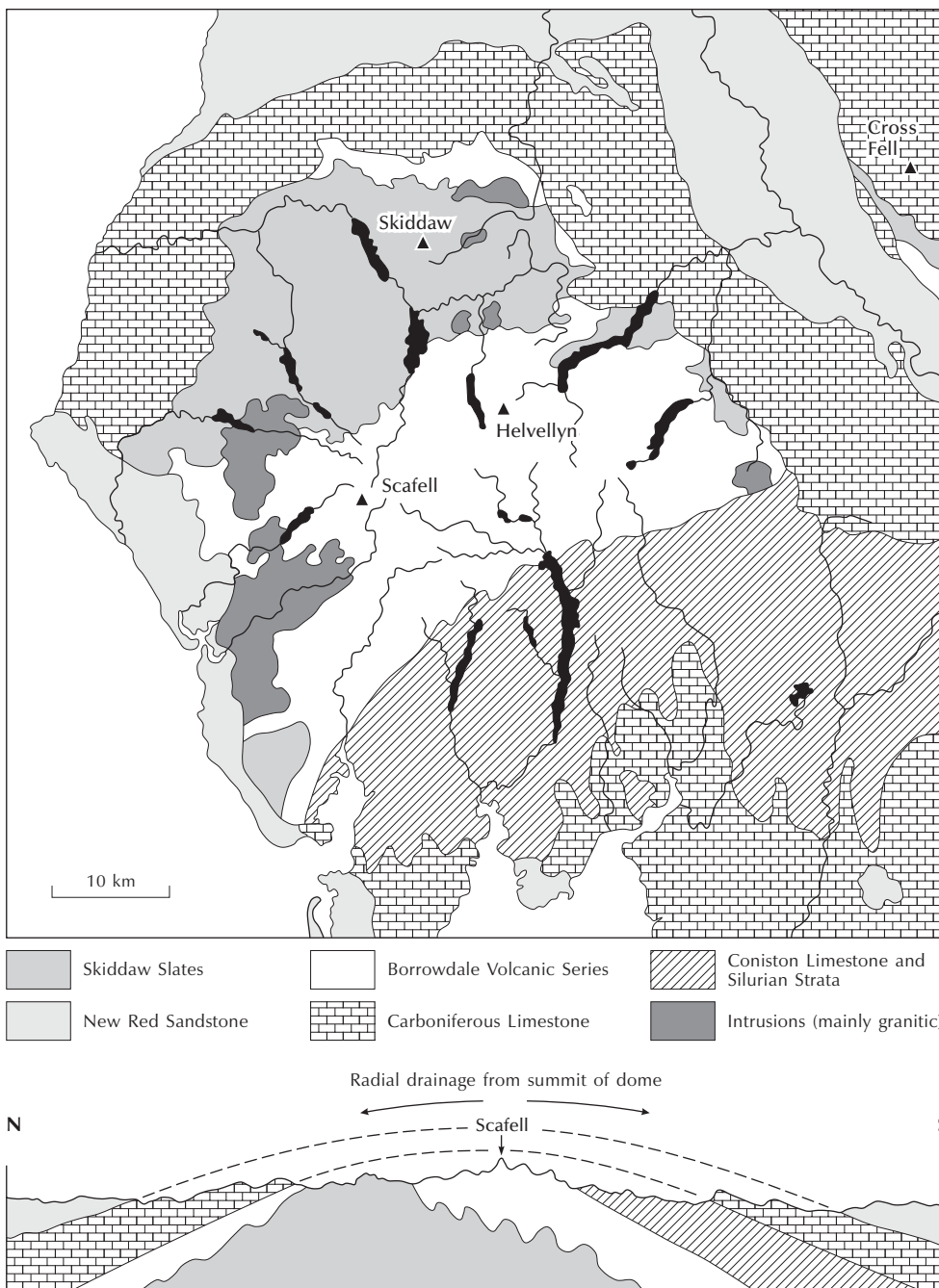


Figure 4.9 Superimposed drainage in the English Lake District.

Source: Adapted from Holmes 1965, 564)

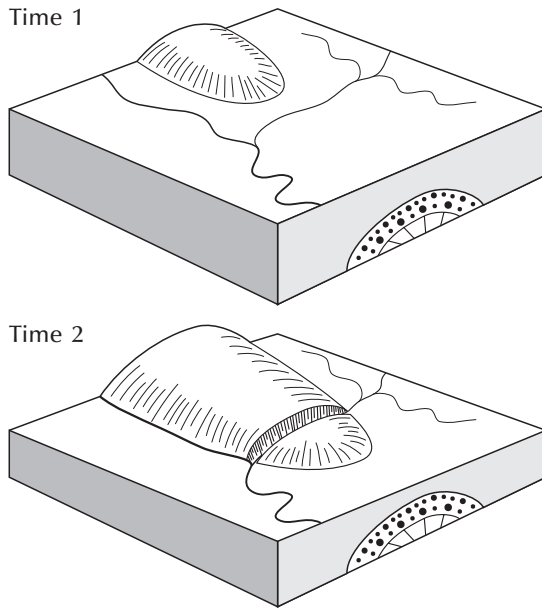


Figure 4.10 Gorge development in a snout of a resistant rock formation by stream persistence across a plunging anticline.

Source: After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 354)

## LANDFORMS ASSOCIATED WITH FAULTS AND JOINTS

Faults and joints are the two major types of fracture found in rocks. A **fault** is a fracture along which movement associated with an earthquake has taken

place, one side of the fault moving differentially to the other side. They are called **active faults** if movement was recent. Faults are commonly large-scale structures and tend to occur in fault zones rather than by themselves. A **joint** is a small-scale fracture along which no movement has taken place, or at least, no differential movement. Joints arise from the cooling of igneous rocks, from drying and shrinkage in sedimentary rocks, or, in many cases, from tectonic stress. Many fractures described as joints are in fact faults along which no or minute differential movement has taken place.

### Dip-slip faults

Many tectonic forms result directly from faulting. It is helpful to classify them according to the type of fault involved – dip-slip or normal faults and strike-slip faults and thrust faults (Figure 4.11). **Dip-slip faults** produce fault scarps, grabens, half-grabens, horsts, and tilted blocks. **Strike-slip faults** sometimes produce shutter ridges and fault scarps. **Thrust faults** tend to produce noticeable topographic features only if they are high-angle thrusts (Figure 4.11c).

### Fault scarps

The **fault scarp** is the commonest form to arise from faulting. Many fault scarps associated with faulting during earthquakes have been observed. The scarp is formed on the face of the upthrown

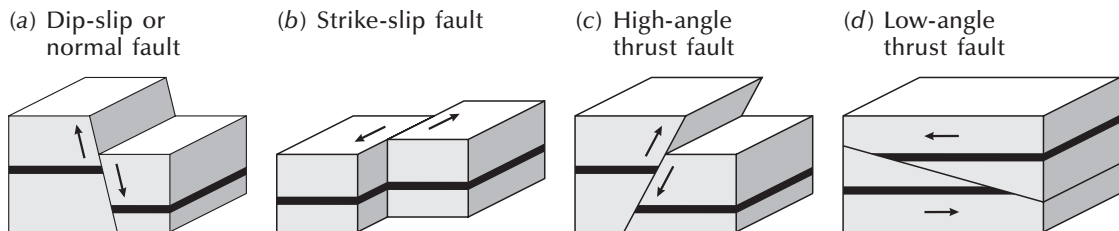


Figure 4.11 Faulted structures. (a) Normal fault. (b) Strike-slip fault. (c) High-angle reverse or thrust fault. (d) Low-angle thrust fault.

Source: Adapted from Ahnert (1998, 233)

block and overlooking the downthrown block. Erosion may remove all trace of a fault scarp but, providing that the rocks on either side of the fault line differ in hardness, the position of the fault is likely to be preserved by differential erosion. The erosion may produce a new scarp. Rather than being a fault scarp, this new landform is more correctly called a **fault-line scarp**. Once formed, faults are lines of weakness and movement along them often occurs again and again. Uplift along faults may produce prominent scarps that are dissected by streams. The ends of the spurs are 'sliced off' along the fault line to produce triangular facets. If the fault moves repeatedly, the streams are rejuvenated to form **wineglass** or **funnel valleys**. Some fault scarps occur singly, but many occur in clusters. Individual members of fault-scarp clusters may run side by side for long distances, or they run *en échelon* (offset but in parallel), or they may run in an intricate manner with no obvious pattern.

### Rift valleys, horsts, and tilt blocks

Crustal blocks are sometimes raised or lowered between roughly parallel faults without being subjected to tilting. The resulting features are called rift valleys and horsts. A **rift valley** or **graben** (after the German word for a ditch) is a long and narrow

valley formed by subsidence between two parallel faults (Figure 4.12a). Rift valleys are not true valleys (p. 193) and they are not all associated with linear depressions. Many rift valleys lie in zones of tension in the Earth's crust, as in the Great Rift Valley of East Africa, the Red Sea, and the Levant, which is the largest graben in the world. Grabens may be very deep, some in northern Arabia holding at least 10 km of alluvial fill. Rift valleys are commonly associated with volcanic activity and earthquakes. They form where the Earth's crust is being extended or stretched horizontally, causing steep faults to develop. Some rift valleys, such as the Rhine graben in Germany, are isolated, while others lie in graben fields and form many, nearly parallel structures, as in the Aegean extensional province of Greece.

A **half-graben** is bounded by a major fault only on one side (Figure 4.12b). This is called a listric (spoon-shaped) fault. The secondary or antithetic fault on the other side is normally a product of local strain on the hanging wall block. Examples are Death Valley in the Basin and Range Province of the USA, and the Menderes Valley, Turkey.

A **horst** is a long and fairly narrow upland raised by upthrust between two faults (Figure 4.13a). Examples of horsts are the Vosges Mountains, which lie west of the Rhine graben in Germany, and the Black Forest Plateau, which lies to the east of it.

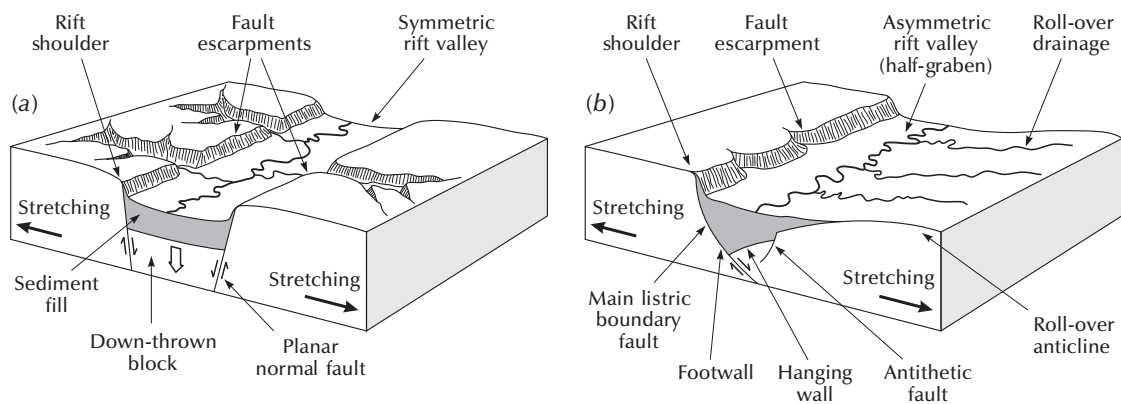
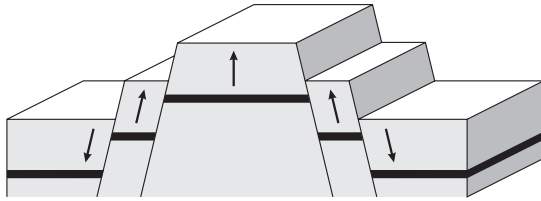


Figure 4.12 Down-faulted structures. (a) Graben. (b) Half-graben.

Source: After Summerfield (1991, 92)

(a) Horst with step faults



(b) Tilted block

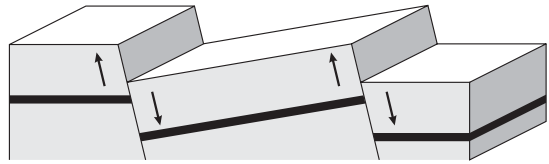


Figure 4.13 Up-faulted structures. (a) Horst. (b) Tilted block.

**Tilted** or **monoclinical blocks** are formed where a section of crust between two faults is tilted (Figure 4.13b). The tilting may produce mountains and intervening basins. In the Basin and Range Province of the western USA, these are called tilt-block mountains and tilt-block basins where they are the direct result of faulting.

### Dip-faults and drainage disruption

Fault scarps may disrupt drainage patterns in several ways. A fault-line lake forms where a fault scarp of sufficient size is thrown up on the downstream side of a stream. The stream is then said to be **beheaded**. Waterfalls form where the fault scarp is thrown up on the upstream side of a stream. Characteristic drainage patterns are associated with half-grabens. Back-tilted drainage occurs behind the footwall scarp related to the listric fault. Axial drainage runs along the fault axis, where lakes often form. **Roll-over drainage** develops on the roll-over section of the rift (Figure 4.12b).

## Strike-slip faults

### Shutter ridges and sag ponds

If movement occurs along a strike-slip fault in rugged country, the ridge crests are displaced in different directions on either side of the fault line. When movement brings ridge crests on one side of the fault opposite valleys on the other side, the

valleys are 'shut off'. The ridges are therefore called **shutter ridges** (Figure 4.14).

Where tensional stresses dominate strike-slip faults, subsidence occurs and long, shallow depressions or sags may form. These are usually a few tens of metres wide and a few hundred metres long, and they may hold sag ponds. Where compressional stresses dominate a strike-slip fault, ridges and linear and *en échelón* scarplets may develop.

### Offset drainage

Offset drainage is the chief result of strike-slip faulting. The classic example is the many streams that are offset across the line of the San Andreas Fault, California, USA (Figure 4.15).

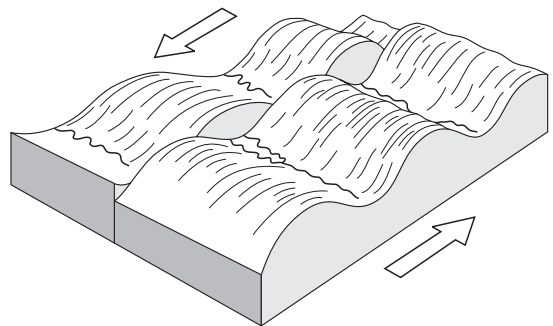


Figure 4.14 Shutter ridges along a strike-slip fault. Source: Adapted from Ollier (1981, 68)

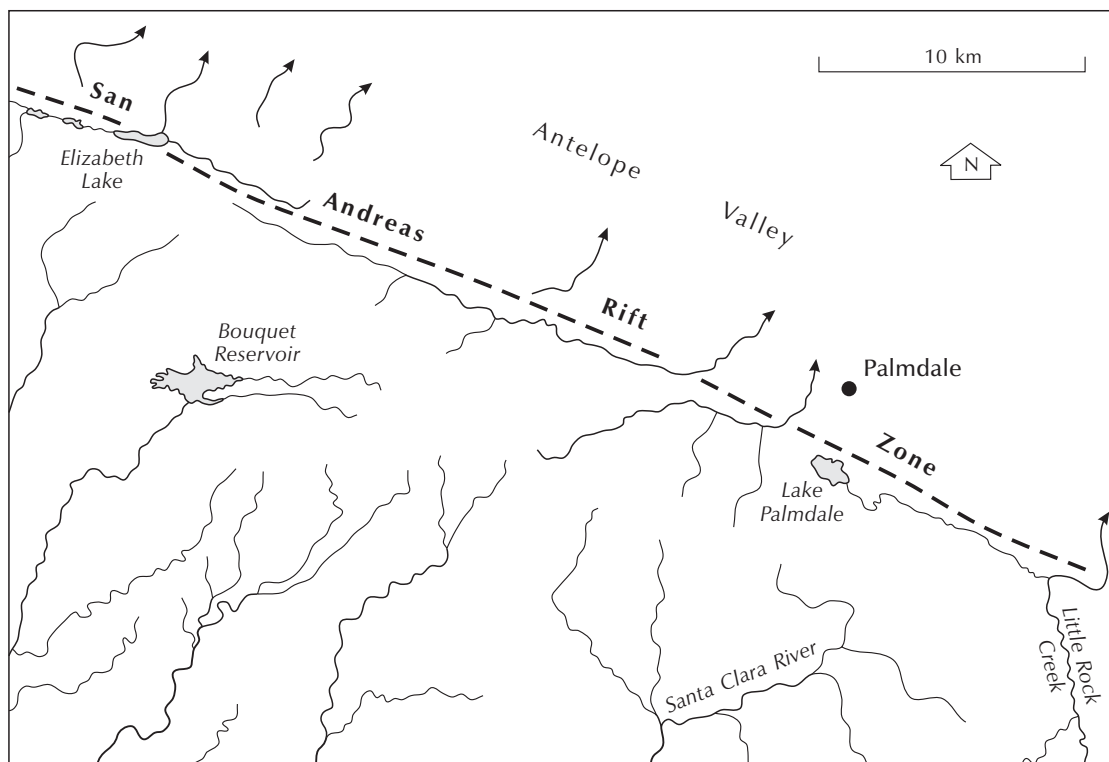


Figure 4.15 Offset drainage along the San Andreas Fault, California, USA.

### Lineaments

Any linear feature on the Earth's surface that is too precise to have arisen by chance is a **lineament**. Many lineaments are straight lines but some are curves. Faults are more or less straight lineaments, while island arcs are curved lineaments. Most lineaments are tectonic in origin. Air photography and remotely sensed images have greatly facilitated the mapping of lineaments.

At times, 'the search for lineaments verges on numerology, and their alleged significance can take on almost magical properties' (Ollier 1981, 90). Several geologists believe that two sets of lineaments are basic to structural and physiographic patterns the world over – a meridional and orthogonal set, and a diagonal set. In Europe, north–south linea-

ments include the Pennines in England, east–west lineaments include the Hercynian axes, and diagonal lineaments include the Caledonian axes (e.g. Affleck 1970). Lineaments undoubtedly exist, but establishing worldwide sets is difficult owing to continental drift. Unless continents keep the same orientation while they are drifting, which is not the case, the lineaments formed before a particular land mass began to drift would need rotating back to their original positions. In consequence, a worldwide set of lineaments with common alignments must be fortuitous. That is not to say that there is not a worldwide system of stress and strain that could produce global patterns of lineaments, but on a planet with a mobile surface its recognition is formidable.

## Joints

All rocks are fractured to some extent. A broad range of fractures exists, many of which split rock into cubic or quadrangular blocks. All **joints** are avenues of weathering and potential seats of erosion. The geomorphic significance of a set of joints depends upon many factors, including their openness, pattern and spacing, and other physical properties of the rock mass. Outcrops of resistant rocks such as granite may be reduced to plains, given time, because fractures allow water and therefore weathering to eat into the rock. If the granite has a high density of fractures, the many avenues of water penetration promote rapid rock decay that, if rivers are able to cut down and remove the weathering products, may produce a plain of low relief. This has happened on many old continental shields, as in the northern Eyre Peninsula, Australia. Even granite with a moderate density of fractures, spaced about 1 to 3 m apart, may completely decay given sufficient time, owing to water penetrating along the fractures and then into the rock blocks between the fractures through openings created by the weathering of mica and feldspar. The weathering of granite with moderately spaced joints produces distinctive landforms (Figure 4.16). Weathering of the joint-defined blocks proceeds fastest on the block corners, at an average rate on the edges, and slowest on the faces. This differential weathering leads to the rounding of the angular blocks to produce rounded kernels or **corestones** surrounded by weathered rock. The weathered rock or **grus** is easily eroded and once removed leaves behind a cluster of rounded boulders that is typical of many granite outcrops. A similar dual process of weathering along joints and grus removal operates in other plutonic rocks such as diorite and gabbro, and less commonly in sandstone and limestone. It also occurs in rocks with different fracture patterns, such as gneisses with well-developed cleavage or foliation, but instead of producing boulders it fashions slabs known as **penitent rocks**, **monk-stones**, or **tombstones**.

Another common feature of granite weathering is a bedrock platform extending from the edge of

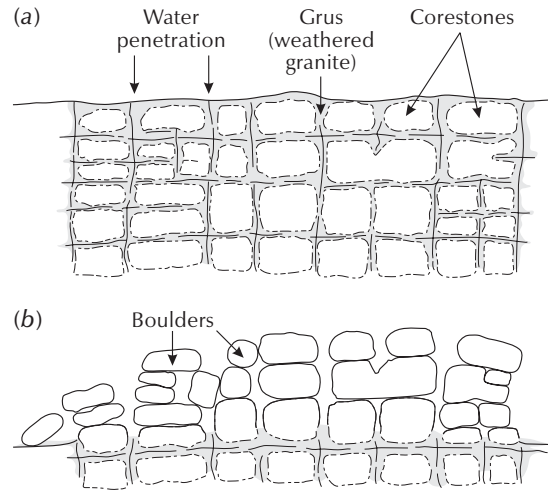


Figure 4.16 Weathering of jointed rocks in two stages. (a) Subsurface weathering occurs mainly along joints to produce corestones surrounded by grus (weathered granite). (b) The grus is eroded to leave boulders. Source: After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 234)

inselbergs (island mountains). These platforms appear to have formed by etching (p. 316). Inselbergs come in three varieties: **bornhardts**, which are dome-shaped hills; **nubbins** or **knolls**, which bear a scattering of blocks; and small and angular **castle koppies**. Nubbins and koppies appear to derive from bornhardts, which are deemed the basic form. Bornhardts occur in rocks with very few open joints (massive rocks), mainly granites and gneisses but also silicic volcanic rocks such as dacite, in sandstone (Uluru), and in conglomerate (e.g. the Olgas complex near Alice Springs, Australia); and there are equivalent forms – tower karst – that develop in limestone (p. 150). Most of them meet the adjacent plains, which are usually composed of the same rock as the inselbergs, at a sharp break of slope called the piedmont angle. One possible explanation for the formation of bornhardts invokes long-distance scarp retreat. A more plausible explanation, for which there is perhaps more field evidence, envisages a two-stage process, similar to the two-stage process envisaged in the formation of granite boulders. It assumes that the fracture density of a granite massif



has high and low compartments. In the first stage, etching acts more readily on the highly fractured compartment, tending to leave the less-fractured compartment dry and resistant to erosion. In the second stage, the grus in the more weathered, densely fractured compartment is eroded. This theory appears to apply to the bornhardts in or near the valley of the Salt River, south of Kellerberrin, Western Australia (Twidale *et al.* 1999). These bornhardts started as subsurface bedrock rises bulging into the base of a Cretaceous and earlier Mesozoic regolith. They were then exposed during the Early Cenozoic era as the rejuvenated Salt River

and its tributaries stripped the regolith. If the two-stage theory of bornhardt formation should be accepted, then the development of nubbins and koppies from bornhardts is explained by different patterns of subsurface weathering. Nubbins form through the decay of the outer few shells of sheet structures in warm and humid climates, such as northern Australia (Figure 4.17a). Koppies probably form by the subsurface weathering of granite domes whose crests are exposed at the surface as platforms (Figure 4.17b).

**Tors**, which are outcrops of rock that stand out on all sides from the surrounding slopes, are probably

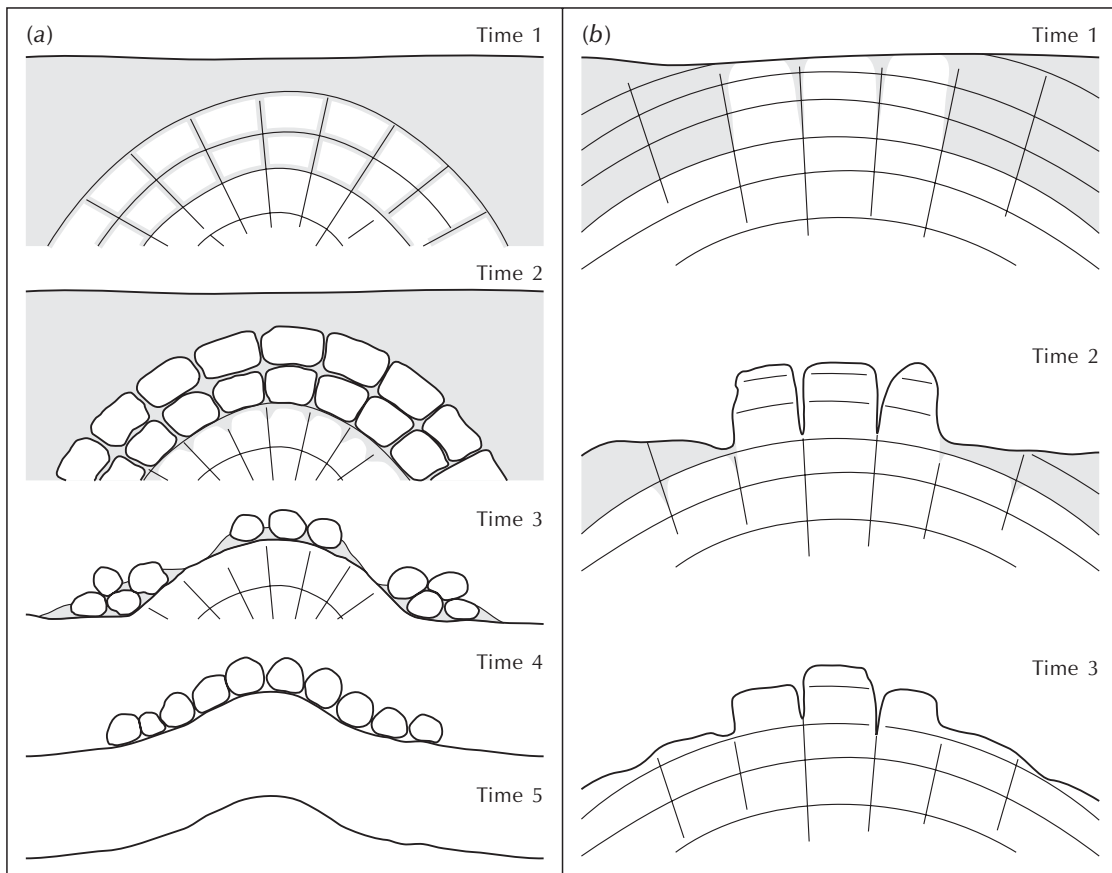


Figure 4.17 Formation of (a) nubbins and (b) castle koppies from bornhardts.

Source: After Twidale and Campbell (1993, 243, 244)

formed in a similar way to bornhardts. They are common on crystalline rocks, but are known to occur on other resistant rock types, including quartzites and some sandstones. Some geomorphologists claim that deep weathering is a prerequisite for tor formation. They envisage a period of intense chemical weathering acting along joints and followed by a period when environmental conditions are conducive to the stripping of the weathered material by erosion. Other geomorphologists believe that tors can develop without deep weathering under conditions where weathering and stripping operate at the same time on rocks of differing resistance.

### SUMMARY

Flat sedimentary beds and folded sedimentary rocks produce distinctive suites of structural landforms. Flat beds tend to form plateaux, mesas, and buttes. Folded beds produce a range of landforms including anticlinal hills, cuerdas, and hogbacks. They also have a strong influence on the courses of some rivers

---

### ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 Explain the landforms associated with folding.**
  - 2 Explain the structural landforms associated with rifting.**
  - 3 To what extent do landforms result from 'tectonic predesign'?**
- 

and patterns of drainage. Faults and joints are foci for weathering and produce large-scale landforms. Dip-slip faults may produce fault scarps, grabens, horsts, and tilted blocks. Strike-slip faults are sometimes connected with shutter ridges, sag ponds, and offset drainage. Joints have a strong influence on many landforms, including those formed on granite. Characteristic forms include bornhardts and tors.

### FURTHER READING

Ollier, C. D. (1981) *Tectonics and Landforms*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.

Old, given the pace of developments in the subject, but still a good read for the novice geomorphologist.

Sparks, B. W. (1971) *Rocks and Relief*. London: Longman.

Very old by almost any criterion, but worth a look.

Twidale, C. R. (1971) *Structural Landforms: Landforms Associated with Granitic Rocks, Faults, and Folded Strata* (An Introduction to Systematic Geomorphology, Vol. 5). Cambridge, Mass. and London: MIT Press.

An excellent account of structural controls on landforms that has not dated unduly.

Twidale, C. R. and Campbell, E. M. (1993) *Australian Landforms: Structure, Process and Time*. Adelaide: Gleneagles Publishing.

Although the emphasis is on Australia, general geomorphological issues are covered. Makes a refreshing change from the usual British and North American focus.

## **Part III**

# **PROCESS AND FORM**



## WEATHERING AND RELATED LANDFORMS

---

The decomposition and disintegration of rock is a primary process in the tectonic cycle and landscape evolution. This chapter covers:

- weathering by physical action
- weathering by chemical action
- weathering by biological action
- the global pattern of leaching and weathering
- weathering and buildings

Weathering in action: the decay of historic buildings

The Parthenon is a temple dedicated to the goddess Athena that was built 447–32 BC on the Acropolis of Athens, Greece. During its 2,500-year history, the Parthenon has suffered damage. The Elgin Marbles, for example, once formed an outside frieze. Firm evidence now suggests that continuous damage is being caused by air pollution and that substantial harm has already been inflicted in this way. For example, the inward-facing carbonate stone surfaces of the columns and the column capitals bear black crusts or coatings. These damaged areas are not significantly wetted by rain or rain runoff, although acid precipitation may do some harm. The coatings seem to be caused by sulphur dioxide uptake, in the presence of moisture, on the stone surface. Once on the moist surface, the sulphur dioxide is converted to sulphuric acid, which in turn results in the formation of a layer of gypsum. Researchers are undecided about the best way of retarding and remedying this type of air pollution damage.

---

Weathering is the breakdown of rocks by mechanical disintegration and chemical decomposition. Many rocks are formed under high temperatures and pressures deep in the Earth's crust. When they are exposed to the lower temperatures and pressures at the Earth's surface and come in contact with air, water, and organisms, they start to decay. The process tends to be self-reinforcing: weathering weakens the rocks and makes them more permeable, so rendering them more vulnerable to removal by agents of erosion, and the removal of weathered products exposes more rock to weathering. Living things have an influential role in weathering, attacking rocks and minerals through various biophysical and biochemical processes, most which are not well understood.

### MECHANICAL OR PHYSICAL WEATHERING PROCESSES

Mechanical processes reduce rocks into progressively smaller fragments. The disintegration increases the surface area exposed to chemical attack. The main processes of **mechanical weathering** are unloading, frost action, thermal stress caused by heating and cooling, swelling and shrinking due to wetting and drying, and pressures exerted by salt-crystal growth. A significant ingredient in mechanical weathering is **fatigue**, which is the repeated generation of stress, by for instance heating and cooling, in a rock. The result of fatigue is that the rock will fracture at a lower stress level than a non-fatigued specimen.

#### Unloading

When erosion removes surface material, the confining pressure on the underlying rocks is eased. The lower pressure enables mineral grains to move further apart, creating voids, and the rock expands or dilates. In mineshafts cut in granite or other dense rocks, the pressure release can cause treacherous explosive **rockbursts**. Under natural conditions, rock dilates at right-angles to an erosional surface (valley side, rock face, or whatever). The dilation

produces large or small cracks (fractures and joints) that run parallel to the surface. The dilation joints encourage rock falls and other kinds of mass movements. The small fractures and incipient joints provide lines of weakness along which individual crystals or particles may disintegrate and exfoliation may occur. **Exfoliation** is the spalling of rock sheets from the main rock body. In some rocks, such as granite, it may produce convex hills known as **exfoliation domes**.

#### Frost action

Water occupying the pores and interstices within a soil or rock body expands upon freezing by 9 per cent. This expansion builds up stress in the pores and fissures, causing the physical disintegration of rocks. **Frost weathering** or **frost shattering** breaks off small grains and large boulders, the boulders then being fragmented into smaller pieces. It is an important process in cold environments, where **freeze–thaw cycles** are common. Furthermore, if water-filled fissures and pores freeze rapidly at the surface, the expanding ice induces a hydrostatic or cryostatic pressure that is transmitted with equal intensity through all the interconnected hollow spaces to the still unfrozen water below. The force produced is large enough to shatter rocks, and the process is called **hydrofracturing** (Selby 1982, 16). It means that frost shattering can occur below the depth of frozen ground. In unsaturated soils, once the water is frozen, the water vapour circulating through the still open pores and fissures that comes into contact with the ice condenses and freezes. The result is that ice lenses grow that push up the overlying layers of soil. This process is called **frost heaving** and is common in glacial and periglacial environments (p. 240).

#### Heating and cooling

Rocks have low thermal conductivities, which means that they are not good at conducting heat away from their surfaces. When they are heated, the outer few millimetres become much hotter than

the inner portion and the outsides expand more than the insides. In addition, in rocks composed of crystals of different colours, the darker crystals warm up faster and cool down more slowly than the lighter crystals. All these thermal stresses may cause rock disintegration and the formation of rock flakes, shells, and huge sheets. Repeated heating and cooling causes a fatigue effect that enhances this **thermal weathering**. The production of sheets by thermal stress was once called exfoliation, but today exfoliation encompasses a wider range of processes that produce rock flakes and rock sheets of various kinds and sizes. Intense heat generated by bush fires and nuclear explosions assuredly may cause rock to flake and split. In India and Egypt, fire was for many years used as a quarrying tool. However, the everyday temperature fluctuations found even in deserts are well below the extremes achieved by local fires. Recent research points to chemical, not physical,

weathering as the key to understanding rock disintegration, flaking, and splitting. In the Egyptian desert near Cairo, for instance, where rainfall is very low and temperatures very high, fallen granite columns are more weathered on their shady sides than they are on the sides exposed to the Sun (Twidale and Campbell 1993, 95). Also, rock disintegration and flaking occur at depths where daily heat stresses would be negligible. Current opinion thus favours moisture, which is present even in hot deserts, as the chief agent of rock decay and rock breakdown, under both humid and arid conditions.

### Wetting and drying

Some **clay minerals** (Box 5.1), including smectite and vermiculite, swell upon wetting and shrink when they dry out. Materials containing these clays,

#### Box 5.1

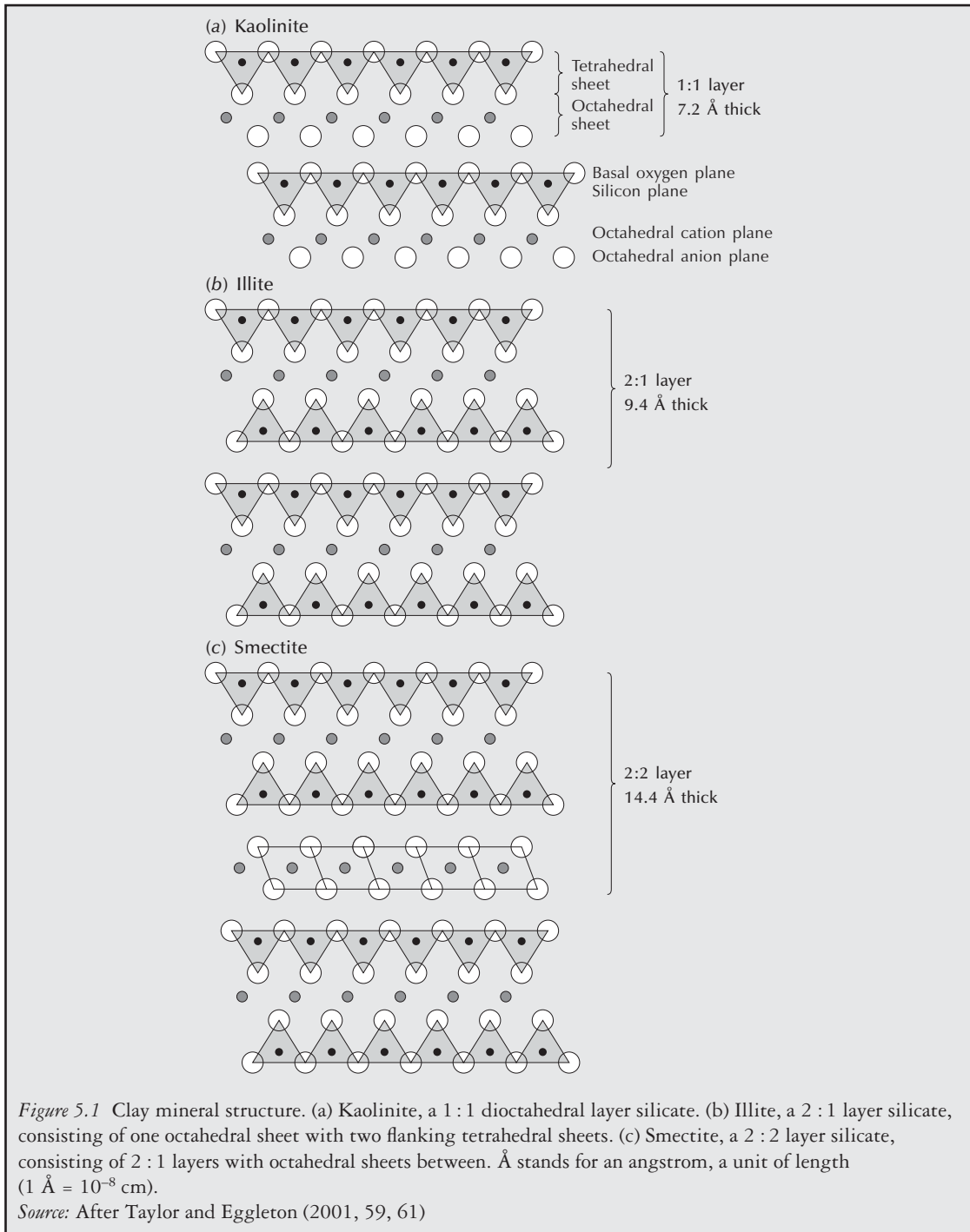
#### CLAY MINERALS

Clay minerals are hydrous silicates that contain metal cations. They are variously known as **layer silicates**, **phyllosilicates**, and **sheet silicates**. Their basic building blocks are sheets of silica ( $\text{SiO}_2$ ) **tetrahedra** and oxygen (O) and hydroxyl (OH) **octahedra**. A silica tetrahedron consists of four oxygen atoms surrounding a silicon atom. Aluminium frequently, and iron less frequently, substitutes for the silicon. The tetrahedra link by sharing three corners to form a hexagonal mesh pattern. An oxygen–hydroxyl octahedron consists of a combination of hydroxyl and oxygen atoms surrounding an aluminium (Al) atom. The octahedra are linked by sharing edges. The silica sheets and the octahedral sheets share atoms of oxygen, the oxygen on the fourth corner of the tetrahedrons forming part of the adjacent octahedral sheet.

Three groups of clay minerals are formed by

combining the two types of sheet (Figure 5.1). The **1 : 1 clays** have one tetrahedral sheet combined with one flanking octahedral sheet, closely bonded by hydrogen ions (Figure 5.1a). The anions exposed at the surface of the octahedral sheets are hydroxyls. **Kaolinite** is an example, the structural formula of which is  $\text{Al}_2\text{Si}_2\text{O}_5(\text{OH})_4$ . Halloysite is similar in composition to kaolinite. The **2 : 1 clays** have an octahedral sheet with two flanking tetrahedral sheets, which are strongly bonded by potassium ions (Figure 5.1b). An example is **illite**. A third group, the **2 : 2 clays**, consist of 2 : 1 layers with octahedral sheets between them (Figure 5.1c). An example is **smectite** (formerly called **montmorillonite**), which is similar to illite but the layers are deeper and allow water and certain organic substances to enter the lattice, leading to expansion or swelling. This allows much ion exchange within the clays.





such as mudstone and shale, expand considerably on wetting, inducing microcrack formation, the widening of existing cracks, or the disintegration of the rock mass. Upon drying, the absorbed water of the expanded clays evaporates and shrinkage cracks form. Alternate swelling and shrinking associated with wetting–drying cycles, in conjunction with the fatigue effect, leads to **wet–dry weathering**, or **slaking**, which physically disintegrates rocks.

### Salt-crystal growth

In coastal and arid regions, crystals may grow in saline solutions on evaporation. Salt crystallizing within the interstices of rocks produces stresses, which widen them, and this leads to granular disintegration. This process is known as **salt weathering** (Wellman and Wilson 1965). When salt crystals formed within pores are heated, or saturated with water, they expand and exert pressure against the confining pore walls; this produces thermal stress or hydration stress, respectively, both of which contribute to salt weathering.

## CHEMICAL WEATHERING

Weathering involves a huge number of chemical reactions acting together upon many different types of rock under the full gamut of climatic conditions. Six main chemical reactions are engaged in rock decomposition: solution, hydration, oxidation and reduction, carbonation, and hydrolysis.

### Solution

Mineral salts may dissolve in water, which is a very effective solvent. The process, which is called **solution** or **dissolution**, involves the dissociation of the molecules into their anions and cations and each ion becomes surrounded by water. It is a mechanical rather than a chemical process, but is normally discussed with chemical weathering as it occurs in partnership with other chemical weathering processes. Solution is readily reversed –

when the solution becomes saturated some of the dissolved material precipitates. The saturation level is defined by the equilibrium solubility, that is, the amount of a substance that can dissolve in water. It is expressed as parts per million (ppm) by volume or milligrams per litre (mg/l). Once a solution is saturated, no more of the substance can dissolve. Minerals vary in their solubility. The most soluble natural minerals are chlorides of the alkali metals: rock salt or halite (NaCl) and potash salt (KCl). These are found only in very arid climates. Gypsum ( $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is also fairly soluble, as is limestone. Quartz has a very low solubility. The solubility of many minerals depends upon the number of free hydrogen ions in the water, which may be measured as the pH value (Box 5.2).

### Hydration

**Hydration** is transitional between chemical and mechanical weathering. It occurs when minerals absorb water molecules on their edges and surfaces, or, for simple salts, in their crystal lattices, without otherwise changing the chemical composition of the original material. For instance, if water is added to anhydrite, which is calcium sulphate ( $\text{CaSO}_4$ ), gypsum ( $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is produced. The water in the crystal lattice leads to an increase of volume, which may cause hydration folding in gypsum sandwiched between other beds. Under humid mid-latitude climates, brownish to yellowish soil colours are caused by the hydration of the reddish iron oxide hematite to rust-coloured goethite. The taking up of water by clay particles is also a form of hydration. It leads to the clay's swelling when wet. Hydration assists other weathering processes by placing water molecules deep inside crystal structures.

### Oxidation and reduction

Oxidation occurs when an atom or ion loses an electron, increasing its positive charge or decreasing its negative charge. It basically involves oxygen combining with a substance. Oxygen dissolved in water is a prevalent oxidizing agent in the

**Box 5.2****pH AND Eh**

pH is a measure of the acidity or alkalinity of aqueous solutions. The term stands for the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution, with the p standing for *Potenz* (the German word for 'power'). It is expressed as a logarithmic scale of numbers ranging from about 0 to 14 (Figure 5.2). Formulaically,  $\text{pH} = -\log[\text{H}^+]$ , where  $[\text{H}^+]$  is the hydrogen ion concentration (in gram-equivalents per litre) in an aqueous solution. A pH of 14 corresponds to a hydrogen ion concentration of  $10^{-14}$  gram-equivalents per litre. A pH of 7, which is neutral (neither acid nor alkaline), corresponds to a hydrogen ion concentration of  $10^{-7}$  gram-equivalents per litre. A pH of 0 corresponds to a hydrogen ion concentration of  $10^0 (= 1)$  gram-equivalents per litre. A solution with a pH greater than 7 is said to be alkaline, whereas a solution with a pH less than 7 is said to be acidic (Figure 5.2). In weathering, any precipitation with a pH below 5.6 is deemed to be acidic and referred to as 'acid rain'.

The solubility of minerals also depends upon the **Eh** or **redox (reduction–oxidation) potential** of a solution. The redox potential measures the oxidizing or reducing characteristics of a solution. More specifically, it measures the ability of a solution to supply electrons to an oxidizing agent, or to take up electrons from a reducing agent. So, redox potentials are electrical potentials or voltages. Solutions may have positive or negative redox potentials, with values ranging from about  $-0.6$  volts to  $+1.4$  volts. High Eh values correspond to oxidizing conditions, while low Eh values correspond to reducing conditions.

Combined, pH and Eh determine the solubility of clay minerals and other weathering products. For example, goethite, a hydrous iron oxide, forms where Eh is relatively high and pH is medium. Under high oxidizing conditions ( $\text{Eh} > +100$

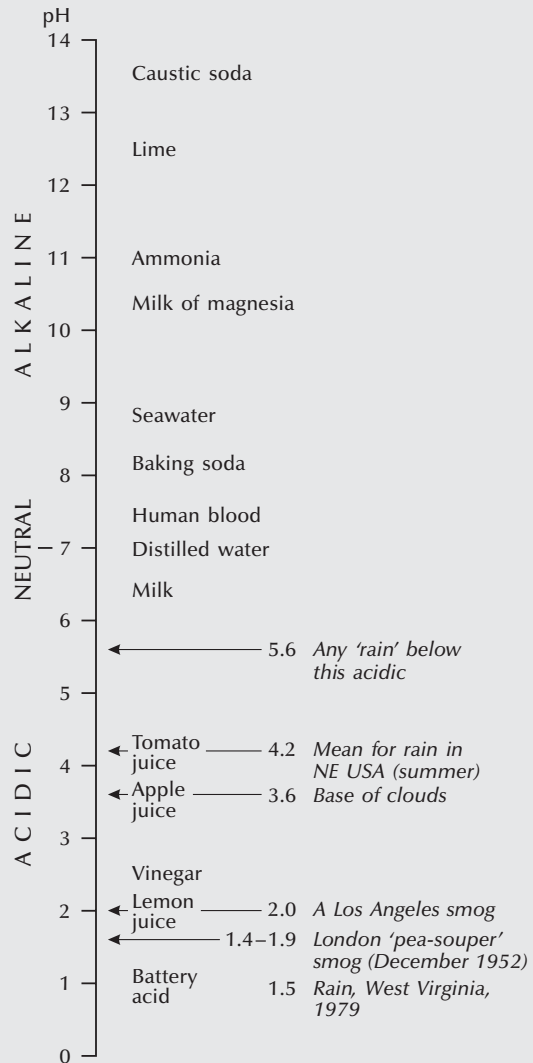
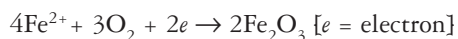


Figure 5.2 The pH scale, with the pH of assorted substances shown.

millivolts) and a moderate pH, it slowly changes to hematite.

environment. **Oxidation weathering** chiefly affects minerals containing iron, though such elements as manganese, sulphur, and titanium may also be oxidized. The reaction for iron, which occurs mainly when oxygen dissolved in water comes into contact with iron-containing minerals, is written:



Alternatively, the ferrous iron,  $\text{Fe}^{2+}$ , which occurs in most rock-forming minerals, may be converted to its ferric form,  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$ , upsetting the neutral charge of the crystal lattice, sometimes causing it to collapse and making the mineral more prone to chemical attack.

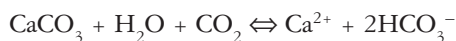
If soil or rock becomes saturated with stagnant water, it becomes oxygen-deficient and, with the aid of **anaerobic bacteria**, reduction occurs. **Reduction** is the opposite of oxidation and the changes it promotes are called gleying. In colour, gley soil horizons are commonly a shade of grey.

The propensity for oxidation or reduction to occur is shown by the redox potential, Eh. This is measured in units of millivolts (mV), positive values registering as oxidizing potential and negative values as reducing potential (Box 5.2).

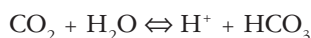
## Carbonation

**Carbonation** is the formation of carbonates, which are the salts of carbonic acid ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ). Carbon dioxide dissolves in natural waters to form carbonic acid. The reversible reaction combines water with carbon dioxide to form carbonic acid, which then dissociates into a hydrogen ion and a bicarbonate ion. Carbonic acid attacks minerals, forming carbonates. Carbonation dominates the weathering of calcareous rocks (limestones and dolomites) where the main mineral is calcite or calcium carbonate ( $\text{CaCO}_3$ ). Calcite reacts with carbonic acid to form calcium hydrogen carbonate ( $\text{Ca}(\text{HCO}_3)_2$ ) that, unlike calcite, is readily dissolved in water. This is why some limestones are so prone to solution (p. 136). The reversible reactions between carbon

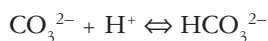
dioxide, water, and calcium carbonate are complex. In essence, the process may be written:



This formula summarizes a sequence of events starting with dissolved carbon dioxide (from the air) reacting speedily with water to produce carbonic acid, which is always in an ionic state:



Carbonate ions from the dissolved limestone react at once with the hydrogen ions to produce bicarbonate ions:

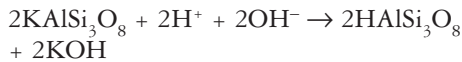


This reaction upsets the chemical equilibrium in the system and more limestone goes into solution to compensate and more dissolved carbon dioxide reacts with the water to make more carbonic acid. The process raises the concentration by about 8 mg/l, but it also brings the carbon dioxide partial pressure of the air (a measure of the amount of carbon dioxide in a unit volume of air) and in the water into disequilibrium. In response, carbon dioxide diffuses from the air to the water, which enables further solution of limestone through the chain of reactions. Diffusion of carbon dioxide through water is a slow process compared with the earlier reactions and sets the limit for limestone solution rates. Interestingly, the rate of reaction between carbonic acid and calcite increases with temperature, but the equilibrium solubility of carbon dioxide decreases with temperature. For this reason, high concentrations of carbonic acid may occur in cold regions, even though carbon dioxide is produced at a slow rate by organisms in such environments.

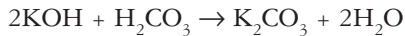
Carbonation is a step in the complex weathering of many other minerals, such as in the hydrolysis of feldspar.

## Hydrolysis

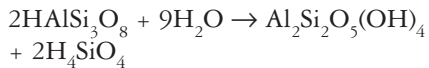
Generally, hydrolysis is the main process of chemical weathering and can completely decompose or drastically modify susceptible primary minerals in rocks. In hydrolysis, water splits into **hydrogen cations** ( $H^+$ ) and **hydroxyl anions** ( $OH^-$ ) and reacts directly with silicate minerals in rocks and soils. The hydrogen ion is exchanged with a metal cation of the silicate minerals, commonly potassium ( $K^+$ ), sodium ( $Na^+$ ), calcium ( $Ca^{2+}$ ), or magnesium ( $Mg^{2+}$ ). The released cation then combines with the hydroxyl anion. The reaction for the hydrolysis of orthoclase, which has the chemical formula  $KAlSi_3O_8$ , is:



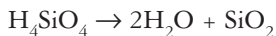
So, the orthoclase is converted to aluminosilicic acid,  $HAlSi_3O_8$ , and potassium hydroxide,  $KOH$ . The aluminosilicic acid and potassium hydroxide are unstable and react further. The potassium hydroxide is carbonated to potassium carbonate,  $K_2CO_3$ , and water,  $H_2O$ :



The potassium carbonate so formed is soluble in and removed by water. The aluminosilicic acid reacts with water to produce kaolinite,  $Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$  (a clay mineral), and silicic acid,  $H_4SiO_4$ :



The silicic acid is soluble in and removed by water leaving kaolinite as a residue, a process termed **desilication** as it involves the loss of silicon. If the solution equilibrium of the silicic acid changes, then silicon dioxide (silica) may be precipitated out of the solution:



Weathering of rock by hydrolysis may be complete or partial (Pedro 1979). **Complete hydrolysis** or

**allitization** produces gibbsite. **Partial hydrolysis** produces either 1:1 clays by a process called **monosiallitization**, or 2:1 and 2:2 clays through a process called **bisiallitization** (cf. p. 126).

## Chelation

This is the removal of metal ions, and in particular ions of aluminium, iron, and manganese, from solids by binding with such organic acids as fulvic and humic acid to form soluble **organic matter–metal complexes**. The chelating agents are in part the decomposition products of plants and in part secretions from plant roots. Chelation encourages chemical weathering and the transfer of metals in the soil.

## BIOLOGICAL WEATHERING

Some organisms attack rocks mechanically, or chemically, or by a combination of mechanical and chemical processes.

Plant roots, and especially tree roots, growing in bedding planes and joints have a **biomechanical effect** – as they grow, mounting pressure may lead to rock fracture. Dead lichen leaves a dark stain on rock surfaces. The dark spots absorb more thermal radiation than the surrounding lighter areas, so encouraging **thermal weathering**. A pale crust of excrement often found below birds' nests on rock walls reflects solar radiation and reduces local heating, so reducing the strength of rocks. In coastal environments, marine organisms bore into rocks and graze them (e.g. Yatsu 1988, 285–397; Spencer 1988; Trenhaile 1987, 64–82). This process is particularly effective in tropical limestones. Boring organisms include bivalve molluscs and clinoid sponges. An example is the blue mussel (*Mytilus edulis*). Grazing organisms include echinoids, chitons, and gastropods, all of which displace material from the rock surface. An example is the West Indian top shell (*Cittarium pica*), a herbivorous gastropod.

Under some conditions, bacteria, algae, fungi, and lichens may chemically alter minerals in rocks.

The boring sponge (*Cliona celata*) secretes minute amounts of acid to bore into calcareous rocks. The rock minerals may be removed, leading to **biological rock erosion**. In an arid area of southern Tunisia, weathering is concentrated in topographic lows (pits and pans) where moisture is concentrated and algae bore, pluck, and etch the limestone substrate (Smith *et al.* 2000).

Humans have exposed bedrock in quarries, mines, and road and rail cuts. They have disrupted soils by detonating explosive devices, and they have sealed the soil in urban areas under a layer of concrete and tarmac. Their agriculture practices have greatly modified soil and weathering processes in many regions.

## WEATHERING PRODUCTS AND LANDFORMS

### Weathering waste

#### Weathering debris

Weathering acts upon rocks to produce solid, colloidal, and soluble materials. These materials differ in size and behaviour:

- 1 **Solids** range from boulders, through sand, and silt, to clay (Table 2.3). They are large, medium, and small fragments of rock subjected to disintegration and decomposition plus new materials, especially secondary clays built from the weathering products by a process called **neof ormation**. At the lower end of the size range they grade into pre-colloids, colloids, and solutes.
- 2 **Solutes** are 'particles' less than 1 nm (nanometre) in diameter that are highly dispersed and exist in molecular solution.
- 3 **Colloids** are particles of organic and mineral substances that range in size from 1 to 100 nm. They normally exist in a highly dispersed state but may adopt a semi-solid form. Common colloids produced by weathering are oxides and hydroxides of silicon, aluminium, and iron.

Amorphous silica and opaline silica are colloidal forms of silicon dioxide. Gibbsite and boehmite are aluminium hydroxides. Hematite is an iron oxide and goethite a hydrous iron oxide. **Pre-colloidal materials** are transitional to solids and range in size from about 100 to 1,000 nm.

#### Regolith

The **weathered mantle** or **regolith** is all the weathered material lying above the unaltered or fresh bedrock. It may include lumps of fresh bed-rock. Often the weathered mantle or crust is differentiated into visible horizons and is called a **weathering profile** (Figure 5.3). The **weathering front** is the boundary between fresh and weathered rock. The layer immediately above the weathering front is sometimes called **saprock**, which represents the first stages of weathering. Above the saprock lies **saprolite**, which is more weathered than saprock but still retains most of the structures found in the parent bedrock. Saprolite lies where it was formed, undisturbed by mass movements or other erosive agents. Deep weathering profiles, saprock, and saprolite are common in the tropics. No satisfactory name exists for the material lying above the saprolite, where weathering is advanced and the parent rock fabric is not distinguishable, although the terms '**mobile zone**', '**zone of lost fabric**', '**residuum**', and '**pedolith**' are all used (see Taylor and Eggleton 2001, 160).

Weathering can produce distinct mantles. **Blockfields**, for instance, are produced by the intense frost weathering of exposed bedrock. They are also called **felsenmeer**, **block meer**, and **stone fields**. They are large expanses of coarse and angular rock rubble occurring within polar deserts and semi-deserts. Steeper fields, up to 35°, are called **blockstreams**. An example is the 'stone runs' of the Falkland Islands. **Talus (scree) slopes** and **talus cones** are the result of weathering processes on steep rock faces aided by some mass wasting.

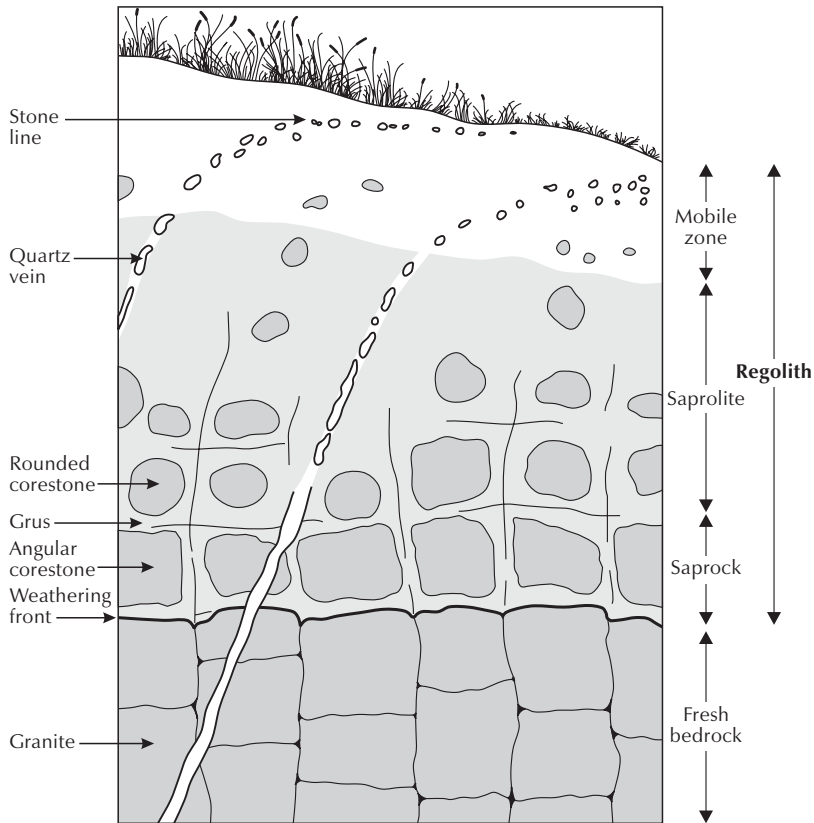


Figure 5.3 Typical weathering profile in granite. The weathering front separates fresh bedrock from the regolith. The regolith is divided into saprock, saprolite, and a mobile zone.

### Duricrusts and hardpans

Under some circumstances, soluble materials precipitate within or on the weathered mantle to form duricrusts, hardpans, and plinthite. **Duricrusts** are important in landform development as they act like a band of resistant rock and may cap hills. They occur as hard nodules or crusts, or simply as hard layers. The chief types are ferricrete (rich in iron), calcrete (rich in calcium carbonate), silcrete (rich in silica), alcrete (rich in aluminium), gypcrete (rich in gypsum), magnecrete (rich in magnesite), and manganecrete (rich in manganese).

**Ferricrete** and **alcrete** are associated with deep weathering profiles. They occur in humid to subhumid tropical environments, with alcretes favouring drier parts of such regions. **Laterite** is a

term used to describe weathering deposits rich in iron and aluminium. **Bauxite** refers to weathering deposits rich enough in aluminium to make economic extraction worthwhile. **Silcrete**, or siliceous duricrust, commonly consists of more than 95 per cent silica. It occurs in humid and arid tropical environments, and notably in central Australia and parts of northern and southern Africa and parts of Europe, sometimes in the same weathering profiles as ferricretes. In more arid regions, it is sometimes associated with calcrete. **Calcrete** is composed of around 80 per cent calcium carbonate. It is mostly confined to areas where the current mean annual rainfall lies in the range 200 to 600 mm and covers a large portion of the world's semi-arid environments, perhaps underlying 13 per cent of the global land-surface area. **Gypcrete** is a crust of gypsum



(hydrated calcium sulphate). It occurs largely in very arid regions with a mean annual precipitation below 250 mm. It forms by gypsum crystals growing in clastic sediments, either by enclosing or displacing the clastic particles. **Magnecrete** is a rare duricrust made of magnesite (magnesium carbonate). **Manganocrete** is a duricrust with a cement of manganese-oxide minerals.

**Hardpans** and **plinthite** also occur. They are hard layers but, unlike duricrusts, are not enriched in a specific element.

Duricrusts are commonly harder than the materials in which they occur and more resistant to erosion. In consequence, they act as a shell of armour, protecting land surfaces from denudational agents. Duricrusts that develop in low-lying areas where surface and subsurface flows of water converge may retard valley down-cutting to such an extent that the surrounding higher regions wear down faster than the valley floor, eventually leading to **inverted relief** (Box 5.3). Where duricrusts have been broken up by prolonged erosion, fragments may persist on the surface, carrying on their protective role. The **gibber plains** of central Australia are an example of such long-lasting remnants of duricrusts and consist of silcrete boulders strewn about the land surface.

## Weathering landforms

Bare rock is exposed in many landscapes. It results from the differential weathering of bedrock and the removal of weathered debris by slope processes. Two groups and weathering landforms are (1) large-scale cliffs and pillars and (2) smaller-scale rock-basins, tafoni, and honeycombs.

### Cliffs and pillars

Cliffs and crags are associated with several rock types, including limestones, sandstones, and gritstones. Take the case of sandstone cliffs (Robinson and Williams 1994). These form in strongly cemented sandstones, especially on the sides of deeply incised valleys and around the edges of plateaux. Isolated pillars of rock are also common at such sites. Throughout the world, sandstone cliffs and pillars are distinctive features of sandstone terrain. They are eye-catching in arid areas, but tend to be concealed by vegetation in more humid regions, such as England. The cliffs formed in the Ardingly Sandstone, south-east England, are hidden by dense woodland. Many cliffs are dissected by widened vertical joints that form open clefts or passageways. In Britain, such widened joints are called **gulls** or **wents**, which are terms used by quarrymen. On some outcrops, the passageways

### Box 5.3

#### INVERTED RELIEF

Geomorphic processes that create resistant material in the regolith may promote **relief inversion**. Duricrusts are commonly responsible for inverting relief. Old valley bottoms with ferricrete in them resist erosion and eventually come to occupy hilltops. Even humble alluvium may suffice to cause relief inversion (Mills 1990). Floors of valleys in the Appalachian Mountains,

eastern United States, become filled with large quartzite boulders, more than 1 m in diameter. These boulders protect the valley floors from further erosion by running water. Erosion then switches to sideslopes of the depressions and, eventually, ridges capped with bouldery colluvium on deep saprolite form. Indeed, the saprolite is deeper than that under many uncapped ridges.

develop into a labyrinth through which it is possible to walk.

Many sandstone cliffs, pillars, and boulders are undercut towards their bases. In the case of boulders and pillars, the undercutting produces **mushroom perched**, or **pedestal rocks**. Processes invoked to account for the undercutting include (1) the presence of softer and more effortlessly weathered bands of rock; (2) abrasion by wind-blown sand (cf. p. 261); (3) salt weathering brought about by salts raised by capillary action from soil-covered talus at the cliff base; (4) the intensified rotting of the sandstone by moisture rising from the soil or talus; and (5) subsurface weathering that occurs prior to footslope lowering.

### Rock-basins, tafoni, and honeycombs

Virtually all exposed rock outcrops bear irregular surfaces that seem to result from weathering. Flutes and runnels, pits and cavernous forms are common on all rock types in all climates. They are most apparent in arid and semi-arid environments, mainly because these environments have a greater area of bare rock surfaces. They usually find their fullest development on limestone (Chapter 6) but occur on, for example, granite.

**Flutes, rills, runnels, grooves, and gutters**, as they are variously styled, form on many rock types in many environments. They may develop a regularly spaced pattern. Individual rills can be 5–30 cm deep and 22–100 cm wide. Their development on limestone is striking (pp. 141–3).

**Rock-basins**, also called **weather-pits** or **gnammas**, are closed, circular, or oval depressions, a few centimetres to several metres wide, formed on flat or gently sloping surfaces of limestones, granites, basalts, gneisses, and other rock types. They are commonly flat-floored and steep-sided, and no more than a metre or so deep, though some are more saucer-shaped. The steep-sided varieties may bear overhanging rims and undercut sides. Rainwater collecting in the basins may overflow to produce spillways, and some basins may contain incised spillways that lead to their being permanently

drained. As rock-basins expand, they may coalesce to form compound forms. **Solution pools** (pans, solution basins, flat-bottomed pools) occur on shore platforms cut in calcareous rocks.

**Tafoni** (singular **tafone**) are large weathering features that take the form of hollows or cavities on a rock surface, the term being originally used to describe hollows excavated in granites on the island of Corsica. They tend to form in vertical or near-vertical faces of rock. They can be as little as 0.1 m to several metres in height, width, and depth, with arched-shaped entrances, concave walls, sometimes with overhanging hoods or visors, especially in case-hardened rocks (rocks with a surface made harder by the local mobilization and reprecipitation of minerals on its surface), and smooth and gently sloping, debris-strewn floors. Some tafoni cut right through boulders or slabs of rock to form rounded shafts or windows. The origins of tafoni are complex. Salt action is the process commonly invoked in tafoni formation, but researchers cannot agree whether the salts promote selective chemical attack or whether they promote physical weathering, the growing crystals prizing apart grains of rock. Both processes may operate, but not all tafoni contain a significant quantity of salts. Once formed, tafoni are protected from rainwash and may become the foci for salt accumulations and further salt weathering. Parts of the rock that are less effectively case-hardened are more vulnerable to such chemical attack. Evidence also suggests that the core of boulders is sometimes more readily weathered than the surface, which could aid the selective development of weathering cavities. Tafoni are common in coastal environments but are also found in arid environments. Some appear to be relict forms.

**Honeycomb weathering** is a term used to describe numerous small pits, no more than a few centimetres wide and deep, separated by an intricate network of narrow walls and resembling a honeycomb. They are often thought of as a small-scale version of multiple tafoni. The terms **alveolar weathering**, **stone lattice**, and **stone lace** are synonyms. Honeycomb weathering is particularly evident in semi-arid and coastal environments

where salts are in ready supply and wetting and drying cycles are common. A study of honeycomb weathering on the coping stones of the sea walls at Weston-super-Mare, Avon, England suggests stages of development (Mottershead 1994). The walls were finished in 1888. The main body of the walls is made of Carboniferous limestone, which is capped by Forest of Dean stone (Lower Carboniferous Pennant sandstone). Nine weathering grades can be recognized on the coping stones (Table 5.1). The maximum reduction of the original surface is at least 110 mm, suggesting a minimum weathering rate of 1 mm/yr.

## WEATHERING AND CLIMATE

Weathering processes and weathering crusts differ from place to place. These spatial differences are determined by a set of interacting factors, chiefly rock type, climate, topography, organisms, and the age of the weathered surface. Climate is a leading factor in determining chemical, mechanical, and biological weathering rates. Temperature influences the rate of weathering, but seldom the type of weathering. As a rough guide, a 10°C rise in temperature speeds chemical reactions, especially sluggish ones, and some biological reactions by a factor of two to three, a fact discovered by Jacobus Hendricus van't Hoff in 1884. The storage and movement of water in the regolith is a highly influential factor in determining weathering rates, partly integrating the influence of all other factors. Louis Peltier (1950) argued that rates of chemical and mechanical weathering are guided by temperature and rainfall conditions (Figure 5.4). The intensity of chemical weathering depends on the availability of moisture and high air temperatures. It is minimal in dry regions, because water is scarce, and in cold regions, where temperatures are low and water is scarce (because it is frozen for much or all the year). Mechanical weathering depends upon the presence of water but is very effective where repeated freezing and thawing occurs. It is therefore minimal where temperatures are high enough to

*Table 5.1* Honeycomb weathering grades on sea walls at Weston-super-Mare, Avon, UK

<i>Grade</i>	<i>Description</i>
0	No visible weathering forms
1	Isolated circular pits
2	Pitting covers more than 50 per cent of the area
3	Honeycomb present
4	Honeycomb covers more than 50 per cent of the area
5	Honeycomb shows some wall breakdown
6	Honeycomb partially stripped
7	Honeycomb stripping covers more than 50 per cent of the area
8	Only reduced walls remain
9	Surface completely stripped

*Source:* Adapted from Mottershead (1994)

rule out freezing and where it is so cold that water seldom thaws.

## Leaching regimes

Climate and the other factors determining the water budget of the regolith (and so the internal microclimate of a weathered profile) is crucial to the formation of clays by weathering and by **neofor-****mation**. The kind of secondary clay mineral formed in the regolith depends chiefly on two things: (1) the balance between the rate of dissolution of primary minerals from rocks and the rate of flushing of solutes by water; and (2) the balance between the rate of flushing of silica, which tends to build up tetrahedral layers, and the rate of flushing of cations, which fit into the voids between the crystalline layers formed from silica. Manifestly, the leaching regime of the regolith is crucial to these balances since it determines, in large measure, the opportunity that the weathering products have to interact. Three degrees of leaching are associated with the formation of different types of secondary clay minerals – weak, moderate, and intense (e.g. Pedro 1979):

- 1 **Weak leaching** favours an approximate balance between silica and cations. Under these

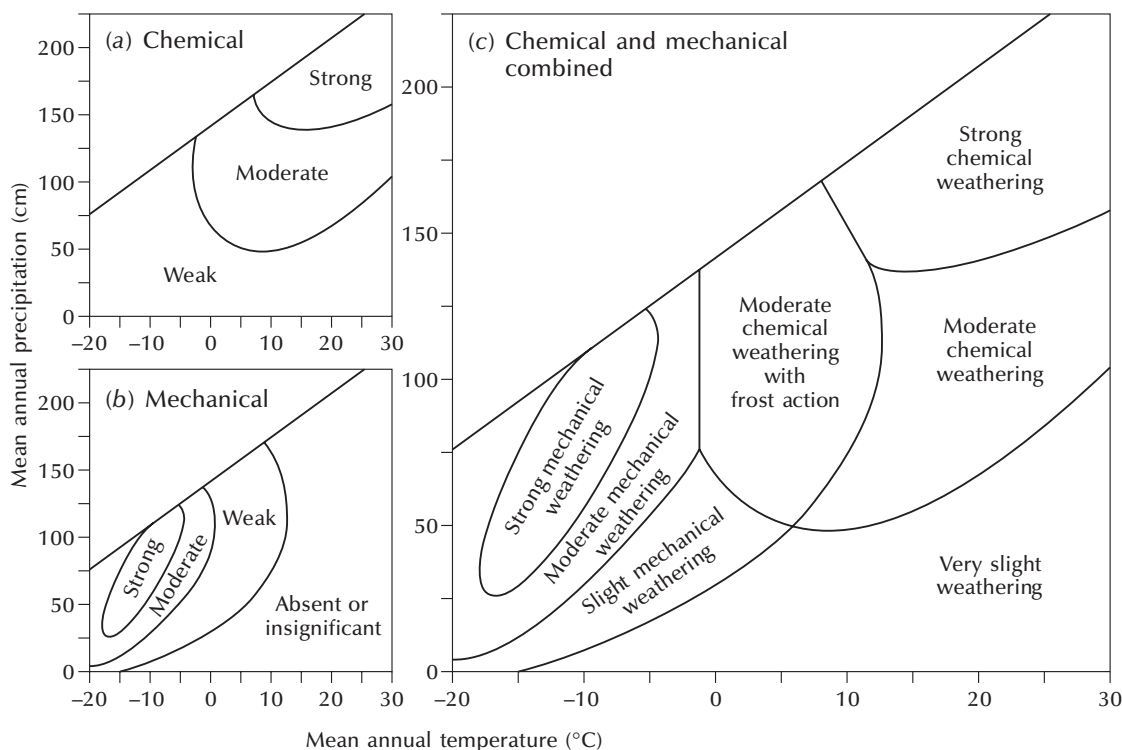


Figure 5.4 Louis Peltier's scheme relating chemical and mechanical weathering rates to temperature and rainfall.  
Source: Adapted from Peltier (1950)

- conditions 2 : 2 clays, such as smectite, and 2 : 1 clays are created by the process of **bisiallitization** or **smectization**.
- 2 **Moderate leaching** tends to flush cations from the regolith, leaving a surplus of silica. Under these conditions, 1 : 1 clays, such as kaolinite and goethite, are formed by the processes of **monosiallitization** or **kaolinization**.
  - 3 **Intense leaching** leaves very few bases unflushed from the regolith and hydrolysis is total, whereas it is only partial in bisiallitization and monosiallitization. Under these conditions, aluminium hydroxides such as gibbsite are produced by the process of **allitization** (also termed soluviation, ferrallitization, laterization, and latosolization).

Soil water charged with organic acids complicates the association of clay minerals with leaching

regimes. Organic-acid-rich waters lead to cheluviation, a process associated with **podzolization** in soils, which leads to aluminium compounds, alkaline earths, and alkaline cations being flushed out in preference to silica.

### Weathering patterns

Given that the neoformation of clay minerals is strongly influenced by the leaching regime of the regolith, it is not surprising that different climatic zones nurture distinct types of weathering and weathering crust. Several researchers have attempted to identify **zonal patterns in weathering** (e.g. Chernyakhovsky *et al.* 1976; Duchaufour 1982). One scheme, which extends Georges Pedro's work, recognizes six weathering zones (Figure 5.5) (Thomas 1994):

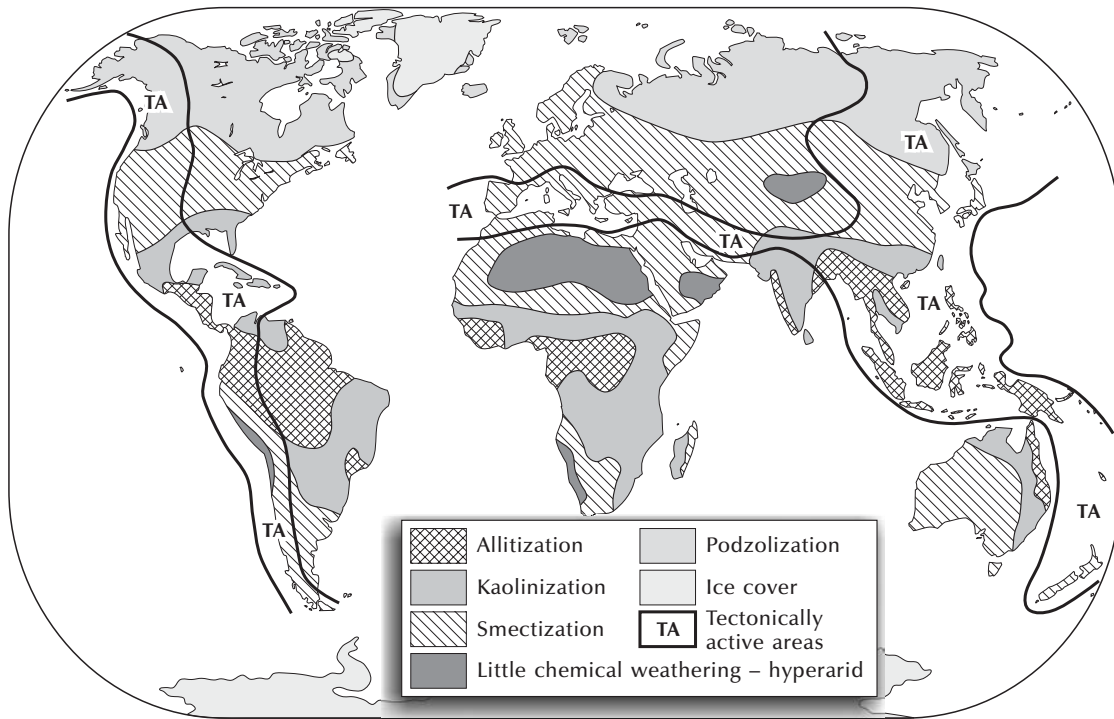


Figure 5.5 The main weathering zones of the Earth.

Source: Adapted from Thomas (1994, 5)

- 1 The **allitization zone** coincides with the intense leaching regimes of the humid tropics and is associated with the tropical rain forest of the Amazon basin, Congo basin, and South-East Asia.
- 2 The **kaolinization zone** accords with the seasonal leaching regime of the seasonal tropics and is associated with savannah vegetation.
- 3 The **smectization zone** corresponds to the subtropical and extratropical areas, where leaching is relatively weak, allowing smectite to form. It is found in many arid and semi-arid areas and in many temperate areas.
- 4 The **little-chemical-weathering zone** is confined to hyperarid areas in the hearts of large hot and cold deserts.
- 5 The **podzolization zone** conforms to the boreal climatic zone.

- 6 The **ice-cover zone**, where, owing to the presence of ice sheets, weathering is more or less suspended.

Within each of the first five zones, parochial variations arise owing to the effect of topography, parent rock, and other local factors. Podzolization, for example, occurs under humid tropical climates on sandy parent materials.

### The effects of local factors

Within the broad weathering zones, **local factors** – parent rock, topography, vegetation – play an important part in weathering and may profoundly modify climatically controlled weathering processes. Particularly important are local factors that affect soil drainage. In temperate climates, for example, soluble

organic acids and strong acidity speed up weathering rates but slow down the neoformation of clays or even cause pre-existing clays to degrade. On the other hand, high concentrations of alkaline-earth cations and strong biological activity slow down weathering, while promoting the neoformation or the conservation of clays that are richer in silica. In any climate, clay neoformation is more marked in basic volcanic rocks than in acid crystalline rocks.

### Topography and drainage

The effects of local factors mean that a wider range of clay minerals is found in some climatic zones than would be the case if the climate were the sole determinant of clay formation. Take the case of tropical climates. Soils within small areas of this climatic zone may contain a range of clay minerals where two distinct leaching regimes sit side by side. On sites where high rainfall and good drainage promote fast flushing, both cations and silica are removed and gibbsite forms. On sites where there is less rapid flushing, but still enough to remove all cations and a little silica, then kaolinite forms. For instance, the type of clay formed in soils developed in basalts of Hawaii depends upon mean annual rainfall, with smectite, kaolinite, and bauxite forming a sequence along the gradient of low to high rainfall. The same is true of clays formed on igneous rocks in California, where the peak contents of different clay minerals occur in the following order along a moisture gradient: smectite, illite (only on acid igneous rocks), kaolinite and halloysite, vermiculite, and gibbsite (Singer 1980). Similarly, in soils on islands of Indonesia, the clay mineral formed depends on the degree of drainage: where drainage is good, kaolinite forms; where it is poor, smectite forms (Mohr and van Baren 1954; cf. Figure 5.6). This last example serves to show the role played by landscape position, acting through its influence on drainage, on clay mineral formation. Comparable effects of **topography** on clay formation in oxisols have been found in soils formed on basalt on the central plateau of Brazil (Curi and Franzmeier 1984).

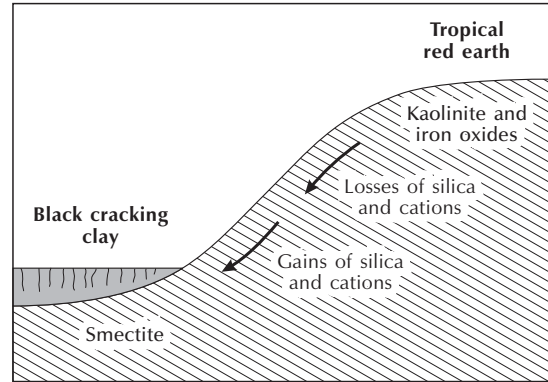


Figure 5.6 Clay types in a typical tropical toposequence.

Source: Adapted from Ollier and Pain (1996, 141)

### Age

**Time** is a further factor that obscures the direct climatic impact on weathering. Ferrallitization, for example, results from prolonged leaching. Its association with the tropics is partly attributable to the antiquity of many tropical landscapes rather than the unique properties of tropical climates. More generally, the extent of chemical weathering is correlated with the age of continental surfaces (Kronberg and Nesbitt 1981). In regions where chemical weathering has acted without interruption, even if at a variable rate, since the start of the Cenozoic era, advanced and extreme weathering products are commonly found. In some regions, glaciation, volcanism, and alluviation have reset the chemical weathering 'clock' by creating fresh rock debris. Soils less than 3 million years old, which display signs of incipient and intermediate weathering, are common in these areas. In view of these complicating factors, and the changes of climate that have occurred even during the Holocene epoch, claims that weathering crusts of recent origin (recent in the sense that they are still forming and have been subject to climatic conditions similar to present climatic conditions during their formation) are related to climate must be looked at guardedly.





*Plate 5.1* Weathered balustrade on the Ashmolean Museum, Oxford, England. The balustrade has now been cleaned.

(*Photograph by Heather A. Viles*)

## WEATHERING AND HUMANS

Limestone is weathered faster in urban environments than in surrounding rural areas. This fact was recognized by Archibald Geikie, who studied the weathering of gravestones in Edinburgh and its environs. Recent studies of weathering rates on marble gravestones in and around Durham, England, give rates of 2 microns per year in a rural site and 10 microns per year in an urban industrial site (Attewell and Taylor 1988).

In the last few decades, concern has been voiced over the economic and cultural costs of **historic buildings** being attacked by pollutants in cities (Plate 5.1). Geomorphologists can advise such bodies as the Cathedrals Fabric Commission in an informed way by studying urban weathering forms, measuring weathering rates, and establishing the connections between the two (e.g. Inkpen *et al.* 1994). The case of the Parthenon, Athens, was mentioned at the start of the chapter. St Paul's Cathedral in London, England, which is built of Portland limestone, is also being damaged by weathering (Plate 5.2). It has suffered considerable attack by weathering over the past few hundred years. Portland limestone is a bright white colour. Before recent cleaning, St Paul's was a sooty black.



*Plate 5.2* A bust of Saint Andrew, removed from St Paul's Cathedral because of accelerated decay.

(*Photograph by Heather A. Viles*)



Acid rainwaters have etched out hollows where it runs across the building's surface. Along these channels, bulbous gypsum precipitates have formed beneath anvils and gargoyles and acids, particularly sulphuric acid, in rainwater have reacted with the limestone. About 0.62 microns of the limestone surface is lost each year, which represents a cumulative loss of 1.5 cm since St Paul's was built (Sharp *et al.* 1982).

**Salt weathering** is playing havoc with buildings of ethnic, religious, and cultural value in some parts of the world. In the towns of Khiva, Bukhara, and Samarkand, which lie in the centre of Uzbekistan's irrigated cotton belt, prime examples of Islamic architecture – including mausolea, minarets, mosques, and madrasses – are being ruined by capillary rise, a rising water table resulting from over-irrigation, and an increase in the salinity of the groundwater (Cooke 1994). The solution to these problems is that the capillary fringe and the salts connected with it must be removed from the buildings, which might be achieved by more effective water management (e.g. the installation of effective pumping wells) and the construction of damp-proof courses in selected buildings to prevent capillary rise.

## SUMMARY

Chemical, physical, and biological processes weather rocks. The chief physical or (mechanical) weathering processes are unloading (the removal of surface cover), frost action, alternate heating and cooling, repeated wetting and drying, and the growth of salt crystals. The chief chemical weathering processes are solution or dissolution, hydration, oxidation, carbonation, hydrolysis, and chelation. The chemical and mechanical action of animals and plants bring about biological weathering. Rock weathering manufactures debris that ranges in size from coarse boulders, through sands and silt, to colloidal clays and then solutes. The weathered mantle or regolith is all the weathered debris lying above the unweathered bedrock. Saprock and

saprolite is the portion of the regolith that remains in the place that it was weathered, unmoved by mass movements and erosive agents. Geomorphic processes of mass wasting and erosion have moved the mobile upper portion of regolith, sometimes called the mobile zone, residuum, or pedolith. Weathering processes are influenced by climate, rock type, topography and drainage, and time. Climatically controlled leaching regimes are crucial to understanding the building of new clays (neof ormation) from weathering products. A distinction is made between weak leaching, which promotes the formation of 2 : 2 clays, moderate leaching, which encourages the formation of 1 : 1 clays, and intense leaching, which fosters the formation of aluminium hydroxides. The world distribution of weathering crusts mirrors the world distribution of leaching regimes. Weathering processes attack historic buildings and monuments, including the Parthenon and St Paul's Cathedral.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 Describe the chief weathering processes.**
  - 2 Evaluate the relative importance of factors that affect weathering.**
  - 3 Explore the impact of weathering on human-made structures.**
- 

## FURTHER READING

Goudie, A. (1995) *The Changing Earth: Rates of Geomorphological Process*. Oxford and Cambridge, Mass.: Blackwell.

A good section in here on rates of weathering.

Ollier, C. D. and Pain, C. F. (1996) *Regolith, Soils and Landforms*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

An intriguing textbook on connections between geomorphology, soil, and regolith.

Taylor, G. and Eggleton, R. A. (2001) *Regolith Geology and Geomorphology*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

An excellent book with a geological focus, but no worse for that.

Thomas, M. F. (1994) *Geomorphology in the Tropics: A Study of Weathering and Denudation in Low Latitudes*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

A most agreeable antidote to all those geomorphological writings on middle and high latitudes.

## KARST LANDSCAPES

---

Acid attacking rocks that dissolve easily, and some rocks that do not dissolve so easily, creates very distinctive and imposing landforms at the ground surface and underground. This chapter covers:

- the nature of soluble-rock terrain
- the dissolution of limestone
- landforms formed on limestone
- landforms formed within limestone
- humans and karst

Underground karst: Poole's Cavern, Derbyshire

Poole's Cavern is a limestone cave lying under Grin Wood, almost 2 km from the centre of Buxton, a spa town in Derbyshire, England (Figure 6.1). It was formed by the waters of the River Wye. In about 1440, the highwayman and outlaw Poole reputedly used the cave as a lair and a base from which to waylay and rob travellers. He gave his name to the cave. Inside the cave entrance, which was cleared and levelled in 1854, is glacial sediment containing the bones of sheep, goats, deer, boars, oxen, and humans. Artifacts from the Neolithic, Bronze Age, Iron Age, and Roman periods are all present. Further into the cave is the 'Dome', a 12-m high chamber that was probably hollowed out by meltwater coursing through the cavern at the end of the last ice age and forming a great whirlpool. Flowstone is seen on the chamber walls, stained blue-grey by manganese oxide or shale. A little further in lies the River Wye, which now flows only in winter as the river enters the cave from a reservoir overflow. The river sinks into the stream bed and reappears about 400 m away at Wye Head, although thousands of years ago it would have flowed out through the cave entrance. The river bed contains the 'Petrifying Well', a pool that will encrust such articles as bird's nests placed in it with calcite and 'turn them to stone'. The 'Constant Drip' is a stalagmite that has grown over thousands of years, but, perhaps owing to an increased drip rate over recent years, it now has a hole drilled in it. Nearby is a new white flowstone formation that is made by water passing through old lime-tips on the hillside above. Further along hangs the largest stalactite in the cave – the 'Flich of Bacon', so called

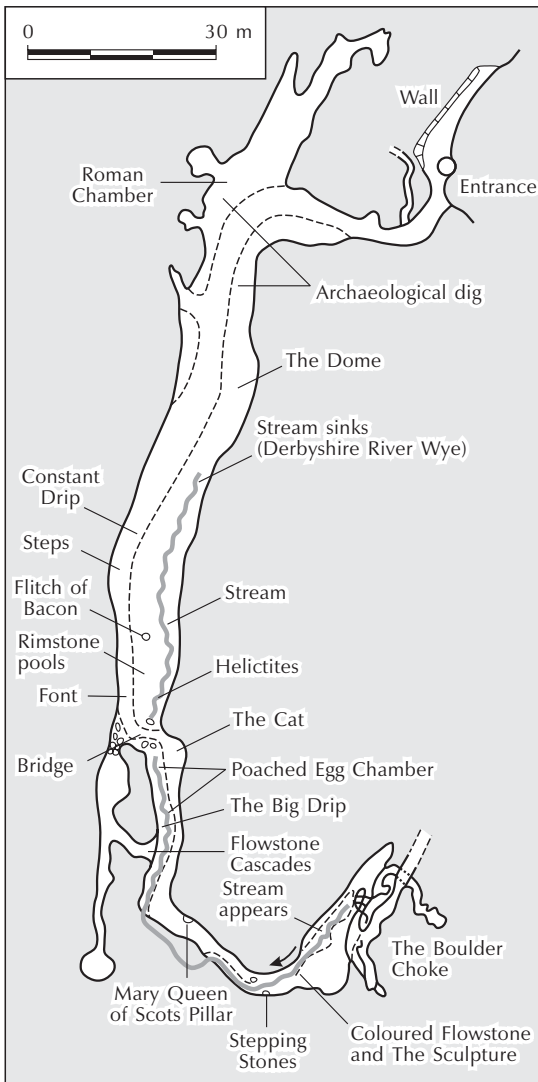


Figure 6.1 Plan of Poole's Cavern, Buxton.

Source: After Allsop (1992)

owing to its resemblance to a half-side of that meat. It is almost 2 m long, but was longer before some vandalous visitor broke off the bottom section around 1840. Nearby, on the cave floor, are rimstone pools. The next chamber is the 'Poached Egg Chamber', which contains stalactites, straws, flowstones, columns, and curtains, all coloured in white, orange (from iron oxide), and blue-grey (from manganese oxide). These formations are created from lime waste from an old quarry tip above the cave. The iron has coated the tips of stalagmites to give them the appearance of poached eggs. At the far end of the Poached Egg Chamber are thousands of straws and stalactites, with a cascade of new flowstone on top of an old one known as the 'Frozen Waterfall'. Above this formation is the 'Big Drip', a 0.45-m high stalagmite that is very active, splashing drips around its sides so making itself thicker. At this point, bedding planes in the limestone show signs of cavern collapse. Turning to the left, the 'Mary Queen of Scots Pillar', a 2-m high stalactite boss, presents itself. This feature is said to have been named by Mary Queen of Scots when she visited the cavern in 1582. In the last chamber, the Rive Wye can be seen emerging from the 15-m-high boulder choke that blocks the rest of the cavern system. A beautiful flowstone structure in this chamber was named the 'Sculpture' by a party of local schoolchildren in 1977, and above it is the 'Grand Cascade', another impressive flowstone formation stained with oxides of iron and manganese.

## KARST ENVIRONMENTS

### What is karst?

Karst is the German form of the Indo-European word *kar*, which means rock. The Italian term is *carso*, and the Slovenian *kras*. In Slovenia, *kras* or *krš* means 'bare stony ground' and is also a rugged

region in the west of the country. In geomorphology, **karst** is terrain in which soluble rocks are altered above and below ground by the dissolving action of water and that bears distinctive characteristics of relief and drainage (Jennings 1971, 1). It usually refers to limestone terrain characteristically lacking surface drainage, possessing a patchy and thin soil cover, containing many enclosed depressions, and

supporting a network of subterranean features, including caves and grottoes. However, all rocks are soluble to some extent in water, and karst is not confined to the most soluble rock types. Karst may form in evaporites such as gypsum and halite, in silicates such as sandstone and quartzite, and in some basalts and granites under favourable conditions (Table 6.1). Karst features may also form by other means – weathering, hydraulic action, tectonic movements, meltwater, and the evacuation of molten rock (lava). These features are called **pseudokarst** as solution is not the dominant process in their development (Table 6.1).

Extensive areas of karst evolve in carbonate rocks (limestones and dolomites), and sometimes in evaporites, which include halite (rock salt), anhydrite,

and gypsum. Figure 6.2 shows the global distribution of exposed carbonate rocks. Limestones and dolomites are a complex and diverse group of rocks (Figure 6.3). **Limestone** is a rock containing at least 50 per cent calcium carbonate ( $\text{CaCO}_3$ ), which occurs largely as the mineral calcite and rarely as aragonite. Pure limestones contain at least 90 per cent calcite. **Dolomite** is a rock containing at least 50 per cent calcium–magnesium carbonate ( $\text{CaMg}(\text{CO}_3)_2$ ), a mineral called dolomite. Pure dolomites (also called **dolostones**) contain at least 90 per cent dolomite. Carbonate rocks of intermediate composition between pure limestones and pure dolomites are given various names, including magnesian limestone, dolomitic limestone, and calcareous dolomite.

Karst features achieve their fullest evolution in

Table 6.1 Karst and pseudokarst

<i>Formed in</i>	<i>Formative processes</i>	<i>Examples</i>
<i>Karst</i>		
Limestone, dolomite, and other carbonate rocks	Bicarbonate solution	Poole's Cavern, Buxton, England; Mammoth Cave, USA
Evaporites (gypsum, halite, anhydrite)	Dissolution	Mearat Malham, Mt Sedom, Israel
Silicate rocks (e.g. sandstone, quartzites, basalt, granite, laterite)	Silicate solution	Kukenan Tepui, Venezuela; Phu Hin Rong Kla National Park, Thailand; Mawenge Mwena, Zimbabwe
<i>Pseudokarst</i>		
Basalts	Evacuation of molten rock	Kazumura Cave, Hawaii
Ice	Evacuation of meltwater	Glacier caves, e.g. Paradise Ice Caves, USA
Soil, especially duplex profiles	Dissolution and granular disintegration	Soil pipes, e.g. Yulirenji Cave, Arnhem Land, Australia
Most rocks, especially bedded and foliated ones	Hydraulic plucking, some exsudation (weathering by expansion on gypsum and halite crystallization)	Sea caves, e.g. Fingal's Cave, Isle of Staffa, Scotland
Most rocks	Tectonic movements	Fault fissures, e.g. Dan yr Ogof, Wales; Onesquethaw Cave, USA
Sandstones	Granular disintegration and wind transport	Rock shelters, e.g. Ubiri Rock, Kakadu, Australia
Many rocks, especially with granular lithologies	Granular disintegration aided by seepage moisture	Tafoni, rock shelters, and boulder caves, e.g. Greenhorn Caves, USA

Source: Partly after Gillieson (1996, 2)

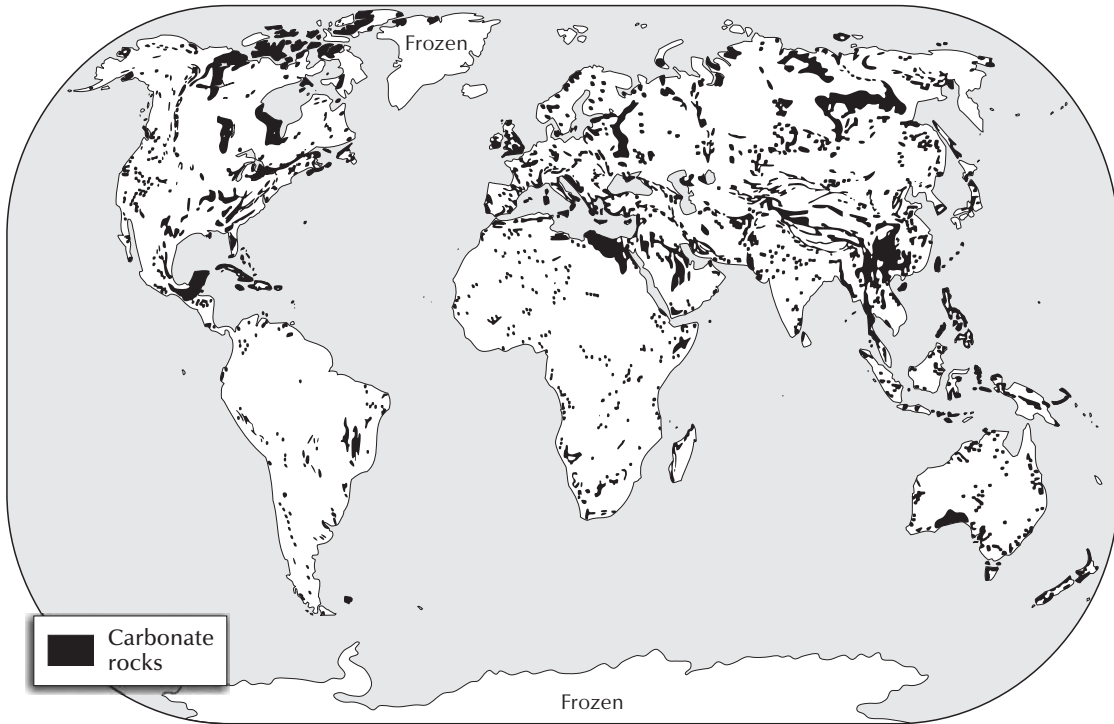


Figure 6.2 World distribution of carbonate rocks.  
 Source: Adapted from Ford and Williams (1989, 4)

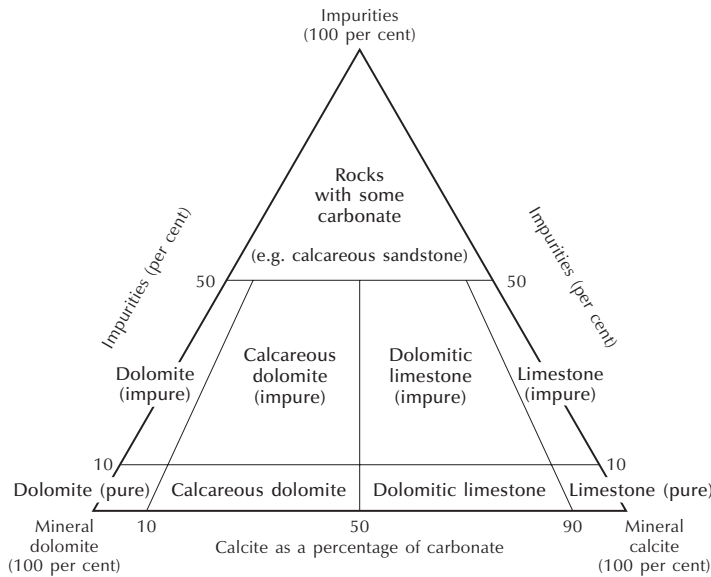


Figure 6.3 Classification of carbonate rocks.  
 Source: Adapted from Leighton and Pendexter (1962)

beds of fairly pure limestone, with more than 80 per cent calcium carbonate, that are very thick, mechanically strong, and contain massive joints. These conditions are fulfilled in the classic karst area of countries bordering the eastern side of the Adriatic Sea. Chalk, although being a very pure limestone, is mechanically weak and does not favour the formation of underground drainage, which is a precondition for the evolution of medium-scale and large-scale surface-karst landforms.

### KARST AND PSEUDOKARST PROCESSES

Few geomorphic processes are confined to karst landscapes, but in areas underlain by soluble rocks, some processes operate in unique ways and produce characteristic features. Solution is often the dominant process in karst landscapes, but it may be subordinate to other geomorphic processes. Various terms are added to karst to signify the chief formative processes in particular areas. **True karst** denotes karst in which solutional processes dominate. The term **holokarst** is sometimes used to signify areas, such as parts of southern China and Indonesia, where almost all landforms are created by karst processes. **Fluviokarst** is karst in which solution and stream action operate together on at least equal terms, and is common in Western and Central Europe and in the mid-western United States, where the dissection of limestone blocks by rivers favours the formation of caves and true karst in interflaves. **Glaciokarst** is karst in which glacial and karst processes work in tandem, and is common in ice-scoured surfaces in Canada, and in the calcareous High Alps and Pyrenees of Europe. Finally, **thermokarst** is irregular terrain produced by the thawing of ground ice in periglacial environments and is not strictly karst or pseudokarst at all, but its topography is superficially similar to karst topography (see p. 244).

Karst drainage systems are a key to understanding many karst features (Figure 6.4). From a hydrological standpoint, karst is divided into the

surface and near-surface zone, or epikarst, and the subsurface zones, or endokarst. **Epikarst** comprises the surface and soil (cutaneous zone), and the regolith and enlarged fissures (subcutaneous zone). **Endokarst** is similarly divided into two parts: the vadose zone of unsaturated water flow and the phreatic zone of saturated water flow. In the upper portion of the vadose zone, threads of water in the subcutaneous zone combine to form percolation streams, and this region is often called the percolation zone. Each zone has particular hydraulic, chemical, and hydrological properties, but the zones expand and contract with time and cannot be rigidly circumscribed.

The chief geomorphic processes characteristic of karst landscapes are solution and precipitation, subsidence, and collapse. Fluvial processes may be significant in the formation of some surface and subterranean landforms. Hydrothermal processes are locally important in caves. A distinction is often drawn between **tropical karst** and karst in other areas. The process of karstification is intense under tropical climates and produces such features as towers and cones (p. 149), which are not produced, at least not to the same degree, under temperate and cold climates. Discoveries in north-west Canada have shown that towers may form under cold climates (pp. 150–1), but the widespread distribution of tropical karst testifies to the extremity of limestone solution under humid tropical climatic regimes.

### Solution and precipitation

Limestone, dolomite, and evaporites

As limestone is the most widespread karst rock, its solution and deposition are important karst processes. With a saturation concentration of about 13 mg/l at 16°C and about 15 mg/l at 25°C, calcite has a modest solubility in pure water. However, it is far more soluble in waters charged with carbonic acid. It also appears to be more soluble in waters holding organic acids released by rotting vegetation, and is very soluble in waters containing sulphuric



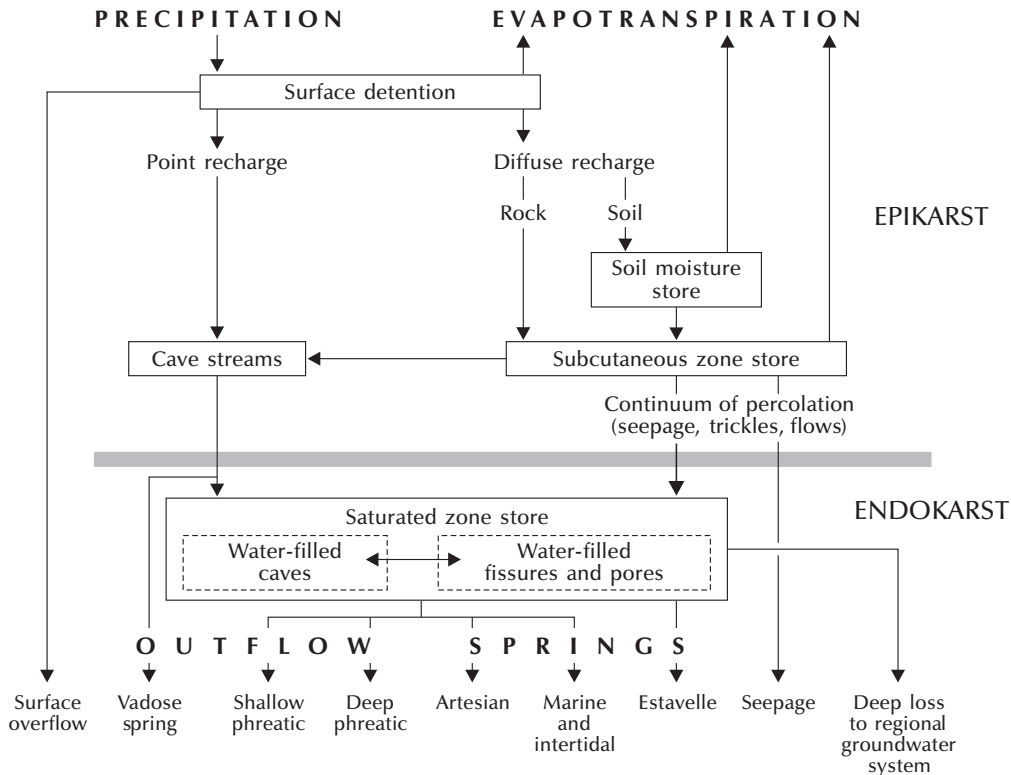


Figure 6.4 The karst drainage system: storages and flows.

Source: Adapted from Ford and Williams (1989, 169)

acid produced by the weathering of sulphide minerals such as pyrite and marcasite. Carbonic acid is the main solvent in karst landscapes, limestones readily succumbing to carbonation (p. 119). Dolomite rock behaves similarly to limestones in natural waters, although it appears to be slightly less soluble than limestone under normal conditions. Complexities are added by the presence of magnesium in dolomites. Evaporites, including gypsum, are much more soluble than limestone or dolomite but carbon dioxide is not involved in their solution. Gypsum becomes increasingly soluble up to a maximum of 37°C. It is deposited as warm water cools sufficiently and when evaporation leads to supersaturation.

### Silicate rocks

Active sinkholes, dolines, and cave systems in quartzite must be produced by the excavation and underground transport of rock. As quartzite has a very low solubility, it is difficult to see how such processes could proceed. One possibility is that, rather than dissolving the entire rock, it is necessary only to dissolve the cementing material around individual quartz grains. Quartz grains have a solubility of less than 10 mg/l, while amorphous silica, which is the chief cement, has a solubility of 150 mg/l. With the cement dissolved, the quartzite would become mechanically incoherent and loose grains could be removed by piping, so eroding underground passages. Alternatively, corrosion of the quartzite itself might produce the underground

karst features. Corrosion of quartz is a slow process but, given sufficient time, underground passages could be developed by this process. To be sure, some karst-like forms excavated in quartzites of the Cueva Kukenan, a Venezuelan cave system, consist of rounded columns some 2–3 m high. If these had been formed by cement removal they should have a tapered cross-section aligned in the direction of flow. All the columns are circular, suggesting that corrosion has attacked the rock equally on all sides (see Doerr 1999). Also, thin sections of rocks from the cave system show that the individual grains are strongly interlocked by silicate overgrowths and, were any silica cement to be removed, they would still resist disintegration. Only after the crystalline grains themselves were partly dissolved could disintegration proceed.

### Slow mass movements and collapse

It is expedient to distinguish between collapse, which is the sudden mass movement of the karst bedrock, and the slow mass movement of soil and weathered mantles (Jennings 1971, 32). The distinction would be artificial in most rocks, but in karst rocks solution ordinarily assures a clear division between the bedrock and the regolith.

#### Slow mass movements

Soil and regolith on calcareous rocks tend to be drier than they would be on impervious rocks. This fact means that lubricated mass movements (rotational slumps, debris slides, debris avalanches, and debris flows) are less active in karst landscapes. In addition, there is little insoluble material in karst rocks and soils tend to be shallow, which reduces mass movement. Calcium carbonate deposition may also bond soil particles, further limiting the possibility of mass movement. Conversely, the widespread action of solution in karst landscapes removes support in all types of unconsolidated material, so encouraging creep, block slumps, debris slides, and especially soilfall and earthflow. As a rider, it should be noted that piping occurs in karst soil and regolith, and

indeed may be stimulated by solution processes beneath soils and regolith covers. Piping or tunnelling is caused by percolating waters transporting clay and silt internally to leave underground conduits that may promote mass movements.

#### Collapse

Rockfalls, block slides, and rock slides are very common in karst landscapes. This is because there are many bare rock slopes and cliffs, and because solution acts as effectively sideways as downwards, leading to the undercutting of stream banks.

### Fluvial and hydrothermal processes

Solution is the chief player in cave formation, but corrosion by floodwaters and hydrothermal action can have significant roles. **Maze caves**, for instance, often form where horizontal, well-bedded limestones are invaded by floodwaters to produce a complicated series of criss-crossing passages. They may also form by hydrothermal action, either when waters rich in carbon dioxide or when waters loaded with corrosive sulphuric acid derived from pyrites invade well-jointed limestone.

### SURFACE KARST FORMS

Early studies of karst landscapes centred on Vienna, with work carried out on the Dinaric karst, a mountain system running some 640 km along the eastern Adriatic Sea from the Isonzo River in north-eastern Italy, through Slovenia, Croatia, Bosnia and Hercegovina, and Yugoslavia, to the Drin River, northern Albania. The Dinaric karst is still regarded as the 'type' area and the Serbo-Croat names applied to karst features in this region have stuck, although most have English equivalents. However, the reader should be made aware that karst terms are very troublesome and the subject of much confusion. It may also be helpful to be mindful of a contrast often made between **bare karst**, in which bedrock is largely exposed to the atmosphere, and **covered**

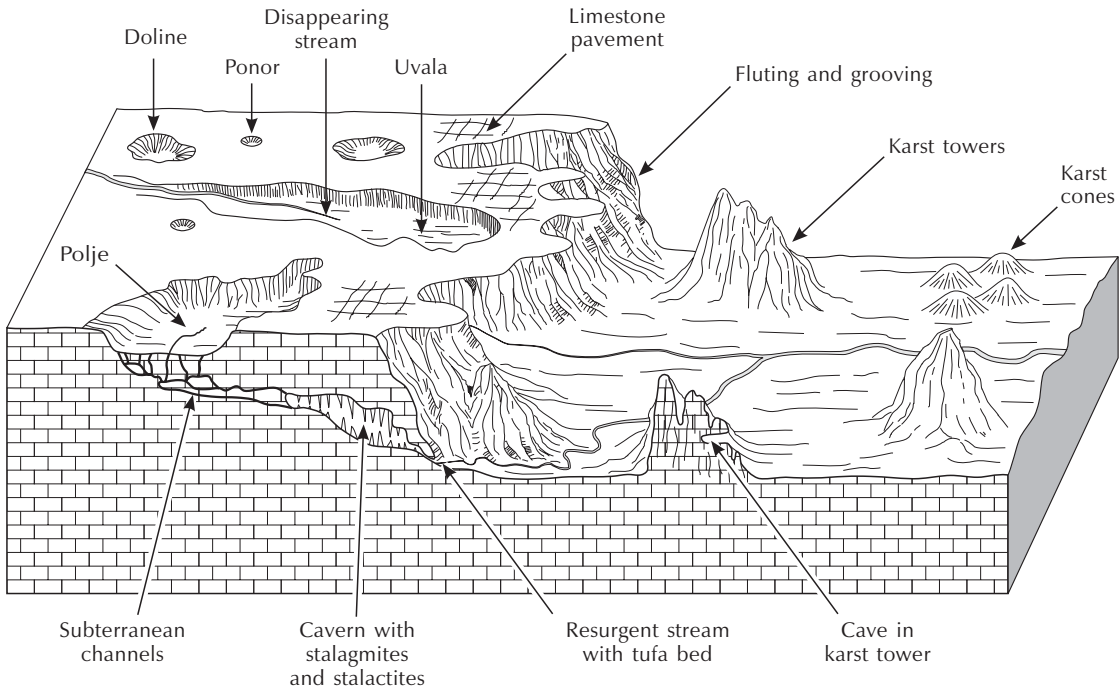


Figure 6.5 Schematic diagram of some karst features.

**karst**, in which bedrock is hardly exposed to the atmosphere at all. All degrees of cover, from total to none, are possible. Another basic distinction is drawn between **free karst**, which drains unimpeded to the sea, and **impounded karst**, which is surrounded by impervious rocks and has to drain through different hydrogeological systems to reach the sea.

Figure 6.5 illustrates diagrammatically some of the main karst landforms that are discussed in the following sections.

## Karren

**Karren** is an umbrella term, which comes from Germany, to cover an elaborately diverse group of small-scale solutional features and sculpturing found on limestone and dolomite surfaces exposed at the ground or in caves. The French word *lapiés* and the Spanish word *lapias* mean the same thing. Widespread, exposed tracts of karren on pavements and other extensive surfaces of calcareous rocks are termed

**Karrenfeld (karren fields)**. The terminology dealing with types of karren is bafflingly elaborate. The nomenclature devised by Jo Jennings (1971, 1985) brings some sense of order to a multilingual lexicon of confused and inconsistent usage. The basic forms are divided according to the degree of cover by soil and vegetation – bare ('free karren'), partly covered ('half-free karren'), and covered ('covered karren') (Bögli 1960). The bare forms are divided into those produced by surface wetting and those produced by concentrated surface runoff. Derek Ford and Paul Williams (1989, 376–7) offered a purely morphological classification of karren types because current understanding of karren-forming processes is too immature to build useful genetic classifications. However, their scheme, although using morphology as the basis for the major divisions, uses genetic factors for subdivisions. Jennings's classification underpins the following discussion, but a few types mentioned by Ford and Williams, and their 'poly-genetic' class, are included (Table 6.2).

Table 6.2 Small limestone landforms produced by solution

Form	Comment
<i>Bare limestone forms (surface wetting)</i>	
Micropits and etched surfaces	Small pits produced by rain falling on gently sloping or flat bare rocks
Microrills	Rills no deeper or wider than about 1.0 mm and not longer than a few centimetres. Called <i>Rillenstein</i> when formed on stones and blocks
Solution ripples or fluted scallops	Shallow, ripple-like flutes formed on steep to vertical surfaces by flowing water normal to the direction of water flow. Prominent as a component of cockling patterns (a mixture of scallops, fluted scallops, or ripples) on steep and bare slopes
Solution flutes ( <i>Rillenkarren</i> )	Longitudinal hollows that start at the slope crest and run down the maximum slope of fairly steep to vertical rock surfaces. They are of uniform fingertip width and depth, with sharp ribs between neighbouring flutes. May occur with rippling to give the rock a netted appearance
Solution bevels ( <i>Ausgleichsflächen</i> )	Very smooth, flat or nearly so, forming tiny treads backed by steeper, fluted rises. A rare variant is the solution funnel step or heelprint ( <i>Trittkarren</i> or <i>Trichterkarren</i> )
Solution runnels ( <i>Rinnenkarren</i> )	Solution hollows, which result from Hortonian overland flow, running down the maximum slope of the rock, larger than solution flutes and increasing in depth and width down their length owing to increased water flow. Thick ribs between neighbouring runnels may be sharp and carry solution flutes
Decantation runnels	Forms related to solution runnels and include meandering runnels ( <i>Mäanderkarren</i> ) and wall solution runnels ( <i>Wandkarren</i> ). Produced by the dripping of acidulated water from an upslope point source. Channels reduce in size downslope
Decantation flutings	Packed channels, which often reduce in width downslope, produced by acidulated water released from a diffuse upslope source
<i>Bare limestone forms (concentrated surface runoff)</i>	
Microfissures	Small fissures, up to several centimetres long but no more than 1 cm deep, that follow small joints
Splitkarren	Solution fissures, centimetres to a few metres long and centimetres deep, that follow joints, stylolites, or veins. Taper with depth unless occupied by channel flow. May be transitional to pits, karren shafts, or grikes
Grikes ( <i>Kluftkarren</i> )	Major solution fissures following joints or fault lines. The largest forms include <i>bogaz</i> , corridors, and streets.
Clints ( <i>Flackkarren</i> )	Tabular blocks between grikes
Solution spikes ( <i>Spitzkarren</i> )	Sharp projections between grikes
<i>Partly covered forms</i>	
Solution pits	Round-bottomed or tapered forms. Occur under soil and on bare rock
Solution pans	Dish-shaped depressions formed on flat or nearly flat limestone, with sides that may overhang and carry solution flutes. The bottom of the pans may have a cover of organic remains, silt, clay, or rock debris
Undercut solution runnels ( <i>Hohlkarren</i> )	Similar to runnels and become larger with depth resulting from damp conditions near the base associated with humus or soil accumulations
Solution notches ( <i>Korrosionkehlen</i> )	Inward-curved recesses etched by soil abutting rock

<i>Covered forms</i>	
Rounded solution runnels ( <i>Rundkarren</i> )	Runnels formed under an 'acidulated' soil or sediment cover that smooths out the features
Cutters	An American term for soil-covered grikes that are widened at the top and taper with depth. Intervening clints are called subsoil pinnacles
Solution pipes, shafts, or wells	Cylindrical or conical holes developed along joint planes that connect to proto-caves or small caves. Shaft-like forms weathered below a deep and periodically saturated soil cover contain small caverns and are known as 'bone yard' forms. These are popularly used in ornamental rockeries
<i>Polygenetic forms – assemblages of karren</i>	
Karren fields ( <i>Karrenfeld</i> )	Exposed tracts of karren that may cover up to several square kilometres
Limestone pavement	A type of karren field characterized by regular clints and grikes. They are called stepped pavements ( <i>Schichttreppenkarst</i> ) when benched
Pinnacle karst and stone forest	Topography with pinnacles, sometimes exposed by soil erosion, formed on karst rocks. Pinnacles may stand up to 45 m tall and 20 m wide at the base
Ruiniform karst	Karst with wide grikes and degrading clints exposed by soil erosion. Transitional to tors
Corridor karst or labyrinth karst (or giant grikeland)	Large-scale clint-and-grike terrains with grikes several metres or more wide and up to 1 km long
Coastal karren	A distinctive solutional topography on limestone or dolomite found around coasts and lakes

Source: After discussion in Jennings (1971, 1985) and Ford and Williams (1989, 376–7)

### Bare forms

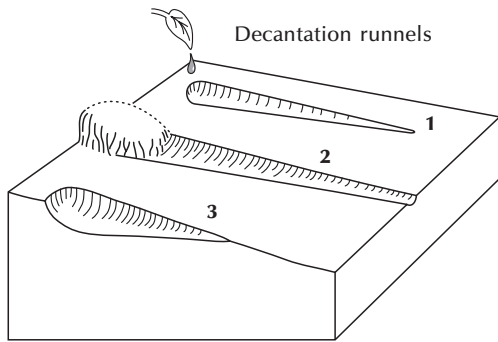
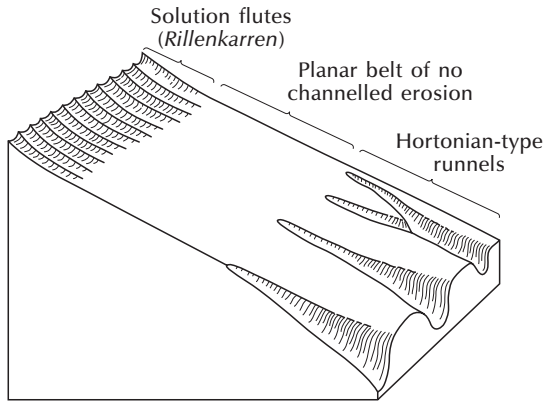
Bare forms produced by surface wetting comprise **pits**, **ripples**, **flutes**, **bevels**, and **runnels**, all of which are etched into bare limestone by rain hitting and flowing over the naked rock surface or dripping or seeping onto it. They are small landforms, the smallest, **micropits** and **microrills**, being at most 1 cm wide and deep, and the largest, **solution flutes** (*Rinnenkarren*), averaging about 1.0 to 2.5 m wide and 15 m long. The smallest features are called **microkarren**. Solutional features of a few micrometers can be discerned under an electron microscope. Exposed karst rocks may develop relief of 1 mm or more within a few decades. The main bare forms resulting from surface wetting are **solution ripples**, **solution flutes** (*Rillenkarren*), **solution bevels** (*Ausgleichsflächen*), **solution runnels** (*Rinnenkarren*), and **decantation runnels** and **flutings** (Table 6.2; Figure 6.6; Plates 6.1 and 6.2).

Bare forms resulting from concentrated runoff are microfissures, splitkarren, grikes, clints, and



Plate 6.1 *Rillenkarren* formed on a limestone block in a Holocene landslide pile, Surprise Valley, near Jasper, Jasper National Park, Alberta, Canada. The blocks are chaotically orientated in the pile, but are rilled down the modern drainage lines.

(Photograph by Derek C. Ford)



1. Source not in direct contact with surface
2. Source in direct contact with surface
3. Source no longer present

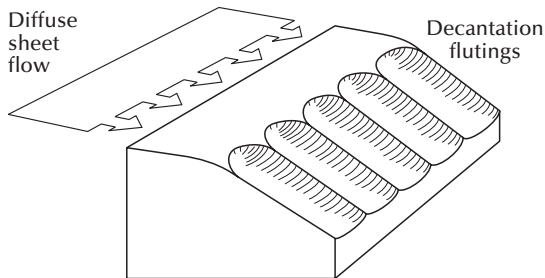


Figure 6.6 Solution flutes (*Rillenkarren*), decantation runnels, and decantation flutings.

Source: After Ford and Williams (1989, 383)



Plate 6.2 Decantation runnels (*Rinnenkarren*) on marble near Pikhauga Ridge, Svartisen, Norway. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)



Plate 6.3 Clints and grikes on 'textbook' limestone pavement on the lip of Malham Cove, Yorkshire. Towards the cliff edge, the soils have always been thin; the grikes are simple linear features and the clints show little dissection. In the fore- and middle-ground, grike edges are rounded and clints dissected by subsoil *Rundkarren*. The figure is a young Paul Williams. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)



solution spikes. **Microfissures** are solutional features following small joints. **Splitkarren** are larger solution channels that run along larger lines of weakness – joints, stylolites, and veins. **Grikes** (*Kluftkarren*), which are called solution slots in America, follow joints and cleavage planes so may be straight, deep, and long, often occurring in networks (Plate 6.3). Grikes are the leading karren feature in most karren assemblages. Large openings may develop at joint intersections, some several metres deep and called karst wells, which are related to solution pipes and potholes. The intervening tabular blocks between grikes are called **clints** (*Flackkarren*) (Plate 6.3). Grikes in upright bedding planes are enlarged in the same ways as joints in flat bedding planes and are called **bedding grikes** (*Schichtfugenkarren*). However, residual blocks left between them commonly break into **pinnacles** or **solution spikes** (*Spitzkarren*) and beehives decorated by solution flutes. In horizontal strata, the near-surface bedding planes are likely to be opened up by seepage. This process may free the intervening clints and lead to their breaking up to form **shallow** (a term from northern England), which is roughly equivalent to the German *Triimmerkarren* and *Scherbenkarst*. All these forms are small. Grikes average about 5 cm cross and up to several metres deep, clints may be up to several metres across and solution spikes up to several metres long. Large-scale grikes, variously termed *bogaz*, corridors, and streets, are found in some areas and follow major joints and faults. *Bogaz* are up to 4 m wide, 5 m deep, and tens of metres long. **Karst corridors** and **streets** are even larger and take the form of gorges.

### Covered and partly covered forms

Partly covered forms develop in areas with a patchy soil, sediment, litter, or moss cover. **Solution pits** are round-bottomed or tapered forms, usually less than 1 m in diameter. Larger ones merge into **solution pans**. They occur under soil and on bare limestone. Along with shafts, they are the most widespread karren form. Many are transitional to

shafts. Solution pans or solution basins are small depressions shaped like basins or dishes, usually with a thin cover of soil or algal or vegetal remains. They are no more than 3 m wide and 0.5 m deep, but many are much smaller. Some of the carbon dioxide released by the decaying organic matter dissolves in the water collected in the pans and boosts their dissolution. The Slav term for them is *kamenice* (singular *kamenica*) and the American term is tinajitas. **Undercut solution runnels** (*Hohlkarren*) are like runnels in form and size, except that they become wider with increasing depth, probably owing to accumulated organic matter or soil keeping the sides and base near the bottom damp. **Solution notches** (*Korrosionkehlen*) are about 1 m high and wide and 10 m long. They are formed where soil lies against projecting rock, giving rise to inward-curved recesses.

Covered forms develop under a blanket of soil or sediment, which acts like ‘an acidulated sponge’ (Jennings 1971, 48). Where it contacts the underlying limestone, the ‘sponge’ etches out its own array of landforms, the chief among which are rounded solution runnels and solution pipes. **Rounded solution runnels** (*Rundkarren*) are the same size as ordinary runnels but they are worn smooth by the active corrosion identified with acid soil waters. They are visible only when the soil or sediment blanket has been stripped off (Plate 6.3, foreground). Cutters are soil-covered clints that are widened at the top and taper with depth (Colour Plate 2, inserted between pp. 210–11). **Solution pipes** (or **shafts** or **wells**) are up to 1 m across and 2–5 m deep, usually becoming narrower with depth, but many are smaller. They are cylindrical or conical holes, occurring on such soft limestones as chalk, as well as the mechanically stronger and less permeable limestones. Solution pipes usually form along joint planes, but in the chalk of north-west Europe they can develop in an isolated fashion.



## Polygenetic karst

### Limestone pavements

**Limestone pavements** are karren fields developed in flat or gently dipping strata. They occur as extensive benches or plains of bare rock in horizontally bedded limestones and dolomites (Plate 6.3). Solution dissolves clefts in limestone and dolomite pavements that are between 0.5 and 25 m deep. The clefts, or grikes, separate surfaces (clints) that bear several solution features (karren). A survey in the early 1970s listed 573 pavements in the British Isles, most of them occurring on the Carboniferous limestone of the northern Pennines in the counties of North Yorkshire, Lancashire, and Cumbria (Ward and Evans 1976).

Debate surrounds the origin of pavements, some geomorphologists arguing that a cover of soil that is from time to time scoured by erosion encourages their formation. To be sure, the British pavements appear to have been produced by the weathering of the limestone while it was covered by glacial till. Later scouring by ice would remove any soil cover and accumulated debris. It may be no coincidence that limestone pavements are very common in Canada, where ice-scouring has occurred regularly (Lundberg and Ford 1994). Lesser pavements occur where waves, rivers in flood, or even sheet wash on pediments do the scouring instead of ice.

### Pinnacle karst

**Pinnacle karst** is dominated by large *Spitzkarren*. In China, a famous example of pinnacle karst is the Yunnan Stone Forest (Plate 6.4; Colour Plate 3, inserted between pp. 210–11). This is an area of grey limestone pillars covering about 350 km<sup>2</sup>. The pillars stand 1–35 m tall with diameters of 1 to 20 m. **Arête-and-pinnacle karst**, which is found on Mount Kaijende in Papua New Guinea and Mount Api in Sarawak, consists of bare, net-like, saw-topped ridges with almost vertical sides that stand up to 120 m high. The spectacular ridges rise above forest-covered corridors and depressions. They



Plate 6.4 Pinnacle karst or shilin (shilin means ‘stone forest’ in Mandarin) exposed in a road-cut in Shilin National Park, Yunnan, China. The subsoil origin of the pinnacles is plainly seen. Their emergence is due to the general erosion of regional cover sediment. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

seem to have formed by limestone solution without having previously been buried.

### Ruiniform karst

This is an assemblage of exceptionally wide grikes and degrading clints that have been exposed by soil erosion (Plate 6.5). The clints stick out like ‘miniature city blocks in a ruined townscape’ (Ford and Williams 1989, 391). Ruiniform karst is found in the French Causses, where deforestation and soil erosion has occurred. On high crests, ruiniform karst is transitional to limestone tors.

### Corridor karst

In places, grikes grow large to form a topography of aligned or criss-crossing corridors. The large grikes are called *bogaz*, corridors, *zanjones*, and streets.



*Plate 6.5* A ruiniform assemblage (residual clint blocks) in flat-lying limestones near Padua, Italy. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

Grike-wall recession produces square-shaped or box valleys and large closed depressions called **platea**. Corridor karst landscapes are called **labyrinth karst**, **corridor karst**, or **giant grikeland**. It is large-scale clint-and-grike terrain but may have a complex history of development. Grikelands form under tropical and temperate rain forest and in arid and semi-arid areas. Smaller-scale versions are known from the Nahanni limestone karst region of the Mackenzie Mountains, Canada (Brook and Ford 1978). Here, the labyrinth karst is stunning, with individual streets longer than 1 km and deeper than 50 m (Plate 6.6).



*Plate 6.6* View of Nahanni labyrinth karst, showing intersecting networks of karst streets interspersed with karst platea. (Photograph by George A. Brook)

### Coastal karren

Around coasts and lakes, limestone or dolomite outcrops often display a distinctive solutional topography, with features including intertidal and subtidal notches (also called nips; Plate 6.7) and a dense formation of pits, pans, micropits, and spikes (Plate 6.8). Boring and grazing organisms may help to form coastal karren, as may wave action, wetting and drying, salt weathering, and hydration.



Plate 6.7 A limestone solution notch on a modern shore platform on the east coast of Okinawa, Japan. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

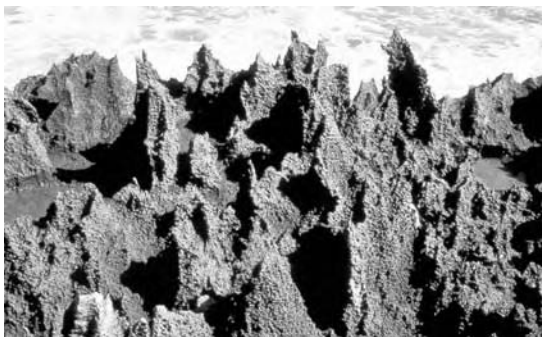


Plate 6.8 Limestone coastal karren pitting (sometimes called phytokarst or biokarst) on the west coast of Puerto Rico. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

### Closed depressions

#### Dolines

The word **doline** is derived from the Slovene word *dolina*, meaning a depression in the landscape. It is applied to the simpler forms of closed depressions in karst landscapes. **Sinkhole**, **swallet**, and **swallow hole** are English terms with rather loose connotations. Dolines resemble various shapes – dishes, bowls, cones, and cylinders. They range in size from less than a metre wide and deep to over hundreds of metres deep and several hundred metres or even a kilometre wide. The large forms tend to be complex and grade into other classes of closed depressions.

Dolines are formed by several processes: surface solution, cave collapse, piping, subsidence, and stream removal of superficial covers. Although these processes frequently occur in combination and most dolines are polygenetic, they serve as a basis for a five-fold classification of dolines (Jennings 1985, 107; Ford and Williams 1989, 398) (Figure 6.7):

- 1 **Solution dolines** start where solution is concentrated around a favourable point such as joints intersections. The solution lowers the bedrock surface, so eating out a small depression (Figure 6.7a; Plate 6.9). The depression traps water, encouraging more solution and depression enlargement. Once begun, doline formation is thus self-perpetuating. However, insoluble residues and other debris may clog the doline floor, sometimes forming swampy areas or pools to form **pond dolines**. Dolines are one of the few karst landforms that develop in soft limestones such as chalk (e.g. Matthews *et al.* 2000).
- 2 **Collapse dolines** are produced suddenly when the roof of a cave formed by underground solution gives way and fractures or ruptures rock and soil (Figure 6.7b; Plate 6.10). Initially, they have steep walls, but, without further collapse, they become cone-shaped or bowl-shaped as the sides are worn down and the bottom is filled with debris. Eventually, they may be indistinguishable

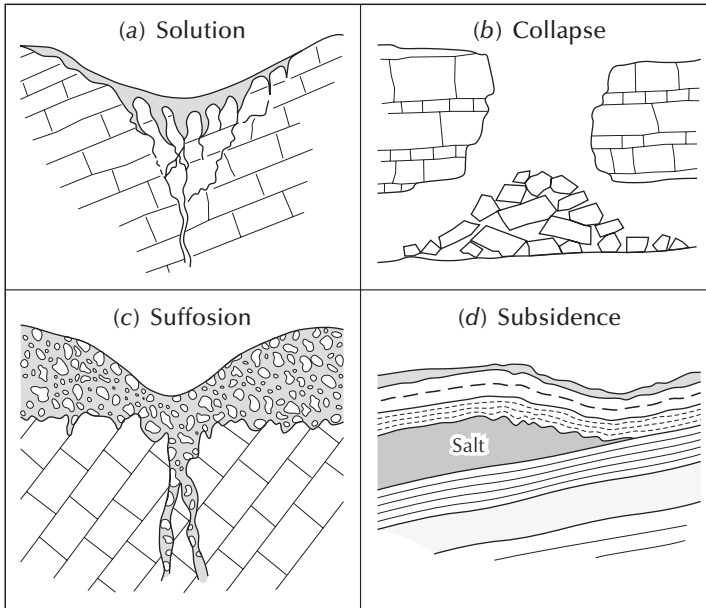


Figure 6.7 The main genetic classes of doline. (a) Solution doline. (b) Collapse doline. (c) Suffosion doline. (d) Subsidence doline. Source: After Ford and Williams (1989, 398)



Plate 6.9 Small doline in steeply dipping limestone in the Rocky Mountain Front Ranges. The doline is formed on a cirque floor in the valley of Ptolemy Creek, Crownest Pass, Alberta, Canada. (Photograph by Derek C. Ford)



Plate 6.10 Collapse dolines at the water table, Wood Buffalo National Park, Alberta, Canada. The dolines are created by collapses through dolostone into underlying gypsum. The diameters are 40–100 m. (Photograph from Parks Canada archives)

from other dolines except by excavation. The largest open collapse doline is Crveno Jezero ('Red Lake') in Croatia, which is 421 m deep on its lowest rim and 518 m deep at its highest rim. If the collapse occurs into a water-filled cave, or if the water table has risen after the collapse

occurred, the collapse doline may contain a lake, often deep, covering its floor. Such lakes are called **cenotes** on the Yucatán Peninsula, Mexico, and '**obruk**' lakes on the Turkish plateau. Some of the cenotes near the Mayan ruins of the northern Yucatán are very large. Dzitnup, at the



Mayan ruins of Chichén Itzá, is a vertical-walled sinkhole some 60 m wide and 39 m deep, half-filled with water. **Subjacent karst-collapse dolines** form even more dramatically than collapse dolines when beds of an overlying non-calcareous rock unit falls into a cave in the underlying limestone. An example is the Big Hole, near Braidwood, New South Wales, Australia. Here, a 115-m-deep hole in Devonian quartz sandstone is assumed to have collapsed into underlying Silurian limestone (Jennings 1967). As with collapse dolines, subjacent karst-collapse dolines start life as steep-walled and deep features but progressively come to resemble other dolines.

- 3 **Suffosion dolines** form in an analogous manner to subjacent karst-collapse dolines, with a blanket of superficial deposits or thick soil being washed or falling into widened joints and solution pipes in the limestone beneath (Figure 6.7c). In England, the 'shakeholes' of Craven, near Ingleborough, northern England, are conical suffosion dolines in glacial moraine laid upon the limestone during the ultimate Pleistocene glaciation (Sweeting 1950).
- 4 **Subsidence dolines** form gradually by the sagging or settling of the ground surface without any manifest breakage of soil or rock (Figure 6.7d). Natural dolines of subsidence origin are rare and are found where the dissolution of underground evaporite beds occurs, as in Cheshire, England, where salt extraction from Triassic rocks has produced depressions on the surface, locally known as **flashes**.
- 5 **Alluvial stream-sink dolines** form in alluvium where streams descend into underlying calcareous rocks. The stream-sink is the point at which a stream disappears underground. Several examples are found in the White Peak District of Derbyshire, England (Figure 6.8).

### Karst windows

These are unroofed portions of underground caverns in which streams flow out of the cavern at one end,

across the floor, and into a cavern at the other end. The openings may be mere peepholes or much larger.

### Uvalas and egg-box topography

**Uvalas**, a word from Slovenia, are compound sinkholes or complex depressions composed of more than one hollow. They are larger than small dolines. Elongated forms follow strike lines or fault lines, while lobate forms occur on horizontal beds. Solution may play a big role in their formation, but, without further study, other processes cannot be discounted.

On thick limestone, where the water table is deep, solution sinkholes may be punched downwards to form **egg-box topography**, known as *fengcong* in China, with sharp residual peaks along the doline rim and a local relief of hundreds of metres.

### Polja

A **polje** (plural *polja*) is a large, usually elongated, closed depression with a flat floor (Plate 6.6). Polja have many regional names, including *plans* in Provence, France; *wangs* in Malaysia; and *bojos* in Cuba. Intermittent or perennial streams, which may be liable to flood and become lakes, may flow across their floors and drain underground through stream-sinks called **ponors** or through gorges cutting through one of the polje walls. The floods occur because the ponors cannot carry the water away fast enough. Many of the lakes are seasonal, but some are permanent features of polje floors, as in Cerkniča Polje, Slovenia.

Polya come in three basic kinds: border polja, structural polja, and baselevel polya (Figure 6.9) (Ford and Williams 1989, 431–2). **Border polja** are fed by rivers from outside the karst region (allogenic rivers) that, owing to the position of the water table in the feed area and floodplain deposits over the limestone, tend to stay on the ground surface to cause lateral planation and alluviation. **Structural polja** are largely controlled by geology, often being

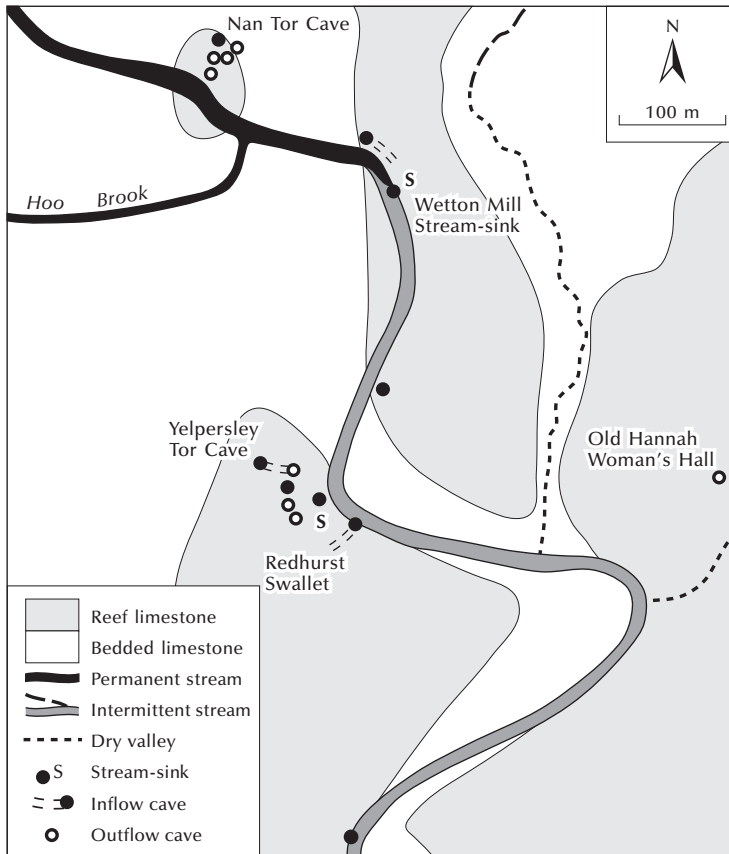


Figure 6.8 Stream-sinks on the River Manifold in the English Peak District.

Source: Adapted from Warwick (1953)

associated with down-faulted inliers of impervious rocks in limestone terrain. They include the largest karst depressions in the world and are the dominant type of polje in the Dinaric karst. **Baselevel polja** occur in limestone where a regional water table intersects the ground surface.

### Cone karst

Tropical karst is one of the landform wonders of the world. Extensive areas of it occur in southern Mexico, Central America, the Caribbean, South-East Asia, southern China, South America, Madagascar, the Middle East, New Guinea, and northern Australia. Under humid tropical climates, karst landscapes take on a rather different aspect to

'classic' karst. In many places, owing to rapid and vigorous solution, dolines have grown large enough to interfere with each other and have destroyed the original land surface. Such landscapes are called **cone karst** (*Kegelkarst* in German) and are dominated by projecting residual relief rather than by closed depressions (Plate 6.11). The outcome is a polygonal pattern of ridges surrounding individual dolines. The intensity of the karstification process in the humid tropics is partly a result of high runoff rates and partly a result of thick soil and vegetation cover promoting high amounts of soil carbon dioxide.

Two types of cone karst are recognized – cockpit karst and tower karst – although they grade into one another and there are other forms that conform to

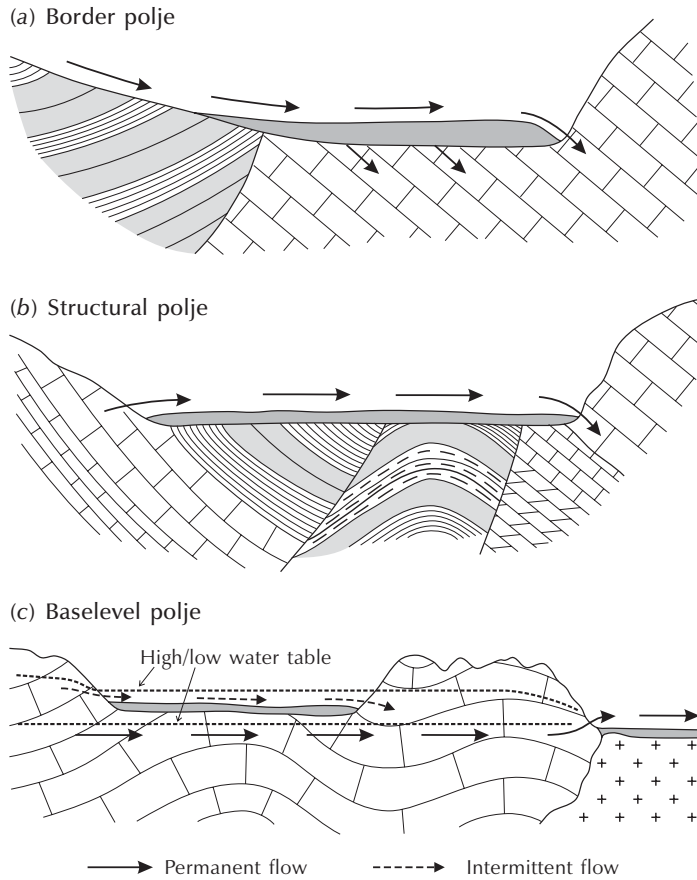


Figure 6.9 Types of polje. (a) Border polje. (b) Structural polje.

(c) Baselevel polje.

Source: After Ford and Williams (1989, 429)



Plate 6.11 Limestone cone karst near Anxhun, Guizhou province, China.

(Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

neither. Cockpits are tropical dolines (Figure 6.10). In **cockpit karst**, the residual hills are half-spheres, called *Kugelkarst* in German, and the closed depressions, shaped like starfish, are called cockpits, the name given to them in Jamaica due to their resembling cockfighting arenas. In **tower karst** (*Turmkarst* in German), the residual hills are towers or **mogotes** (also called **haystack hills**), standing 100 m or more tall, with extremely steep to overhanging lower slopes (Plate 6.12). They sit in broad alluvial plains that contain flat-floored, swampy depressions. The residual hills may have extraordinarily sharp edges and form **pinnacle karst** (p. 144).

Studies in the Mackenzie Mountains, north-west



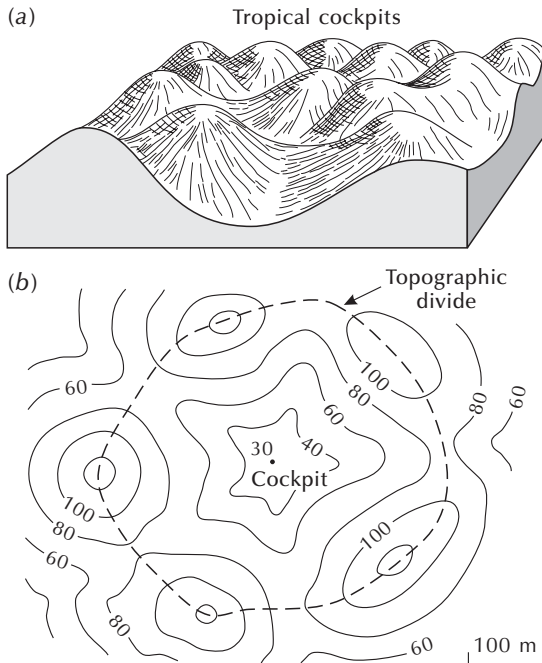


Figure 6.10 Tropical dolines (cockpits). (a) Block diagram. (b) Plan view.

Source: Adapted from Williams (1969)



Plate 6.12 Tower karst on the south bank of the Li River near Guilin, Guangxi province, China.

(Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

Canada, have shattered the notion that cone karst, and especially tower karst, is a tropical landform (Brook and Ford 1978). Limestone in the Mackenzie Mountains is massive and very thick with widely

spaced joints. Karst evolution in the area appears to have begun with the opening of deep dolines at 'weak' points along joints. Later, long and narrow gorges called karst streets formed, to be followed by a rectilinear network of deep gorges with other cross-cutting lines of erosion – labyrinth karst. In the final stage, the rock wall of the gorges suffered lateral planation, so fashioning towers.

### Fluvial karst

Although a lack of surface drainage is a characteristic feature of karst landscapes, several surface landforms owe their existence to fluvial action. Rivers do traverse and rise within karst areas, eroding various types of valley and building peculiar carbonate deposits.

### Gorges

In karst terrain, rivers tend to erode **gorges** more frequently than they do in other rock types. In France, the Grands Causses of the Massif Centrale is divided into four separate plateaux by the 300–500-m deep Lot, Tarn, Jonte, and Dourbie gorges. The gorges are commonplace in karst landscape because river incision acts more effectively than slope processes, which fail to flare back the valley-sides to a V-shaped cross-section. Some gorges form by cavern collapse, but others are 'through valleys' eroded by rivers that manage to cross karst terrain without disappearing underground.

### Blind and half-blind valleys

Rivers flowing through karst terrain may, in places, sink through the channel bed. The process lowers the bedrock and traps some of the sediment load. The sinking of the channel bed saps the power of the stream below the point of leakage. An upward step or threshold develops in the long profile of the stream and the underground course becomes larger, diverting increasingly more flow. When large enough, the underground conduit takes all the flow at normal stages but cannot accommodate flood

discharge, which ponds behind the step and eventually overflows it. The resulting landform is a **half-blind valley**. A half-blind valley is found on the Coleman Plain, New South Wales, Australia (Figure 6.11a). A small creek flowing off a granodiorite hill flows for 150 m over Silurian limestone before sinking through an earth hole. Beyond the hole is a 3-m-high grassy threshold separating the depression from a gravel stream bed that only rarely holds overflow. If a stream cuts down its bed far enough and enlarges its underground course so that even flood discharges sink through it, a **blind valley** is created that is closed abruptly at its lower end by a cliff or slope facing up the valley. Blind valleys carry perennial or intermittent streams, with sinks at their lower ends, or they may be dry valleys. Many blind valleys occur at

Yarrangobilly, New South Wales, Australia. The stream here sinks into the Bath House Cave, underneath crags in a steep, 15-m-high counter-slope (Figure 6.11b).

### Steepheads

**Steepheads** or **pocket valleys** are steep-sided valleys in karst, generally short and ending abruptly upstream where a stream issues forth in a spring, or did so in the past. These cul-de-sac valleys are particularly common around plateau margins or mountain flanks. In Provence, France, the Fountain of Vaucluse emerges beneath a 200-m-high cliff at the head of a steephead. Similarly, if less spectacularly, the Punch Bowl at Burton Salmon, formed on Upper Magnesian Limestone, Yorkshire, England,

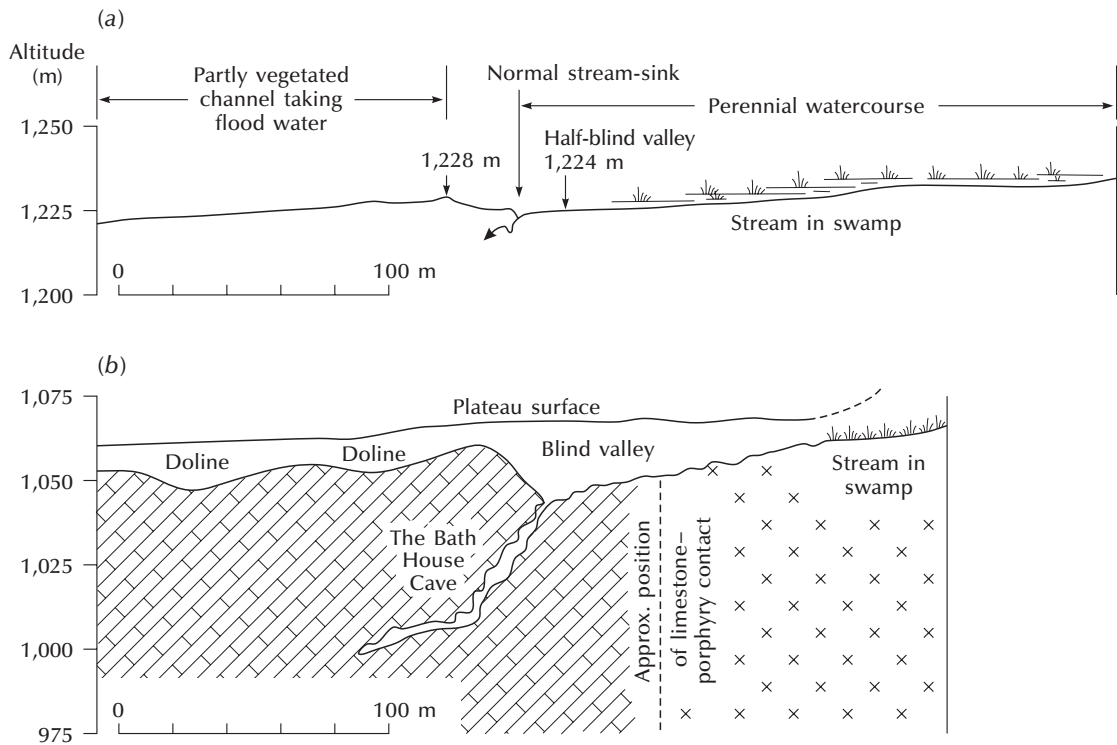


Figure 6.11 Blind and half-blind valleys in New South Wales, Australia. (a) A half-blind valley on Coleman Plain. (b) A blind valley at Yarrangobilly.

Source: Adapted from Jennings (1971, 110, 111)

is a steephead with a permanent spring issuing from the base of its headwall (Murphy 2000). Malham Cove, England, is also a steephead (Colour Plate 4, inserted between pp. 210–11). Steepheads may form by headward recession, as spring sapping eats back into the rock mass, or by cave-roof collapse.

### Dry valleys

**Dry valleys** are much like regular river valleys save that they lack surface stream channels on their floors. They occur on many types of rock but are noticeably common in karst landscapes. Eye-catching dry valleys occur where rivers flowing over impermeable rock sink on entering karst terrain, but their former courses are traceable above ground. In the Craven district, England, the Watlowes is a craggy dry valley in which the stream fed by Malham Tarn formerly flowed over the limestone to cascade over the 75-m cliff of Malham Cove (Figure 6.12; Colour Plate 4).

Extensive dry valley networks occur in some areas of karst. An impressive set is found in the White Peak, England. Here, a few major streams – the Rivers Manifold, Dove, and Wye – flow across the region, but most other valleys are dry (Figure 6.13). Many of the dry valleys start as shallow, bowl-like basins that develop into rock-walled valleys and gorges. Other, smaller dry valleys hang above the major dry valleys and the permanent river valleys. The origin of such networks is puzzling but appears to be the legacy of a former cover of impervious shales (Warwick 1964). Once the impervious cover was removed by erosion, the rivers cut into the limestone beneath until solution exploited planes of weakness and diverted the drainage underground. The ‘hanging valleys’, which are reported in many karst areas, resulted from the main valleys’ continuing to incise after their tributaries ceased to have surface flow.

### Meander caves

**Meander caves** are formed where the outer bend of a meander undercuts a valley-side. Now, stream

debris does not hamper rivers from lateral erosion in karst landscapes as it does rivers on other rocks, because rivers carrying a large clastic load cannot move laterally by corrasion as easily as rivers bearing a small clastic load can by corrosion. For this reason, meander caves are better developed in karst terrain than elsewhere. A prime example is Verandah Cave, Borenore, New South Wales, Australia (Figure 6.14).

### Natural bridges

**Natural bridges** are formed of rock and span ravines or valleys. They are productions of erosion and are commoner in karst terrain than elsewhere. Three mechanisms seem able to build natural bridges in karst areas. First, a river may cut through a very narrow band of limestone that crosses its path. Second, cave roofs may collapse leaving sections still standing. Third, rivers may capture each other by **piracy** (Figure 6.15). This happens where meander caves on one or both sides of a meander spur breach the wall of limestone between them (Figure 6.15).

### Tufa and travertine deposits

Karst rivers may carry supersaturated concentrations of carbonates. When deposited, the carbonates may build landforms. Carbonate deposition occurs when (1) water is exposed to the atmosphere, and so to carbon dioxide, on emerging from underground; (2) when evaporation supersaturates the water; and (3) when plants secrete calcareous skeletons or carbonate is deposited around their external tissues. Porous accumulations of calcium carbonate deposited from spring, river, or lake waters in association with plants are called **tufa** (Colour Plate 5, inserted between pp. 210–11). Compact, crystalline, often banded calcium carbonate deposits precipitated from spring, river, or lake water are called **travertine**, or sometimes **calc-sinter** (Plate 6.13). However, some geomorphologists use the terms tufa and travertine interchangeably. Tufa and travertine deposition is favoured in well-aerated places, which promote plant growth, evaporation, and carbon dioxide diffusion from the air. Any irregularity in a stream

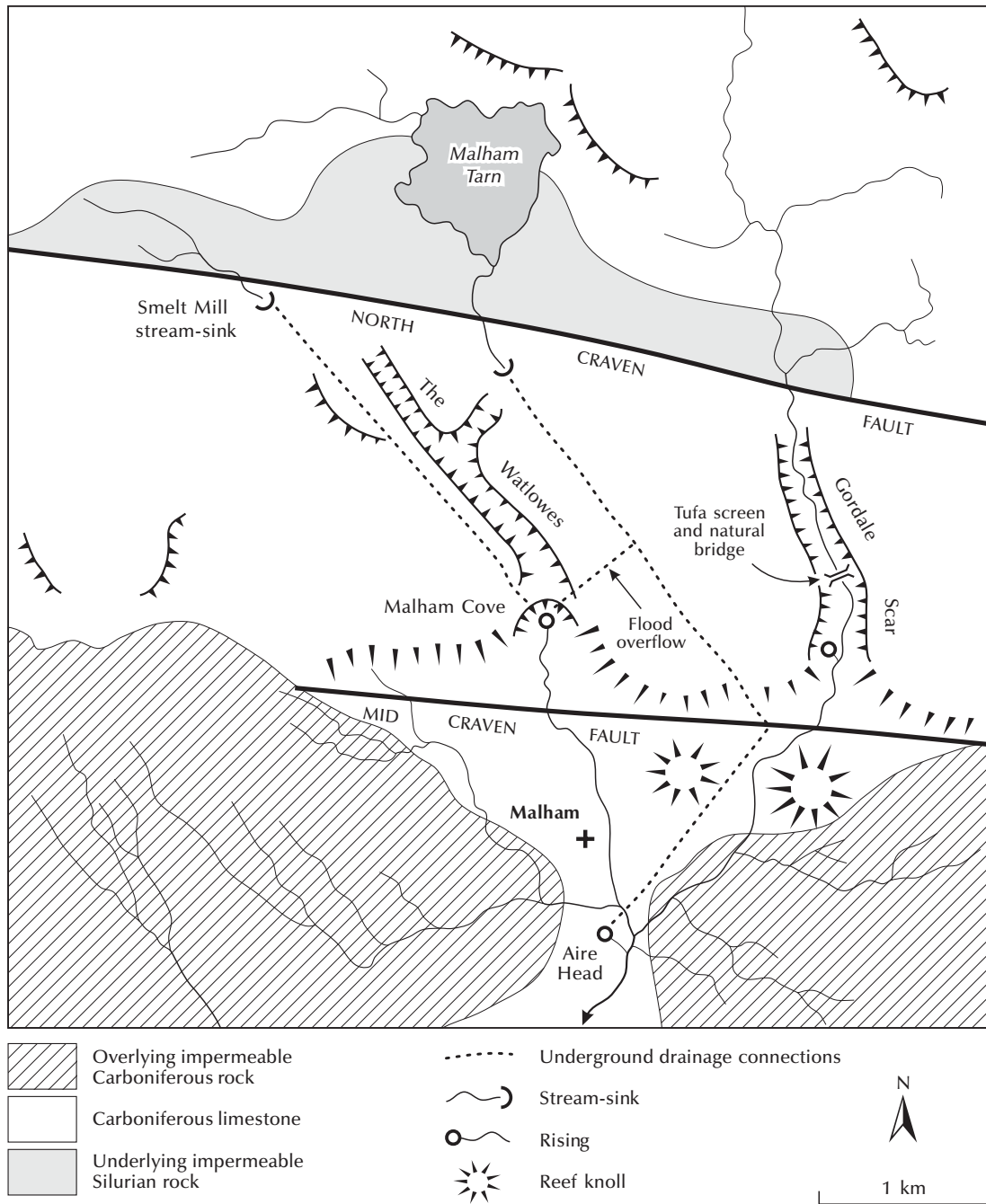


Figure 6.12 Limestone features around Malham Cove, Craven, England. Compare with Colour Plate 4.

Source: Adapted from Jennings (1971, 91)

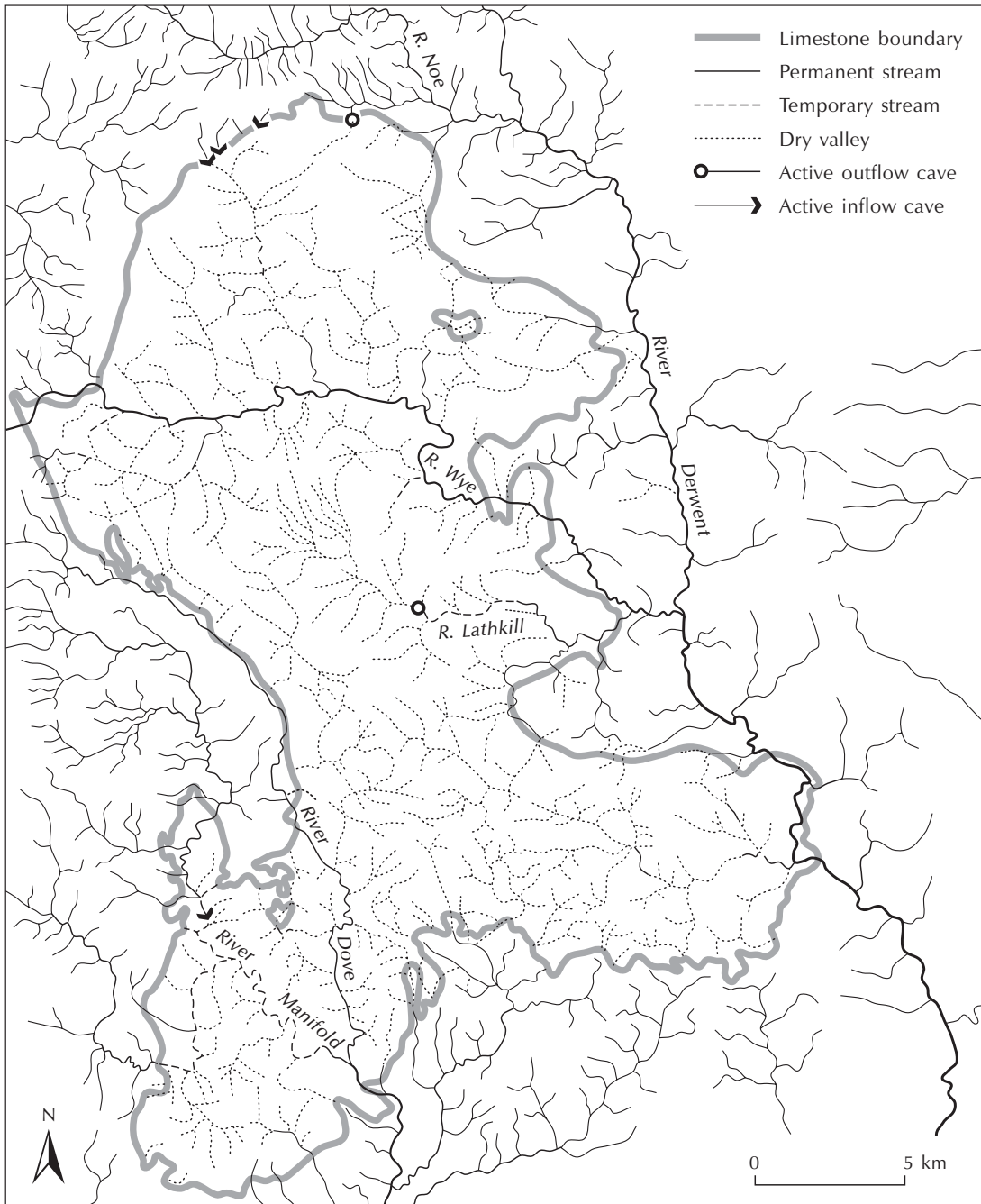


Figure 6.13 Dry valley systems in the White Peak, England.

Source: Adapted from Warwick (1964)

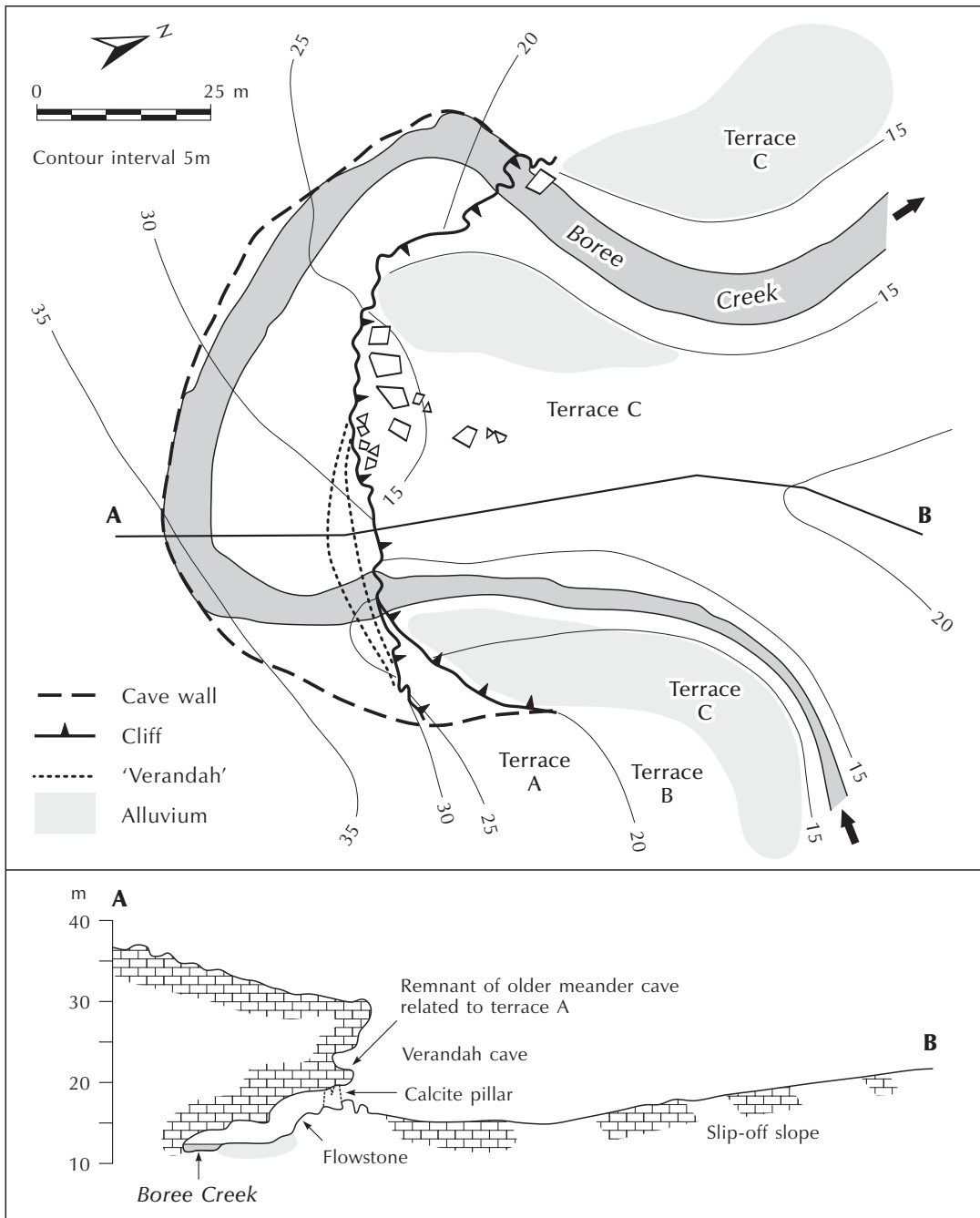


Figure 6.14 A meander cave on Boree Creek, Boreenore, New South Wales, Australia.

Source: Adapted from Jennings (1971, 101)

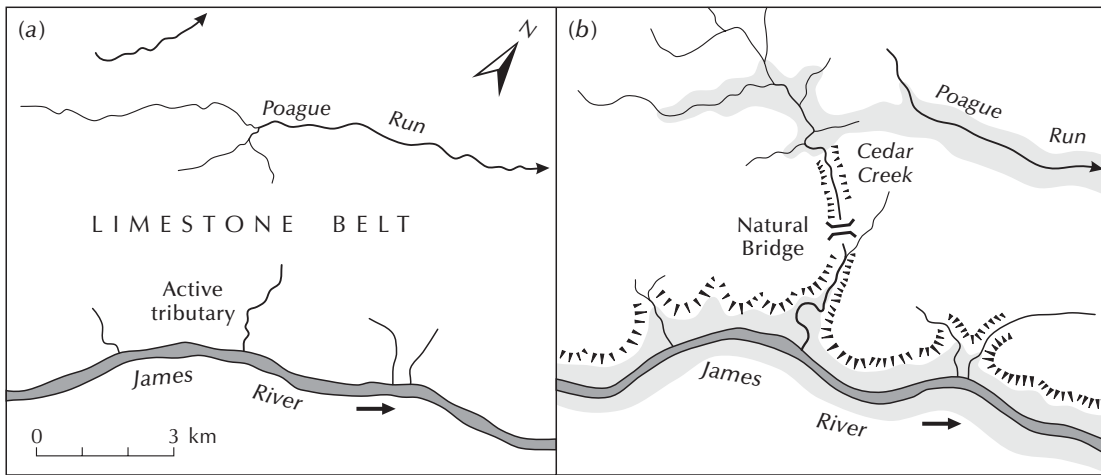


Figure 6.15 Natural Bridge, Cedar Creek, Virginia, USA. (a) Landscape before river piracy. (b) Landscape after river piracy.

Source: Adapted from Woodward (1936)

profile is a prime site. A barrier slowly builds up, on the front side of which frothing and bubbling encourage further deposition. The end result is that a dam and waterfall form across a karst river. The waterfall may move down the valley leaving a fill of travertine in its wake. Travertine may cover large areas. In Antalya, south-west Turkey, a travertine complex, constructed by the supersaturated calcareous waters of the Kirkgöz spring group, occupies 600 km<sup>2</sup> and has a maximum thickness of



Plate 6.13 Hot spring travertine terraces at Pummukale, Turkey.

(Photograph by Derek C. Ford)

270 m (Burger 1990). A sequence of tufa dams in the Korana Valley, Croatia, impound the impressive Plitvice Lakes.

### Karst forms on quartzite

It was once thought that quartzites were far too insoluble to be susceptible of chemical weathering. Starting in the mid-1960s with the discovery of quartzite karst in Venezuela (White *et al.* 1966; see also Wirthmann 2000, 104–9), karst-like landforms have been found on quartzose rock in several parts of the tropics. The quartzitic sandstone plateau of the Phu Hin Rong Kla National Park, north-central Thailand, bears features found in limestone terrain – rock pavements, karren fields, crevasses, and caves – as well as weathered polygonal crack patterns on exposed rock surfaces and **bollard-shaped rocks** (Doerr 2000). The crevasses, which resemble grikes, occur near the edge of the plateau and are 0.5–2 m wide, up to 30 m deep, and between 1 and 10 m apart. Smaller features are reminiscent of solution runnels and solution flutes. Caves up to 30 m long have been found in the National Park and were used for shelter during air raids while the area was a





Plate 6.14 Bollard rocks formed in quartzitic sandstone, north-central Thailand.  
(Photograph by Stefan Doerr)

stronghold for the communists during the 1970s. Some of the caves are really crevasses that have been widened some metres below the surface, but others are underground passages that are not associated with enlarged vertical joints. In one of them, the passage is 0.5–1 m high and 16 m long. The bollard-shaped rock features are found near the plateau edge (Plate 6.14). They are 30–50 cm high with diameters 20–100 cm. Their formation appears to start with the development of a **case-hardened surface** and its sudden cracking under tensile stresses to form a polygonal cracking pattern (cf. Williams and Robinson 1989; Robinson and Williams 1992). The cracks are then exploited by weathering. Further weathering deepens the cracks,

rounding off the tops of the polygonal blocks, and eventually eradicates the polygonal blocks' edges and deepens and widens the cracks to form bollard-shaped rocks (Figure 6.16).

Karst-like landforms also exist on the surfaces of quartzite table mountains (Tepuis) in south-eastern Venezuela (Doerr 1999). At 2,700 m, the Kukenan Tepui is one of the highest table mountains in South America (Plate 6.15). The topography includes caves, crevasse-like fissures, sinkholes, isolated towers 3–10 m high, and shallow karren-like features. Evidence points to corrosion, rather than erosive processes, as the formative agent of these landforms (see pp. 137–8).

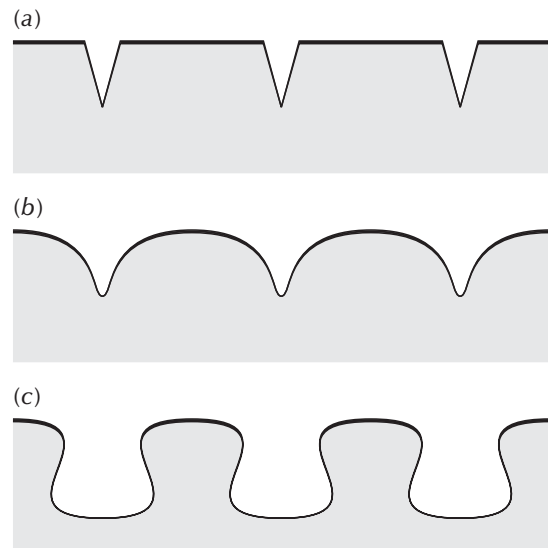


Figure 6.16 Proposed sequence of events leading to 'bollard' rock formation in quartzitic sandstone, north-central Thailand. (a) Polygonal cracks develop in a case-hardened surface that act as avenues of weathering. (b) Weathering deepens the cracks, forming a convex surface on each polygonal block. (c) Further weathering removes the edges of the polygonal blocks and deepens and widens the cracks.

Source: Adapted from Robinson and Williams (1992) and Doerr (2000)



Plate 6.15 Kukenan Tepui, Venezuela.  
(Photograph by Stefan Doerr)

## SUBTERRANEAN KARST FORMS

Waters from streams sinking into limestone flow through a karst drainage system – a network of fissures and conduits that carry water and erosion products to springs, where they are reunited with the surface drainage system. In flowing through the karst drainage system, the water and its load abrade and corrode the rock, helping to produce cavern systems. These **subterranean landforms** contain a rich variety of erosional and depositional forms.

### Erosional forms in caves

Caves are natural cavities in bedrock. They function as conduits for water flowing from a sink or a percolation point to a spring or to a seepage point (Figure 6.17). To form, caves need an initial cavity or cavities that channel the flow of rock-dissolving water. The origin of these cavities is debatable, with three main views taken:

- 1 The **kinetic view** sees tiny capillaries in the rock determining the nature of flow – laminar or turbulent. In capillaries large enough to permit turbulence, a helical flow accelerates solution of the capillary walls and positive feedback does the rest to form a principal cave conduit.
- 2 The **inheritance** or **inception horizon** view envisions a pre-existing small cavity or chain of vugs, which were formed by tectonic, diagenetic (mineralization), or artesian processes, being flooded and enlarged by karst groundwater, so forming a cave conduit.
- 3 The **hypergene view** imagines hydrothermal waters charged with carbon dioxide, hydrogen sulphide, or other acids producing heavily mineralized cavities, which are then overrun by cool karst waters to create larger and more integrated cavities or networks.

All or any of these three processes may have operated in any cave during its history. In all cases, it is usually the case that, once an initial cave conduit is

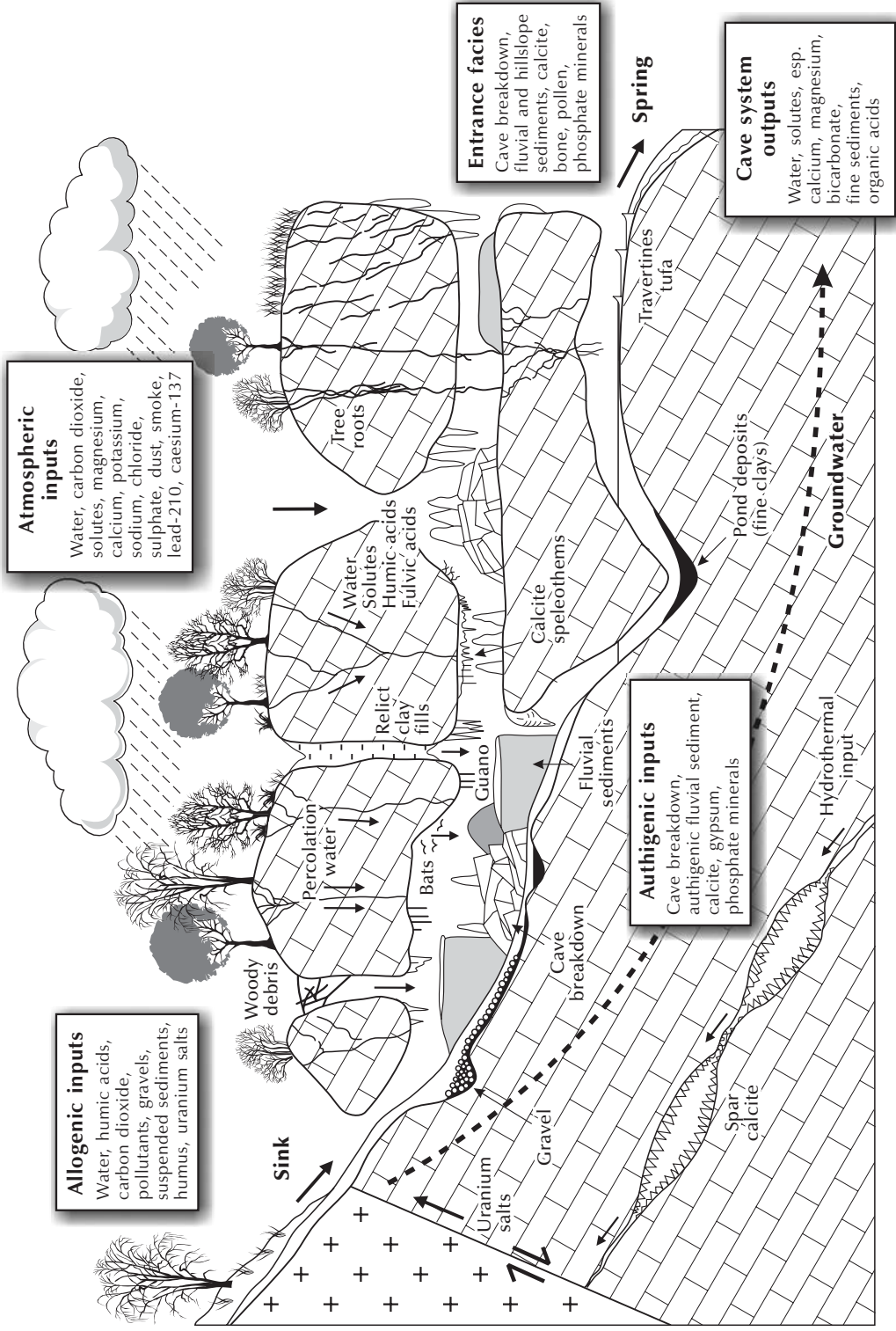


Figure 6.17 The cave system.  
Source: Adapted from Gillieson (1996, 7)

formed, it dominates the network of passages and enlarges, becoming a primary tube that may adopt a variety of shapes (from a simple meandering tube to a highly angular or linear conduit) depending on rock structure.

### Cave form

Cavern systems can be very extended. Mammoth Cave, Kentucky, USA, comprises over 800 km of subterranean hollows and passages arranged on several levels, representing major limestone units with a vertical depth of 110 m. At 563,270 m, the cave system is the longest in the world. The form of caverns – their plan and cross-section – depends upon the purity of the limestone in which they are formed and the nature of the network of fissures dissecting the rock, as well as their hydrological setting.

The shape of caves is directed by lithology, by the pattern of joints, fractures, and faults, and by cave breakdown and evaporite weathering:

- 1 **Lithology.** Caves often sit at changes of lithology, with passages forming along or close to lithological junctions, for example the junctions between pure and impure limestones, between limestones and underlying shales, and between limestones and igneous rocks. Passages may have a propensity to form in a particular bed, which is then known as the inception horizon (Lowe 1992). For instance, in the Forest of Dean, England, caves start to form in interbedded sandstones and unconformities in the Carboniferous limestone.
- 2 **Joints, fractures, and faults.** Joint networks greatly facilitate the circulation of water in karst. Large joints begin as angular, irregular cavities that become rounded by solution. Cave formation is promoted when the joint spacing is 100 to 300 m, which allows flowing water to become concentrated. Some passages in most caves follow the joint network, and in extreme cases the passages follow the joint network fairly rigidly to produce a **maze cave**, such as Wind Cave, South

Dakota, USA. Larger geological structures, and specifically faults, affect the complex pattern of caves in length and depth. Many of the world's deepest known shafts, such as 451-m deep Epos in Greece, are located in fault zones. Individual cave chambers may be directed by faults, an example being Gaping Ghyll in Yorkshire, England. Lubang Nasib Bagus (Good Luck Cave), Mulu, Sarawak is at 12 million cubic metres the world's largest known underground chamber and owes its existence to a combination of folding and faulting.

- 3 **Cave breakdown and evaporite weathering.** Limestone is a strong rock but brittle and fractures easily. Cave wall and ceiling collapse are important in shaping passages and chambers. Collapse is common near the cave entrance, where stress caused by unloading (p. 114) produces a denser joint network. Rock weathering by gypsum and halite crystallization (**exsudation**) may alter passage form. Water rich in soluble material seeping through the rocks evaporates upon reaching the cave wall. The expansion of crystals in the bedding planes or small fissures instigates sensational spalling.

Caves may also be classified in relation to the water table. The three main types are phreatic, vadose, and water table caves (Figure 6.18a, b, c). **Vadose caves** lie above the water table, in the unsaturated vadose zone, **water table** or **epiphreatic** or **shallow phreatic caves** lie at the water table, and **phreatic caves** below the water table, where the cavities and caverns are permanently filled with water. Subtypes are recognized according to the presence of cave loops (Figure 6.18d, e, f).

### Speleogens

Cave forms created by weathering and by water and wind erosion are called **speleogens**. Examples are current markings, potholes and rock mills, rock pendants, and scallops.

**Potholes** and **current markings** are gouged out by sediment-laden, flowing water in conjunction

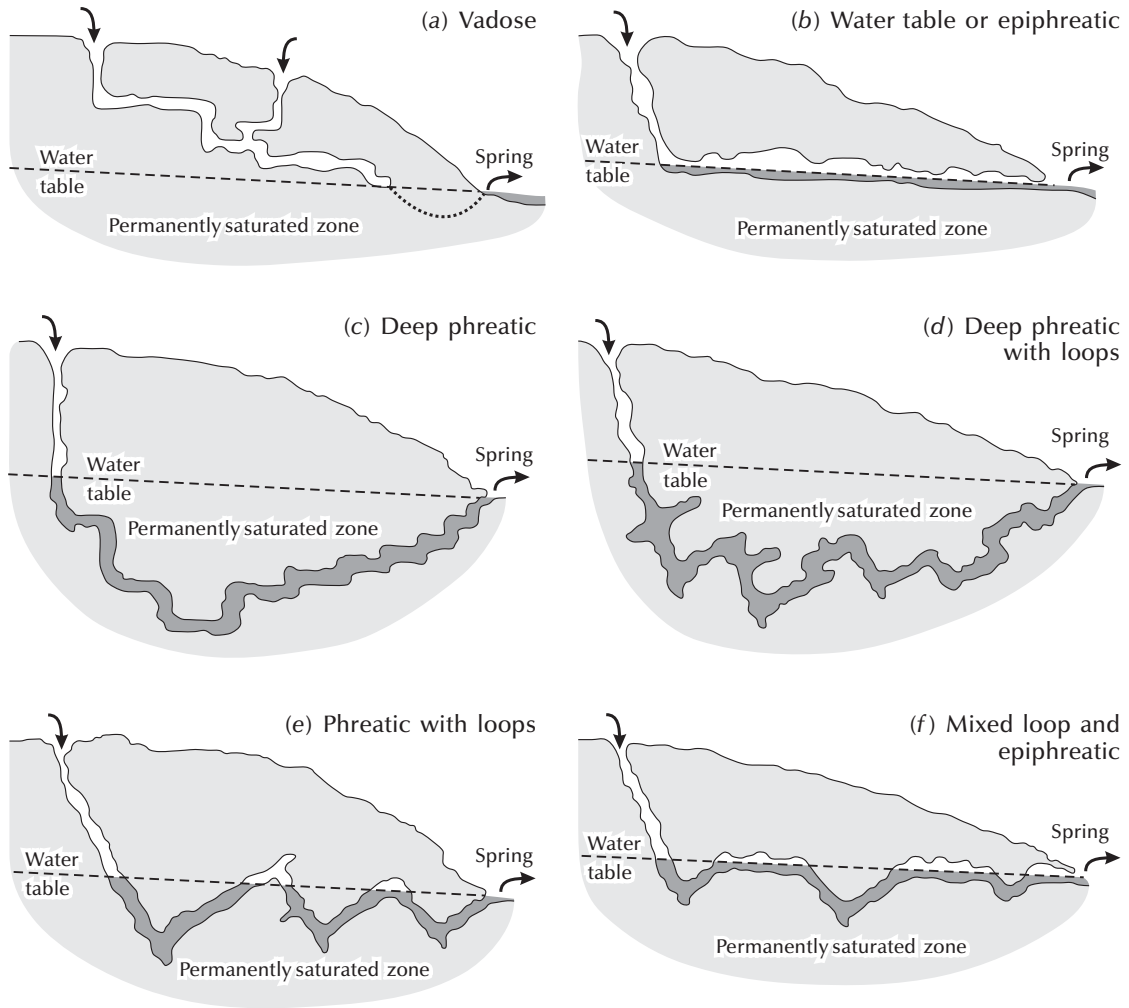


Figure 6.18 Types of caves.

Source: Adapted from Ford and Ewers (1978)

with some solutional erosion. The swirling motion of water is important in the formation of potholes. In the cave system behind God's Bridge rising in Chapel-le-Dale, North Yorkshire, England, grooves in bedrock, which look like rounded solution runnels, seem to be carved out by abrasion during times of high flow (Murphy and Cordingley 1999).

**Rock pendants** and **scallops** are products of solution. Rock pendants, which normally occur in

groups, are smooth-surfaced protuberances in a cave roof. Scallops are asymmetrical, cusped, oyster-shell-shaped hollows with a steep semicircular step on the upstream side and a gentle rise downstream ending in a point of the next downstream hollow (Plate 6.16). Scallop size varies inversely with the flow velocity of the water, and scallops may be used to assess flow conditions. In the main passage of Joint Hole, Chapel-le-Dale, North Yorkshire, England,





Plate 6.16 Scallops in Joint Hole, Chapel-le-Dale, North Yorkshire, England, taken underwater.  
(Photograph by Phil Murphy)

two contrasting-size populations of scallops were found (Murphy *et al.* 2000). Larger scallops occupy the walls and ceilings and smaller scallops occupy the floor. The floor scallops suggest a higher velocity at the bottom of the conduit. Presumed solution features in the phreatic zone include spongework, bedding plane and joint anastomoses, wall and ceiling pockets, joint wall and ceiling cavities, ceiling half tubes, continuous rock spans, and mazes of passages (see Jennings 1971, 156–7).

### Depositional forms in caves

Three types of deposit are laid down in caves: (1) cave formations or speleothems; (2) material

weathered *in situ*; and (3) clastic sediments carried mechanically into the cave and deposited there (White 1976). Cave sediments are beyond the scope of this introductory text (see Gillieson 1996, pp. 143–66 for an excellent review), but the chemical precipitates known as **speleothems** will be discussed.

Most speleothems are made of carbonate deposits, with calcite and aragonite accounting for about 95 per cent of all cave minerals. The carbonates are deposited mainly by carbon dioxide loss (degassing) or by evaporation. Formations of carbonate may be arranged into three groups: dripstone and flowstone forms, eccentric or erratic forms, and sub-aqueous forms (White 1976).

### Dripstone and flowstone

**Dripstone** is a deposit, usually composed of calcite, formed of drips from cave ceilings or walls. **Flowstone** is a deposit, again usually composed of calcite, formed from thin films or trickles of water over floors or walls. The forms fashioned by dripstone and flowstone are stalactites, stalagmites, draperies, and flowstone sheets. **Stalactites**, which develop downwards, grow from dripping walls and ceilings. The basic form is a **straw stalactite** formed by a single drop of water on the ceiling degassing and producing a ring of calcite about 5 mm in diameter that grows into a straw (Colour Plate 6, inserted below pp. 210–11; Plate 6.17). The longest known straw stalactite is in Strong's Cave, Western Australia, and is 6.2 m. Leakage and blockage of a straw leads to the growth of a carrot-shaped stalactite. **Stalagmites** grow from the floor, their exact form (columnar or conical) depending upon drip rates, water hardness, and the cave atmosphere. A **column** forms where an upward-growing stalagmite joins a downward-growing stalactite. A study of six cave systems in Europe revealed that, for five sites with a good soil cover, stalagmite growth rate depends chiefly upon mean annual temperature and the calcium content of the drip-water, but was unaffected by the drip rate (Genty *et al.* 2001). One site in the Grotte de Clamouse, which has little soil cover, failed to display



Plate 6.17 Straw stalactites,  
Ogof Capel, Clydach, South  
Wales.  
(*Photograph by Clive Westlake*)

a correlation between stalagmite growth rate and temperature, either because little carbon dioxide was produced in the thin soil or because calcite was precipitated before entering the system.

Water trickling down sloping walls or under a tapering stalactite produces **draperies** (curtains and shawls), which may be a single crystal thick (Colour Plate 7, inserted between pp. 210–11). Varieties with coloured bands are called 'bacon'. **Flowstone sheets** are general sheets of flowstone laid down over walls and ceilings.

### Eccentric forms

**Eccentric** or **erratic** forms, which are speleothems of abnormal shape or attitude, include shields, helictites, botryoidal forms, anthodites, and moonmilk. **Shields** or **palettes** are made of two parallel plates with a small cavity between them through which water seeps. They grow up to 5 m in diameter and 4–10 cm thick. **Helictites** change their axis from the vertical during their growth, appearing to disobey gravity, to give a curving or angular, twig-like form (Plate 6.18). **Botryoidal forms** resemble bunches of grapes. They are a variety of **coralloid forms**, which are nodular and globular and look like

coral. **Anthodites** are gypsum clusters that radiate from a central point. **Moonmilk** or **rockmilk** is a soft, white, plastic, moist form of calcite, and often shaped like a cauliflower.

### Sub-aqueous forms

Sub-aqueous forms are rimstone pools, concretions, pool deposits, and crystal linings. **Rimstone pools** form behind **rimstone dams**, sometimes called **gours**, which build up in channels or on flowstones (Colour Plate 8, inserted between pp. 210–11). In rimstone pools, a suite of deposits is precipitated from supersaturated meteoric water flowing over the outflow rim and build a rimstone dam. **Pool deposits** are any sediment or crystalline deposits in a cave pool. **Crystal linings** are made of well-formed crystals and are found in cave pools with little or no overflow.

**Pisoliths** or **cave pearls** are small balls, ranging from about 0.2 mm to 15 mm in diameter, formed by regular accretions of calcite about a nucleus such as a sand grain (Colour Plate 9). A few to thousands may grow in shallow pools that are agitated by drops of feedwater.





*Plate 6.18 Helictites in Ogof Draenen, Pwll Ddu, South Wales.*

*(Photograph by Clive Westlake)*

## HUMAN IMPACTS ON KARST

Surface and subsurface karst are vulnerable to human activities. Caves are damaged by visitors and agricultural practices may lead to the erosion of soil cover from karst areas.

### Soil erosion on karst

Karst areas worldwide tend to be susceptible to soil erosion. Their soils are usually shallow and stony, and, being freely drained, leached of nutrients. When vegetation is removed from limestone soils or when they are heavily used, soil stripping down to bedrock is common. It can be seen on the Burren, Ireland, in the classic karst of the Dinaric Alps, in karst of China, in the cone karst of the Philippines, and elsewhere. In Greece, soil stripping over limestone began some 2,000 years ago. The limestone pavement above Malham Cove (Colour Plate 4) may be a legacy of agricultural practices since Neolithic times, soils being thin largely because of overgrazing by sheep. Apart from resulting in the loss of an agricultural resource, soil stripping has repercussions in subterranean karst. The eroded material swiftly finds its way underground, where it blocks

passages, diverts or impounds cave streams, and chokes cave life.

The prevention of soil erosion and the maintenance of critical soil properties depends crucially upon the presence of a stable vegetation cover. Soil erosion on karst terrain may be predicted by the Universal Soil Loss Equation or its more recent derivatives (p. 60), but higher rates may be expected on karst as compared with most other soil types because features of the geomorphology conspire to promote even greater erosion than elsewhere. In most non-karst areas, soil erosion depends upon slope gradient and slope length, as well as the other factors in the USLE. It also depends partly on slope gradient and slope length in karst terrain but, in addition, the close connections between the surface drainage system and the underground conduit system produce a locally steeper hydraulic gradient that promotes erosive processes. Moreover, eroded material in karst areas has a greater potential to be lost down joints and fissures by sinkhole collapse, gullyng, or soil stripping. An adequate vegetation cover and soil structure (which reduced erodibility) take on a greater significance in lessening this effect in karst areas than in most other places.

### Humans and caves

Humans have long used caves for shelter, defence, sanctuaries, troglodytic settlements, a source of resources (water, food, guano, ore in mine-caves), and as spiritual sites. In the last few hundred years, caves have been used for the mining of cave formations and guano (especially during the American Civil War), for hydroelectric power generation from cave streams and springs (in China), for storage, and as sanatoria and tourist attractions. Evidence for the human occupancy of caves in China dates from over 700,000 years ago. Many caves are known to have housed humans at the start of the last glacial stage, and several have walls adorned with splendid paintings. Many caves in the Guilin tower karst, China, have walls at their entrances, suggesting that they were defended. Mediaeval fortified caves are found in Switzerland in the Grisons and Vallais. In Europe and the USA, some caves were used as sanatoria for tuberculosis patients on the erroneous premise that the moist air and constant temperature would aid recovery. Caves have also been widely used for cheese-making and rope manufacture, as in the entrance to Peak Cavern, Derbyshire, England. Kentucky bourbon from the Jack Daniels distillery relies partly on cave spring water.

**Cave tourism** started in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries in Europe, when candle lanterns were used (e.g. Nicod 1998). Today, cave tourism is a growth industry and some caves are lit by fibre-optic lights and tourists are transported through the caverns by electric trains. Tourism has an injurious impact on caves (Box 6.1). To combat the problems of cave tourism, **cave management** has evolved and is prosecuted by a body of government and private professionals. Several international groups are active in cave and karst management: the International Union of Speleology, the International Speleology Heritage Association, the International Geographical Union and the Commission for National Parks and Protected Areas, and the International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN).

### Managing karst

**Karst management** is based on an understanding of karst geomorphology, hydrology, biology, and ecology. It has to consider surface and subsurface processes, since the two are intimately linked. The basic aims of karst management are to maintain the natural quality and quantity of water and air movement through the landscape, given the prevailing climatic and biotic conditions. The flux of carbon dioxide from the air, through the soils, to cave passages is a crucial karst process that must be addressed in management plans. In particular, the system that produces high levels of carbon dioxide in soil, which depends upon plant root respiration, microbial activity, and a thriving soil invertebrate fauna, needs to be kept running smoothly.

Many **pollutants** enter cave systems from domestic and municipal, agricultural, constructional and mining, and industrial sources. In Britain, 1,458 licensed landfill sites are located on limestone, many of which take industrial wastes. Material leached from these sites may travel to contaminate underground streams and springs for several kilometres. Sewage pollution is also common in British karst areas (Chapman 1993).

Limestone and marble are quarried around the world and used for cement manufacture, for high-grade building stones, for agricultural lime, and for abrasives. **Limestone mining** mars karst scenery, causes water pollution, and produces much dust. Quarrying has destroyed some British limestone caves and threatens to destroy others. In southern China, many small quarries in the Guilin tower karst extract limestone for cement manufactories and for industrial fluxes. In combination with vegetation removal and acid rain from coal burning, the quarrying has scarred many of the karst towers around Guilin city, which rise from the alluvial plain of the Li River. It is ironic that much of the cement is used to build hotels and shops for the tourists coming to see the limestone towers. In central Queensland, Australia, Mount Etna is a limestone mountain containing forty-six named caves, many of which are famous for their

**Box 6.1****CAVE TOURISM**

Some 20 million people visit caves every year. Mammoth Cave in Kentucky, USA, alone has 2 million visitors annually. Great Britain has some 20 show-caves, with the most-visited receiving over 500,000 visitors every year. About 650 caves around the world have lighting systems, and many others are used for 'wild' cave tours where visitors carry their own lamps. Tourists damage caves and karst directly and indirectly through the infrastructure built for the tourists' convenience – car parking areas, entrance structures, paths, kiosks, toilets, and hotels. The infrastructure can lead to hydrological changes within the cave systems. Land surfaced with concrete or bitumen is far less permeable than natural karst and the danger is that the feedwaters for stalactites may be dramatically reduced or stopped. Similarly, drains may alter water flow patterns and lead to changes in speleothem deposition. Drainage problems may be in part alleviated by using gravel-surfaced car parks and paths, or by including strips where infiltration may occur. Within caves, paths and stairs may alter the flow of water. Impermeable surfaces made of concrete or steel may divert natural water movement away from flowstones or stream channels, so leading to the drying out of cave formations or increased sediment transport. These problems are in part overcome by the use of permeable steel, wooden or aluminium walkways, frequent drains leading to sediment traps, and small barriers to water movement that approximate the natural flow of water in caves.

Cave tourists alter the cave atmosphere by exhaling carbon dioxide in respiration, by their body heat, and by the heat produced by cave lighting. A party of tourists may raise carbon dioxide levels in caves by 200 per cent or more. One person releases between 82 and 116 watts of heat, roughly equivalent to a single incandescent

light bulb, which may raise air temperatures by up to 3°C. A party of tourists in Altamira Cave, Spain, increased air temperature by 2°C, trebled the carbon dioxide content from 0.4 per cent to 1.2 per cent, and reduced the relative humidity from 90 per cent to 75 per cent. All these changes led to widespread flaking of the cave walls, which affected the prehistoric wall paintings (Gillieson 1996, 242). A prolonged increase in carbon dioxide levels in caves can upset the equilibria of speleothems and result in solution, especially in poorly ventilated caves with low concentrations of the calcium ion in drip-water (Baker and Genty 1998). Other reported effects of cave tourism include the colonization of green plants (mainly algae, mosses, and ferns) around continuous lighting, which is known as lampenflora, and a layer of dust on speleothems (lint from clothing, dead skin cells, fungal spores, insects, and inorganic material). The cleaning of cave formations removes the dust and lampenflora but also damages the speleothems. A partial solution is to provide plastic mesh walkways at cave entrances and for tourists to wear protective clothing. Recreational cavers may also adversely affect caves (Gillieson 1996, 246–7). They do so by carbide dumping and the marking of walls; the compaction of sediments with its concomitant effects on cave hydrology and fauna; the erosion of rock surfaces in ladder and rope grooves and direct lowering by foot traffic; the introduction of energy sources from mud on clothes and foot residues; the introduction of faeces and urine; the widening of entrances and passages by traffic or by digging; and the performing of cave vandalism and graffiti. The best way of limiting the impact of cave users is through education and the development of minimal impact codes, which follow cave management plans drawn up by speleologists, to ensure responsible conduct (see Glasser and Barber 1995).

spectacular formations. The caves are home to some half a million insectivorous bats, including the rare ghost bat (*Macroderma gigas*). The mining of Mount Etna by the Central Queensland Cement Company has destroyed or affected many well-decorated caves. A public outcry led to part of the mountain being declared a reserve in 1988, although mining operations continue outside the protected area, where the landscape is badly scarred.

The IUCN World Commission on Protected Areas recognizes karst landscapes as critical targets for **protected area** status. The level of protection given in different countries is highly variable, despite the almost universal aesthetic, archaeological, biological, cultural, historical, and recreational significance of karst landscapes. Take the case of South-East Asia, one of the world's outstanding carbonate karst landscapes, with a total karst area of 458,000 km<sup>2</sup>, or 10 per cent of the land area (Day and Urich 2000). Karstlands in this region are topographically diverse and include cockpit and cone karst, tower karst, and pinnacle karst, together with extensive dry valleys, cave systems, and springs. They include classic tropical karst landscapes: the Gunung Sewu of Java, the Chocolate Hills of Bohol, the pinnacles and caves of Gunong Mulu, and the karst towers of Vietnam and peninsular Malaysia. Human impacts on the South-East Asian karst landscapes are considerable: less than 10 per cent of the area maintains its natural

vegetation. About 12 per cent of the regional karst landscape has been provided nominal protection by designation as a protected area, but levels of protection vary from country to country (Table 6.3). Protection is significant in Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, and Thailand. Indonesia, for instance, has forty-four protected karst areas, which amount to 15 per cent of its total karst area. In Cambodia, Myanmar (Burma), and Papua New Guinea, karst conservation is minimal, but additional protected areas may be designated in the countries as well as in Vietnam and in Laos. Even so, South-East Asia's karstlands have an uncertain future. It should be stressed that the designation of karst as protected areas in South-East Asia is not based on the intrinsic or scientific value of the karst landscapes, but on unrelated contexts, such as biological diversity, timber resources, hydrological potential, or archaeological and recreational value. Nor, it must be said, does the conferral of a protected area status guarantee effective protection from such threats as forest clearance, agricultural inroads, or the plundering of archaeological materials.

The conservation of karst in the Caribbean is in a similar position to that in South-East Asia (Kueny and Day 1998). Some 130,000 km<sup>2</sup>, more than half the land area of the Caribbean, is limestone karst. Much of it is found on the Greater Antilles, with other significant areas in the Bahamas, Anguilla,

Table 6.3 Protected karst areas in South-East Asia, 2000

Country	Karst area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Protected karst area (km <sup>2</sup> )	Protected karst area (%)	Number of protected areas
Cambodia	20,000	0	0	0
Indonesia	145,000	22,000	15	44
Laos	30,000	3,000	10	10
Malaysia	18,000	8,000	45	28
Myanmar (Burma)	80,000	650	1	2
Papua New Guinea	50,000	0	0	0
Philippines	35,000	10,000	29	14
Thailand	20,000	5,000	25	41
Vietnam	60,000	4,000	7	15
Total	458,000	53,150	12	154

Source: Adapted from Day and Urich (2000)

Antigua, the Cayman Islands, the Virgin Islands, Guadeloupe, Barbados, Trinidad and Tobago, and the Netherlands Antilles. Features include cockpits, towers, dry valleys, dolines, and caves. Humans have impacted on the karst landscapes and the necessity for protection at regional and international level is recognized. However, karst is in almost all cases protected by accident – karst areas happen to lie within parks, reserves, and sanctuaries set up to safeguard biodiversity, natural resources, or cultural and archaeological sites. Very few areas are given protected area status because of the inherent scientific interest of karst landscapes. At the regional level, 121 karst areas, covering 18,441 km<sup>2</sup> or 14.3 per cent of the total karst, are afforded protected area status. Higher levels of protection are found in Cuba, the Dominican Republic, and the Bahamas. Lower levels of protection occur in Jamaica, Puerto Rico, Trinidad, and the Netherlands Antilles, and minimal protection is established in the smaller islands.

## SUMMARY

Karst is terrain with scant surface drainage, thin and patchy soils, closed depressions, and caves. Its distinctive features develop on fairly pure limestones, but also occur in evaporites and silicate rocks. It forms by the dissolution of limestone or other soluble rocks, in conjunction with creep, block slumps, debris slides, earthflows, soilfalls, rockfalls, block slides, and rock slides. Fluvial and hydrothermal processes may affect karst development. A multitude of landforms form on limestone: karren of many shapes and sizes, limestone pavements, pinnacles, karst ruins, corridors, and coastal karst features; also, a range of closed depressions: dolines, karst windows, uvalas, and polja. Cone karst is a tropical form of karst, two varieties of which are cockpit karst and tower karst. Labyrinth karst is an extratropical version of tower karst. Despite a scarcity of surface drainage in karst terrain, fluvial processes affect some karst landforms, including gorges, blind and half-blind valleys, steepheads, dry

valleys, meander caves, natural bridges, and tufa and travertine deposits. Another multitude of landforms form within limestone in subterranean karst. Speleogens are erosional forms in caves. They include potholes and current markings, rock pendants and scallops. Within caves, three types of deposit are found: cave formations or speleothems, material weathered *in situ*, and clastic sediments carried into caves and laid down there. Speleothems are multifarious, and may be grouped into dripstones (such as stalactites and stalagmites), eccentric forms (such as helictites and moonmilk), and subaqueous forms (such as rimstone pools and gourls). Agricultural practices have led to the stripping of soil from some karst areas. The fascination of caves has produced a thriving cave tourist industry, but cave visitors may destroy the features they come to view. Karstlands, too, are threatened in many parts of the world and require protection.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How distinctive are karst landscapes?**
  - 2 Discuss the role of climate in karst formation.**
  - 3 Analyse the problems of karst management.**
- 

## FURTHER READING

Ford, D. C. and Williams, P. W. (1989) *Karst Geomorphology and Hydrology*. London: Chapman & Hall.

An excellent book on karst.

Gillieson, D. (1996) *Caves: Processes, Development and Management*. Oxford: Blackwell.

A superb book on subterranean karst that includes chapters on management.

Jennings, J. N. (1985) *Karst Geomorphology*. Oxford and New York: Blackwell.

A classic by an author whose name is synonymous with karst geomorphology. A little dated but may still be read with profit.

Trudgill, S. (1985) *Limestone Geomorphology*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.

Includes a good discussion of karst processes.

## FLUVIAL LANDSCAPES

---

Running water wears away molehills and mountains and builds fans, floodplains, and deltas. This chapter covers:

- runoff
- flowing water as an agent of erosion and deposition
- water-carved landforms
- water-constructed landforms
- fluvial landscapes and humans

Running water in action: floods

Plum Creek flows northwards over a sand bed between Colorado Springs and Denver in the USA, and eventually joins the South Platte River. On 16 June 1965, a series of intense convective cells in the region climaxed in an intense storm, with 360 mm of rain falling in four hours, and a flood (Osterkamp and Costa 1987). The flood had a recurrence interval of between 900 and 1,600 years and a peak discharge of  $4,360 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ , fifteen times higher than the 50-year flood. It destroyed the gauging station at Louviers and swept through Denver causing severe damage. The flow at Louviers is estimated to have gone from less than  $5 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$  to  $4,360 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$  in about 40 minutes. At peak flow, the water across the valley averaged from 2.4 to 2.9 m deep, and in places was 5.8 m deep. The deeper sections flowed at around 5.4 m/s. The flood had far-reaching effects on the geomorphology and vegetation of the valley floor. Rampant erosion and undercutting of banks led to bank failures and channel widening. The processes were aided by debris snagged on trees and other obstructions, which caused them to topple and encourage sites of rapid scouring. Along a 4.08-km study reach, the average channel width increased from 26 to 68 m. Just over half the woody vegetation was destroyed. Following a heavy spring runoff in 1973, the channel increased to 115 m and increased its degree of braiding.

---



## FLUVIAL ENVIRONMENTS

Fluvial environments are dominated by running water. They are widespread except in frigid regions, where ice dominates, and in dry regions, where wind tends to be the main erosive agent. However, in arid and semi-arid areas, fluvial activity can be instrumental in fashioning landforms. Flash floods build alluvial fans and run out onto desert floors. In the past, rivers once flowed across many areas that today lack permanent watercourses.

Water runs over hillslopes as overland flow and rushes down gullies and river channels as streamflow. The primary determinant of overland flow and streamflow is runoff production. **Runoff** is a component of the land surface water balance. In brief, runoff is the difference between precipitation and evaporation rates, assuming that soil water storage stays roughly constant. In broad terms, fluvial environments dominate where, over a year, precipitation exceeds evaporation and the temperature regime does not favour persistent ice formation. Those conditions cover a sizeable portion of the land surface. The lowest annual runoff rates, less than 5 cm, are found in deserts. Humid climatic regions and mountains generate the most runoff, upwards of 100 cm in places, and have the highest river discharges.

Runoff is not produced evenly throughout the year. Seasonal changes in precipitation and evaporation generate systematic patterns of runoff that are echoed in **streamflow**. Streamflow tends to be highest during wet seasons and lowest during dry seasons. A river regime is defined by the changes of streamflow through a year. Each climatic type fosters a distinct river regime. In monsoon climates, for example, river discharge swings from high to low with the shift from the wet season to the dry season. Humid climates tend to sustain year-round flow of water in **perennial streams**. Some climates do not sustain a year-round river discharge. **Intermittent streams** flow for at least one month a year when runoff is produced. **Ephemeral streams**, which are common in arid environments, flow after occasional storms but are dry the rest of the time.

## FLUVIAL PROCESSES

### Flowing water

#### Unconcentrated flow

**Rainsplash** results from raindrops striking the soil surface. An impacting raindrop compresses and spreads sideways. The spreading causes a shear on the soil that may detach particles from the surface, usually particles less than 20 micrometres in diameter. If entrained by water from the original raindrop, the particles may rebound from the surface and travel in a parabolic curve, usually no more than a metre or so. Rainsplash releases particles for entrainment and transport by unconcentrated surface flow, which itself may lack the power to dislodge and lift attached particles.

**Unconcentrated surface flow (overland flow)**, occurs as inter-rill flow. **Inter-rill flow** is variously termed sheet flow, sheet wash, and slope wash. It involves a thin layer of moving water together with strands of deeper and faster-flowing water that diverge and converge around surface bulges causing erosion by soil detachment (largely the result of impacting raindrops) and sediment transfer. **Overland flow** is produced by two mechanisms:

- 1 **Hortonian overland flow** occurs when the rate at which rain is falling exceeds the rate at which it can percolate into the soil (the **infiltration rate**). Hortonian overland flow is more common in deserts, where soils tend to be thin, bedrock outcrops common, vegetation scanty, and rainfall rates high. It can contribute large volumes of water to streamflow and cover large parts of an arid drainage basin, and is the basis of the 'partial area model' of streamflow generation.
- 2 **Saturation overland flow or seepage flow** occurs where the groundwater table sits at the ground surface. Some of the water feeding saturation overland flow is flow that has entered the hillside upslope and moved laterally through the soil as throughflow; this is called return flow. Saturation overland flow is also fed by rain falling directly on the hillslope.

**Rill flow** is deeper and speedier than inter-rill flow and is characteristically turbulent. It is a sporadic concentrated flow that grades into streamflow.

### Subsurface flow

Flow within the soil body may take place under unsaturated conditions, but faster **subsurface flow** is associated with localized soil saturation. Where the hydraulic conductivity of soil horizons decreases with depth, and especially when hardpans or clay-rich substrata are present in the soil, infiltrating water is deflected downslope as **throughflow**. The term **interflow** is used by engineering hydrologists to refer to water arriving in the stream towards the end of a storm after having followed a deep subsurface route, typically through bedrock. **Baseflow** is water entering the stream from the water table or delayed interflow that keeps rivers in humid climates flowing during dry periods. Subsurface flow may take place as a slow movement through soil pores or as a faster movement in cracks, soil pipes, and underground channels in caves.

### Springs

**Springs** occur where the land surface and the water table cross. Whereas saturation overland flow is the seepage from a temporary saturation zone, springs arise where the water table is almost permanent. Once a spring starts to flow, it causes a dip in the water table that creates a pressure gradient in the aquifer. The pressure gradient then encourages water to move towards the spring. Several types of spring are recognized, including waste cover springs, contact springs, fault springs, artesian springs, karst springs, vauculian springs, and geysers (Table 7.1).

### Streamflow

**Rivers** are natural streams of water that flow from higher to lower elevations across the land surface. Their continued existence relies upon a supply of water from overland flow, throughflow, interflow, baseflow, and precipitation falling directly into the river. **Channelized rivers** are streams structurally engineered to control floods, improve drainage,

Table 7.1 Springs

Type	Occurrence	Example
Waste cover	Dells and hollows where lower layers of soil or bedrock is impervious	Common on hillslopes in humid environments
Contact	Flat or gently dipping beds of differing perviousness or permeability at the contact of an aquifer and an aquiclude. Often occur as a spring line	Junction of Totternhoe Sands and underlying Chalk Marl, Cambridgeshire, England
Fault	Fault boundaries between pervious and impervious, or permeable and impermeable, rocks	Delphi, Greece
Artesian	Synclinal basin with an aquifer sandwiched between two aquicludes	Artois region of northern France
Karst	Karst landscapes	Orbe spring near Vallorbe, Switzerland
Vauculian	U-shaped pipe in karst where water is under pressure and one end opens onto the land surface	Vaucluse, France; Blautopf near Blaubeuren, Germany
Thermal	Hot springs	Many in Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming, USA
Geyser	A thermal spring that spurts water into the air at regular intervals	Old Faithful, Yellowstone National Park

maintain navigation, and so on. In some lowland catchments of Europe, more than 95 per cent of river channels have been altered by channelization.

Water flowing in an open channel (**open channel flow**) is subject to gravitational and frictional forces. Gravity impels the water downslope, while friction from within the water body (viscosity) and between the flowing water and the channel surface resists movement. **Viscosity** arises through cohesion and collisions between molecules (**molecular** or **dynamic viscosity**) and the interchange of water adjacent to zones of flow within eddies (**eddy viscosity**).

Water flow may be turbulent or laminar. In **laminar flow**, thin layers of water 'slide' over each other, with resistance to flow arising from molecular viscosity (Figure 7.1a). In **turbulent flow**, which is the predominant type of flow in stream channels, the chaotic flow-velocity fluctuations are superimposed on the main forward flow and resistance is contributed by molecular viscosity and eddy viscosity. In most channels, a thin layer or laminar

flow near the stream bed is surmounted by a much thicker zone of turbulent flow (Figure 7.1b). Mean flow velocity, molecular viscosity, fluid density, and the size of the flow section determine the type of flow. The size of the flow section may be measured as either the depth of flow or as the hydraulic radius. The **hydraulic radius**,  $R$ , is the cross-sectional area of flow divided by the wetted perimeter,  $P$ , which is the length of the boundary along which water is in contact with the channel (Figure 7.2). In broad, shallow channels the hydraulic radius can be approximated by the flow depth. The **Reynolds number**,  $Re$ , named after English scientist and engineer Osborne Reynolds, may be used to predict the type of flow (laminar or turbulent) in a stream (Box 7.1).

In natural channels, irregularities on the channel bed induce variations in the depth of flow, so propagating ripples or waves that exert a weight or gravity force. The **Froude number**,  $F$ , of the flow, named after the English engineer and naval architect William Froude, can be used to distinguish different

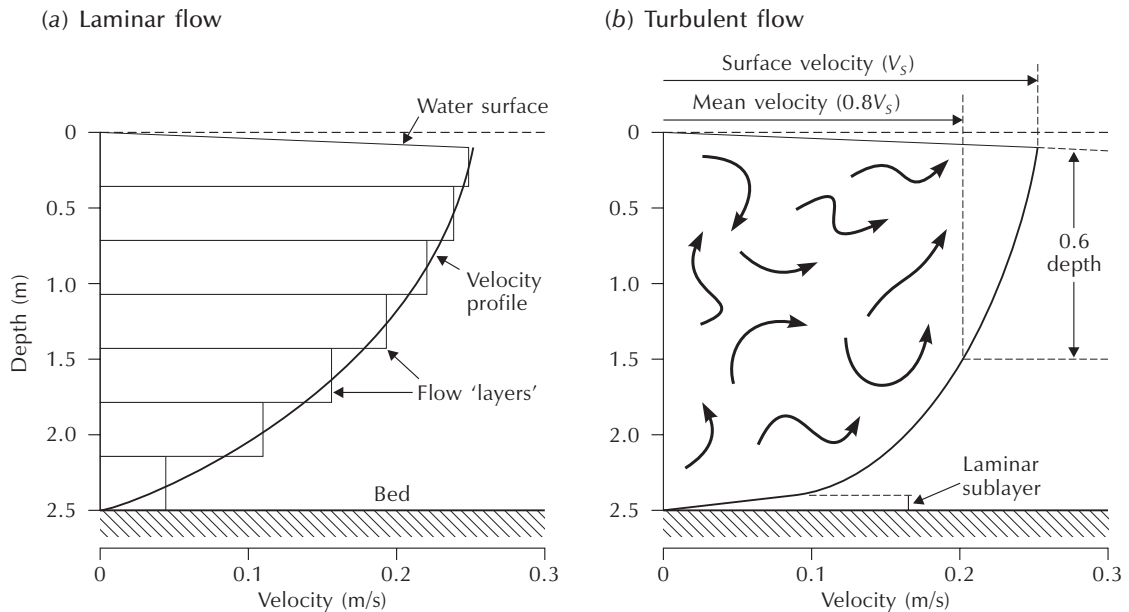


Figure 7.1 Velocity profiles of (a) laminar and (b) turbulent flow in a river.

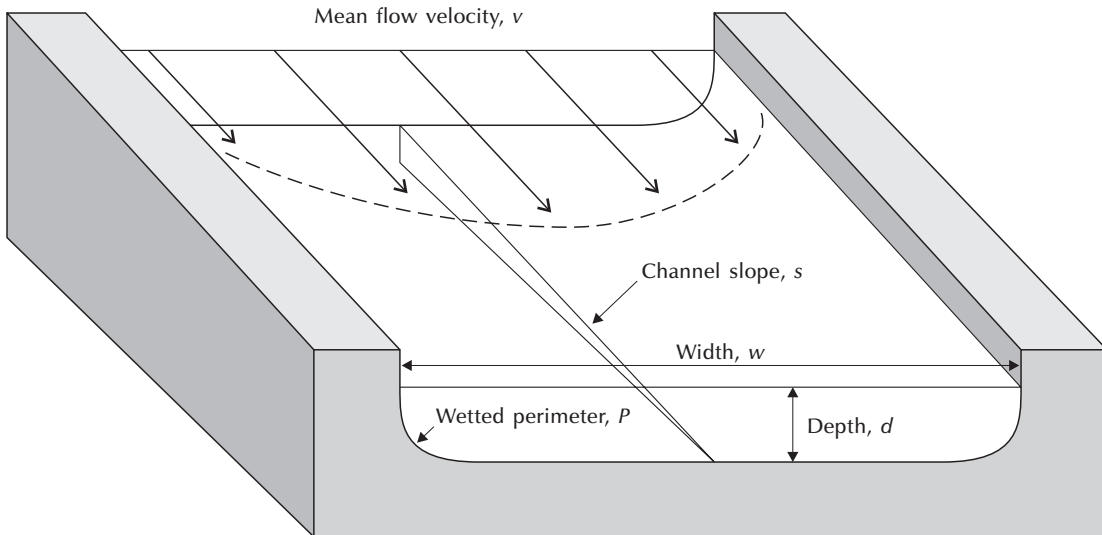


Figure 7.2 Variables used in describing streamflow.

### Box 7.1

#### REYNOLDS AND FROUDE NUMBERS

The **Reynolds number** is a dimensionless number that includes the effects of the flow characteristics, velocity, and depth, and the fluid density and viscosity. It may be calculated by multiplying the mean flow velocity,  $v$ , and hydraulic radius,  $R$ , and dividing by the kinematic viscosity,  $\nu$  (nu), which represents the ratio between molecular viscosity,  $\mu$  (mu), and the fluid density,  $\rho$  (rho):

$$Re = \frac{\rho v R}{\mu}$$

For stream channels at moderate temperatures, the maximum Reynolds number at which laminar flow is sustained is about 500. Above values of about 2,000, flow is turbulent, and between 500 and 2,000 laminar and turbulent flow are both present.

The **Froude number** is defined by the square root of the ratio of the inertia force to the gravity

force, or the ratio of the flow velocity to the velocity of a small gravity wave (a wave propagated by, say, a tossed pebble) in still water. The Froude number is usually computed as:

$$F = \frac{v}{\sqrt{gd}}$$

where  $v$  is the flow velocity,  $g$  is the acceleration of gravity,  $d$  is the depth of flow, and  $\sqrt{gd}$  is the velocity of the gravity waves. When  $F < 1$  (but more than zero) the wave velocity is greater than the mean flow velocity and the flow is known as **subcritical** or **tranquil** or **streaming**. Under these conditions, ripples propagated by a pebble dropped into a stream create an egg-shaped wave that moves out in all directions from the point of impact. When  $F = 1$  flow is critical, and when  $F > 1$  it is **supercritical** or **rapid** or **shooting**. These different types of flow occur because changes

in discharge can be accompanied by changes in depth and velocity of flow. In other words, a given discharge can be transmitted along a stream channel either as a deep, slow-moving, subcritical flow or else as a shallow, rapid, supercritical flow. In natural channels, mean Froude numbers are not usually higher than 0.5 and supercritical flows are only temporary, since the large energy losses that

occur with this type of flow promote bulk erosion and channel enlargement. This erosion results in a lowering of flow velocity and a consequential reduction in the Froude number of the flow through negative feedback. For a fixed velocity, streaming flow may occur in deeper sections of the channel and shooting flow in shallower sections.

states of flow – **subcritical flow** and **critical flow** (Box 7.1). **Plunging flow** is a third kind of turbulent flow. It occurs at a waterfall, when water plunges in free fall over very steep, often vertical or overhanging rocks. The water falls as a coherent mass or as individual water strands or, if the falls are very high and the discharge low, as a mist resulting from the water dissolving into droplets.

Flow velocity controls the switch between subcritical and supercritical flow. A **hydraulic jump** is a sudden change from supercritical to subcritical flow. It produces a stationary wave and an increase in water depth (Figure 7.3a). A **hydraulic drop** marks a change from subcritical to supercritical flow and is accompanied by a reduction in water depth (Figure 7.3b). These abrupt changes in flow regimes

may happen where there is a sudden change in channel bed form, a situation rife in mountain streams where there are usually large obstructions such as boulders.

Flow velocity in streams is affected by the slope gradient, bed roughness, and cross-sectional form of the channel. It is very time-consuming to measure streamflow velocity directly, and empirical equations have been devised to estimate mean flow velocities from readily measured channel properties. The **Chézy equation**, named after the eighteenth-century French hydraulic engineer Antoine de Chézy, estimates velocity in terms of the hydraulic radius and channel gradient, and a coefficient expressing the gravitational and frictional forces acting upon the water. It defines mean flow velocity,  $\bar{v}$ , as:

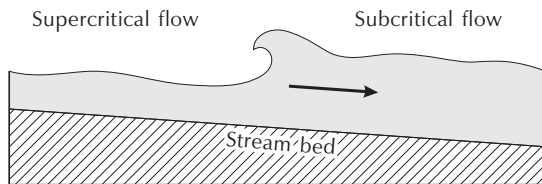
$$\bar{v} = C\sqrt{R\iota}$$

where  $R$  is the hydraulic radius,  $\iota$  is the channel gradient, and  $C$  is the Chézy coefficient representing gravitational and frictional forces. The **Manning equation**, which was devised by the American hydraulic engineer Robert Manning at the end of the nineteenth century, is a more commonly used formula for estimating flow velocity:

$$\bar{v} = \frac{R^{2/3}\iota^{1/2}}{n}$$

where  $R$  is the hydraulic radius,  $\iota$  the channel gradient, and  $n$  the **Manning roughness coefficient**, which is an index of bed roughness and is usually estimated from standard tables or by comparison with photographs of channels of known

(a) Hydraulic jump



(b) Hydraulic drop

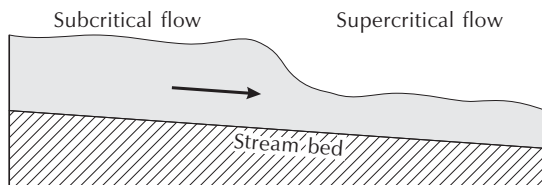


Figure 7.3 (a) Hydraulic jump. (b) Hydraulic drop.

roughness. Manning's formula can be useful in estimating the discharge in flood conditions. The height of the water can be determined from debris stranded in trees and high on the bank. Only the channel cross-section and the slope need measuring.

## Fluvial erosion and transport

Streams are powerful geomorphic agents capable of eroding, carrying, and depositing sediment. **Stream power** is the capacity of a stream to do work. It may be expressed as:

$$\Omega = \rho g Q s$$

where  $\Omega$  (omega) is stream power per unit length of stream channel,  $\rho$  (rho) is water density,  $Q$  is stream discharge, and  $s$  is the channel slope. It defines the rate at which potential energy, which is the product of the weight of water,  $mg$  (mass,  $m$ , times gravitational acceleration,  $g$ ), and its height above a given datum,  $h$ , is expended per unit length of channel. In other words, it is the rate at which a stream does work transporting sediment, overcoming frictional resistance, and generating heat. Stream power increases with increasing discharge and increasing channel slope.

### Stream load

All the material carried by a stream is its **load**. The **total load** consists of the dissolved load (solutes), the suspended load (grains small enough to be suspended in the water), and the bed load (grains too large to be suspended for very long under normal flow conditions). In detail, the three components of stream load are as follows:

- 1 The **dissolved load** or **solute load** comprises ions and molecules derived from chemical weathering plus some dissolved organic substances. Its composition depends upon several environmental factors, including climate, geology, topography, and vegetation. Rivers fed by water that has passed through swamps, bogs, and marshes are

especially rich in dissolved organic substances. River waters draining large basins tend to have a similar chemical composition, with bicarbonate, sulphate, chloride, calcium, and sodium being the dominant ions (but see p. 56 for continental differences). Water in smaller streams is more likely to mirror the composition of the underlying rocks.

- 2 The **suspended load** consists of solid particles, mostly silts and clays, that are small enough and light enough to be supported by turbulence and vortices in the water. Sand is lifted by strong currents and small gravel can be suspended for a short while during floods. The suspended load reduces the inner turbulence of the stream water, so diminishing frictional losses and making the stream more efficient. Most of the suspended load is carried near the stream bed, and the concentrations become lower in moving towards the water surface.
- 3 The **bed load** or **traction load** consists of gravel, cobbles, and boulders, which are rolled or dragged along the channel bed by traction. If the current is very strong, they may be bounced along in short jumps by saltation. Sand may be part of the bed load or part of the suspended load, depending on the flow conditions. The bed load moves more slowly than the water flows as the grains are moved fitfully. The particles may move singly or in groups by rolling and sliding. Once in motion, large grains move more easily and faster than small ones, and rounder particles move more readily than flat or angular ones. A stream's **competence** is defined as the biggest size of grain that a stream can move in traction as bed load. Its **capacity** is defined as the maximum amount of debris that it can carry in traction as bed load.

In addition to these three loads, the suspended load and the bed load are sometimes collectively called the **solid-debris load** or the **particulate load**. And the **wash load**, a term used by some hydrologists, refers to that part of the sediment load comprising grains finer than those on the channel bed. It

consists of very small clay-sized particles that stay in more or less permanent suspension.

### Stream erosion and transport

Streams may attack their channels and beds by corrosion, corrasion, and cavitation. **Corrosion** is the chemical weathering of bed and bank materials in contact with the stream water. **Corrasion** or **abrasion** is the wearing away of surfaces over which the water flows by the impact or grinding action of particles moving with the water body. **Evorsion** is a form of corrasion in which the sheer force of water smashes bedrock without the aid of particles. In alluvial channels, **hydraulicking** is the removal of loose material by the impact of water alone. **Cavitation** occurs only when flow velocities are high, as at the bottom of waterfalls, in rapids, and in some artificial conduits. It involves shock waves released by imploding bubbles, which are produced by pressures changes in fast-flowing streams, smashing into the channel walls, hammer-like, and causing rapid erosion. The three main erosive processes are abetted by vortexes that may develop in the stream and that may suck material from the stream bed.

Streams may erode their channels downwards or sideways. **Vertical erosion** in an alluvial channel bed (a bed formed in fluvial sediments) takes place when there is a net removal of sands and gravels. In bedrock channels (channels cut into bedrock), vertical erosion is caused by the channel's bed load abrading the bed. **Lateral erosion** occurs when the channel banks are worn away, usually by being undercut, which leads to slumping and bank collapse.

The ability of flowing water to erode and transport rocks and sediment is a function of a stream's kinetic energy (the energy of motion). Kinetic energy,  $E_k$ , is half the product of mass and velocity, so for a stream it may be defined as

$$E_k = mv^2 / 2$$

where  $m$  is the mass of water and  $v$  is the flow

velocity. If Chézy's equation (p. 176) is substituted for velocity, the equation reads

$$E_k = (mCRs) / 2$$

This equation shows that kinetic energy in a stream is directly proportional to the product of the hydraulic radius,  $R$ , (which is virtually the same as depth in large rivers) and the stream gradient,  $s$ . In short, the deeper and faster a stream, the greater its kinetic energy and the larger its potential to erode. The equation also conforms to **DuBoys equation** defining the shear stress or tractive force,  $\tau$  (tau), on a channel bed:

$$\tau = \gamma ds$$

where  $\gamma$  (gamma) is the specific weight of the water ( $\text{g/cm}^3$ ),  $d$  is water depth (cm), and  $s$  is the stream gradient expressed as a tangent of the slope angle. A stream's ability to set a pebble in motion – its **competence** – is largely determined by the product of depth and slope (or the square of its velocity). It can move a pebble of mass  $m$  when the shear force it creates is equal to or exceeds the critical shear force necessary for the movement of the pebble, which is determined by the mass, shape, and position of the pebble in relation to the current. The pebbles in gravel bars often develop an imbricated structure (overlapping like tiles on a roof), which is particularly resistant to erosion. In an imbricated structure, the pebbles have their long axes lying across the flow direction and their second-longest axes aligned parallel to the flow direction and angled down upstream. Consequently, each pebble is protected by its neighbouring upstream pebble. Only if a high discharge occurs are the pebbles set in motion again.

A series of experiments enabled Filip Hjulstrøm (1935) to establish relationships between a stream's flow velocity and its ability to erode and transport grains of a particular size. The relationships, which are conveniently expressed in the oft-reproduced **Hjulstrøm diagram** (Figure 7.4), cover a wide range of grain sizes and flow velocities. The upper curve is a band showing the critical velocities at which grains



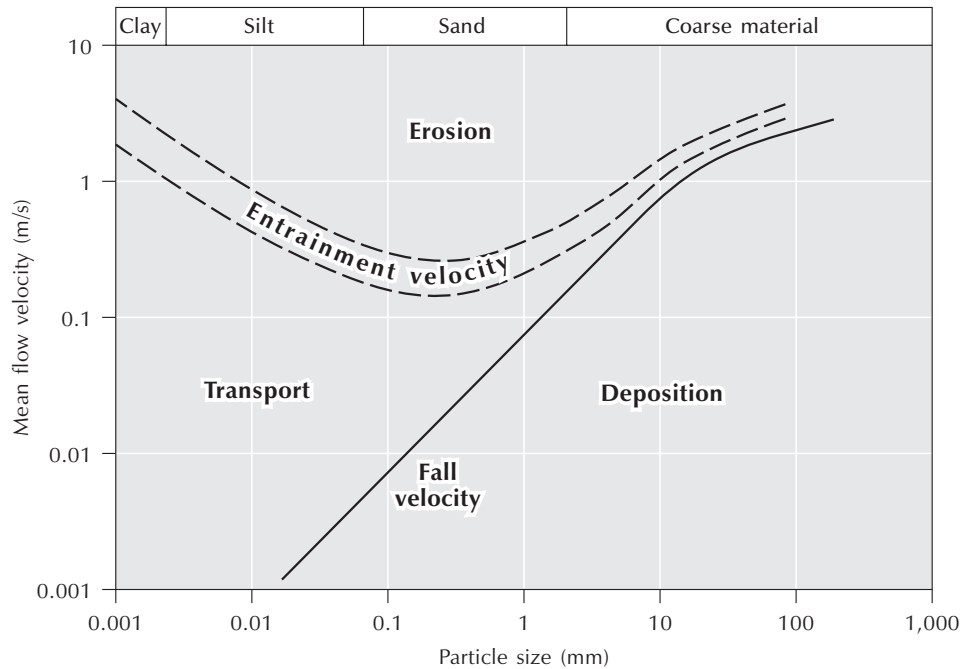


Figure 7.4 The Hjulstrøm diagram showing the water velocity at which entrainment and deposition occur for particles of a given size in well-sorted sediments.

Source: Adapted from Hjulstrøm (1935)

of a given size start to erode. The curve is a band rather than a single line because the critical velocity depends partly on the position of the grains and the way that they lie on the bed. Notice that medium sand (0.25–0.5 mm) is eroded at the lowest velocities. Clay and silt particles, even though they are smaller than sand particles, require a higher velocity for erosion to occur because they lie within the bottom zone of laminar flow and, in the case of clay particles, because of the cohesive forces holding them together. The lower curve in the Hjulstrøm diagram shows the velocity at which particles already in motion cannot be transported further and fall to the channel bed. This is called the fall velocity. It depends not just on grain size but on density and shape too, as well as on the viscosity and density of the water. Interestingly, because the viscosity and density of the water change with the amount of sediment the stream carries, the relationship between

flow velocity and deposition is complicated. As the flow velocity reduces, so the coarser grains start to fall out, while the finer grains remain in motion. The result is differential settling and **sediment sorting**. Clay and silt particles stay in suspension at velocities of 1–2 cm/s, which explains why suspended load deposits are not dumped on stream beds. The region between the lower curve and the upper band defines the velocities at which particles of different sizes are transported. The wider the gap between the upper and lower lines, the more continuous the transport. Notice that the gap for particles larger than 2 mm is small. In consequence, a piece of gravel eroded at just above the critical velocity will be deposited as soon as it arrives in a region of slightly lower velocity, which is likely to lie near the point of erosion. As a rule of thumb, the flow velocity at which erosion starts for grains larger than 0.5 mm is roughly proportional to the square root of the grain size.

Or, to put it another way, the maximum grain size eroded is proportional to the square of the flow velocity.

The Hjulstrøm diagram applies only to erosion, transport, and deposition in alluvial channels. In bedrock channels, the bed load abrades the rock floor and causes vertical erosion. Where a stationary eddy forms, a small hollow is ground out that may eventually deepen to produce a **pothole**.

### Channel initiation

Stream channels can be created on a newly exposed surface or develop by the expansion of an existing channel network. Their formation depends upon water flowing over a slope becoming sufficiently concentrated for channel incision to occur. Once formed, a channel may grow to form a permanent feature.

Robert E. Horton (1945) was the first to formalize the importance of topography to hillslope hydrology by proposing that a **critical hillslope**

**length** was required to generate a channel (cf. p. 172). The critical length was identified as that required to generate a boundary shear stress of Hortonian overland flow sufficient to overcome the surface resistance and result in scour. In Horton's model, before overland flow is able to erode the soil, it has to reach a critical depth at which the eroding stress of the flow exceeds the shear resistance of the soil surface (Figure 7.5). Horton proposed that a 'belt of no erosion' is present on the upper part of slopes because here the flow depth is not sufficient to cause erosion. However, subsequent work has demonstrated that some surface wash is possible even on slope crests, although here it does not lead to rill development because the rate of incision is slow and incipient rills are filled by rainsplash.

Further studies have demonstrated that a range of relationships between channel network properties and topography exist, although the physical processes driving these are not as well understood. In semi-arid and arid environments, the Hortonian overland-flow model provides a reasonable frame-

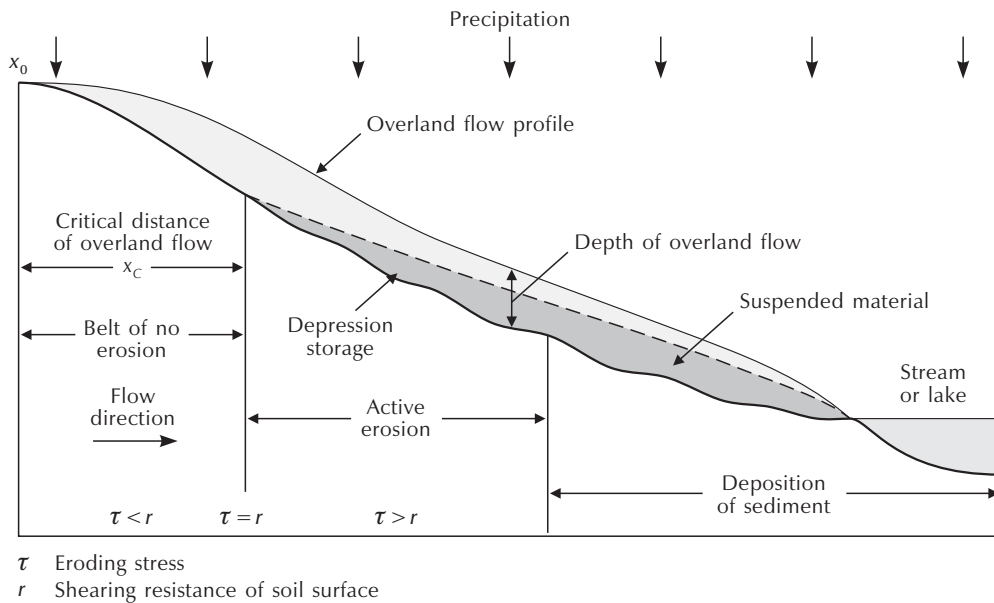


Figure 7.5 Horton's model of overland flow production.

Source: Adapted from Horton (1945)

work for explaining channel initiation, but it does not for humid regions. In humid regions, channel initiation is more related to the location of surface and subsurface flow convergence, usually in slope concavities and adjacent to existing drainage lines, than to a critical distance of overland flow. Rills can develop as a result of a sudden outburst of subsurface flow at the surface close to the base of a slope. So, channel development in humid regions is very likely to occur where subsurface **pipes** are present. Pipe networks can help initiate channel development, either through roof collapse or by the concentration of runoff and erosion downslope of pipe outlets. Piping can also be important in semi-arid regions. Channel initiation may also take place where slope wash and similar mass movements dominate soil creep and creep-like processes (e.g. Smith and Bretherton 1972; Tarboton *et al.* 1992).

## Fluvial deposition

### Fluvial sediments

Rivers may deposit material anywhere along their courses, but they mainly deposit material in valley bottoms where gradients are low, at places where gradients change suddenly, or where channelled flow diverges, with a reduction in depth and velocity. The Hjulstrøm diagram (p. 179) defines the approximate conditions under which solid-load particles are deposited upon the stream bed. Four types of fluvial deposit are recognized: **channel deposits**, **channel margin deposits**, **overbank deposits**, and **valley margin deposits** (Table 7.2).

Table 7.2 Classification of valley sediments

<i>Type of deposit</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Channel deposits</i>	
Transitory channel deposits	Resting bed load. Part may be preserved in more durable channel fills or lateral accretions
Lag deposits	Sequestrations of larger or heavier particles. Persist longer than transitory channel deposits
Channel fills	Sediment accumulated in abandoned or aggrading channel segments. Range from coarse bed load to fine-grained oxbow lake deposits
<i>Channel margin deposits</i>	
Lateral accretion deposits	Point bars and marginal bars preserved by channel shifting and added to the overbank floodplain
<i>Overbank floodplain deposits</i>	
Vertical accretion deposits	Fine-grained sediment deposited from the load suspended in overbank floodwater. Includes natural levees and backswamp deposits
Spays	Local accumulations of bed-load materials spread from channel onto bordering floodplains
<i>Valley margin deposits</i>	
Colluvium	Deposits derived mainly from unconcentrated slope wash and soil creep on valley sides bordering floodplains
Mass movement deposits	Debris from earthflow, debris avalanches, and landslides, commonly intermixed with marginal colluvium. Mudflows normally follow channels but may spill over the channel bank

Source: Adapted from Benedict *et al.* (1971)

### Alluviation

When studying stream deposition, it is useful to take the broad perspective of erosion and deposition within drainage basins.

Stream erosion and deposition takes place during flood events. As discharge increases during a flood, so erosion rates rise and the stream bed is scoured. As the flood abates, sediment is redeposited over days or weeks. Nothing much then happens until the next flood. Such **scour-and-fill cycles** shift sediment along the stream bed. Scour-and-fill and channel deposits are found in most streams. Some streams actively accumulate sediment along much of their courses, and many streams deposit material in broad expanses in the lower reaches but not in their upper reaches. **Alluviation** is large-scale deposition affecting much of a stream system. It results from fill preponderating scour for long periods of time. As a general rule, scour and erosion dominate upstream channels and fill and deposition dominate downstream channels. This pattern arises from steeper stream gradients, smaller hydraulic radii, and rougher channels upstream promoting erosion; and shallower gradients, larger hydraulic radii, and smoother channels downstream promoting deposition. In addition, flat, low-lying land bordering a stream that forms a suitable platform for deposition is more common at downstream sites.

Alluviation may be studied by calculating **sediment budgets** for alluvial or valley storage in a drainage basin. The change in storage during a time interval is the difference between the sediment gains and the sediment losses. Where gains exceed losses, storage increases with a resulting **aggradation** of channels or floodplains or both. Where losses exceed gains, channels and floodplains are eroded (**degraded**). It is feasible that gains counterbalance losses to produce a steady state. This condition is surprisingly rare, however. Usually, valley storage and fluxes conform to one of four common patterns under natural conditions (Trimble 1995): a quasi-steady-state typical of humid regions, vertical accretion of channels and aggradation of floodplains, valley trenching (arroyo cutting), episodic gains and losses in mountain and arid streams (Figure 7.6).

## FLUVIAL EROSIONAL LANDFORMS

Rills, gullies, and river channels are cut into the land surface by the action of flowing water.

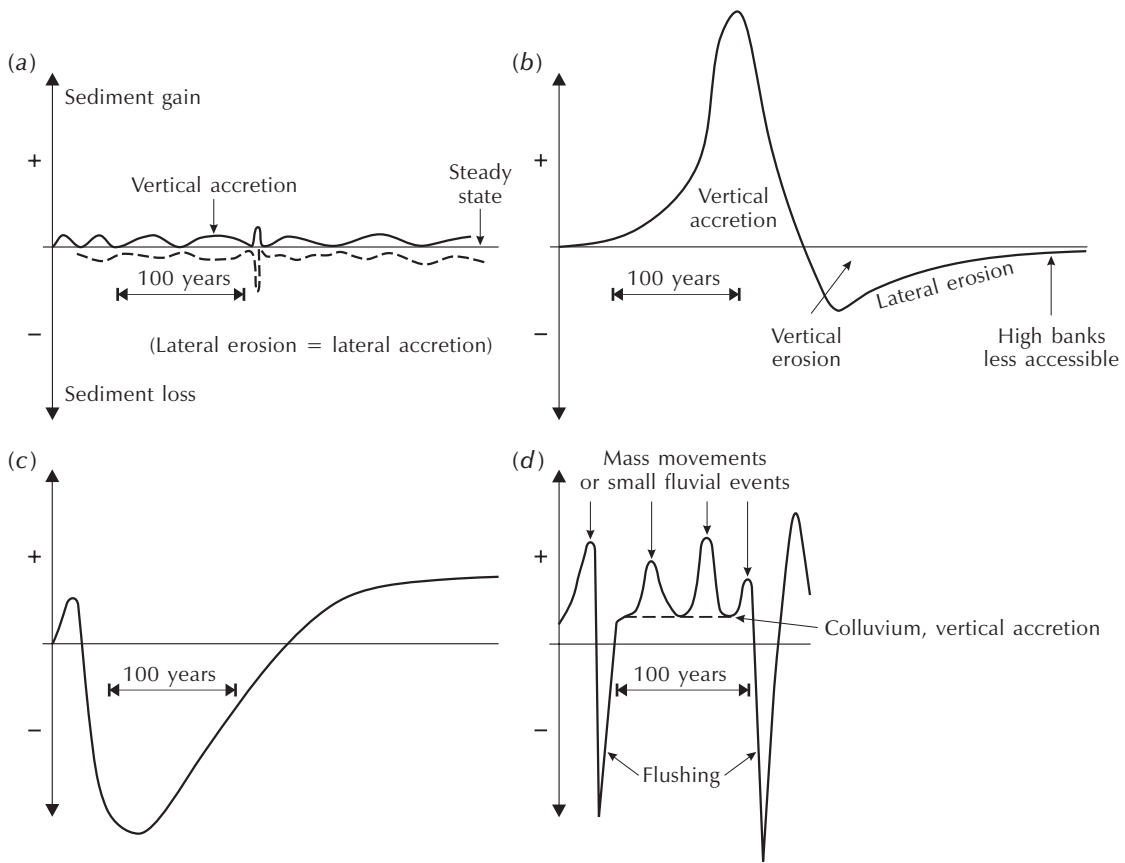
### Rills and gullies

**Rills** are tiny hillside channels a few centimetres wide and deep cut by ephemeral rivulets. They grade into gullies. An arbitrary upper limit for rills is less than a third of a metre wide and two-thirds of a metre deep. Any fluvial hillside channel larger than that is a gully. **Gullies** are intermediate between rills and arroyos, which are larger incised stream beds. They tend to be deep and long and narrow, and continuous or discontinuous. They are not so long as valleys but too deep to be crossed by wheeled vehicles or to be 'ironed out' by ploughing. They often start at a head-scarp or waterfall. Gullies bear many local names, including *dongas*, *vocarocas*, *ramps*, and *lavakas*. Much current gullying appears to result from human modification of the land surface leading to disequilibrium in the hillslope system. **Arroyos**, which are also called **wadis**, **washes**, **dry washes**, and **coulees**, are ephemeral stream channels in arid and semi-arid regions. They often have steep or vertical walls and flat, sandy floors. Normally dry, flash floods course down them during seasonal or irregular rainstorms, causing considerable erosion, transport, and deposition.

### Bedrock channels

River channels may cut into rock and sediment. It is common to distinguish alluvial and bedrock channels, but many river channels are formed in a combination of alluvium and bedrock. Bedrock may alternate with thick alluvial fills, or bedrock may lie below a thin veneer of alluvium. The three chief types of river channel are bedrock channels, alluvial channels, and semi-controlled or channelized channels.

**Bedrock channels** are eroded into rock. They are resistant to erosion and tend to persist for long periods. They may move laterally in rock that is less



*Figure 7.6* Four common patterns of valley sediment storage and flux under natural conditions. (a) Quasi-steady-state typical of humid regions. (b) Great sediment influx with later amelioration producing vertical accretion of channels and aggradation of floodplains. (c) Valley trenching (arroyo cutting). (d) High-energy instability seen as episodic gains and losses in mountain and arid streams.

*Source:* Adapted from Trimble (1995)

resistant to erosion. Most rivers cut into bedrock in their upper reaches, where gradients are steep and their loads coarser. However, some rivers, such as many in Africa, flow in alluvium in their upper reaches and cut into bedrock in the lower reaches (cf. p. 76). Bedrock channels are not well researched, with most attention being given to such small-scale erosional features as scour marks and potholes in the channel bed. The long profiles of bedrock channels are usually more irregular than those of alluvial channels. The irregularities may result from the

occurrence of more resistant beds, from a downstream steepening of gradient below a **knickpoint** caused by a fall of baselevel, from faulting, or from landslides and other mass movements dumping a pile of debris in the channel. Rapids and waterfalls often mark their position.

Given that many kinds of bedrock are resistant to erosion, it might seem improbable that bedrock channels would meander. However, incised meanders do form in horizontally bedded strata. They form when a meandering river on alluvium eats

down into the underlying bedrock. **Intrenched meanders**, such as those in the San Juan River, Utah, USA, are symmetrical forms and evolve where downcutting is fast enough to curtail lateral meander migration, a situation that would arise when a large fall of baselevel induced a knickpoint to migrate upstream (Colour Plate 10, inserted between pp. 210–11). **Ingrown meanders** are asymmetrical and result from meanders moving sideways at the same time as they slowly incise owing to regional warping. A **natural arch or bridge** is formed where two laterally migrating meanders cut through a bedrock spur (p. 154).

Springs sometimes cut into bedrock. Many springs issue from alcoves, channels, or ravines that have been excavated by the spring water. The 'box canyons' that open into the canyon of the Snake River in southern Idaho, USA, were cut into basalt by the springs that now rise at the canyon heads.

### Alluvial channels

**Alluvial channels** are formed in sediment that has been, and is being, transported by flowing water. They are very diverse owing to the variability in the predominant grain size of the alluvium, which ranges from clay to boulders. They may change form substantially as discharge, sediment supply, and other factors change because alluvium is normally unable to resist erosion to any great extent. In plan view, alluvial channels display four basic forms that represent a graded series – straight, meandering, braided, and anastomosing (Figure 7.7a). Wandering channels are sometimes recognized as an intermediate grade between meandering channels and braided channels. Anabranching channels are another category (Figure 7.7b).

### Straight channels

These are uncommon in the natural world. They are usually restricted to stretches of V-shaped valleys that are themselves straight owing to structural control exerted by faults or joints. **Straight channels**

in flat valley-floors are almost invariably artificial. Even in a straight channel, the thalweg (the trace of the deepest points along the channel) usually winds from side to side, and the long profile usually displays a series of deeper and shallower sections (pools and riffles, p. 195) much like a meandering stream or a braided stream.

### Meandering channels

**Meandering channels** wander snake-like across a floodplain (Plate 7.1; see also Plate 7.9). The dividing line between straight and meandering is arbitrarily defined by a sinuosity of 1.5, calculated by dividing the channel length by the valley length. Water flows through meanders in a characteristic pattern (Figure 7.8). The flow pattern encourages erosion and undercutting of banks on the outside of bends and deposition and the formation of point bars on the inside of bends. The position of meanders changes, leading to the alteration of the course through cut-offs and channel diversion (avulsions). **Avulsions** are the sudden change in the course of a river leading to a section of abandoned channel, a section of new channel, and a segment of higher land (part of the floodplain) between them. Meanders may cut down or incise. Colour Plate 10 shows the famous incised meanders of the San Juan River, southern Utah, USA. **Cut-off incised meanders** may also form.

Meanders may be defined by several morphological parameters (Figure 7.9). Natural meanders are seldom perfectly symmetrical and regular owing to variations in the channel bed. Nonetheless, for most meandering rivers, the relationships between the morphometric parameters give a consistent picture: meander wavelength is about ten times channel width and about five times the radius of curvature.

Meandering is favoured where banks resist erosion, so forming deep and narrow channels. However, why rivers meander is not entirely clear. Ideas centre around: (1) the distribution and dissipation of energy within a river; (2) helical flow; and (3) the interplay of bank erosion, sediment load,

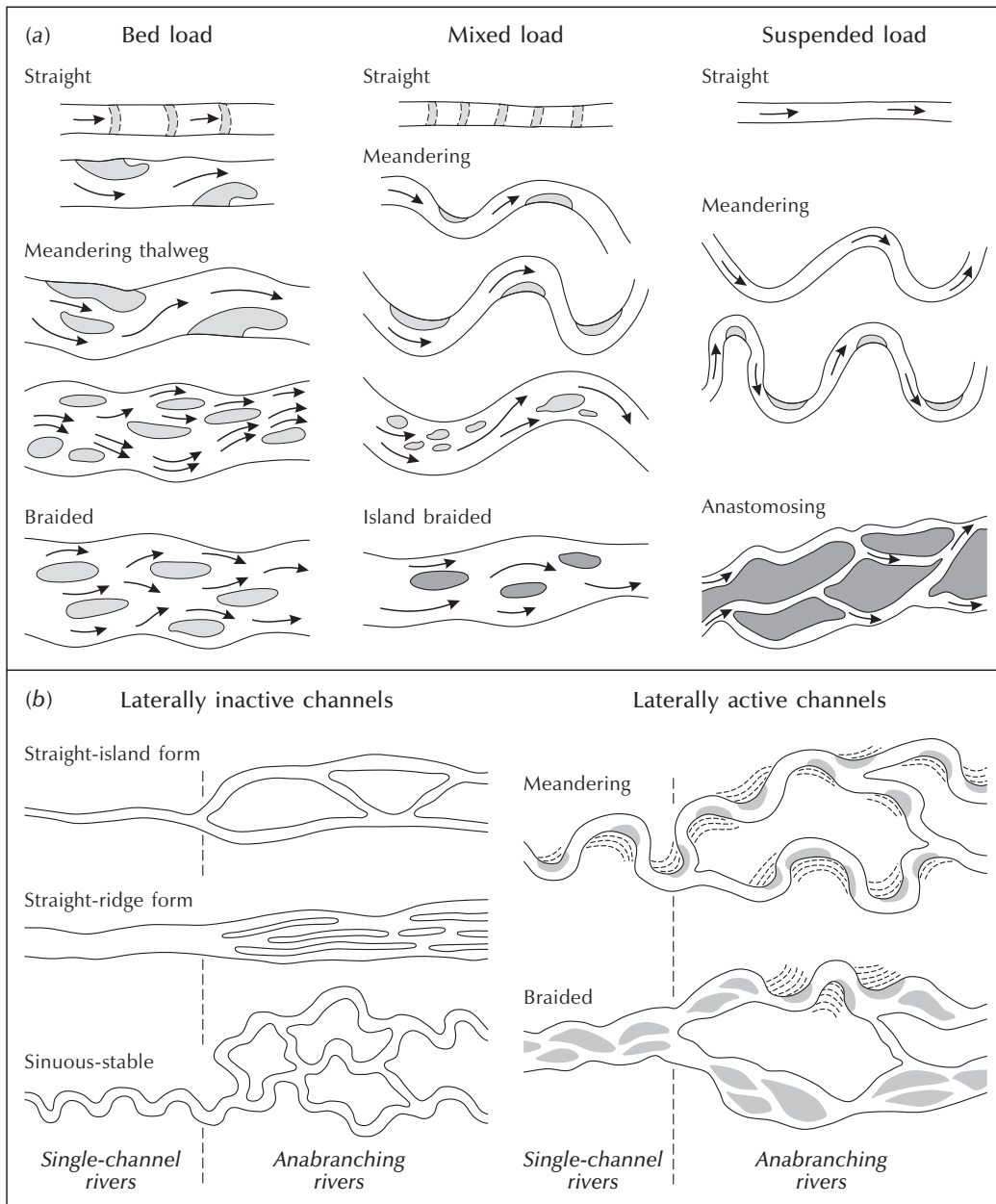


Figure 7.7 Classifications of channel patterns. (a) Channel form classified according to channel pattern (straight, meandering, braided, and anastomosing) and sediment load (suspended load, suspended load and bed load mix, bed load). (b) A classification of river patterns that includes single-channel and anabranching forms.

Sources: (a) Adapted from Schumm (1981, 1985b) and Knighton and Nanson (1993); (b) Adapted from Nanson and Knighton (1996)





Plate 7.1 Meanders on the River Bollin, Cheshire, England.  
(Photograph by David Knighton)

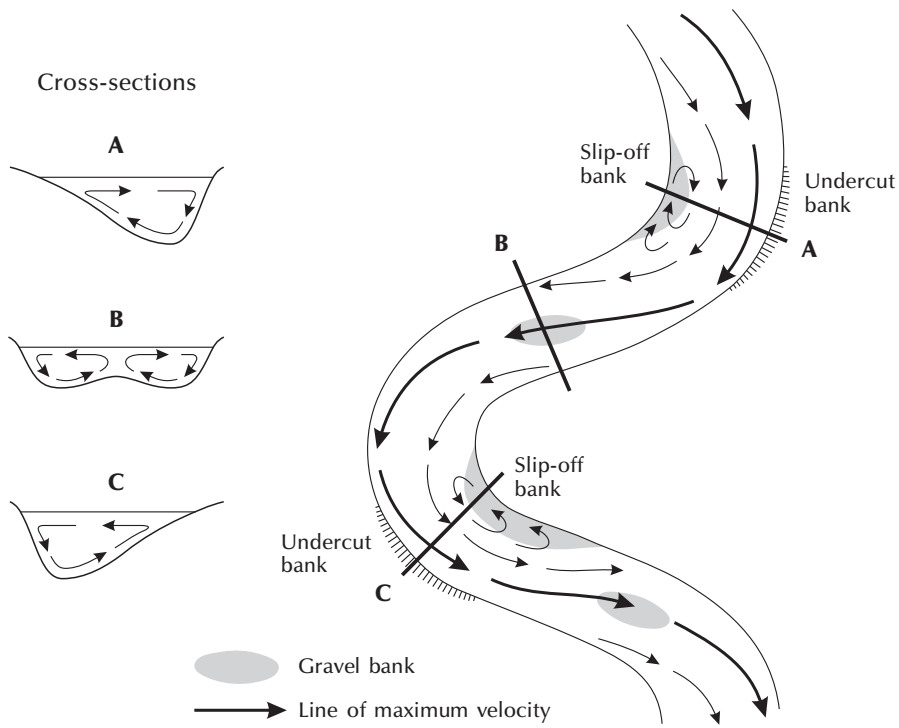


Figure 7.8 Water flow in a meandering channel.

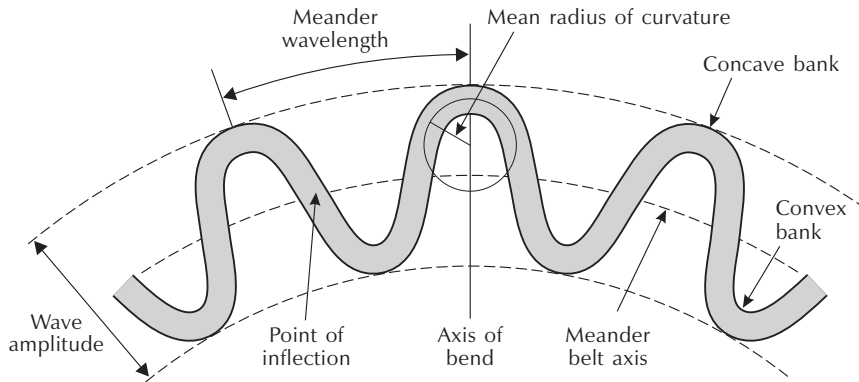


Figure 7.9 Parameters for describing meanders.

and deposition. A consensus has emerged that meandering is caused by the intrinsic instabilities of turbulent water against a movable channel bank.

### Braided channels

**Braided channels** (Plates 7.2 and 7.3) are essentially depositional forms that occur where the flow divides into a series of braids separated by islands or bars of accumulated sediment (see Best and Bristow 1993). The islands support vegetation and last a long time, while the bars are more impermanent. Once bars form in braided rivers, they are rapidly colonized by plants, so stabilizing the bar sediments

and forming islands. However, counteracting the stabilization process is a highly variable stream discharge, which encourages alternate phases of degradation and aggradation in the channel and militates against vegetation establishment. Some braided rivers have twenty or more channels at one location.

Braided channels tend to form where (1) stream energy is high; (2) the channel gradient is steep; (3) sediment supply from hillslopes, tributaries, or glaciers is high and a big portion of coarse material is transported as bed load; and (4) bank material is erodible, allowing the channel to shift sideways fairly effortlessly. They are common in glaciated

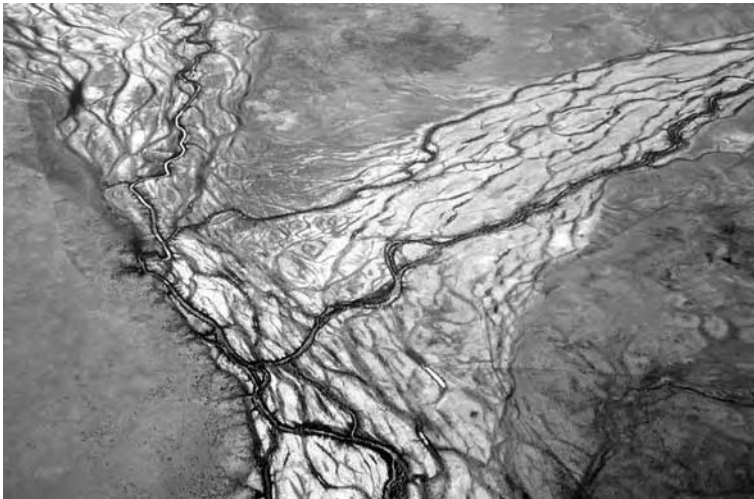


Plate 7.2 The lower, braided reach of Nigel Creek, Alberta, Canada.

(Photograph by David Knighton)



*Plate 7.3* Braiding and terraces at the junction of the Hope River (left) and Waiau River (centre), New Zealand.  
(*Photograph by David Knighton*)



*Plate 7.4* The junction of two anastomosing rivers, Queensland, Australia.  
(*Photograph by David Knighton*)

mountains, where channel slopes are steep and the channel bed is very gravelly. They form in sand-bed and silt-bed streams where the sediment load is high, as in parts of the Brahmaputra River on the Indian subcontinent.

### Anastomosing channels

**Anastomosing channels** have a set of distributaries that branch and rejoin (Plate 7.4). They are sugges-

tive of braided channels, but braided channels are single-channel forms in which flow is diverted around obstacles in the channel, while anastomosing channels are a set of interconnected channels separated by bedrock or by stable alluvium. The formation of anastomosing channels is favoured by an aggradational regime involving a high suspended sediment load in sites where lateral expansion is constrained. Anastomosing channels are rare: the River Feshie, Scotland, is the only example in the UK.

## Anabranching channels

**Anabranching rivers** consist of multiple channels separated by vegetated and semi-permanent alluvial islands or alluvial ridges. The islands are cut out of the floodplain or are constructed in channels by the accretion of sediments. Anabranching is a fairly uncommon but a widespread channel pattern that may affect straight, meandering, and braided channels alike (Figure 7.7). Conditions conducive to the development of anabranching include frequent floods, channel banks that resist erosion, and mechanisms that block or restrict channels and trigger avulsions. The anabranching rivers of the Australian interior seem to be the outcome of low-angle slopes and irregular flow regimes. Those on the Northern Plains near Alice Springs appear to be a stable river pattern that is designed to preserve a throughput of fairly coarse sediment in low-gradient channels that characteristically have abundant vegetation in them and declining downstream discharges (Tooth and Nanson 1999).

## Hydraulic geometry

The controlling influence of discharge upon channel form, resistance to flow, and flow velocity is explored in the concept of **hydraulic geometry**. The key to this concept is the discharge equation:

$$Q = wdv$$

where  $Q$  is stream discharge ( $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$ ),  $w$  is the stream width (m),  $d$  is the mean depth of the stream in a cross-section (m), and  $v$  is the mean flow velocity in the cross-section (m/s). As a rule of thumb, the mean velocity and width–depth ratio ( $w/d$ ) both increase downstream along alluvial channels as discharge increases. If discharge stays the same, then the product  $wdv$  does not change. Any change in width or depth or velocity causes compensating changes in the other two components. If stream width were to be reduced, then water depth would increase. The increased depth, through the relationships expressed in the Manning equation (p. 176), leads to an

increased velocity. In turn, the increased velocity may then cause bank erosion, so widening the stream again and returning the system to a balance. The compensating changes are conservative in that they operate to achieve a roughly continuous and uniform rate of energy loss – a channel's geometry is designed to keep total energy expenditure to a minimum. Nonetheless, the interactions of width, depth, and velocity are indeterminate in the sense that it is difficult to predict an increase of velocity in a particular stream channel. They are also complicated by the fact that width, depth, velocity, and other channel variables respond at different rates to changing discharge. Bedforms and the width–depth ratio are usually the most responsive, while the channel slope is the least responsive. Another difficulty is knowing which stream discharge a channel adjusts to. Early work by M. Gordon Wolman and John P. Miller (1960) suggested that the bankfull discharge, which has a 5-year recurrence interval, is the dominant discharge, but recent research shows that as hydrological variability or channel boundary resistance (or both) becomes greater, then channel form tends to adjust to the less frequent floods. Such incertitude over the relationship between channel form and discharge makes reconstructions of past hydrological conditions from relict channels problematic.

Changes in hydrological regimes may lead to a complete alteration of alluvial channel form, or what Stanley A. Schumm called a '**river metamorphosis**'. Such a thoroughgoing reorganization of channels may take decades or centuries. It is often triggered by human interference within a catchment, but it may also occur owing to internal thresholds within the fluvial system and happen independently of changes in discharge and sediment supply. A good example of this comes from the western USA, where channels incised when aggradation caused the alluvial valley floor to exceed a threshold slope (Schumm and Parker 1977). As the channel cut headwards, the increased sediment supply caused aggradation and braiding in downstream reaches. When incision ceased, less sediment was produced at the stream head and incision began

in the lower reaches. Two or three such aggradation–incision cycles occurred before equilibrium was accomplished.

**River long profiles, baselevel, and grade**

The longitudinal profile or long profile of a river is the gradient of its water-surface line from source to mouth. Streams with discharge increasing downstream have concave long profiles. This is because the drag force of flowing water depends on the product of channel gradient and water depth. Depth increases with increasing discharge and so, in moving downstream, a progressively lower gradient is sufficient to transport the bed load. Many river long profiles are not smoothly concave but contain flatter and steeper sections. The steeper sections, which start at **knickpoints**, may result from outcrops of hard rock, the action of local tectonic

movements, sudden changes in discharge, or critical stages in valley development such as active headward erosion. The long profile of the River Rhine in Germany is shown in Figure 7.10. Notice that the river is 1,236 km long and falls about 3 km from source to mouth, so the vertical distance from source to mouth is just 0.24 per cent of the length. Knickpoints can be seen at the Rhine Falls near Schaffhausen and just below Bingen.

**Baselevel** is the lowest elevation to which downcutting by a stream is possible. The ultimate baselevel for any stream is the water body into which it flows – sea, lake, or, in the case of some enclosed basins, playa, or salt lake (p. 198). Main channels also prevent further downcutting by tributaries and so provide a baselevel. Local baselevels arise from bands of resistant rock, dams of woody debris, beaver ponds, and human-made dams, weirs, and so on. The complex long profile of the River Rhine has three segments, each with a local baselevel. The first

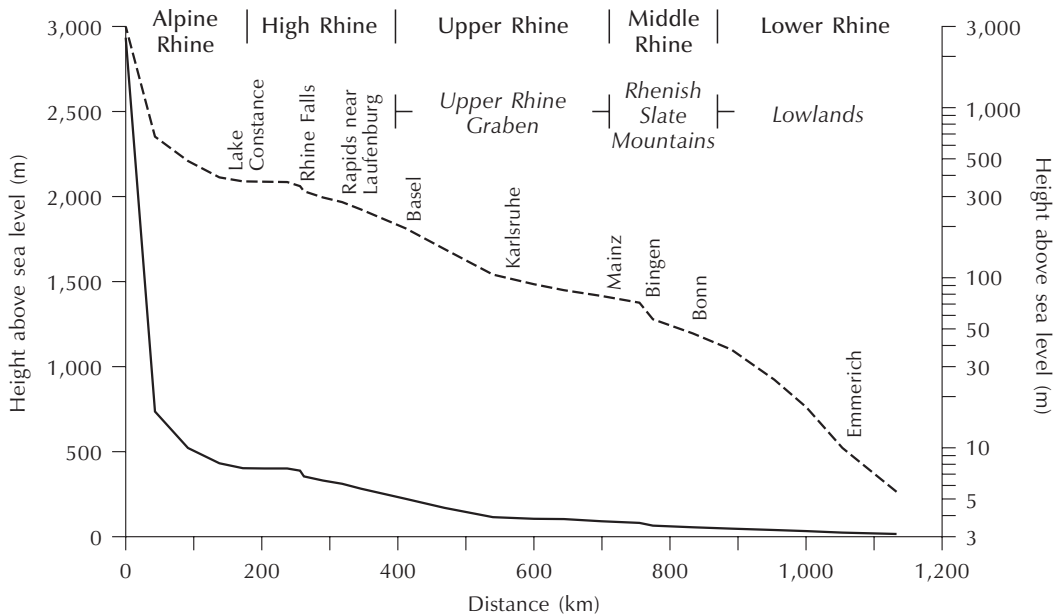


Figure 7.10 Long profile of the River Rhine, shown on an arithmetic height scale (dashed line) and logarithmic height scale (solid line).

Source: After Ahnert (1998, 174)

is Lake Constance, the second lies below Basel, where the Upper Rhine Plain lies within the Rhine Graben, and the third lies below Bonn, where the Lower Rhine embayment serves as a regional baselevel above the mouth of the river at the North Sea (Figure 7.10)

Grade, as defined by J. Hoover Mackin (1948), is a state of a river system in which controlling variables and baselevel are constant:

A graded stream is one in which, over a period of years, slope is delicately adjusted to provide, with available discharge and with prevailing channel characteristics, just the velocity required for the transportation of the load provided by the drainage basin. The graded stream is a system in equilibrium; its diagnostic characteristic is that any change in any of the controlling factors will cause a displacement of the equilibrium in a direction that will tend to absorb the effect of the change.

(Mackin 1948, 471)

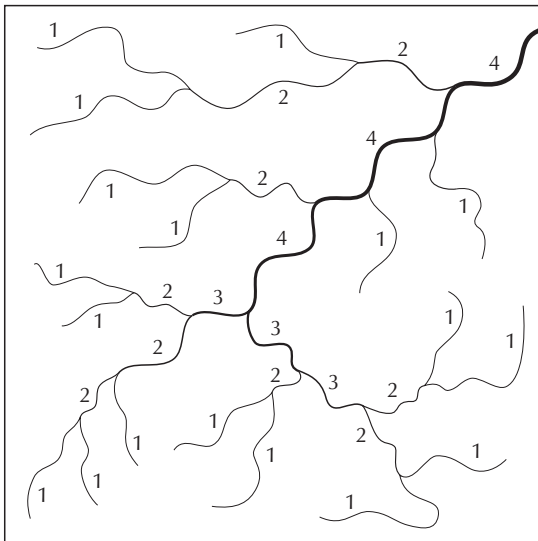
If baselevel changes, then streams adjust their grade by changing channel slope (through aggradation or degradation) or by changing their channel pattern, width, or roughness. However, as the controlling

variables usually change more frequently than the time taken for the channel properties to respond, a graded stream displays a quasi-equilibrium rather than a true steady state.

### Drainage basins and river channel networks

A river system can be considered as a network in which **nodes** (stream tips and stream junctions) are joined by **links** (streams). Stream segments or links are the basic units of stream networks. **Stream order** is used to denote the hierarchical relationship between stream segments and allows drainage basins to be classified according to size. Stream order is a basic property of stream networks because it relates to the relative discharge of a channel segment. Several stream-ordering systems exist, the most commonly used being those devised by Arthur N. Strahler and by Ronald L. Shreve (Figure 7.11). In **Strahler's ordering system**, a stream segment with no tributaries that flows from the stream source is denoted as a first-order segment. A second-order

(a) Stream order (Strahler)



(b) Stream magnitude (Shreve)

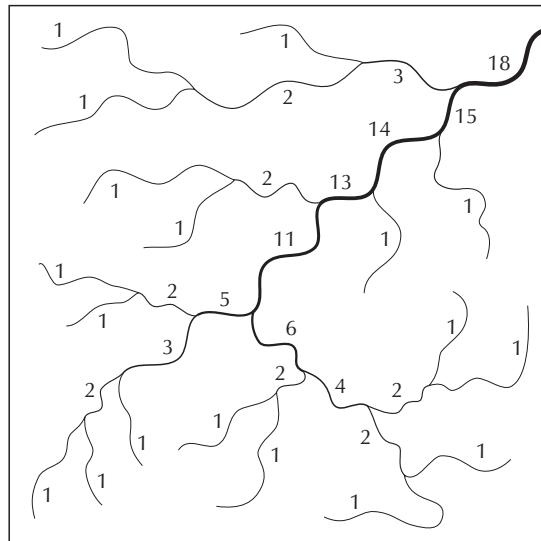


Figure 7.11 Stream ordering. (a) Strahler's system. (b) Shreve's system.



segment is created by joining two first-order segments, a third-order segment by joining two second-order segments, and so on. There is no increase in order when a segment of one order is joined by another of a lower order. Strahler's system takes no account of distance and all fourth-order basins are considered as similar. **Shreve's ordering system**, on the other hand, defines the magnitude of a channel segment as the total number of tributaries that feed it. Stream magnitude is closely related to the proportion of the total basin area contributing runoff, and so it provides a good estimate of relative stream discharge for small river systems.

Strahler's stream order has been applied to many river systems and it has been proved statistically to be related to a number of drainage-basin morphometry elements. For instance, the mean stream gradients of each order approximate an inverse geometric series, in which the first term is the mean gradient of first-order streams. A commonly used topological property is the **bifurcation ratio**, that

is the ratio between the number of stream segments of one order and the number of the next highest order. A mean bifurcation ratio is usually used because the ratio values for different successive basins will vary slightly. With relatively homogeneous lithology, the bifurcation ratio is normally not more than 5 or less than 3. However, a value of 10 or more is possible in very elongated basins where there are narrow, alternating outcrops of soft and resistant strata.

The main geometrical properties of stream networks and drainage basins are listed in Table 7.3. The most important of these is probably drainage density, which is the average length of channel per unit area of drainage basin. **Drainage density** is a measure of how frequently streams occur on the land surface. It reflects a balance between erosive forces and the resistance of the ground surface, and is therefore related closely to climate, lithology, and vegetation. Drainage densities can range from less than 5 km/km<sup>2</sup> when slopes are gentle, rainfall low,

Table 7.3 Selected morphometric properties of stream networks and drainage basins

Property	Symbol	Definition
<i>Network properties</i>		
Drainage density	$D$	Mean length of stream channels per unit area
Stream frequency	$F$	Number of stream segments per unit area
Length of overland flow	$L_g$	The mean upslope distance from channels to watershed
<i>Areal properties</i>		
Texture ratio	$T$	The number of crenulations in the basin contour having the maximum number of crenulations divided by the basin perimeter length. Usually bears a strong relationship to drainage density
Circulatory ratio	$C$	Basin area divided by the area of a circle with the same basin perimeter
Elongation ratio	$E$	Diameter of circle with the same area as the drainage basin divided by the maximum length of the drainage basin
Lemniscate ratio	$k$	The square of basin length divided by four times the basin area
<i>Relief properties</i>		
Basin relief	$H$	Elevational difference between the highest and lowest points in the basin
Relative relief	$R_{hp}$	Basin relief divided by the basin perimeter
Relief ratio	$R_h$	Basin relief divided by the maximum basin length
Ruggedness number	$N$	The product of basin relief and drainage density

Source: Adapted from Huggett and Cheesman (2002, 98)



and bedrock permeable (e.g. sandstones), to much larger values of more than  $500 \text{ km/km}^2$  in upland areas where rocks are impermeable, slopes are steep, and rainfall totals are high (e.g. on unvegetated clay 'badlands' – Plate 7.5). Climate is important in basins of very high drainage densities in some semi-arid environments that seem to result from the prevalence of surface runoff and the relative ease with which new channels are created. Vegetation density is influential in determining drainage density, since it binds the surface layer preventing overland flow from concentrating along definite lines and from eroding small rills, which may develop into stream channels. Vegetation slows the rate of overland flow and effectively stores some of the water for short time periods. Drainage density is also related to the length of overland flow, which is approximately equal to the reciprocal of twice the drainage density. And importantly, it determines the distance from streams to valley divides, which strongly affects the general appearance of any landscape.

Early studies of stream networks indicated that fluvial systems with topological properties similar to natural systems could be generated by purely random processes (Shreve 1975; Smart 1978). Such random-model thinking has been extremely influential in channel network studies. However, later research has identified numerous regularities

in stream network topology. These systematic variations appear to be a result of various factors, including the need for lower-order basins to fit together, the sinuosity of valleys and the migration of valley bends downstream, and the length and steepness of valley sides. These elements are more pronounced in large basins, but they are present in small catchments.

## Valleys

Valleys are so common that are seldom defined and, strangely, tend to be overlooked as landforms. **True valleys** are simply linear depressions on the land surface that are almost invariably longer than they are wide with floors that slope downwards. Under special circumstances, as in some overdeepened glaciated valleys (p. 219), sections of a valley floor may be flat or slope upwards. Valleys occur in a range of sizes and go by a welter of names, some of which refer to the specific types of valley – gully, draw, defile, ravine, gulch, hollow, run, arroyo, gorge, canyon, dell, glen, dale, and vale.

As a general rule, valleys are created by fluvial erosion, but often in conjunction with tectonic processes. Some landforms that are called 'valleys' are produced almost entirely by tectonic processes and are not true valleys – Death Valley, California, which is a half-graben, is a case in point. Indeed,



*Plate 7.5* High drainage density in the Zabriskie Point badlands, Death Valley, California, USA. (Photograph by Kate Richardson)

some seemingly archetypal fluvial landforms, including river valleys, river benches, and river gorges, appear to be basically structural landforms that have been modified by weathering and erosion. The Aare Gorge in the Bernese Oberland, the Moutier–Klus Gorge in the Swiss Jura, the Samaria Gorge in Crete, hill-klamms in the Vienna Woods, Austria, and the Niagara Gorge in Ontario and New York state all follow pre-existing faults and clefts (Scheidegger and Hantke 1994). Erosive processes may have deepened and widened them, but they are essentially endogenic features and not the product of antecedent rivers.

Like the rivers that fashion them, valleys form **networks** of main valleys and tributaries. Valleys grow by becoming deeper, wider, and longer through the action of running water. Valleys deepen by hydraulic action, corrasion, abrasion, potholing, corrosion, and weathering of the valley floor. They widen by lateral stream erosion and by weathering, mass movements, and fluvial processes on the valley sides. They lengthen by headward erosion, by valley meandering, by extending over newly exposed land at their bottom ends, and by forming deltas.

Some valleys systems are exceptionally old – the Kimberly area of Australia has been land throughout the Phanerozoic and was little affected by the ice ages (Ollier 1991, 99). The drainage system in the area is at least 500 million years old. Permian, Mesozoic, Mid to Late Cretaceous, and Early Tertiary drainage has also been identified on the Australian continent.

## FLUVIAL DEPOSITIONAL LANDFORMS

### Alluvial bedforms

River beds develop a variety of landforms generated by turbulence associated with irregular cross-channel or vertical velocity distributions that erode and deposit alluvium. The forms are **riffle–pool sequences** (Box 7.2) and **ripple–antidune sequences** (Figure 7.13). **Step–pool sequences** are

large-scale and created by, for example, the dam-building activities of beavers.

### Floodplains

Most rivers, save those in mountains, are flanked by an area of fairly flat land called a **floodplain**, which is formed from debris deposited when the river is in flood. Small floods that occur frequently cover a part of the floodplain, while rare major floods submerge the entire area. The width of floodplains is roughly proportional to river discharge. The active floodplain of the lower Mississippi River is some 15 km across. Adjacent floodplains in regions of subdued topography may coalesce to form **alluvial plains**.

### Convex floodplains

The low-gradient floodplains of most large rivers, including those of the Rivers Mississippi, Amazon, and Nile, are broad and have slightly convex cross-sections, the land sloping away from the riverbank to the valley sides (Figure 7.14a). The convexity is primarily a product of sedimentation. Bed load and suspended sediment are laid down in the low-water channel and along its immediate edges, while only suspended materials are laid down in the flood basins and backswamps. Bed load accumulates more rapidly than suspended load and deposition is more frequent in and near to the channel than it is in overbank sites. In consequence, the channel banks and levees grow faster than the flood basins and may stand 1–15 m higher.

### Flat floodplains

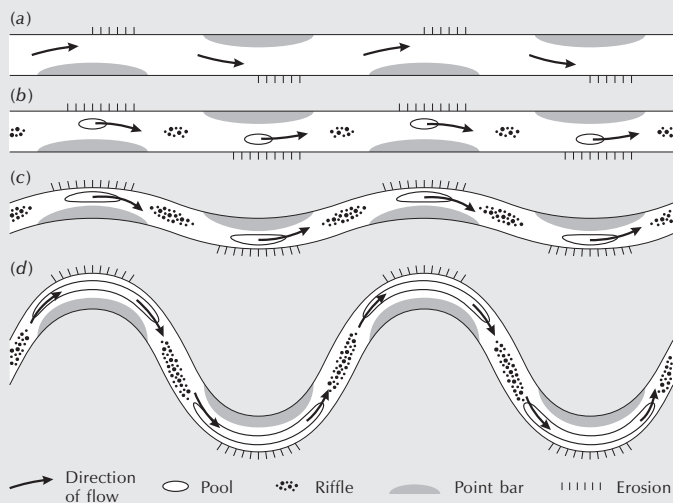
The majority of small floodplains are flat or gentle concave in cross-section (Figure 7.14b). On these flat floodplains, natural levees are small or absent and the alluvial flats rise gently to the valley sides. The concave form is encouraged by a small floodplain area that is liable to continual reworking by the stream. Most medium-sized rivers, and many major rivers, have flat floodplains formed chiefly by

**Box 7.2**

**POOLS AND RIFFLES**

River channels, even initially straight ones, tend to develop deeper and shallower sections. These are called **pools** and **riffles**, respectively (Plate 7.6). Experiments in flumes, with water fed in at a constant rate, produce pool-and-riffle sequences in which the spacing from one pool to the next is

about five times the channel width (Figure 7.12). Continued development sees meanders forming with alternate pools migrating to opposite sides. The meander wavelength is roughly two inter-pool spacings or ten channel widths, as is common in natural rivers.



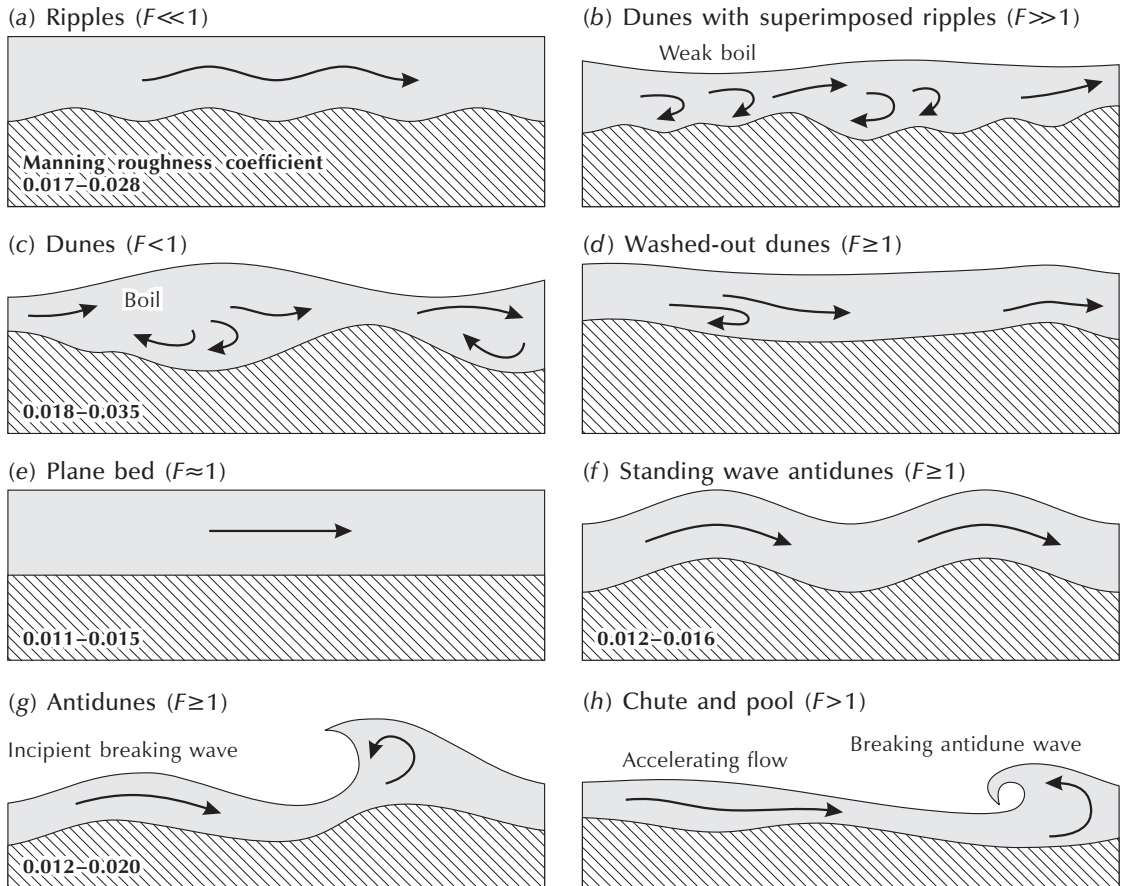
*Figure 7.12* Pool-and-riffle sequences in river channels. (a) Alternating zones of channel erosion and accretion in response to faster and slower flow. (b) Pool spacing influencing the evolution of a straight channel into a meandering channel. (c) Well developed pools and riffles. (d) Development of meandering channel with pools and riffles.

*Source:* Adapted from Dury (1969)



*Plate 7.6* Riffles and pools in a straight section of the River Dean, Adlington Hall, Cheshire, England. A pool may be seen in the foreground and a riffle to the right of the middle-ground bar, with other pools and riffles beyond.

*(Photograph by David Knighton)*



*Figure 7.13* Bedforms in a sandy alluvial channel change as the Froude number,  $F$ , changes. At low flow velocities, ripples form that change into dunes as velocity increases. A further increase of velocity planes off bed undulations and eventually a plane bed forms. The plane bed reduces resistance to flow and sediment rates increase. The channel then stands poised at the threshold of subcritical and supercritical flow. A further increase of velocity initiates supercritical flow and standing antidunes form. Flow resistance is low at this stage because the antidunes are in phase with the standing waves. The antidunes move upstream because they lose sediment from their downstream sides faster than they gain it through deposition. At the highest velocities, fast-flowing and shallow chutes alternate with deeper pools.

*Source:* Adapted from Simons and Richardson (1963) and Simons (1969)

lateral accretion (sedimentation on the inside of meander bends). Flat floodplains may also form by alluviation in braided streams.

### Alluvial fans

An **alluvial fan** is a cone-shaped body that forms where a stream flowing out of mountains debouches onto a plain (Plate 7.7). The alluvial deposits radiate from the **fan apex**, which is the point at which the stream emerges from the mountains. Radiating

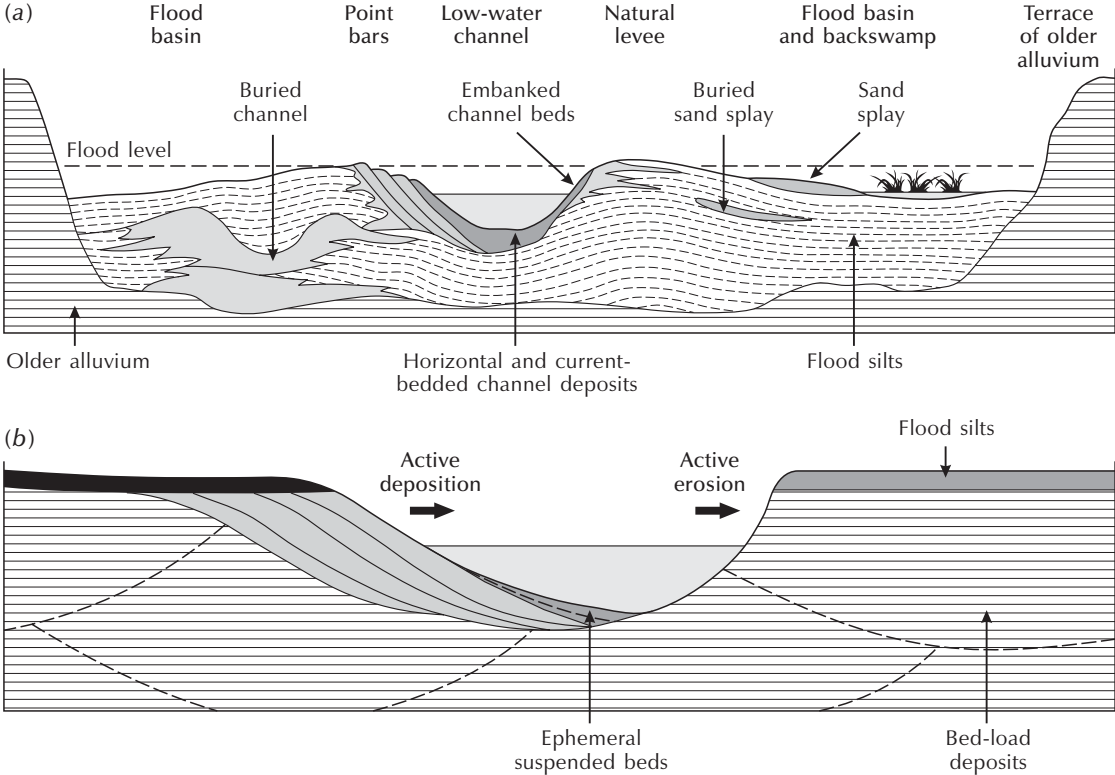


Figure 7.14 Sections through floodplains. (a) A convex floodplain. Point-bar deposits occur on inside meander bends and rarely opposite developing levees. The vertical exaggeration is considerable. (b) A flat floodplain. Source: After Butzer (1976, 155, 159)



Plate 7.7 Alluvial fan at base of 200-m high ridge in the Himalayan foothills, Tibet. (Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos)

channels cut into the fan. These are at their deepest near the apex and shallow with increasing distance from the apex, eventually converging with the **fan surface**. The zone of deposition on the fan runs back from the break of slope between the fan surface and the flat land in front of the **fan toe**. It was once thought that deposition was induced by a break of slope in the stream profile at the fan apex, but it has been shown that only rarely is there a break of slope at that point. The steepness of the fan slope depends on the size of the stream and the coarseness of the load, with the steepest alluvial fans being associated with small streams and coarse loads. Fans are common in arid and semi-arid areas but are found in all climatic zones.

### Playas

**Playas** are the flattest and the smoothest landforms on the Earth (Plate 7.8). A prime example is the Bonneville salt flats in Utah, USA, which is ideal for high-speed car racing, although some playas contain large desiccation cracks so caution is advised. Playas are known as *salinas* in South America and *sabkhas* or *sebkhas* in Africa. They occur in closed basins of continental interiors, which are called **bolsons** in North America. The **bolsons** are

surrounded by mountains out of which flood waters laden with sediment debouch into the basin. The coarser sediment is deposited to form alluvial fans, which may coalesce to form complex sloping plains known as **bajadas**. The remaining material – mainly fine sand, silt, and clay – washes out over the playa and settles as the water evaporates. The floor of the playa accumulates sediment at the rate of a few centimetres to a metre in a millennium. As water fills the lowest part of the playa, deposited sediment tends to level the terrain. Playas typically occupy about 2 to 6 per cent of the depositional area in a bolson. Many bolsons contained perennial lakes during the Pleistocene.

### River terraces

A **terrace** is a roughly flat area that is limited by sloping surfaces on the upslope and downslope sides. River terraces are the remains of old valley floors that are left sitting on valley sides after river downcutting. Flat areas on valley sides – **structural benches** – may be produced by resistant beds in horizontally lying strata, so the recognition of terraces requires that structural controls have been ruled out. River terraces slope downstream but not necessarily at the same grade as the active floodplain. **Paired terraces** form



*Plate 7.8* Playa in Panamint Valley, California, USA.

A bajada can be seen rising towards the mountains in the background.

(*Photograph by Tony Waltbam Geophotos*)



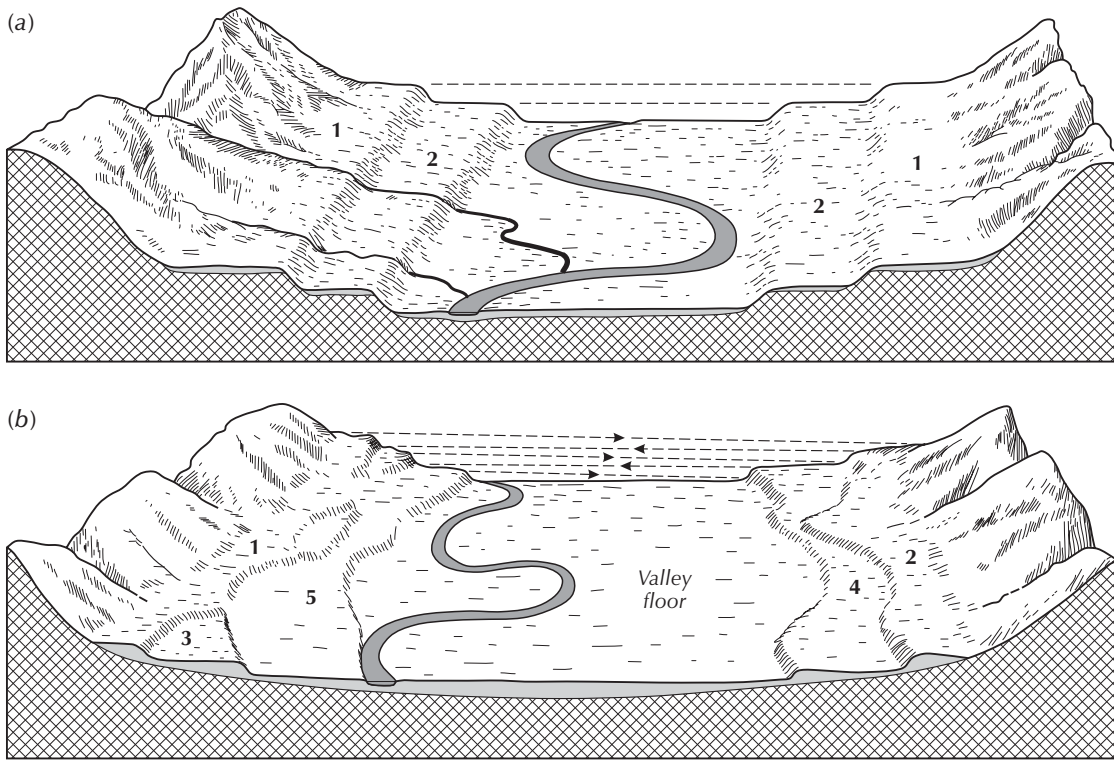


Figure 7.15 Paired and unpaired terraces. (a) Paired, polycyclic terraces. (b) Unpaired, noncyclic terraces. The terraces are numbered 1, 2, 3, and so on.

Sources: Adapted from Sparks (1960, 221–23) and Thornbury (1954, 158)

where the vertical downcutting by the river is faster than the lateral migration of the river channel (Figure 7.15a). **Unpaired terraces** form where the channel shifts laterally faster than it cuts down, so terraces are formed by being cut in turn on each side of the valley (Figure 7.15b).

The floor of a river valley is a precondition for river terrace formation. Two main types of river terrace exist that correspond to two types of valley floor: bedrock terraces and alluvial terraces.

### Bedrock terraces

**Bedrock** or **strath** terraces start in valleys where a river cuts down through bedrock to produce a V-shaped valley, the floor of which then widens by

lateral erosion (Figure 7.16). The flat, laterally eroded surface is often covered by a thin layer of gravel. Renewed downcutting into this valley floor then leaves remnants of the former valley floor on the slopes of the deepened valley as rock-floored terraces. Rock-floored terraces are pointers to prolonged downcutting, often resulting from tectonic uplift. The rock floors are cut by lateral erosion during intermissions in uplift.

### Alluvial terraces

**Alluvial** or **accumulation** terraces are relicts of alluvial valley floors (Plate 7.9). Once a valley is formed by vertical erosion, it may fill with alluvium to create a floodplain. Recommended vertical erosion



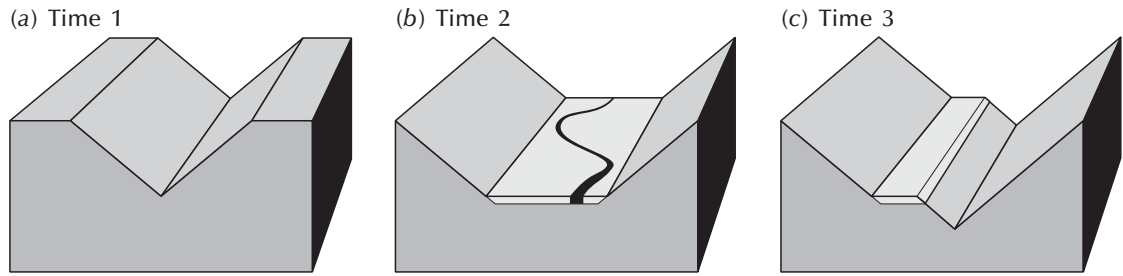


Figure 7.16 Strath (bedrock) terrace formation. (a) Original V-shaped valley cut in bedrock. (b) Lateral erosion cuts a rock-floored terrace. (c) Renewed incision cuts through the floor of the terrace.



Plate 7.9 Alluvial terraces along the Broken River, Castle Hill, Australia.

(Photograph by David Knighton)

then cuts through the alluvium, sometimes leaving accumulation terraces stranded on the valley sides. The suites of alluvial terraces in particular valleys have often had complicated histories, with several phases of accumulation and downcutting that are interrupted by phases of lateral erosion. They often form a **staircase**, with each tread (a terrace) being separated by risers. A schematic diagram of the terraces of the upper Loire River, central France, is shown in Figure 7.17.

#### Terrace formation and survival

Four groups of processes promote river terrace formation: (1) crustal movement, especially tectonic

and isostatic movements; (2) eustatic sea-level changes; (3) climatic changes; and (4) stream capture. In many cases, these factors work in combination. River terraces formed by stream capture are a special case. If a stream with a high baselevel is captured by the upper reach of a lower-lying stream, the captured stream suddenly has a new and lower baselevel and cuts down into its former valley floor. This is a one-off process and creates just one terrace level. Crustal movements may trigger bouts of downcutting. Eustatic falls of sea level may lead to headward erosion from the coast inland if the sea-floor is less steep than the river. Static sea levels favour lateral erosion and valley widening. Rising sea levels cause a different set of processes. The sea level rose and fell

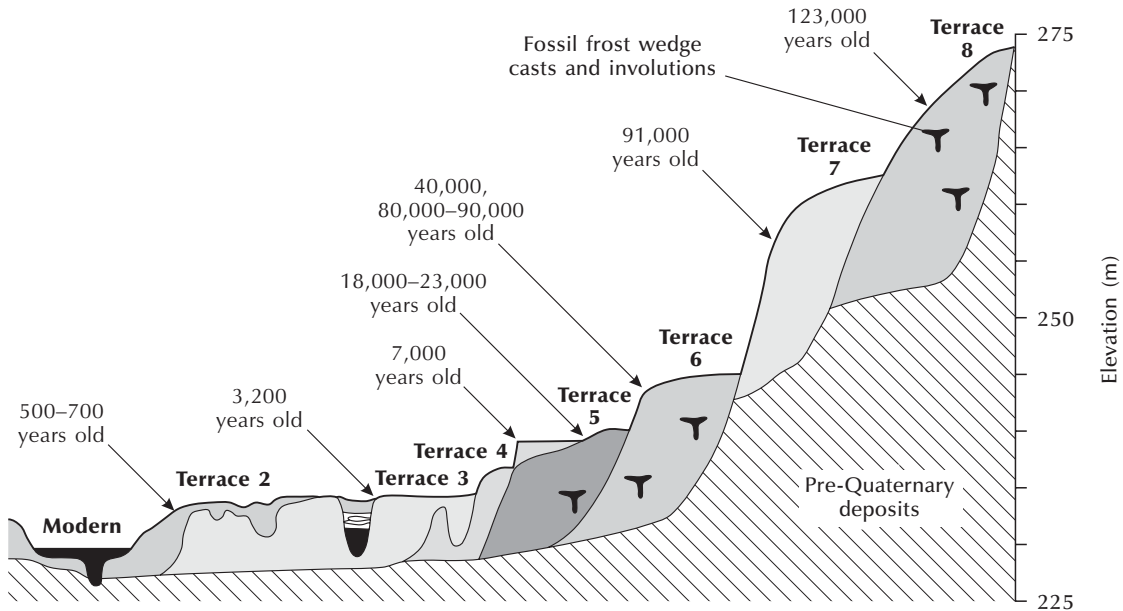


Figure 7.17 Terraces on the upper Loire River, France (diagrammatic).

Source: Adapted from Colls *et al.* (2001)

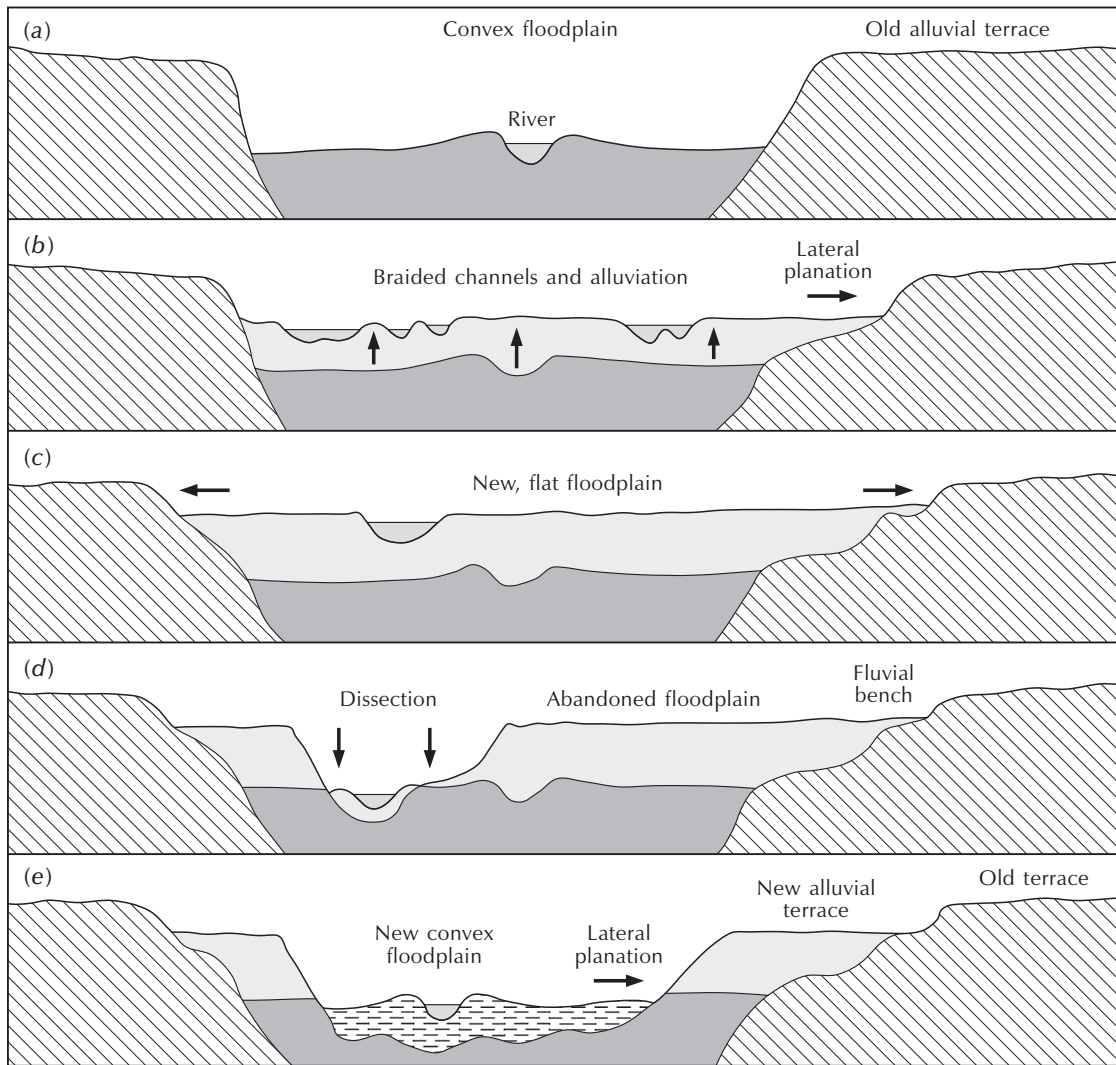
by over 100 m during the Pleistocene glacial–interglacial cycles, stimulating the formation of suites of terraces in many coastal European river valleys, for instance.

Climatic changes affect stream discharge and the grain size and volume of the transported load (Figure 7.18). The classic terrace sequence on Rivers Iller and Lech, in the Swabian–Bavarian Alpine foreland, are climatically controlled terraces produced as the climate swung from glacial to interglacial states and back again. The rivers deposited large tracts of gravel during glacial stages, and then cut into them during interglacial stages. Semi-arid regions are very susceptible to climatic changes because moderate changes in annual precipitation may produce material changes in vegetation cover and thus a big change in the sediment supply to streams. In the south-west USA, arroyos (ephemeral stream channels) show phases of aggradation and entrenchment over the last few hundred years, with the most recent phase of entrenchment and terrace formation lasting from the 1860s to about 1915.

Terraces tend to survive in parts of a valley that escape erosion. The slip-off slopes of meanders are such a place. The stream is directed away from the slip-slope while it cuts down and is not undercut by the stream. Spurs at the confluence of tributary valleys also tend to avoid being eroded. Some of the mediaeval castles of the middle Rhine, Germany – the castles of Gutenfels and Maus, for example – stand on small rock-floored terraces protected by confluence spurs on the upstream side of tributary valleys.

### Lacustrine deltas

Lacustrine or lake deltas are accumulations of alluvium laid down where rivers flow into lakes. In moving from a river to a lake, water movement slows and with it the water's capacity and competence to carry sediment. Providing sediment is deposited faster than it is eroded, a lacustrine delta will form.



*Figure 7.18* Alluvial terrace formation. (a) An initial convex floodplain. (b) Burial of the initial floodplain by coarser sediments through rapid alluviation of braided channels. (c) A stable, flat floodplain forms by alluviation and some lateral planation. (d) Another environmental change leads to dissection of alluvium and the abandonment of the flat floodplain. (e) A new convex floodplain is established by the alluviation of fine sediments and lateral planation.

*Source:* After Butzer (1976, 170)

## HUMAN IMPACTS ON THE FLUVIAL SYSTEM

### Past impacts

Human agricultural, mining, and urban activities have caused changes in rivers. The Romans transformed fluvial landscapes in Europe and North Africa by building dams, aqueducts, and terraces. A water diversion on the Min River in Sichuan, China, has been operating ceaselessly for over 2,000 years. In the north-eastern United States, forest clearance and subsequent urban and industrial activities greatly altered rivers early in the nineteenth century. Two case studies will exemplify factors at work in past river modification: the first is from Upper Weardale, England, and the second is from the Lippe Valley, Germany.

### Human impacts in Swinhope Burn

Swinhope Burn is a tributary of the upper River Wear, in the northern Pennines, England. It is a gravel-bed stream with a catchment area of 10.5 km<sup>2</sup> (Warburton and Danks 1998). Figure 7.19 shows the historical evidence for changes in the river pattern from 1815 to 1991. In 1815, the river

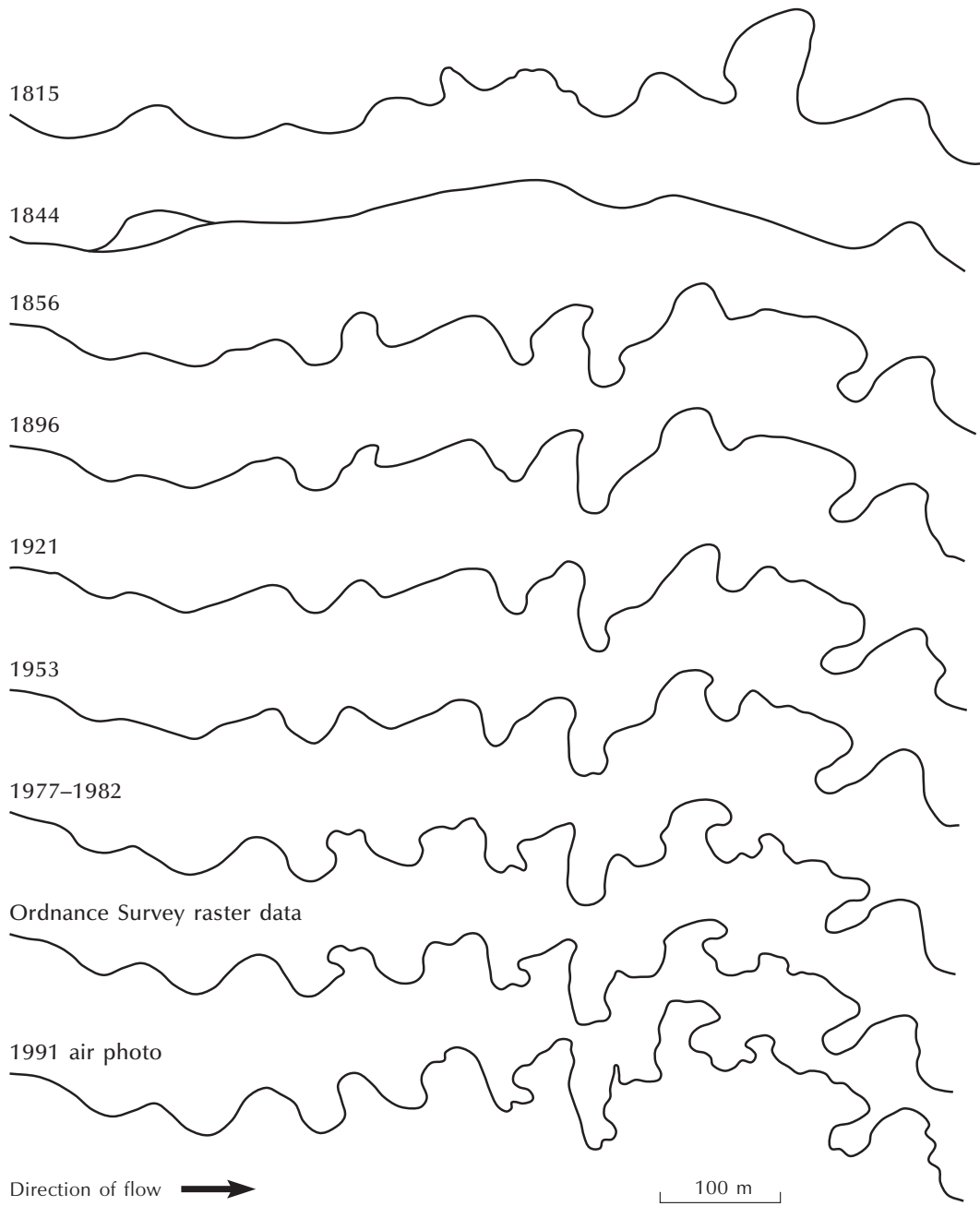
meandered with a sinuosity similar to that of the present meanders (Plate 7.10). By 1844, this meandering pattern had broken down to be replaced by a fairly straight channel with a bar braid at the head, which is still preserved in the floodplain. By 1856, the stream was meandering again, which pattern persists to the present day. The change from meandering to braiding appears to be associated with lead mining. A small vein of galena cuts across the catchment and there is a record of 326 tonnes of galena coming out of Swinhope mine between 1823 and 1846. It is interesting that, although the mining operations were modest, they appear to have had a major impact on the stream channel.

### Human impacts on the Lippe Valley

The Holocene history of the River Lippe, north-west Germany, shows how human activities can materially alter a fluvial system (Herget 1998). The Lippe starts as a karst spring at the town of Bad Lippspringe and flows westwards to the lower Rhine at Wessel. The Lippe Valley contains a floodplain and two Holocene terraces, the younger being called the Aue or Auenterrasse and the older the Inselterrasse. Both these sit within an older terrace – the 115,000–110,000-year-old Weichselian Lower



Plate 7.10 River meanders in Swinhope Burn, northern Pennines, England.  
(*Photograph by Jeff Warburton*)



*Figure 7.19* Channel change in Swinhope Burn, upper Weardale, northern Pennines, England. The diagram shows the channel centre-line determined from maps, plans, and an air photograph.  
*Source:* After Warburton and Danks (1998)

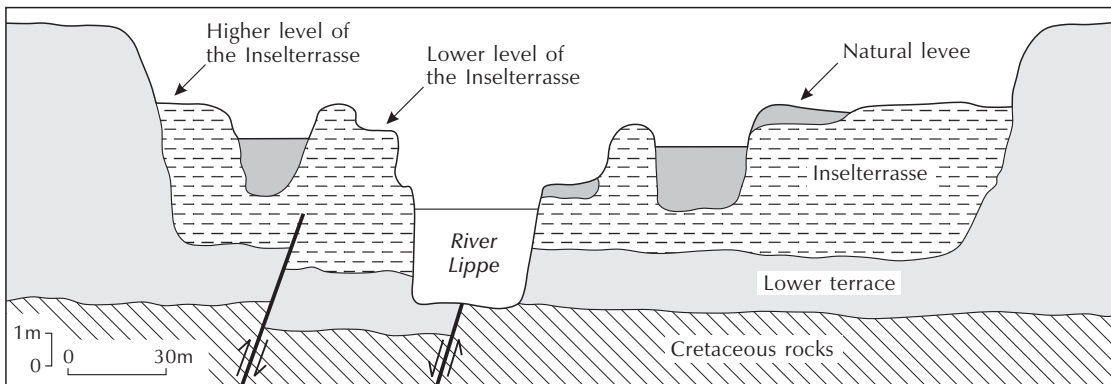


Figure 7.20 Schematic cross-section of the lower Lippe Valley in north-west Germany, showing terraces.  
Source: Adapted from Herget (1998)

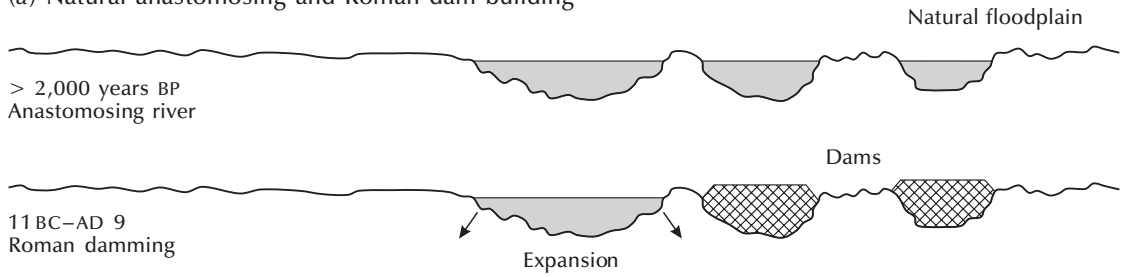
Terrace (Figure 7.20). The Inselterrasse ('island terrace') is a local feature of the lower Lippe Valley west of Lünen. It began to accumulate about 8,000 years ago and stopped accumulating about AD 980, and survived as separate terrace islands left by abandoned channels. The Aue (or 'towpath') runs from the headwaters, where it is quite wide, to the lower valley, where it forms a narrow strip paralleling the river channel. It is younger than the Inselterrasse. The characteristics of the Holocene valley bottom are not typical of valley bottoms elsewhere in Central Europe. The peculiarities include the confinement of the Inselterrasse to the lower Lippe Valley, the separation in places of the Inselterrasse into two levels that are not always clearly distinguishable, the Aue's being just a narrow strip in the lower reaches, and the Aue's lying above the average flood level while the Inselterrasse is periodically flooded and in historical times was frequently flooded. These features may be explained by human activities in the valley, but two interpretations are possible (Figure 7.21):

- 1 Natural river anastomosing and Roman dam building. Under natural conditions, the River Lippe anastomosed with discharge running through several channels. The valley bottom was then a single broad level. Evidence for this interpretation comes from the lower valley, where

some of the abandoned channels are too narrow and shallow to have conveyed the mean discharge, and several channels could easily have formed in the highly erodible, sandy sediments. Later, during their campaign against the German tribes, the Romans used the river to transport supplies. Although there is no archaeological evidence for this, they may have dammed some channels, so concentrating discharge into a single channel that would then broaden and deepen and start behaving as a meandering river.

- 2 Natural meandering river with modification starting in mediaeval times. Under natural conditions, the Lippe actively meandered across the floodplain, eroding into meanders and eroding avulsion channels during floods, and the Aue consisted of several small channels that carried discharge during floods. Starting about 1,000 years ago, several meanders were artificially cut to shorten the navigation route and new towpaths built in sections of the avulsion channels. Ship-building started in Dorsten in the twelfth century and it is known that a towpath was built next to the river at variable heights to move the ships. The artificial cutting steepened the channel gradient and encouraged meander incision. In the nineteenth century, a higher water level was needed for navigation on the river and sediments from sections with steep embankments and

## (a) Natural anastomosing and Roman dam building



## (b) Natural meandering with mediaeval and later modifications

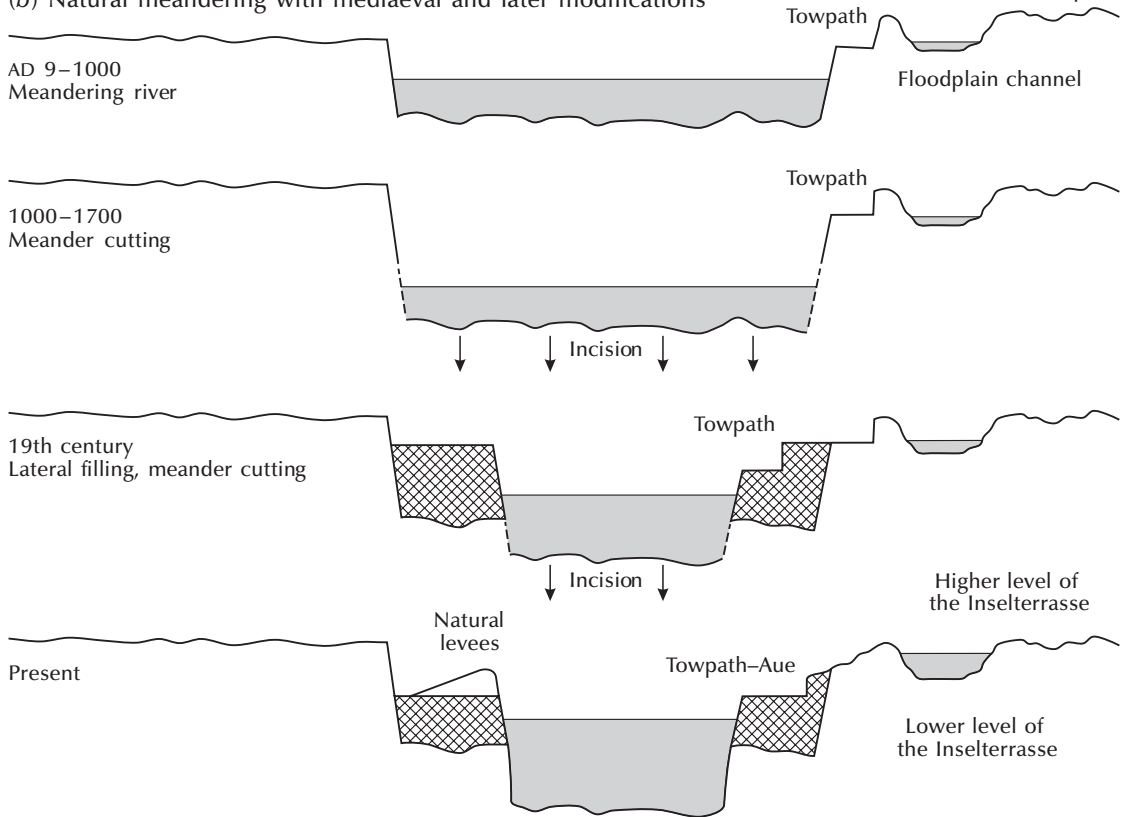


Figure 7.21 Evolution of Holocene terraces in the Lippe Valley. (a) Interpretation 1. (b) Interpretation 2.

Source: Adapted from Herget (1998)



natural levees were used to narrow the channel. The result was another bout of channel incision and the building of a new towpath. Recently, the towpath has widened owing to flood erosion and the river is building a new terrace between the higher level of the Inselterrasse and the Weichselian Lower Terrace.

This example shows how difficult it can be to reconstruct the history of river valleys, and how humans have affected rivers for at least 2,000 years.

### **Present river modification and management**

Fluvial environments present humans with many challenges. The degradation of rivers downstream of dams is a concern around the world. Many European rivers are complex managed entities. In the Swiss Jura, changes in some rivers to improve navigation destabilized the channels and a second set of engineering works was needed to correct the impacts of the first (Douglas 1971). Within the Rhine Valley, the river channel is canalized and flows so swiftly that it scours its bed. To obviate undue scouring, a large and continuous programme of gravel replenishment is in operation. The Piave river, in the eastern Alps of Italy, has experienced remarkable channel changes following decreased flows and decreased sediment supply (Surian 1999). The width of the channel has shrunk to about 35 per cent of its original size, and in several reaches the pattern has altered from braided to wandering. In England, the channelization of the River Mersey through the south of Manchester has led to severe bank erosion downstream of the channelized section, and electricity pylons have had to be relocated (Douglas and Lawson 2001).

By the 1980s, increasing demand for environmental sensitivity in **river management**, and the realization that hard engineering solutions were not fulfilling their design life expectancy, or were transferring erosion problems elsewhere in river systems, produced a spur for changes in management practices. Mounting evidence and theory demanded

a geomorphological approach to river management (e.g. Dunne and Leopold 1978; Brookes 1985). Thus, to control bank erosion in the UK, two major changes in the practices and perceptions of river managers took place. First, they started thinking about bank erosion in the context of the sediment dynamics of whole river systems, and began to examine upstream and downstream results of bank protection work. Second, they started prescribing softer, more natural materials to protect banks, including both traditional vegetation, such as willow, osier, and ash, and new geotextiles to stimulate or assist the regrowth of natural plant cover (Walker 1999). River management today involves scientists from many disciplines – geomorphology, hydrology, and ecology – as well as conservationists and various user groups, such as anglers (e.g. Douglas 2000). Thus, in Greater Manchester, England, the upper Mersey basin has a structure plan that incorporates flood control, habitat restoration, and the recreational use of floodplains; while, in the same area, the Mersey Basin Campaign strives to improve water quality and river valley amenities, including industrial land regeneration throughout the region (Struthers 1997).

### **SUMMARY**

Flowing water is a considerable geomorphic agent in most environments, and a dominant one in fluvial environments. Water runs over the land surface, through the soil and rock (sometimes emerging as springs), and along rills and rivers. Streams are particularly effective landform-makers. They conduct material along their beds, keep finer particles in suspension, and carry a burden of dissolved substances. They wear away their channels and beds by corrosion, corrasion, and cavitation, and they erode downwards and sideways. They lay down sediments as channel deposits, channel margin deposits, overbank floodplain deposits, and valley margin deposits. Episodes of continued deposition and valley filling (alluviation) often alternate with

periods of erosion and valley cutting. Flowing water carves many erosional landforms, including rills and gullies, bedrock channels, and alluvial channels. River profiles, drawn from source to mouth, are normally concave, although they often possess knickpoints marked by steeper gradients. Rivers form networks that may be described by several geometrical and topological properties. Valleys are an overlooked erosional landform. Flowing water deposits sediment to build many depositional landforms. The smallest of these are features on channel beds (riffles and dunes, for example). Larger forms are floodplains, alluvial fans, playas, river terraces, and lake deltas. Flowing water is sensitive to environmental change, and especially to changes of climate, vegetation cover, and land-use. Many river valleys record a history of changing conditions during the last 10,000 years, induced by changing climates and changing land-use, that have produced adjustments in the fluvial system. Fluvial geomorphology lies at the heart of modern river management.

---

### ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How do rivers create landforms?**
  - 2 Why do river channel patterns vary?**
  - 3 To what extent have humans modified fluvial landscapes?**
- 

### FURTHER READING

Acreman, M. (2000) *The Hydrology of the UK: A Study of Change*. London: Routledge.

Not strictly geomorphology, but highly relevant to the subject.

Brookes, A. J. and Shields, F. D. (1996) *River Channel Restoration: Guiding Principles for Sustainable Projects*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

If you are interested in applied fluvial geomorphology, try this.

Jones, J. A. A. (1997) *Global Hydrology: Process, Resources and Environmental Management*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.

Gives a hydrological context for fluvial processes.

Knighton, A. D. (1998) *Fluvial Forms and Processes: A New Perspective*, 2nd edn. London: Arnold.

A top-rate book on fluvial geomorphology.

Leopold, L. B., Wolman, M. G., and Miller, J. P. (1964) *Fluvial Processes in Geomorphology*. San Francisco and London: W. H. Freeman. (Published by Dover Publications, New York, 1992.)

The book that process geomorphologists used to rave about. Worth dipping into but not always easy reading.

Thorne, C. R., Hey, R. D., and Newson, M. D. (1997) *Applied Fluvial Geomorphology for River Engineering and Management*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

Another book that considers applied aspects of the subject.

Kondolf, M. and H. Pigay (2002) *Methods in Fluvial Geomorphology*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.

Discusses an integrated approach to river restoration.

## GLACIAL AND GLACIOFLUVIAL LANDSCAPES

---

Sheets, caps, and rivers of ice flow over frozen landscapes; seasonal meltwater courses over landscapes at the edges of ice bodies. This chapter covers:

- ice and where it is found
- how ice erodes and deposits rock and sediment
- glaciated valleys and other landforms created by ice erosion
- drumlins and other landforms created by ice deposition
- eskers and other landforms created by meltwater
- humans and icy landscapes

### Meltwater in action: glacial superfloods

The Altai Mountains in southern Russia consist of huge intermontane basins and high mountain ranges, some over 4,000 m. During the Pleistocene, the basins were filled by lakes wherever glaciers grew large enough to act as dams. Research in this remote area has revealed a fascinating geomorphic history (Rudoy 1998). The glacier-dammed lakes regularly burst out to generate glacial superfloods that have left behind exotic relief forms and deposits – giant current ripple-marks, diluvial swells and terraces, spillways, outburst and oversplash gorges, dry waterfalls, and so on. These features are allied to the Channeled Scabland features of Washington state, USA, which were produced by catastrophic outbursts from glacial lake Missoula. The outburst superfloods discharged at a rate in excess of a million cubic metres per second, flowed at dozens of metres a second, and some stood more than a hundred metres deep. The superpowerful diluvial waters changed the land surface in minutes, hours, and days. Diluvial accumulation, diluvial erosion, and diluvial evorsion were widespread. Diluvial accumulation built up ramparts and terraces (some of which were made of deposits 240 m thick), diluvial berms (large-scale counterparts of boulder-block ramparts and spits – ‘cobblestone pavements’ – on big modern rivers), and giant ripple-marks with wavelengths up to 200 m and heights up to 15 m (Colour Plate 11). Some giant ripple-marks in the foothills of the Altai, between Platovo and Podgornoye, which lie 300 km from the site of the flood outbursts, point to a mean flood

velocity of 16 m/s, a flood depth of 60 m, and a discharge of no less than 600,000 m<sup>3</sup>/s. Diluvial supererosion led to the formation of deep outburst gorges, open-valley spillways, and diluvial valleys and oversplash gorges where water could not be contained within the valley and plunged over the local watershed. Diluvial evorsion, which occurred beneath mighty waterfalls, forced out hollows in bedrock that today are dry or occupied by lakes.

## GLACIAL ENVIRONMENTS

The totality of Earth's frozen waters constitutes the **cryosphere**. The cryosphere consists of ice and snow, which is present in the atmosphere, in lakes and rivers, in oceans, on the land, and under the Earth's surface. At present, about 10 per cent of the Earth's land surface is covered by glaciers, and about 7 per cent of the ocean surface is coated by pack or sea ice (taking winter conditions, when such ice is at its maximum extent). Most of the glacier ice is confined to polar latitudes, with 99 per cent being found in Antarctica, Greenland, and the islands of the Arctic archipelago. At the height of the last glaciation, around 18,000 years ago, ice covered some 32 per cent of the Earth's land surface. Another 22 per cent of the Earth's land surface is currently underlain by continuous and discontinuous zones of permanently frozen ground. These **permafrost zones** contain ground ice and will be dealt with in the next chapter.

### Glaciers

Glaciers may be classed according to their form and to their relationship to underlying topography (Sugden and John 1976, 56). Two types of glacier are unconstrained by topography: (1) ice sheets and ice caps and (2) ice shelves.

#### Ice sheets, ice caps, and ice shelves

**Ice sheets** and **ice caps** are essentially the same, the only difference being their size: ice caps are normally taken to be less than 50,000 km<sup>2</sup> and ice sheets more than 50,000 km<sup>2</sup>. They include **ice domes**, which are dome-like masses of ice, and **outlet**

**glaciers**, which are glaciers radiating from an ice dome and commonly lying in significant topographic depressions. An **ice shelf** is a floating ice cap or part of an ice sheet attached to a terrestrial glacier that supplies it with ice. It is loosely constrained by the coastal configuration and it deforms under its own weight.

#### Ice fields, cirque glaciers, and valley glaciers

Four types of glacier are constrained by topography: ice fields, cirque glaciers, valley glaciers, and other small glaciers. **Ice fields** are roughly level areas of ice in which flow is controlled by underlying topography. **Cirque glaciers** are small ice masses occupying armchair-shaped bedrock hollows in mountains (Plate 8.1). **Valley glaciers** sit in rock valleys and are overlooked by rock cliffs (Plate 8.2; see also Plate 8.5). They commonly begin as a cirque glacier or an ice sheet. Large valley glaciers may be



*Plate 8.1* Cirque glacier, Skoltbreen, Okstindan, northern Norway. Austre Okstindbreen, a crevassed glacier, is seen in the foreground. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)



Plate 8.2 Valley glacier – the Mer de Glace – in the French Alps.

(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)

joined by tributaries to form a valley-glacier network. Several forms of small glacier occur in a range of topographic situations, but all are controlled by the underlying topography.

### Inlandsis

An **inlandsis**, a French word, is the largest and most all-inclusive scale of glacier. It is a complex of related terrestrial ice sheets, ice domes, ice caps, and valley glaciers. There are two inlandsis in Antarctica: the eastern inlandsis and the western inlandsis. The eastern inlandsis covers some 10,350,000 km<sup>2</sup> and includes three domes – the Argus Dome, the Titan Dome (close to the South Pole), and the Circe Dome. The ice is some 4,776 m thick under the Argus Dome. Many parts of this inlandsis attain altitudes in excess of 3,000 m. The western inlandsis is separated from the eastern inlandsis by the Trans-Antarctic Chain. It covers some 1,970,000 km<sup>2</sup> and

is bounded by the Ross Sea, the Weddell Sea, and the Antarctic Peninsula.

### Warm and cold glaciers

Glaciers are often classed as warm (or temperate) and cold (or polar), according to the temperature of the ice. **Warm glaciers** have ice at pressure melting point except near the surface, where cooling occurs in winter. **Cold glaciers** have a considerable portion of ice below pressure melting point. However, glaciologists now recognize that warm and cold ice may occur within the same glacier or ice sheet. The Antarctic sheet, for instance, consists mainly of cold ice, but basal layers of warm are present in places. A more useful distinction may be between **warm-based glaciers**, with a basal layer at pressure melting point, and **cold-based glaciers**, with a basal layer below pressure melting point.

### Active and stagnant ice

It is important to distinguish between active ice and stagnant ice. **Active ice** moves downslope and is replenished by snow accumulation in its source region. **Stagnant ice** is unmoving, no longer replenished from its former source region, and decays where it stands.

### Glacier mass balance

A **glacier mass balance** is an account of the inputs and outputs of water occurring in a glacier over a specified time, often a year or more. A glacier balance year is the time between two consecutive summer surfaces, where a summer surface is the date when the glacier mass is lowest. Mass balance terms vary with time and may be defined seasonally. The winter season begins when the rate of ice gain (**accumulation**) exceeds the rate of ice loss (**ablation**), and the summer season begins when the ablation rate exceeds the accumulation rate. By these definitions, the glacier balance year begins and ends in late summer or autumn for most temperate and subpolar regions. Most accumulation is caused by

snowfall, but contributions may come from rainfall freezing on the ice surface, the condensation and freezing of saturated air, the refreezing of meltwater and slush, and avalanching from valley sides above the glacier. Ablation results mainly from melting in temperate regions, but it is also accomplished by evaporation, sublimation, wind and stream erosion, and calving into lakes and the sea. In Antarctica, calving is nearly the sole mechanism of ice loss.

The changes in the form of a glacier during an equilibrium balance year are shown in Figure 8.1. The upper part of the glacier is a snow-covered accumulation zone and the lower part is an ablation zone. The **firn line** is the dividing line between the accumulation and ablation zones. For a glacier that is in equilibrium, the net gains of water in the accumulation zone will be matched by the net losses of water in the ablation zone and the glacier will retain its overall shape and volume from year to year. If there is either a net gain or a net loss of water from the entire glacier, then attendant changes in glacier shape and volume and in the position of the firn line will result.

Mass balances may also be drawn up for continental ice sheets and ice caps. In an ice sheet, the accumulation zone lies in the central, elevated portion and is surrounded by a skirting ablation zone at lower elevation. In Antarctica, the situation

is more complicated because some ice streams suffer net ablation in the arid interior and net accumulation nearer to the wetter coasts.

## GLACIAL PROCESSES

### Ice flow

Ice moves by three processes: flow or creep, fracture or break, and sliding or slipping. Ice **flows** or **creeps** because individual planes of hydrogen atoms slide on their basal surfaces. In addition, crystals move relative to one another due to recrystallization, crystal growth, and the migration of crystal boundaries. Flow rates are speeded by thicker ice, higher water contents, and higher temperatures. For this reason, flow rates tend to be swiftest in warm ice. Warm ice is at the pressure melting point and contrasts with cold ice, which is below the pressure melting point. For a given stress, ice at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  deforms a hundred times faster than ice at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . These thermal differences have led to a distinction between warm and cold glaciers, even though cold and warm ice may occur in the same glacier (p. 211). Details of glacier flow are given in Box 8.1.

Ice **fractures** or **breaks** when it cannot accommodate the applied stresses. Crevasses are tensional

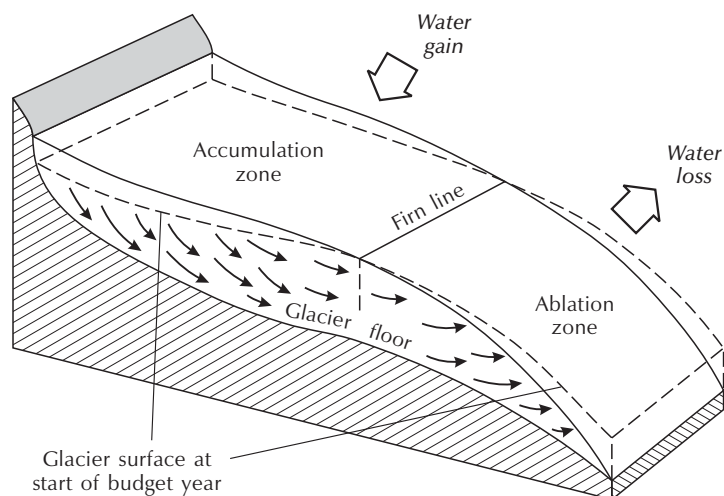


Figure 8.1 Glacier mass balance: schematic changes in the geometry of a glacier during an equilibrium budget year.

Source: Adapted from Marcus (1969)



**Box 8.1****GLACIER FLOW**

Glaciers flow because gravity produces compressive stresses within the ice. The compressive stress depends on the weight of the overlying ice and has two components: the hydrostatic pressure and the shear stress. **Hydrostatic pressure** depends on the weight of the overlying ice and is spread equally in all directions. **Shear stress** depends upon the weight of the ice and the slope of the ice surface. At any point at the base of the ice, the shear stress,  $\tau_0$ , is defined as

$$\tau_0 = \rho_i g b \sin \beta$$

where  $\rho_i$  is ice density,  $g$  is the acceleration of gravity,  $b$  is ice thickness, and  $\beta$  is the ice-surface slope. The product of ice density and the gravitational acceleration is roughly constant at  $9.0 \text{ kN/m}^3$ , so that the shear stress at the ice base depends on ice thickness and ice-surface slope. The shear stress at the base of glaciers lies between  $50$  and  $150 \text{ kN/m}^2$ .

Under stress, ice crystals deform by basal glide, which process occurs in layers running parallel to the crystals' basal planes. In glaciers, higher stresses are required to produce basal glide because the ice crystals are not usually orientated for basal glide in the direction of the applied stress. Ice responds to applied stress as a pseudoplastic body (see Figure 2.4). Deformation of ice crystals begins as soon as a shear stress is applied but the response

is at first elastic and the ice returns to its original form if the stress is removed. With increasing stress, however, the ice deforms plastically and attains a nearly steady value beyond the elastic limit or yield strength. In this condition, the ice continues to deform without an increase in stress and is able to creep or flow under its own weight. The relationship between shear strain and applied stress in ice is given by **Glen's power flow law**:

$$\dot{\epsilon} = A_i \tau^n$$

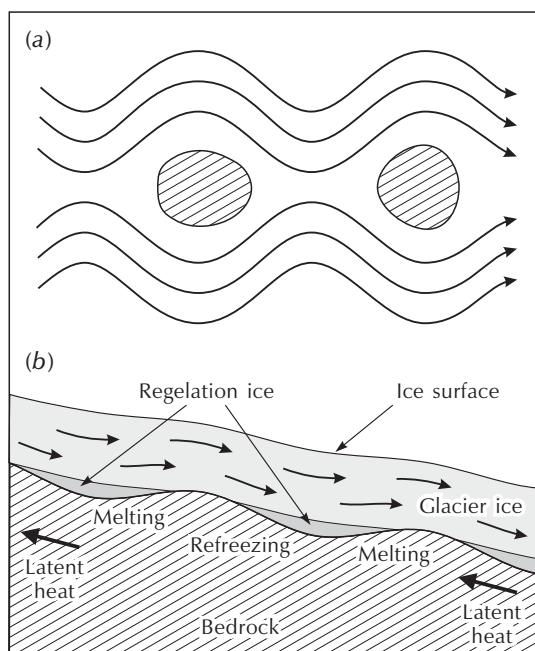
where  $\dot{\epsilon}$  (epsilon dot) is the strain rate,  $A_i$  is an ice hardness 'constant',  $\tau$  (tau) is the shear stress, and  $n$  is a constant that depends upon the confining pressure and the amount of rock debris in the ice – it ranges from about  $1.3$  to  $4.5$  and is often around  $3$ .  $A_i$  is controlled by temperature, by crystal orientation, and by the impurity content of the ice. Its effect is that cold ice flows more slowly than warm ice, because a  $20^\circ\text{C}$  change in temperature generates a hundredfold increase in strain rate for a given shear stress. With an exponent  $n = 3$ , a small increase in ice thickness will have a large effect on the strain rate as it will cube the shear stress. With no basal sliding, it may be shown that Glen's flow law dictates that the surface velocity of a glacier varies with the fourth power of ice thickness and with the third power of the ice-surface gradient.

fractures that occur on the surface. They are normally around  $30 \text{ m}$  deep in warm ice, but may be much deeper in cold ice. Shear fractures, which result from ice moving along slip planes, are common in thin ice near the glacier snout. Fractures tend not to occur under very thick ice where creep is operative.

Ice may **slip** or **slide** over the glacier bed. Sliding cannot take place in a cold-ice glacier, because the

glacier bottom is frozen to its bed. In a warm-ice glacier, sliding is common and is aided by lubricating meltwater, which if under pressure will also help to bear the weight of the overlying ice. The slippage of ice over irregular beds is assisted, in warm-based and cold-based glaciers, by enhanced basal creep whereby increased stress on the stoss-side of obstacles raises the strain rate and allows ice to flow around the obstacle. Also, under warm-based





*Figure 8.2* Basal sliding in ice. (a) High stresses upstream of obstacles in the glacier bed cause the ice to deform and flow around them. (b) Obstacles are also bypassed by pressure melting on the upstream side of obstacles and meltwater refreezing (regelation) on the downstream side.

*Sources:* (a) Adapted from Weertman (1957); (b) Adapted from Kamb (1964)

glaciers, water may melt as pressures rise on striking an obstacle and refreeze (a process called regelation) as pressures fall in the lee of the obstacle (Figure 8.2). Such pressure melting appears to work best for obstacles smaller than about 1 m. In some situations, glaciers may also move forwards by deforming their beds: soft and wet sediments lying on plains may yield to the force exerted by the overlying ice.

### Glacial erosion

Glacial erosion is achieved by four chief processes: abrasion, crushing and fracturing of structurally uniform rock, fracture of jointed rock (joint-block

removal), and meltwater erosion (p. 228). The material eroded by abrasion and fracturing is entrained into the bottom of the glacier.

### Glacial abrasion

**Abrasion** is the scoring of bedrock by ice laden with rock fragments (or clasts) sliding over it. The clasts scratch, groove, and polish the bedrock to produce **striations** (fine grooves) and other features (Plates 8.3 and 8.4; see also Plate 8.6), as well as grinding the bedrock to mill fine-grained materials (less than 100 micrometres diameter). Smoothed bedrock surfaces, commonly carrying striations, testify to the efficacy of glacial abrasion. **Rock flour** (silt-sized and clay-sized particles), which finds its way into glacial meltwater streams, is a product of glacial abrasion.



*Plate 8.3* Striations on Tertiary gabbro with erratics, Loch Coruisk, Isle of Skye, Scotland. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)



*Plate 8.4* Striated limestone bedrock near the snout of Saskatchewan Glacier, Canadian Rockies.

*(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

The effectiveness of glacial abrasion depends upon at least eight factors (cf. Hambrey 1994, 81). (1) The presence and concentration of basal-ice debris. (2) The velocity at which the glacier slides. (3) The rate at which fresh debris is carried towards the glacier base to keep a keen abrading surface. (4) The ice thickness, which defines the normal stress at the contact between entrained glacial debris and substrate at the glacier bed. All other factors being constant, the abrasion rate increases as the basal pressure rises. Eventually, the friction between an entrained debris particle and the glacier bed rises to a point where the ice starts to flow over the glacier-bed debris and the abrasion rate falls. And when the pressure reaches a high enough level, debris movement, and hence abrasion, stops. (5) In warm glaciers, the basal water pressure, which partly counteracts the normal stress and buoys up the glacier. (6) The difference in hardness between the abrading clasts and the bedrock. (7) The size and shape of the clasts. (8) The efficiency with which eroded debris is removed, particularly by meltwater.

#### Fracture of uniform rocks

The force of large clasts in moving ice may crush and fracture structurally homogeneous bedrock at the glacier bed. The process creates **crescent-**

**shaped features, sheared boulders, and chatter-marks** (p. 224). Bedrock may also fracture by pressure release once the ice has melted. With the weight of ice gone, the bedrock is in a stressed state and joints may develop, which often leads to exfoliation of large sheets of rock on steep valley sides.

#### Fracture of jointed rocks

Rocks particularly prone to glacial fracture are those that possess joint systems before the advent of ice, and those that are stratified, foliated, and faulted are prone to erosion. The joints may not have been weathered before the arrival of the ice, but with an ice cover present, freeze–thaw action at the glacier bed may loosen blocks and subglacial meltwater may erode the joint lines. The loosening and erosion facilitate the ‘plucking’ or ‘quarrying’ of large blocks of rock by the sliding ice to form rafts. Block removal is common on the down-glacier sides of *roche moutonnées* (p. 221).

#### **Glacial debris entrainment and transport**

Detached bedrock becomes incorporated into the glacier by two processes. Small rock fragments

adhere to the ice when refreezing (regelation) takes place, which is common on the downstream side of bedrock obstacles. Large blocks are entrained as the ice deforms around them and engulfs them.

Moving ice is a potent erosive agent only if sediment continues to be entrained and transported (Figure 8.3). **Subglacial debris** is carried along the glacier base. It is produced by basal melting in 'warm' ice and subsequent refreezing (regelation), which binds it to the basal ice. Creep may also add to the subglacial debris store, as may the squeezing of material into subglacial cavities in warm-based glaciers and the occurrence of thrust as ice moves over large obstacles. **Supraglacial debris** falls onto the ice surface from rock walls and other ice-free areas. It is far more common on valley and cirque glaciers than over large ice sheets. It may stay on the ice surface within the ablation zone, but it tends to become buried in the accumulation zone. Once buried, the debris is called **englacial debris**, which may re-emerge at the ice surface in the ablation zone or become trapped with subglacial debris, or it may travel to the glacier snout. Where compression near the glacier base leads to slip lines in the ice, which is common in the ablation zone, subglacial debris may be carried into an englacial position.

## Glacial deposition

A host of processes bring about the deposition of glacial sediments. The mechanisms involved may be classified according to location relative to a glacier – subglacial, supraglacial, and marginal. **Subglacial deposition** is effected by at least three mechanisms: (1) **undermelt**, which is the deposition of sediments from melting basal ice; (2) **basal lodgement**, which is the plastering of fine sediments onto a glacier bed; and (3) **basal flowage**, which is in part an erosional process and involves the pushing of unconsolidated water-soaked sediments into basal ice concavities and the streamlining of till by overriding ice. **Supraglacial deposition** is caused by two processes: **melt-out** and **flowage**. **Melt-out**, which is the deposition of sediments by the melting of the ice surface, is most active in the snout of warm glaciers, where ablation may reduce the ice surface by 20 m in one summer. **Flowage** is the movement of debris down the ice surface. It is especially common near the glacier snout and ranges from a slow creep to rapid liquid flow. **Marginal deposition** arises from several processes. Saturated till may be squeezed from under the ice, and some supraglacial and englacial debris may be dumped by melt-out.

Proglacial sediments form in front of an ice sheet or glacier. The sediments are borne by meltwater

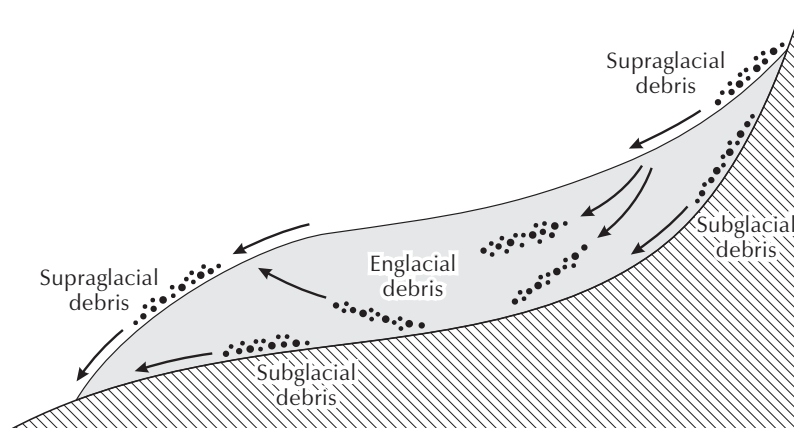


Figure 8.3 Transport by ice: supraglacial, englacial, and subglacial paths.

Source: Adapted from Summerfield (1991, 271)

and deposited in braided river channels and proglacial lakes. The breaching of glacial lakes may lay down glacial sediments over vast areas (p. 209).

## EROSIONAL GLACIAL LANDFORMS

Glaciers and ice sheets are very effective agents of erosion. Large areas of lowland, including the Laurentian Shield of North America, bear the scars of past ice movements. More spectacular are the effects of glacial erosion in mountainous terrain, where material wrested from bedrock is carried to lower-lying regions.

A panoply of landforms is moulded by glacial erosion. One way of grouping these landforms is by the dominant formative process: abrasion, abrasion and rock fracture combined, rock crushing, and erosion by glacier ice and frost shattering (Table 8.1). Notice that abraded landforms are 'streamlined', landforms resulting from the combined effects of abrasion and rock fracture are partly streamlined, while the landforms resulting from rock fracture are not streamlined. The remaining group of landforms is residual, representing the ruins of an elevated mass of bedrock after abrasion, fracturing by ice, frost-shattering, and mass movements have operated.

## Abrasional landforms

Glacial abrasion produces a range of streamlined landforms that range in size from millimetres to thousands of kilometres (Table 8.1). In sliding over obstacles, ice tends to abrade the up-ice side or stoss-side and smooth it. The down-ice side or leeward side is subject to bedrock fracture, the loosening and displacement of rock fragments, and the entrainment of these fragments into the sliding glacier base. In consequence, the downstream surfaces tend to be rough and are described as plucked and quarried.

### Scoured regions

The largest abrasive feature is a low-amplitude but irregular relief produced by the areal scouring of large regions such as broad portions of the Laurentian Shield, North America. In Scotland, parts of the north-west Highlands were scoured in this way to give '**knock and lochan**' topography. The 'knocks' are rocky knolls and the 'lochans' are lakes that lie in depressions.

### Glacial troughs – glaciated valleys and fjords

Glacial troughs are dramatic landforms (Colour Plate 12, inserted between pp. 210–11, Plate 8.5). They



*Plate 8.5* Glacial trough with valley glaciers at head, east Greenland.  
(*Photograph by Mike Hambrey*)

Table 8.1 Landforms created by glacial erosion

<i>Landform</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Abrasion by glacier ice – streamlined relief forms (mm to 1000s km)</i>	
Areal scouring	Regional expanses of lowland bedrock, up to 1000s km in extent, scoured by ice. Sometimes contain sets of parallel grooves and bedrock flutes
Glaciated valley	Glacial trough, the floor of which is above sea level. Often U-shaped
Fjord	Glacial trough, the floor of which is below sea level. Often U-shaped
Hanging valley	Tributary valley whose floor sits above the floor of the trunk valley
Breached watershed	Col abraded by a valley glacier spilling out of its confining trough
Dome	Dome-shaped structure found in uniform bedrock where ice has abraded an obstacle to leave a smoothed rock hillock that has been subject to exfoliation after the ice has left
Whaleback or rock drumlin	Glacially streamlined erosional feature 100–1000 metres long, intermediate in size between a roche moutonnée and a flyggberg
Striation	Scratch on bedrock or clast made by ice (or other geomorphic agents such as landslides, tectonic disturbance, and animals)
Polished surface	Bedrock surface made shiny by a host of tiny scratches scored by fine-grained clasts
Groove	A furrow cut into bedrock by fragments of rock (clasts) held in advancing ice
Plastically moulded forms (p-forms)	Smooth and complex forms on rock surfaces. They include cavetto forms (channels on steep rock faces) and grooves (on open flat surfaces). <i>Sichelwannen</i> and Nye channels (curved and winding channels) are also p-forms, but probably produced mainly by meltwater erosion (Table 8.3)
<i>Abrasion and rock fracturing by glacier ice – partly streamlined relief forms (1 m to 10 km)</i>	
Trough head	Steep, rocky face at the head of many glaciated valleys and fjords
Rock or valley step	Bedrock step in the floor of glacial troughs, possibly where the bedrock is harder and often where the valley narrows
Riegel	Low rock ridge, step, or barrier lying across a glaciated-valley floor
Cirque	Steep-walled, semicircular recess or basin in a mountain
Col	Low pass connecting two cirques facing in opposite directions
Roche moutonnée	Bedrock feature, generally less than 100 m long, the long axis of which lies parallel to the direction of ice movement. The up-ice (stoss) side is abraded, polished, and gently sloping, and the down-ice (lee) side is rugged and steep
Flyggberg	Large (>1000 m long) streamlined bedrock feature, formed through erosion by flowing ice. The up-ice (stoss) side is polished and gently sloping, whereas the down-ice (lee) side is rough, irregular, and steep. A flyggberg is a large-scale roche moutonnée or whaleback. The name is Swedish
Crag-and-tail or leeside cone	An asymmetrical landform comprising a rugged crag with a smooth tail in its lee
<i>Rock crushing – non-streamlined relief forms (cm to 10s cm)</i>	
Lunate fracture	Crescent-shaped fractures with the concavity facing the direction of ice flow
Crescentic gouge	Crescent-shaped features with the concavity facing away from the direction of ice flow
Crescentic fracture	Small, crescent-shaped fractures with the concavity facing away from the direction of ice flow

Chattermarks	Crescent-shaped friction cracks on bedrock, produced by the juddering motion of moving ice
<i>Erosion by glacier ice, frost shattering, mass movement – residual relief forms (100 m to 100 km)</i>	
Arête	Narrow, sharp-edged ridge separating two cirques
Horn	Peak formed by the intersecting walls of three or more cirques. An example is the Matterhorn
Nunatak	Unglaciated 'island' of bedrock, formerly or currently surrounded by ice

Source: Adapted from Hambrey (1994, 84)

are either eroded by valley glaciers or develop beneath ice sheets and ice caps where ice streaming occurs. Most glacial troughs have, to varying degrees, a U-shaped cross-section, and a very irregular long-profile with short and steep sections alternating with long and flat sections. The long, flat sections often contain rock basins filled by lakes. In glacial troughs where a line of basins holds lakes, the lakes are called **paternoster lakes** after their likeness to beads on a string (a rosary). The irregular long-profile appears to result from uneven over-deepening by the ice, probably in response to variations in the resistance of bedrock rather than to any peculiarities of glacier flow.

There are two kinds of glacial trough: **glaciated valleys** and **fjords**. A glaciated-valley floor lies above sea level, while a fjord floor lies below sea level and is a glaciated valley that has been drowned by the sea. In most respects, glaciated valleys and fjords are similar landforms. Indeed, a glaciated valley may pass into a fjord. Many fjords, and especially those in Norway, are deeper in their inner reaches because ice action was greatest there. In their outer reaches, where the fjord opens into the sea, there is often a shallow sill or lip. The Sognefjord, Norway, is 200 km long and has a maximum depth of 1,308 m. At its entrance, it is just 3 km wide and is 160 m deep, and its excavation required the removal of about 2,000 km<sup>3</sup> of rock (Anderson and Borns 1994). Skelton Inlet, Antarctica, is 1,933 m deep.

Breached watersheds and hanging valleys are of the same order of size as glacial troughs, but perhaps generally a little smaller. **Breached watersheds** occur where ice from one glacier spills over to an

adjacent one, eroding the intervening col in the process. Indeed, the eroding may deepen the col to such an extent that the glacier itself is diverted. **Hanging valleys** are the vestiges of tributary glaciers that were less effective at eroding bedrock than the main trunk glacier, so that the tributary valley is cut off sharply where it meets the steep wall of the main valley (Colour Plate 12, inserted between pp. 210–11), often with a waterfall coursing over the edge.

### Domes and whalebacks

A variety of glacially abraded forms are less than about 100 m in size. **Domes** and **whalebacks** (**rock drumlins**) form where flowing ice encounters an obstruction and, unable to obliterate it, leaves an upstanding, rounded hillock.

### Striated, polished, and grooved bedrock

Striated, polished, and grooved surfaces are all fashioned by flowing ice. **Striations** are finely cut, U-shaped grooves, up to a metre long or more, scored into bedrock by the base of a sliding glacier. They come in a multiplicity of forms, some of which, such as rat-tails, indicate the direction of ice flow. Large striations are called **grooves**, which attain depths and widths of a few metres and lengths of a few hundred metres (Plate 8.6). Glacial valleys may be thought of as enormous grooves. Bedrock bearing a multitude of tiny scratches has a polished look. The finer the abrading material, the higher the polish. Striations are equivocal evidence of ice





*Plate 8.6* Two-metre deep striated groove carved by the Laurentide ice sheet, Whitefish Falls, Ontario, Canada. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)

action, especially in the geological record, as such other processes as avalanches and debris flows are capable of scratching bedrock.

### Plastically moulded forms

Some glaciated rock surfaces carry complex, smooth forms known as **plastically moulded forms**, or **p-forms** (Plates 8.7 and 8.8). The origin of these puzzling features is debatable. Possibilities are

glacial abrasion, the motion of saturated till at the bottom or sides of a glacier, and meltwater erosion, especially meltwater under high pressure beneath a glacier.

### Abrasion-cum-rock-fracture landforms

In combination, glacial abrasion and rock fracture produce partly streamlined landforms that range in size from about 1 m to 10 km (Table 8.1).

#### Trough heads, valley steps, and riegels

**Trough heads** (or **trough ends**) and **valley steps** are similar to *roche moutonnées* (see below) but larger. Trough heads are steep and rocky faces that mark the limit of over-deepening of glacial troughs. Their ‘plucked’ appearance suggests that they may follow original breaks of slope related to hard rock outcrops. In sliding over the break of slope, the ice loses contact with the ground, creating a cavity in which freeze–thaw processes aid the loosening of blocks. The ice reconnects with the ground further down the valley. Where another hard rock outcrop associated with an original break of slope is met, a rock or valley step develops by a similar process.



*Plate 8.7* Plastically moulded forms (p-forms) and striations on *roche moutonnée* near calving front of Columbia Glacier, Prince William Sound, Alaska. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)





*Plate 8.8 Subglacially formed p-forms and pothole, cut in Proterozoic schists, Loch Treig, Grampian Highlands, Scotland. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

However, the formation of trough heads and rock steps is little researched and far from clear.

A **riegel** is a rock barrier that sits across a valley, often where a band of hard rock outcrops. It may impound a lake.

### Cirques

**Cirques** are typically armchair-shaped hollows that form in mountainous terrain, though their form and size are varied (Figure 8.4). The classical shape is a deep rock basin, with a steep headwall at its back and a residual lip or low bedrock rim at its front, and often containing a lake. The lip is commonly buried under a terminal moraine. They possess several local names, including **corrie** in England and Scotland and **cwm** in Wales. They are commonly deemed to be indisputable indicators of past glacial activity (Box 8.2).

### Roches moutonnées, flyggbergs, and crag-and-tail features

Roches moutonnées, flyggbergs, and crag-and-tail features are all asymmetrical, being streamlined on the stoss-side and ‘craggy’ on the leeside. **Roches**

**moutonnées** are common in glacially eroded terrain. They are named after the wavy wigs (moutonnées) that were popular in Europe at the close of the eighteenth century (Embleton and King 1975, 152). Roches moutonnées are probably small hills that existed before the ice came and that were then modified by glacial action. They vary from a few tens to a few hundreds of metres long, are best developed in jointed crystalline rocks, and cover large areas (Plate 8.9; see also Plate 8.7). They provide a good pointer to the direction of past ice flow. **Flyggbergs** are large roche moutonnées, more than 1,000 m long. **Crag-and-tail features** are eroded on the rugged stoss-side (the crag) but sediment (till) is deposited in the smooth leeside. Slieve Gullion, County Down, Northern Ireland, is an example: the core of a Tertiary volcano has a tail of glacial debris in its lee.

### Rock-crushed landforms

Small-scale, crescent-shaped features, ranging in size from a few centimetres up to a couple of metres, occur on striated and polished rock surfaces. These features are the outcome of rock crushing by debris lodged at the bottom of a glacier. They come in a

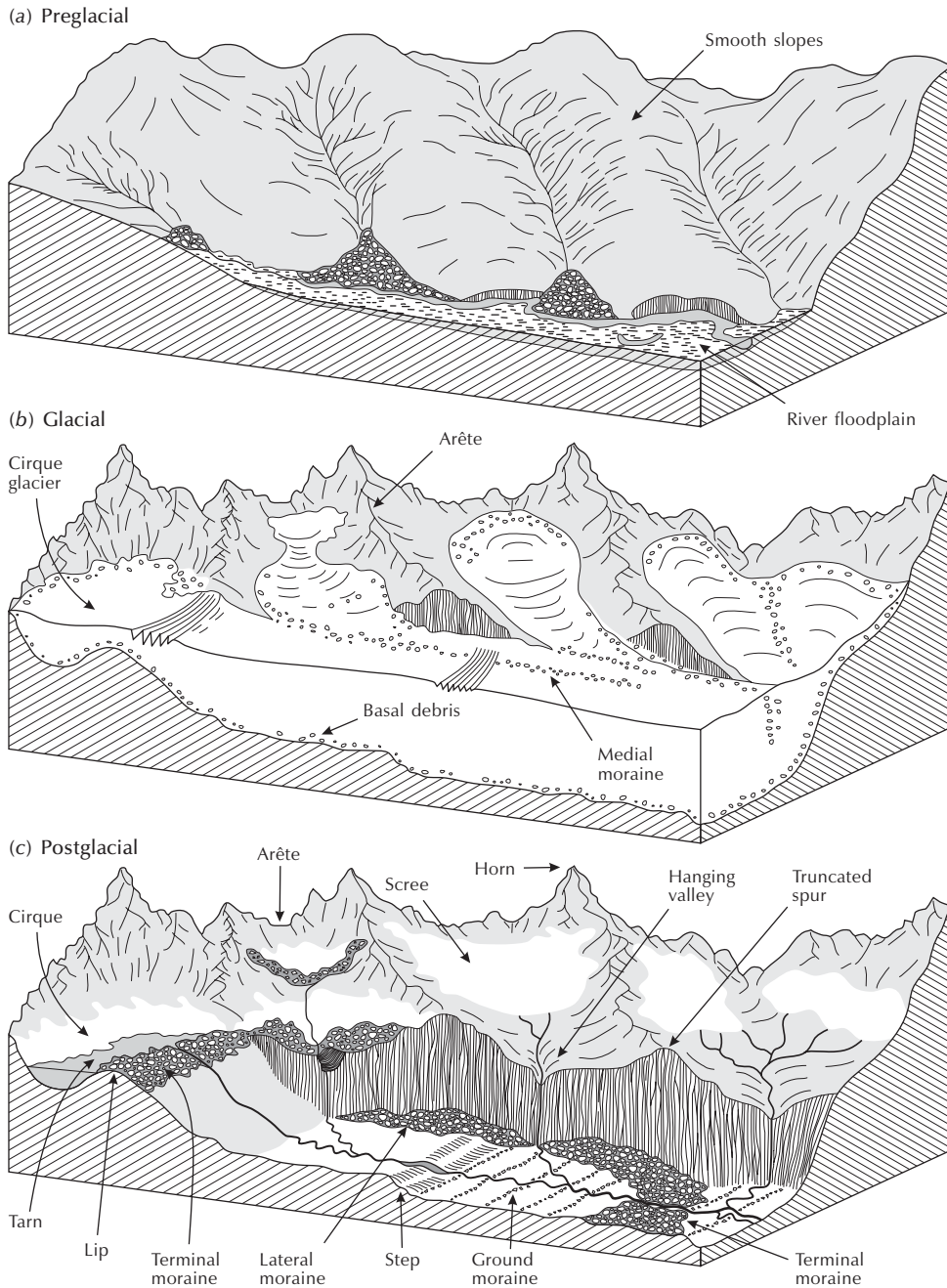


Figure 8.4 The evolution of some alpine glacial landforms. (a) A landscape before an ice age. (b) The same landscape during an ice age, and (c) after an ice age.

Source: After Trenhaile (1998, 128)

**Box 8.2****CIRQUES**

Cirques usually start as depressions excavated by streams, or as any hollow in which snow collects and accumulates (**nivation hollow**). Snow tends to accumulate on the leeward side of mountains, so cirques in the Northern Hemisphere tend to face north and east. Cirques are inclined to be poorly developed and slope outwards in the steep terrain of alpine regions. In less precipitous terrain, as in the English Lake District, they often have rock basins, possibly with a moraine at the **lip**, that frequently hold lakes (**tarns**). Despite their variable form and size, the ratio of length to height (from the lip of a mature cirque to the top of the **headwall**) is surprisingly constant, and lies within the range 2.8:1 to 3.2:1 (Manley 1959). The largest known cirque is Walcott Cirque, Victoria

Land, Antarctic, which is 16 km wide and 3 km high. Some cirques have a composite character. Many British mountains have **cirques-within-cirques**. In Coire Bà, one of the largest cirques in Britain, which lies on the east face of Black Mount, Scotland, several small cirques are cut into the headwall of the main cirque. Cirque staircases occur. In Snowdon, Wales, Cwm Llydaw is an over-deepened basin with a tarn and sheer headwall. The headwall is breached part-way up by Cwm Glaslyn, a smaller cirque, which also holds a tarn. And above Cwm Glaslyn lies an incipient cirque just below the summit of Y Wyddfa. It is unclear whether such staircases represent the influence of different snowlines or the exploitation of several stream-cut hollows or geological sites.



*Plate 8.9* Roche moutonnée, known as Lambert Dome, Yosemite, California, USA.

*(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

variety of forms and include lunate fractures, crescentic gouges, crescentic fractures, and chattermarks. **Lunate features** are fractures shaped like crescents with the concavity facing the direction of ice flow. **Crescentic gouges** are crescent-shaped gouges, but unlike lunate features, they face away from the direction of ice flow. Crescentic fractures are similar to crescentic gouges but are fractures rather than gouges. **Chattermarks** are also crescent-shaped. They are friction marks on bedrock formed as moving ice judders and are comparable to the rib-like markings sometimes left on wood and metal by cutting tools (Plate 8.10).

## Residual landforms

### Arêtes, cols, and horns

In glaciated mountains, abrasion, fracturing by ice, frost-shattering, and mass movements erode the mountain mass and in doing so sculpt a set of related landforms: arêtes, cols, and horns (Figure 8.4). These landforms tend to survive as relict features long after the ice has melted. **Arêtes** are formed by two adjacent cirques eating away at the intervening ridge until it becomes a knife-edge, serrated ridge.

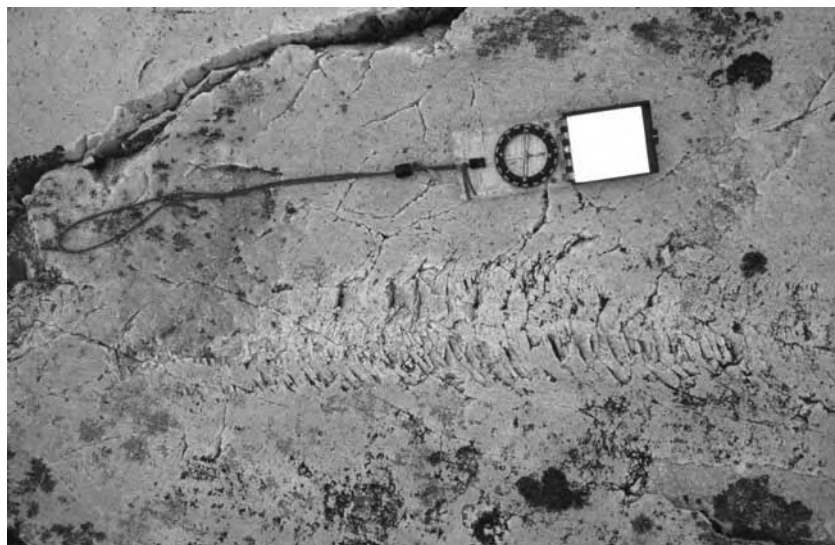
Frost shattering helps to give the ridge its serrated appearance, upstanding pinnacles on which are called **gendarmes** ('policemen'). The ridges, or arêtes, are sometimes breached in places by **cols**. If three or more cirques eat into a mountain mass from different sides, a **pyramidal peak** or **horn** may eventually form. The classic example is the Matterhorn on the Swiss–Italian border.

### Nunataks

**Nunataks** are rock outcrops, ranging from less than a kilometre to hundreds of kilometres in size, that are surrounded by ice. They include parts of mountains where ice has not formed, or entire mountain ranges, including the Transantarctic Mountains on Antarctica, that have escaped ice formation everywhere but their flanks.

## DEPOSITIONAL GLACIAL LANDFORMS

Debris carried by ice is eventually dumped to produce an array of landforms (Table 8.2). It is expedient to group these landforms primarily



*Plate 8.10* Chattermarks on Cambrian quartzite, An Teallach, north-west Highlands, Scotland. (Photograph by Mike Hambrey)

Table 8.2 Landforms created by glacial deposition

<i>Orientation with ice flow</i>	<i>Landform</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Supraglacial (still accumulating)</i>		
Parallel	Lateral moraine	A moraine, often with an ice core, formed along the side of a valley glacier
	Medial moraine	A moraine formed by the coalescence of two lateral moraines at a spur between two valley glaciers
Transverse	Shear or thrust moraine	Ridges of debris from the base of a glacier brought to the surface by longitudinal compression
	Rockfall	Rockslides from the valley-side slopes deposit lobes of angular debris across a glacier
Non-orientated	Dirt cone	Cones of debris derived from pools in supraglacial streams
	Erratic	A large, isolated angular block of rock carried by a glacier and deposited far from its source
	Crevasse fill	Debris washed into an originally clean crevasse by surface meltwater streams
<i>Supraglacial during deposition</i>		
Parallel	Lateral moraine	A moraine, often with an ice core, formed along the side of a valley glacier (in part subglacial)
	Moraine dump	A blanket of debris near the glacier snout where several medial moraines merge
Non-orientated	Hummocky (or dead ice/disintegration) moraine	A seemingly random assemblage of hummocks, knobs, and ridges (composed of till and ill-sorted clastic sediments) that contains kettles, depressions, and basins
	Erratic	A large rock fragment (clast) transported by ice action and of different composition from the local rocks
<i>Subglacial during deposition</i>		
Parallel	Drumlin	An elongated hill with an oval, egg-shaped, or cigar-shaped outline
	Drumlinoid ridge (drumlinized ground moraine)	Elongated, cigar-shaped ridges, and spindle forms. Formed under ice in conditions unsuited to individual drumlin formation
	Fluted moraine (flute)	Large furrows, up to about 2 m in wavelength, resembling a ploughed field. Found on fresh lodgement till (till laid in ground moraine under the ice) surfaces and, occasionally, glaciofluvial sand and gravel
Transverse	Crag-and-tail ridge	A tail of glacial sediments in the lee of a rock obstruction
	De Geer (washboard) moraine	A series of small, roughly parallel ridges of till lying across the direction of ice advance. Often associated with lakes or former lakes
	Rogen (ribbed, cross-valley) moraine	A crescentic landform composed chiefly of till, orientated with its long axis normal to ice flow and its horns pointing in the down-ice direction
Non-orientated	Ground moraine:	A blanket of mixed glacial sediments (primarily tills and other diamictons), characteristically of low relief



Table 8.2 (continued)

<i>Orientation with ice flow</i>	<i>Landform</i>	<i>Description</i>
	Till plain	Almost flat, slightly rolling, gently sloping plains comprising a thick blanket of till
	Gentle hill	A mound of till resting on an isolated block of bedrock
	Hummocky ground moraine	(See hummocky moraine above)
	Cover moraine	A thin and patchy layer of till that reveals the bedrock topography in part (a blanket) or in full (a veneer)
<i>Ice marginal during deposition</i>		
Transverse	End moraines:	Any moraine formed at a glacier snout or margin
	Terminal moraine	An arcuate end moraine forming around the lobe of a glacier at its peak extent
	Recessional moraine	An end moraine marking a time of temporary halt to glacial retreat and not currently abutting a glacier
	Push moraine	An end moraine formed by sediment being bulldozed by a glacier snout. Some push moraines show annual cycles of formation and comprise a set of small, closely spaced ridges
Non-orientated	Hummocky moraine	(See hummocky moraine above)
	Rockfall, slump, debris flow	Discrete landforms produce by each type of mass movement

Source: Mainly adapted from Hambrey (1994)

according to their position in relation to the ice (supraglacial, subglacial, and marginal) and secondarily according to their orientation with respect to the direction of ice flow (parallel, transverse, and non-orientated).

### Supraglacial landforms

Debris on a glacier surface lasts only as long as the glacier, but it produces eye-catching features in current glacial environments. **Lateral moraines** and **medial moraines** lie parallel to the glacier. **Shear** or **thrust moraines**, produced by longitudinal compression forcing debris to the surface, and rockfalls, which spread debris across a glacier, lie transversely on the glacier surface. **Dirt cones**, **erratics** (Plate 8.3), and **crevasse fills** have no particular orientation with respect to the ice movement.

Many features of supraglacial origin survive in the landscape once the ice has gone. The chief such forms are lateral moraines and moraine dumps, both of which lie parallel to the ice flow, and hummocky moraines and erratics, which have no particular orientation. Lateral moraines are impressive landforms. They form from frost-shattered debris falling from cliffs above the glacier and from debris trapped between the glacier and the valley sides (Figure 8.4c). Once the ice has gone, lateral moraines collapse. But even in Britain, where glaciers disappeared 10,000 years ago, traces of lateral moraines are still visible as small steps on mountainsides (Plate 8.11). Moraine dumps rarely survive glacial recession.

**Hummocky moraines**, also called **dead-ice moraines** or **disintegration moraines**, are seemingly random assemblage of hummocks, knobs, and ridges of till and other poorly sorted clastic sediments, dotted with kettles, depressions, and



*Plate 8.11* Line of angular boulders marking remnants of a lateral moraine in Coire Riabhach, Isle of Skye, Scotland. The Cuillin Ridge – an arête – may be seen in the background. The peak in the right background is Sgurr nan Gillean – a horn.

*(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

basins frequently containing lacustrine sediment. Most researchers regard the majority of hummocky moraines as the products of supraglacial deposition, although some landforms suggest subglacial origins.

Far-travelled **erratics** are useful in tracing ice movements.

### Subglacial landforms

A wealth of landforms is produced beneath a glacier. It is convenient to class them according to their orientation with respect to the direction of ice movement (parallel, transverse, and non-orientated).

Forms lying parallel to ice flow are drumlins, drumlinized ridges, flutes, and crag-and-tail ridges. **Drumlins** are elongated hills, some 2–50 m high and 10–20,000 m long, with an oval, an egg-shaped, or a cigar-shaped outline. They are composed of sediment, sometimes with a rock core, and usually occur as **drumlin fields**, giving rise to the so-called ‘**basket of eggs**’ topography on account of their likeness to birds’ eggs. They are perhaps the most characteristic features of landscapes created by glacial deposition. The origin of drumlins is debatable and at least three hypotheses exist (Menziés 1989). First, they may be material previously deposited beneath a glacier that is moulded by subglacial meltwater. Second, they may be the result of textural differences

in subglacial debris. Third, they may result from active basal meltwater carving cavities beneath an ice mass and afterwards filling in space with a range of stratified sediments. Some large drumlin fields, the form of which is redolent of bedforms created by turbulent airflow and turbulent water flow, may have been formed by catastrophic meltwater floods underneath Pleistocene ice sheets (Shaw *et al.* 1989; Shaw 1994).

De Geer and Rogen moraines lie transversely to the direction of ice flow. **De Geer moraines** or **washboard moraines** are series of small and roughly parallel ridges of till that are ordinarily associated with lakes or former lakes. **Rogen moraines**, also called **ribbed moraines** and **cross-valley moraines**, are crescent-shaped landforms composed largely of till that are formed by subglacial thrusting. They grade into drumlins.

Various types of **ground moraine** display no particular orientation with respect to ice flow. A ground moraine is a blanket of mixed glacial sediments – mainly tills and other diamictons – formed beneath a glacier. Typically, ground moraines have low relief. Four kinds of ground moraine are recognized: till plain, gentle hill, hummocky ground moraine, and cover moraine. Till plains are the thickest and cover moraine the thinnest.



### Ice-margin landforms

Landforms produced at the ice margin include different types of end moraine, all of which form around a glacier snout. A **terminal moraine** is an arcuate end moraine that forms around the lobe of a glacier at its farthest limit. A **recessional moraine** marks a time of temporary halt to glacial retreat and is not currently touching a glacier. A **push moraine** is formed by sediment being bulldozed by a glacier snout, especially a cold glacier. Some push moraines show annual cycles of formation and comprise a set of small, closely spaced ridges.

Other ice-marginal landforms, which have no preferred orientation with respect to ice flow, are hummocky moraine and various forms resulting from mass movements (rockfalls, slumps, and debris flows). **Hummocky moraine** formed near the ice margin is similar to hummocky moraine produced elsewhere, but it includes irregular heaps of debris that fall from an ice mass in the ice-marginal zone and debris from dead ice that becomes detached from the main ice mass.

### GLACIOFLUVIAL LANDFORMS

Huge quantities of sediment are shifted by **meltwater**. Indeed, more sediment may leave a glacial system in meltwater than in ice. Sediment-charged meltwater under a glacier is a potent erosive agent, especially towards the glacier snout. After leaving a glacier, meltwater may erode sediments, as well as laying down debris to create ice-marginal and proglacial depositional landforms (Table 8.3).

### Subglacial landforms

#### Channels

Meltwater under a glacier produces a range of channels cut into bedrock and soft sediments. The largest of these are **tunnel valleys**, such as those in East Anglia, England, which are eroded into chalk and associated bedrock. Where the meltwater is

under pressure, the water may be forced uphill to give a reversed gradient, as in the **Rinnen** of Denmark. Subglacial gorges, which are often several metres wide compared with tens of metres deep, are carved out of solid bedrock.

#### Eskers

**Eskers** are the chief landform created by subglacial meltwater (Figure 8.5; Plate 8.12). Minor forms include sediment-filled Nye channels and moulin kames, which are somewhat fleeting piles of debris at the bottom of a **moulin** (a pothole in a glacier that may extend from the surface to the glacier bed). **Esker** is an Irish word and is now applied to long and winding ridges formed mostly of sand and gravel and laid down in a meltwater tunnel underneath a glacier. Some eskers form at ice margins, and are not to be confused with kames and kame terraces (see below), which are ice-contact deposits at the ice margin. In the past, confusion has beset the use of these terms, but the terminology was clarified in the 1970s (see Price 1973 and Embleton and King 1975). Eskers can run uphill and sometimes they split or are beaded. They may run for a few hundred kilometres and be 700 m wide and 50 m high, although they are typically an order of magnitude smaller.

### Ice-margin landforms

#### Meltwater and overflow channels

Erosion by meltwater coursing alongside ice margins produces meltwater channels and overflow channels. **Meltwater channels** tend to run along the side of glaciers, particularly cold glaciers. They may be in contact with the ice or they may lie between an ice-cored lateral moraine and the valley side. After the ice has retreated, they can often be traced across a hillside.

**Overflow channels** are cut by streams at the ice margin overtopping low cols lying at or below the same level as the ice. Lakes may form before the overflow occurs. Until the mechanisms of subglacial drainage were understood, channels found in

Table 8.3 Glaciofluvial landforms

<i>Formative process</i>	<i>Landform</i>	<i>Description</i>
<i>Subglacial</i>		
Erosion by subglacial water	Tunnel valley ( <i>Rinnen</i> )	A large, subglacial meltwater channel eroded into soft sediment or bedrock
	Subglacial gorge	Deep channel eroded in bedrock
	Nye (bedrock) channel	Meltwater channel cut into bedrock under high pressure
	Channel in loose sediment	Meltwater channel eroded in unconsolidated or other types of glacial deposit
	Glacial meltwater chute	Channel running down a steep rock slope marginal to a glacier
Deposition in subglacial channels, etc.	Glacial meltwater pothole	Circular cavity bored into bedrock by meltwater
	<i>Sichelwannen</i> ('sickle-shape troughs')	Crescentic depressions and scallop-like features on bedrock surfaces caused largely by meltwater, with cavitation being a key process
Deposition in subglacial channels, etc.	Esker	Lengthy, winding ridge or series of mounds, composed mainly of stratified or semi-stratified sand and gravel
	Nye channel fill	Debris plugging a Nye channel
	Moulin kame	Mound of debris accumulated at the bottom of a moulin
<i>Ice marginal (ice contact)</i>		
Ice-marginal stream erosion	Meltwater (or hillside) channel	Meltwater channel tending to run along the side of a cold glacier
	Overflow channel	Meltwater channel cut by marginal stream overtopping low cols at or below the ice-surface level
Ice-contact deposition from meltwater or in lakes or both	Kame	Flat-topped deposit of stratified debris
	Kame field	Large area covered with many individual kames
	Kame plateau	Broad area of ice-contact sediments deposited next to a glacier but not yet dissected
	Kame terrace	Kame deposited by a stream flowing between the flank of a glacier and the valley wall, left stranded on the hillside after the ice goes
	Kame delta (delta moraine)	Flat-topped, fan-shaped mound formed by meltwater coming from a glacier snout or flank and discharging into a lake or the sea
	Crevasse fill	Stratified debris carried into crevasses by supraglacial meltwater
<i>Proglacial</i>		
Meltwater erosion	Scabland topography, coulee, spillway	Meltwater features in front of a glacier snout. Water collected in ice-marginal or proglacial lakes may overflow through spillways
Meltwater deposition	Outwash plain or sandur (plural sandar)	Plain formed of material derived wholly or partially from glacial debris transported or reworked by meltwater and other streams. Most sandar are composed wholly of outwash, but some contain inwash as well
	Valley train	Collection of coarse river sediment and braided rivers occupying the full width of a valley with mountains rising steep on either side
	Braided outwash fan	Debris fan formed where rivers, constrained by valleys, disemboque onto lowlands beyond a mountain range
	Kettle (kettle hole, pond)	Bowl-shaped depression in glacial sediment left when a detached or buried block of ice melts. Often contains a pond
	Pitted plain	Outwash plain pitted with numerous kettle holes

Source: Adapted from Hambrey (1994)

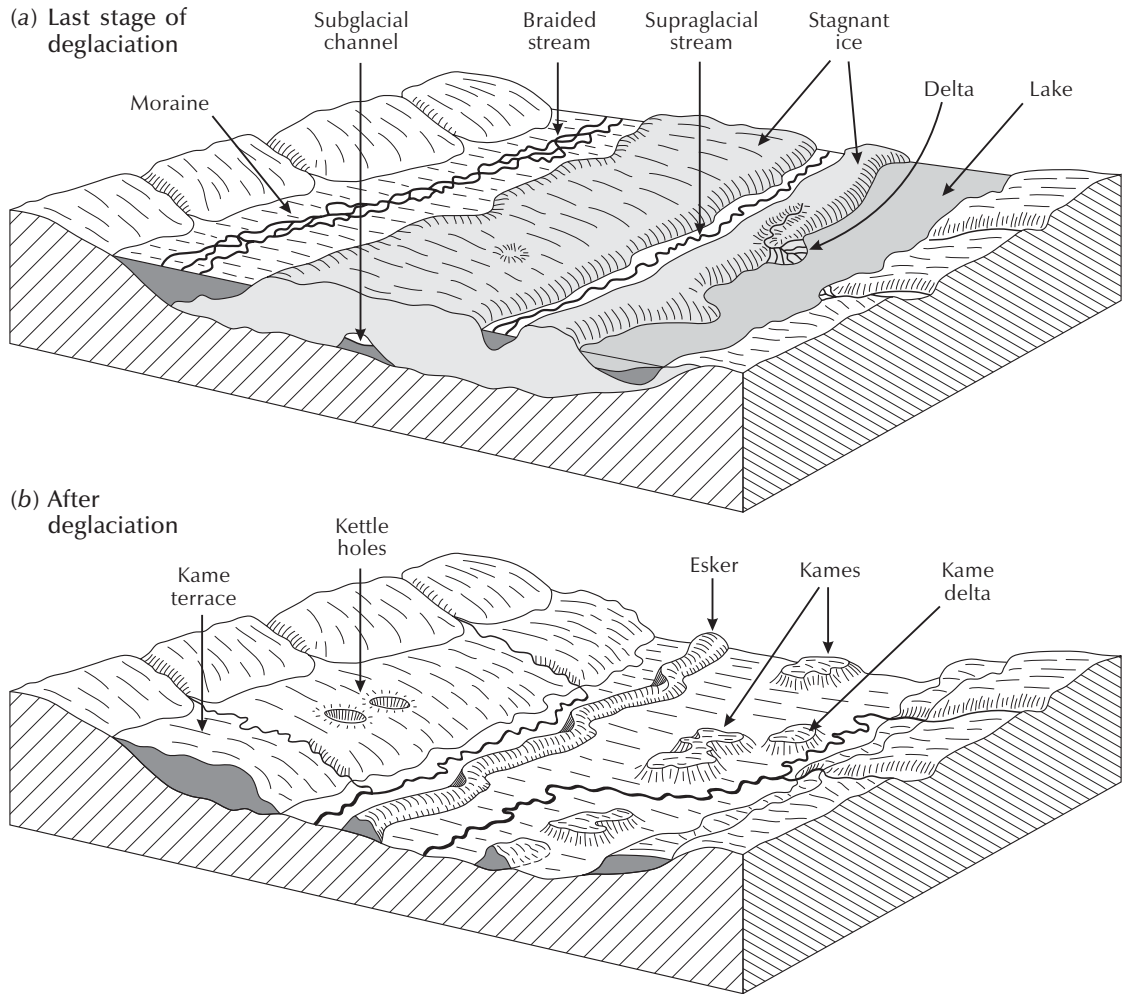


Figure 8.5 Subglacial and ice-margin landforms. (a) A landscape at the final stage of deglaciation. (b) A landscape after deglaciation.

Source: Adapted from Flint (1971, 209)

formerly glaciated temperate regions were ascribed to meltwater overflow, but many of these channels are now known to have been wrought by subglacial erosion.

### Kames

The main depositional landforms associated with ice margins are **kames** of various kinds (Figure 8.5).

Crevasse-fillings, which comprise stratified debris that entered crevasses through supraglacial streams, are minor landforms. Kames are commonly found with eskers. They are flat-topped and occur as isolated hummocks, as broader plateau areas, or, usually in proglacial settings, broken terraces. Individual kames range from a few hundred metres to over a kilometre long, and a few tens of metres to over a hundred metres wide. They have no preferred



*Plate 8.12* Esker made up of slightly deformed stratified sands and gravels near the ice margin of Comfortlessbreen, Svalbard.  
(*Photograph by Mike Hambrey*)

orientation with respect to the direction of ice flow. If many individual kames cover a large area, the term 'kame field' is at times applied.

**Kame terraces** develop parallel to the ice-flow direction from streams flowing along the sides of a stable or slowly receding ice margin. They are formed of similar material to kames and slope downvalley in accordance with the former ice level and often slope up the adjacent hillside.

**Kame deltas or delta moraines** are related to kames but are usually much bigger. They are flat-topped, fan-shaped mounds formed by meltwater coming from a glacier snout or flank and running into a proglacial lake or the sea. They lie at right-angles to the direction of ice flow and contain debris from the ice itself, as well as glaciofluvial debris. The three Salpausselkä moraines, Finland, are probably the biggest delta-moraine complexes in the world. They are associated with a lake that was impounded by the Fennoscandian ice sheet, which covered the southern Baltic Sea region.

## Proglacial landforms

### Scablands and spillways

Meltwater streams issuing from a glacier are usually charged with sediment and fast-flowing. They deposit the sediment in front of a glacier and streams become clogged, leading to braiding. Lakes are common in this proglacial environment, and tend to fill and overflow through **spillways** during the summer. The impounding sediments are often soft and, once breached, are cut through quickly, lowering the lake level. Although uncommon today, large proglacial lakes were plentiful near the southern limits of the Pleistocene ice sheets and many abandoned spillways are known (Figure 8.6). Where huge glacial lakes broke through their containing dams, the rush of water produced scablands (p. 209).

### Outwash plains, valley trains, and braided outwash fans

Much of the vast quantity of sediment normally carried by meltwaters is laid down in the proglacial environment. Where glaciers end on land, systems

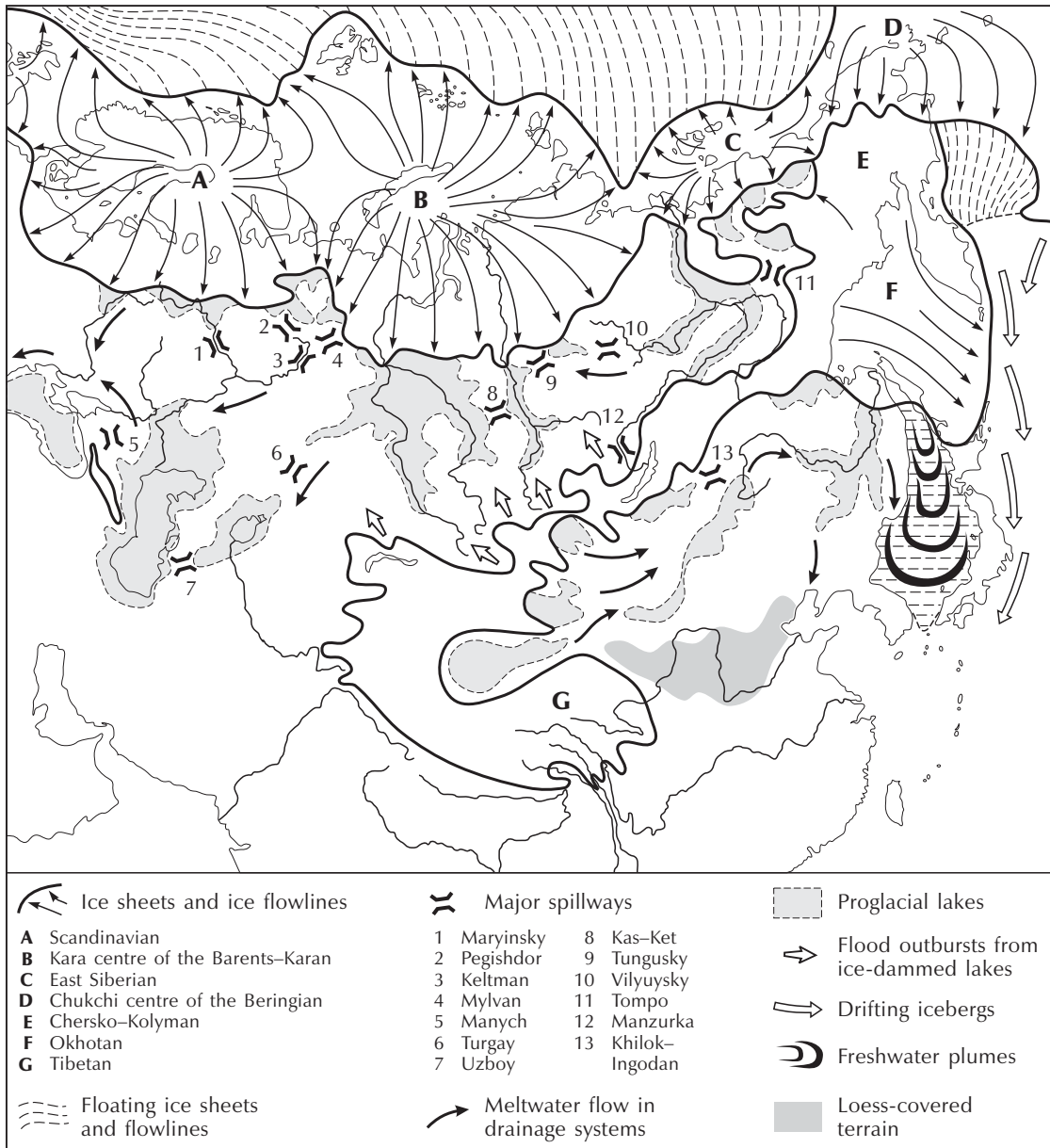


Figure 8.6 Glacial spillways in northern Eurasia.

Source: Adapted from Grosswald (1998)





*Plate 8.13* Braided outwash plain in front of, and to the side of, the snout of the debris – covered Casement Glacier, Glacier Bay, Alaska.

*(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

of braided rivers, called **outwash plains** or **sandar** (singular **sandur**) develop (Plate 8.13). In south-eastern Iceland, outwash plains may be as wide as they are long and full of active braids. When jökulhlaups occur, the entire plain may be flooded. In mountainous terrain, braided river systems may extend across the full width of the valley floor, with mountains rising steeply from either edge. Such elongated and flat systems are called **valley trains**. Good examples come from the Southern Alps, New Zealand. **Braided outwash fans** occur where river systems hemmed in by valleys discharge onto lowlands beyond a mountain range. Many examples are found north of the European Alps.

#### Kettle holes and pitted plains

Many braided-river plains carry water-filled pits. These pits are called **kettles**, **kettle holes**, or **ice pits**. They form as a block of ‘dead’ ice decays and is buried. The ice block may be an ice remnant left stranded when the glacier retreated or a lump of ice washed down a stream during a flood. The water-filled kettles are called **kettle lakes** (Plate 8.14). An outwash plain pocked with many kettle holes is called a **pitted plain**.



*Plate 8.14* Small kettle-hole lake in end-moraine complex of Saskatchewan Glacier (seen in background) in the Canadian Rockies.

*(Photograph by Mike Hambrey)*

## HUMANS AND GLACIAL ENVIRONMENTS

### Human impacts on glacial landscapes

Glacial landscapes are productions of frigid climates. During the Quaternary, the covering of ice in polar regions and on mountain tops waxed and waned in synchrony with swings of climate through glacial–interglacial cycles. Humans can live in glacial and periglacial environments but only at low densities. Direct human impacts on current glacial landscapes are small, even in areas where tourism is popular. Indirect human impacts, which work through the medium of climatic change, are substantial: global warming appears to be melting the world's ice and snow. Over the last 100 years, mean global tempera-

tures have risen by about 0.6°C, about half the rise occurring in the last 25 years. The rise is higher in high latitudes. For example, mean winter temperatures at sites in Alaska and northern Eurasia have risen by 6°C over the last 30 years (Serreze *et al.* 2000), which is why glacial environments are so vulnerable to the current warming trend.

Relict glacial landscapes, left after the last deglaciation some 10,000 years ago, are home to millions of people in Eurasia and North America. The relict landforms are ploughed up to produce crops, dug into for sand and gravel, and covered by concrete and tarmac. Such use of relict landscape raises issues of landscape conservation. The other side of the coin is that a knowledge of Quaternary sediments and their properties can aid human use of relict glacial landscapes (Box 8.3).

### Box 8.3

#### WASTE DISPOSAL SITES IN NORFOLK, ENGLAND

The designing of waste disposal sites in south Norfolk, England, is aided by an understanding of the Quaternary sediments (Gray 1993). Geologically, south Norfolk is a till plain that is dissected in places by shallow river valleys. It contains very few disused gravel pits and quarries that could be used as landfill sites for municipal waste. In May 1991, Norfolk County Council applied for planning permission to create a 1.5-million-cubic-metre above-ground or 'landraise' waste disposal site at a disused US World War II airfield at Hardwick. The proposal was to dig a 2–4-m deep pit in the Lowestoft Till and overfill it to make a low hill standing up to 10 m above the surrounding plain. The problem of leachate leakage from the site was to be addressed by relying on the low permeability of the till and reworking the till around the edges of the site to remove potentially leaky sand lenses in its upper layers. In August 1993, after a public inquiry into

the Hardwick site, planning permission was refused, partly on the grounds that knowledge of the site's geology and land drainage was inadequate and alternative sites were available. Research into the site prompted by the proposal suggested that leachate containment was a real problem and that Norfolk County Council was mistaken in believing that the till would prevent leachates from leaking. It also identified other sites in south Norfolk that would be suitable landfill sites, including the extensive sand and gravel deposits along the margins of the River Yare and its tributaries. Landraising in a till plain is also unwelcome on geomorphological grounds, unless perhaps the resulting hill is screened by woodland. A lesson from this case study is that a knowledge of Quaternary geology is central to the planning and design of landfill sites in areas of glacial sediments.



## SUMMARY

Ice covers about 10 per cent of the land surface, although 18,000 years ago it covered 32 per cent. Most of the ice is in polar regions. Glaciers come in a variety of forms and sizes: inlandis, ice sheets, ice caps, ice shelves, ice shields, cirque glaciers, valley glaciers, and other small glaciers. Glaciers have an accumulation zone, where ice is produced, and an ablation zone, where ice is destroyed. Ice abrades and fractures rock, picks up and carries large and small rock fragments, and deposits entrained material. Glaciers carry rock debris at the glacier base (subglacial debris), in the ice (englacial debris), and on the glacier surface (supraglacial debris). Meltwater issuing from glacier snouts lays down proglacial sediments. Erosion by ice creates a wealth of landforms by abrasion, by fracture, by crushing, and eroding a mountain mass. Examples include glacially scoured regions, glacial troughs, striated bedrock, trough heads, cirques, flyggbergs, crescentic gouges, horns, and nunataks. Debris laid down by ice produces an equal variety of landforms. Supraglacial deposits form lateral moraines, medial moraines, dirt cones, erratics, and many more features. Subglacial forms include drumlins and crags-and-tails. Terminal moraines, push moraines, hummocky moraines, and other forms occur at ice margins. Meltwater, which issues from glaciers in copious amounts during the spring, cuts valleys and deposits eskers beneath the ice, produces meltwater channels and kames at the edge of the ice, and fashions a variety of landforms ahead of the ice, including spectacular scablands and spillways, outwash plains, and, on a much smaller scale, kettle

holes. Humans interact with glacial landscapes. Their current industrial and domestic activities may, through global warming, shrink the cryosphere and destroy Quaternary landforms. Conversely, a knowledge of Quaternary sediments is indispensable in the judicious use of glacially derived resources (such as sands and gravels) and in the siting of such features as landfill sites.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How does ice flow?**
  - 2 How does ice fashion landforms?**
  - 3 Appraise the evidence for catastrophic glaciofluvial events.**
- 

## FURTHER READING

- Hambrey, M. J. (1994) *Glacial Environments*. London: UCL Press.  
Beautifully illustrated and readable treatise on glacial landforms and processes.
- Martini, I. P., Brookfield, M. E., and Sadura, S. (2001) *Principles of Glacial Geomorphology and Geology*. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.  
Up-to-date, accessible, and non-mathematical treatment that provides a good bridge between fundamental studies and advanced reading.
- Sugden, D. E. and John, B. S. (1976) *Glaciers and Landscape*. London: Edward Arnold.  
A must, even after a quarter of a century.

## PERIGLACIAL LANDSCAPES

---

Frozen ground without an icy cover bears an assortment of odd landforms. This chapter covers:

- ice in frosty landscapes
- frost, snows, water, and wind action
- pingos, palsas, and other periglacial landforms
- humans in periglacial environments

A window on the periglacial world

In 1928, the airship Graf Zeppelin flew over the Arctic to reveal:

the truly bizarre landscape of the polar world. In some areas there were flat plains stretching from horizon to horizon that were dotted with innumerable and inexplicable lakes. In other regions, linear gashes up to a mile or more long intersected to form giant polygonal networks. This bird's-eye view confirmed what were then only incidental surface impressions that unglaciated polar environments were very unusual.

(Butzer 1976, 336)

---

### PERIGLACIAL ENVIRONMENTS

The term 'periglacial' was first used by Polish geomorphologist Walery von Lozinski in 1909 to describe frost weathering conditions in the Carpathian Mountains of Central Europe. In 1910, the idea of a 'periglacial zone' was established at the Eleventh Geological Congress in Stockholm to describe climatic and geomorphic conditions in

areas peripheral to Pleistocene ice sheets and glaciers. This periglacial zone covered tundra regions, extending as far south as the latitudinal tree-line. In modern usage, periglacial refers to a wider range of cold but non-glacial conditions, regardless of their proximity to a glacier. It includes regions at high latitudes and below the altitudinal and latitudinal tree-lines: polar deserts and semi-deserts, the High Arctic and ice-free areas of

Antarctica, tundra zones, boreal forest zones, and high alpine periglacial zones, which extend in mid-latitudes and even low latitudes. The largest alpine periglacial zone is the Qinghai–Xizang (Tibet) Plateau of China.

Periglacial environments characteristically experience intense frosts during winter months and snow-free ground during summer months. Four distinct climates produce such conditions – polar lowlands, subpolar lowlands, mid-latitude lowlands, and highlands (Washburn 1979, 7–8):

- 1 **Polar lowland climates** have a mean temperature of the coldest month less than 3°C. They are associated with zones occupied by ice caps, bare rock surfaces, and tundra vegetation.
- 2 **Subpolar lowland climates** also have a mean temperature of the coldest month less than 3°C, but the temperature of the warmest month exceeds 10°C. In the Northern Hemisphere, the 10°C isotherm for the warmest month sits roughly at the latitudinal tree-line and subpolar lowland climates are associated with the northern boreal forests.
- 3 **Mid-latitude lowland climates** have a mean temperature of the coldest month less than 3°C, but the mean temperature is more than 10°C for at least four months of the year.
- 4 **Highland climates** are cold owing to high elevation. They vary considerably over short distances due to aspect. Daily temperature changes tend to be great.

## Permafrost

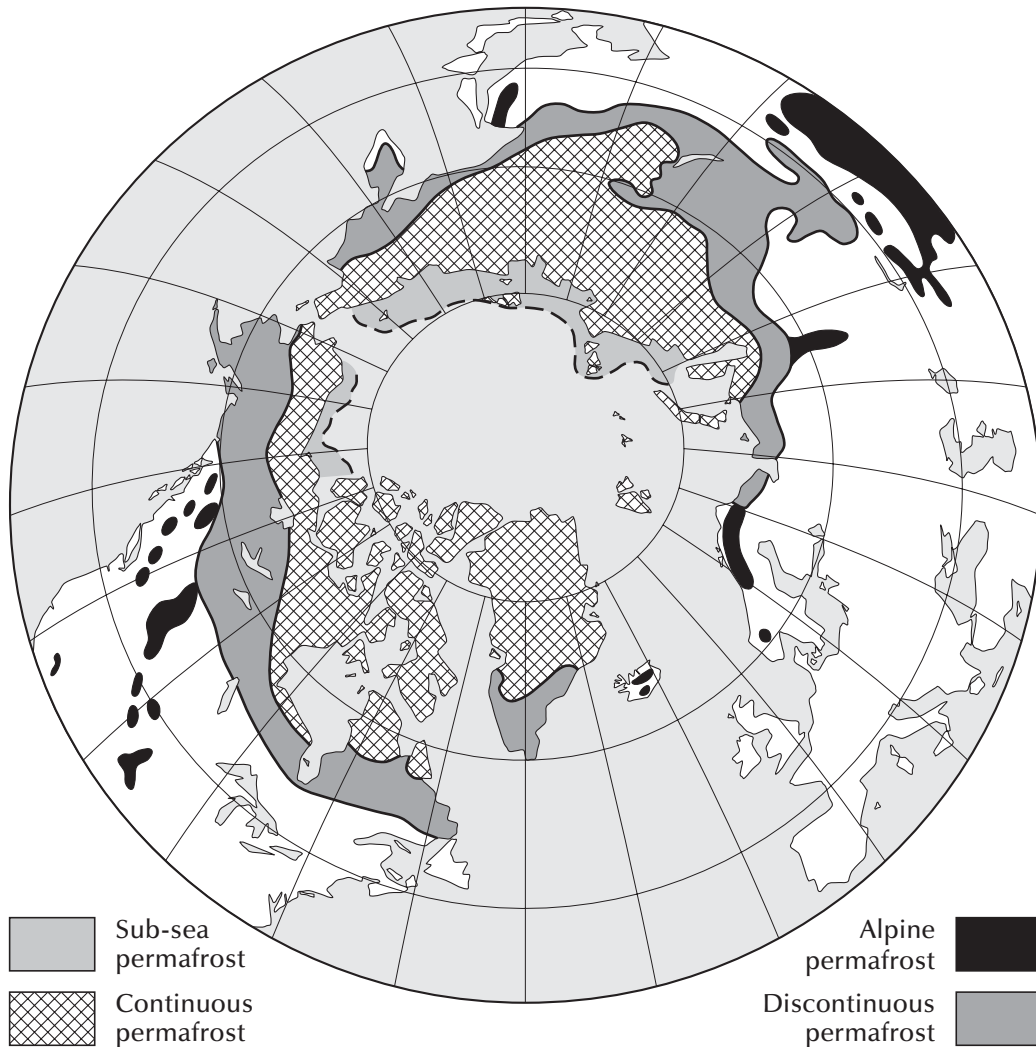
Some 25 per cent of the Earth's land surface is currently underlain by continuous and discontinuous zones of permanently frozen ground, which is known as **permafrost**. Permafrost may be defined as soil or rock that remains frozen for two or more consecutive years. It is not the same as frozen ground, as depressed freezing points allow some materials to stay unfrozen below 0°C and considerable amounts of liquid water may exist in frozen ground. Permafrost underlies large areas of the

Northern Hemisphere Arctic and subarctic. It ranges from thin layers that have stayed frozen between two successive winters to frozen ground hundreds of metres thick and thousands of years old. It develops where the depth of winter freezing is greater than the depth of summer thawing, so creating a zone of permanently frozen ground. **Continuous** and **discontinuous permafrost zones** are recognized (Figure 9.1). Both types are topped by a **suprapermafrost layer**, which is the ground that lies above the **permafrost table**. The suprapermafrost layer consists of an active layer and an unfrozen layer or talik. The **active layer** is that part of the suprapermafrost that melts during the day (in temperate and tropical regions) or during the spring thaw (in high latitudes) (Figure 9.2). The depth of the active layer varies from about 10 cm to 15 m. In the continuous permafrost zone, the active layer usually sits directly upon the **permafrost table**. In the discontinuous permafrost zone, the active layer may not reach the permafrost table and the permafrost itself consists of patches of ice. Lying within, below, or sometimes above the permafrost are **taliks**, which are unfrozen areas of irregular shapes. In the discontinuous permafrost, chimney-like taliks may puncture the frozen ground. Closed taliks are completely engulfed by frozen ground, while open taliks are connected with the active layer. Open taliks normally occur near lakes and other bodies of standing water, which provide a source of heat. Closed taliks result from lake drainage, past climates, and other reasons.

As well as occurring in Arctic and Antarctic regions (**polar** or **latitudinal permafrost**), permafrost also occurs in the alpine zone (**mountain permafrost**), on some plateaux (**plateau permafrost**), and under some seas (**marine permafrost**) (Figure 9.1).

## Ground ice

**Ground ice** is ice in frozen ground. It has a fundamental influence upon periglacial geomorphology, affecting landform initiation and evolution (Thorn 1992). It comes in a variety of forms (Table 9.1): **soil**



*Figure 9.1* Distribution of permafrost in the Northern Hemisphere. Isolated areas of alpine permafrost, which are not shown, are found in the high mountains of Mexico, Hawaii, Japan, and Europe.

*Source:* Adapted from Péwé (1991)

ice (needle ice, segregated ice, and ice filling pore spaces); **vein ice** (single veins and ice wedges); **intrusive ice** (pingo ice and sheet ice); **extrusive ice**, which is formed subaerially, as on floodplains; **ice from sublimation**, which is formed in cavities by crystallization from water vapour; and **buried**

**ice** (buried icebergs and buried glacier ice) (Embleton and King 1975, 34). Some ground ice lasts for a day, forming under present climatic conditions, some of it for thousands of years, forming under past climates and persisting as a relict feature.

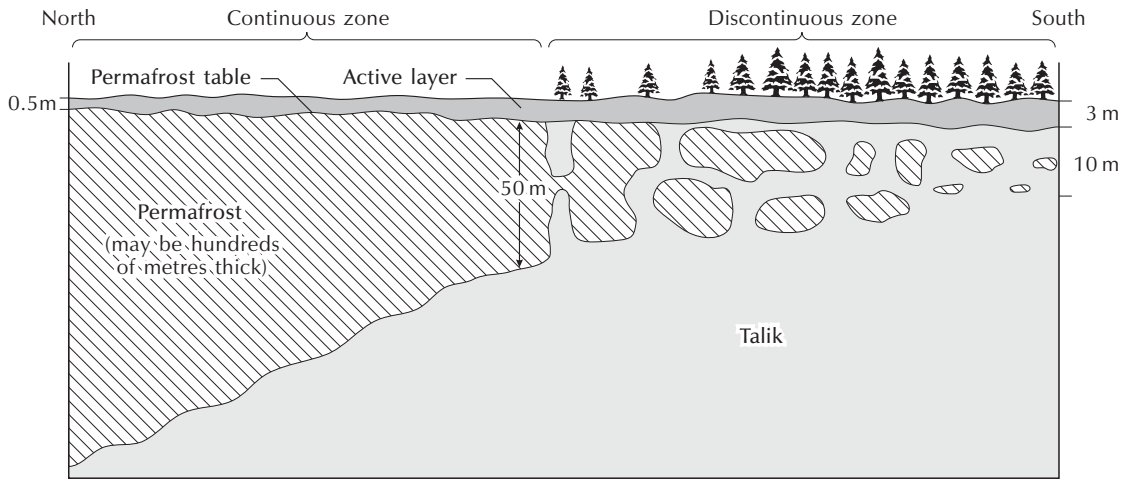


Figure 9.2 Transect across continuous and discontinuous permafrost zones in Canada.  
Source: Adapted from Brown (1970, 8)

Table 9.1 Types of ground ice

Type	Subtype	Formative process
Epigenetic (formed within pre-existing sediments)	Needle ice (pipkrake)	Forms under stones or patches of earth that cool rapidly as air temperatures fall
	Ice wedges	Freezing of water in polygonal cracks
	Pore ice	<i>In situ</i> freezing of subsurface water in voids
	Segregation ice	Migration of water through voids to a freezing surface to form segregation ice layers and lenses
	Intrusive ice	Injection of moisture under pressure into sediments
	Aggradational ice	Upwards migration of the permafrost table, combining many segregated ice lenses, owing to a change in the environment
Syngenetic ice (formed in accumulating sediments)	Buried ice	Burial of snowbanks, stagnant glacial ice, or drift ice by deltaic, alluvial, or other sediments

## PERIGLACIAL PROCESSES

Most geomorphic processes occurring in periglacial zones occur in other climatic zones as well. Fluvial activity in particular is often the dominant process in periglacial landscapes. Some processes, of which those related to the freezing and thawing of water feature prominently, are highly active under peri-

glacial conditions and produce distinctive landforms. Other processes, such as chemical weathering, appear to be subdued under periglacial climates. Chemical weathering would be expected to run at a low rate owing to the low temperatures, the storage of much water as ice for much of the year, and low levels of biological activity. However, studies on comparative rates of chemical and mechanical weathering in

periglacial environments are few. One study from northern Sweden indicated that material released by chemical weathering and removed in solution by streams accounted for about half of the denudational loss of all material (Rapp 1986). Geomorphic processes characteristic of periglacial conditions include frost action, mass movement, nivation, fluvial activity, and aeolian activity.

### Frost action

The freezing of water in rock, soil, and sediment gives rise to several processes – frost shattering, heaving and thrusting, and cracking – that are intense in the periglacial zone. Water in the ground may freeze *in situ* within voids, or it may migrate through the voids (towards areas where temperatures are sub-zero) to form discrete masses of segregated ice. **Segregated ice** is common in sediments dominated by intermediate grain sizes, such as silt. Coarse sediments, such as gravel, are too permeable and very fine-grained sediments, such as clay, too impermeable and have too high a suction potential (the force with which water is held in the soil body) for segregation to occur. Frost action is crucially determined by the occurrence of freeze–thaw cycles at the ground surface. Freeze–thaw cycles are mainly determined by air temperature fluctuations, but they are modulated by the thermal properties of the ground-surface materials, vegetation cover, and snow cover.

### Frost weathering

Frost weathering was covered in Chapter 2. Many periglacial landscapes are carpeted by angular rock debris. These sediments are traditionally thought to be created by frost shattering. However, **frost shattering** requires freeze–thaw cycles and a supply of water. Field investigations, which admittedly are not yet large in number, indicate that such conditions may not be so common as one might imagine. Other processes, such as hydration shattering and salt weathering (in arid and coastal sites) may play a role in rock disintegration. It is also possible that,

especially in lower-latitude glacial environments, the pervasive angular rock debris might be a relict of Pleistocene climates, which were more favourable to frost shattering.

### Frost heaving and thrusting

Ice formation causes **frost heaving**, which is a vertical movement of material, and **frost thrusting**, which is a horizontal movement of material. Heaving and thrusting normally occur together, though heaving is probably predominant because the pressure created by volume expansion of ice acts parallel to the direction of the maximum temperature gradient, which normally lies at right-angles to the ground surface. Surface stones may be lifted when needle ice forms. Needle ice or pipkrake forms from ice crystals that extend upwards to a maximum of about 30 mm (Table 9.1). Frost heaving in the active layer seems to result from three processes: ice-lens growth as downward freezing progresses; ice-lens growth near the bottom of the active layer caused by upward freezing from the permafrost layer; and the progressive freezing of pore water as the active layer cools below freezing point. Frost heaving displaces sediments and appears to occasion the differential vertical movement of sedimentary particles of different sizes. In particular, the upward passage of stones in periglacial environments is a widely observed phenomenon. The mechanisms by which this process arises are debatable. Two groups of hypotheses have emerged: the frost-pull hypotheses and the frost-push hypotheses. In essence, **frost-pull** involves all soil materials rising with ground expansion on freezing, followed by the collapse of fine material on thawing while larger stones are still supported on ice. When the ice eventually melts, the fine materials support the stones. **Frost-push** consists of flowing water tending to collect beneath a stone and on freezing lifting it. On melting, finer particles fall into the void and the stone falls back on top of them. The frost-push mechanism is known to work under laboratory conditions but applies to stones near the surface. The frost-pull mechanism is

in all likelihood the more important under natural circumstances.

### Mass displacement

Frost action may cause local vertical and horizontal movements of material within soils. Such **mass displacement** may arise from cryostatic pressures within pockets of unfrozen soil caught between the permafrost table and the freezing front. However, differential heating resulting from annual freezing and thawing would lead to a similar effect. It is possible that, towards the feet of slopes, positive pore-water pressures would bring about mass displacement to form periglacial **involutions** in the active layer. Periglacial involutions consist of interpenetrating layers of sediment that originally lay flat.

### Frost cracking

At sub-zero temperatures, the ground may crack by thermal contraction, a process called **frost cracking**. The polygonal fracture patterns so prevalent in periglacial environments largely result from this mechanism, though similar systems of cracks are made by drying out (**desiccation cracking**) and by differential heaving (**dilation cracking**).

### Frost creep and gelifluction

Most kinds of mass movement occur in periglacial environments, but **frost creep** and **solifluction** are of paramount significance (pp. 46–7). **Solifluction** commonly occurs in conjunction with permafrost or seasonally frozen ground, when it is usually referred to as gelifluction. It frequently operates with frost creep and it is hard to distinguish the action of the two processes. **Gelifluction** is an important process in periglacial environments, especially on silty soils, owing to the common saturation of the soil that results from the restricted drainage associated with a permafrost layer or seasonally frozen water table, and owing to moisture delivered by the thawing of snow and ice.

### Nivation

This process is associated with **snow patches**. It is a local denudation brought about by the combined effects of frost action, gelifluction, frost creep, and meltwater flow. It is most vigorous in subarctic and alpine environments, where it leads to the forming of nivation hollows as snow patches eat into hillsides. Snow patches often start in a small existing depression. Once a **nivation hollow** is initiated under a snow patch, its size increases and it tends to collect more snow each year and is an example of positive feedback (cf. Box 8.2).

### Fluvial action

Fluvial activity was once considered to be a relatively inconsequential process in periglacial environments due to the long period of freezing, during which running water is unavailable, and to the low annual precipitation. However, periglacial landscapes look similar to fluvial landscapes elsewhere and the role of fluvial activity in their creation has been re-evaluated. To be sure, river regimes are highly seasonal with high discharges being sustained by the spring thaw. This high spring discharge makes fluvial action in periglacial climates a more potent force than the low precipitation levels might suggest, and even small streams are capable of conveying coarse debris and high sediment loads. In Arctic Canada, the River Mechan is fed by an annual precipitation of 135 mm, half of which falls as snow. Some 80–90 per cent of its annual flow occurs in a 10-day period, during which peak velocities reach up to 4 m/s and the whole river bed may be in motion.

### Aeolian action

Dry periglacial environments are prone to wind erosion. This is witnessed by currently arid parts of the periglacial environments and by areas marginal to the Northern Hemisphere ice sheets during the Pleistocene epoch. Strong winds, freeze-dried sediments, low precipitation, low temperatures, and scant vegetation cover promote much aeolian



activity. Erosional forms include faceted and grooved bedrock surfaces, deflation hollows in unconsolidated sediments, and ventifacts (p. 262). Wind is also responsible for loess accumulation (p. 271).

## PERIGLACIAL LANDFORMS

Many periglacial landforms originate from the presence of ice in the soil. The chief such landforms are ice and sand wedges, frost mounds of sundry kinds, thermokarst and oriented lakes, patterned ground, periglacial slopes, and cryoplanation terraces and cryopediments.

### Ice and sand wedges

Ice wedges are V-shaped masses of ground ice that penetrate the active layer and run down in the permafrost (Figure 9.3). In North America, they are typically 2–3 m wide, 3–4 m deep, and formed in pre-existing sediments. Some in the Siberian lowlands are more than 5 m wide, 40–50 m long, and formed in aggrading alluvial deposits. In North America, active ice wedges are associated with

continuous permafrost; relict wedges are found in the discontinuous permafrost zone. **Sand wedges** are formed where thawing and erosion of an ice wedge produces an empty trough, which becomes filled with loess or sand.

### Frost mounds

The expansion of water during freezing, plus hydrostatic or hydraulic water pressures (or both), creates a host of multifarious landforms collectively called 'frost mounds' (see French 1996, 101–8). **Hydrolaccoliths** or **cryolaccoliths** are frost mounds with ice cores that resemble a laccolith in cross-section (p. 83). The chief long-lived mounds are pingos, palsas, and peat plateaux, while short-lived mounds include frost blisters and icing mounds and icing blisters.

### Pingos

**Pingos** are large, perennial, conical, ice-cored mounds that are common in some low-lying permafrost areas dominated by fine-grained sediments (Box 9.1). Their name is the Inuit word for a hill.

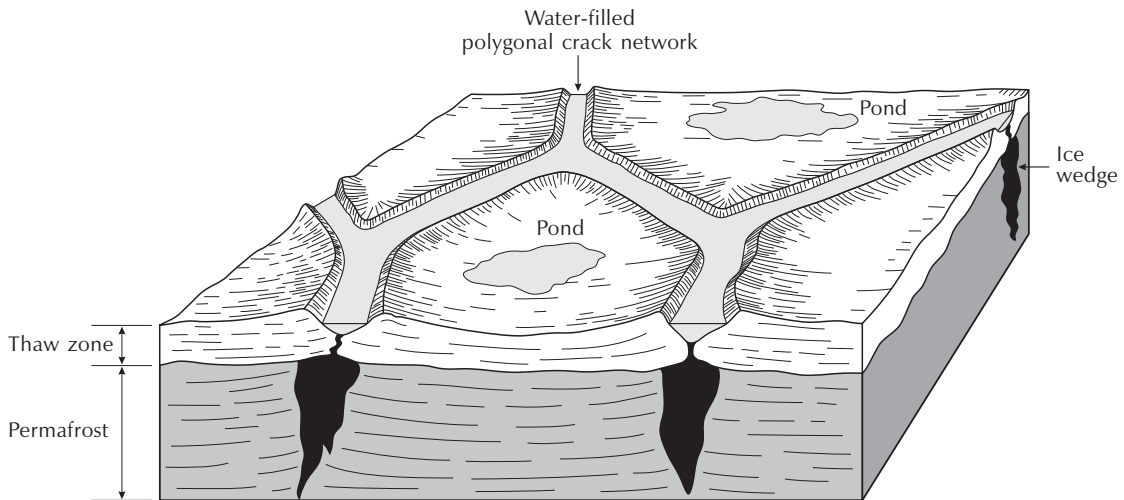


Figure 9.3 Ice wedges, ice-wedge polygons, and raised rims.

Source: After Butzer (1976, 342)

**Box 9.1****PINGOS**

Pingos are approximately circular to elliptical in plan (Colour Plate 13, inserted between pp. 210–11). They stand 3 to 70 m high and are 30 to 7,500 m in diameter. The summit commonly bears dilation cracks, caused by the continuing growth of the ice core. Where these cracks open far enough, they may expose the ice core, causing it to thaw. This process creates a collapsed pingo, consisting of a nearly circular depression with a raised rim. Young pingos may grow vertically around 20 cm a year, but older pingos grow far less rapidly, taking thousands of years to evolve. The growth of the ice at the heart of a pingo appears to result from pressure exerted by water being forced upwards. Water may be forced upwards in at least two ways, depending on the absence (closed-system pingos) or presence (open-system pingos) of a continuing source of unfrozen water after the formation of the initial core. First, in **closed-system pingos**, a lake may be in-filled by sediment and vegetation, so reducing the insulation of the underlying, unfrozen

ground (Figure 9.4a). Freezing of the lake surface will then cause permafrost to encroach from the lake margins, so trapping a body of water. When the entrapped water freezes, it expands and causes the overlying sediments and vegetation to dome. The same process would occur when a river is diverted or a lake drained. This mechanism for the origin of cryostatic pressure is supported by pingos in the Mackenzie delta region, Northwest Territories, in Arctic Canada, where 98 per cent of 1,380 pingos recorded lie in, or near to, lake basins. A second plausible mechanism for forcing water upwards arises in **open-system pingos** (Figure 9.4b). Groundwater flowing under hydrostatic pressure may freeze as it forces its way towards the surface from below a thin permafrost layer. However, unconfined groundwater is unlikely to generate enough hydrostatic force to raise a pingo, and the open-system mechanisms may occur under temporary closed-system conditions as open taliks are frozen in winter.

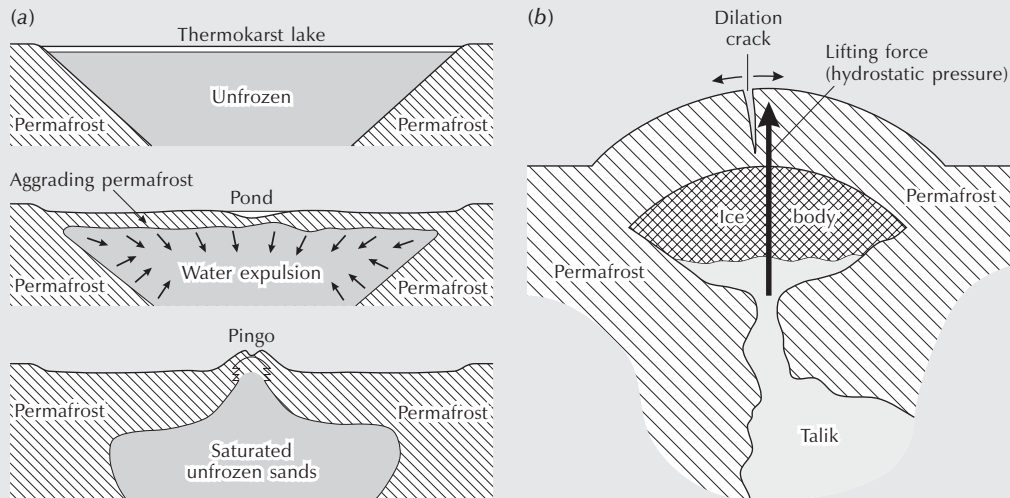


Figure 9.4 Pingo formation. (a) Closed-system pingo produced after the in-filling of a lake. (b) Open-system pingo. Sources: (a) Adapted from Washburn (1979, 183); (b) Adapted from Müller (1968, 846)

Relict or inactive pingos are known from central Alaska, the Alaskan coastal plain, and the floor of the Beaufort Sea, in the Canadian Arctic. Active pingos are found in central Alaska and coastal Greenland, and the north of Siberia, particularly in deltas, estuaries, and alluvial areas.

### Bugors

Bugors and bugor-like forms are small and short-lived mounds that occur in the active layer. In Siberia, Russia, **bugors** (the Russian word for knolls) are gently rising, oval mounds or hydrolaccoliths that occur in scattered groups. They are 5 to 10 m high, 50 to 80 m wide, and 100 to 5,000 m long. Similar, though slightly smaller, hydrolaccoliths occur in the North American Arctic. These bugor-like forms are seldom higher than 2 m and between 15 and 50 m in diameter. They are used as owl perches and stand out as fairly dry sites. Their origin is unclear as they bear no apparent relationship to topography. Even smaller hydrolaccoliths, which are never more than 1 m high or about 4 m in diameter, occur in parts of the North American Arctic, including Southampton Island, in North West Territories, Canada, and Alaska, USA. These features seem to result from the segregation of ice.

### Palsas, peat plateaux, and string bogs

A **palsa** is a low peat hill, commonly conical or dome-shaped, standing some 1–10 m high and having a diameter of 10–50 m. Palsas have a core of frozen peat or silt (or both), small ice crystals, and a multitude of thin ice lenses and partings. They often form islands within bogs. **Peat plateaux** are larger landforms formed by the coalescence of palsas.

**String bogs**, also called **patterned fens**, occur in muskeg. They are alternations of thin, string-like strips or ridges of peat, mainly *Sphagnum* moss, which may contain ice for at least part of the year and may include true palsas, and vegetation with shallow, linear depressions and ponds. The ridges stand some 1.5 m high, are 1–3 m wide, and are tens of metres long. The linear features often lie at right-

angles to the regional slope. It is not certain how string bogs form. Possible formative processes include gelifluction, frost thrusting of ridges from adjacent ponds, differential frost heaving, ice-lens growth, and differential thawing of permafrost, and may involve hydrological and botanical factors.

### Frost blisters

Smaller mounds than palsas contain ice cores or ice lenses. Seasonal frost blisters, common in Arctic and subarctic regions, may grow a few metres high and a few to around 70 m long during winter freeze-back, when spring water under high pressure freezes and uplifts soil and organic sediments. They are similar to palsas but form in a different way, grow at a faster rate, and tend to occur in groups as opposed to singly.

### Icing mounds and icing blisters

**Icings** or **ice mounds** are sheet-like masses of ice formed during winter by the freezing of successive flows of water seeping from the ground, flowing from springs, or emerging through fractures in river ice. They may grow up to 13 m thick. They store water above ground until it is released in spring and summer, when they boost runoff enormously. Icings in stream valleys block spring runoff, promoting lateral erosion by the re-routed flow. By so widening the main channel, they encourage braiding. **Icing blisters** are ice mounds created by groundwater injected at high pressure between icing layers.

### Thermokarst and oriented lakes

**Thermokarst** is irregular terrain characterized by topographic depressions with hummocks between them. It results mainly from the thawing of ground ice, material collapsing into the spaces formerly occupied by ice. Thermokarst features may also be fashioned by flowing water released as the ice thaws. The thawed water is relatively warm and causes thermal and mechanical erosion of ice masses exposed along cliffs or in stream banks. The term

thermokarst reflects the resulting landform's likeness to a karst landscape in limestone regions. Thermokarst features may result from climatic warming, but they are often part of the natural variability in the periglacial environment. Any modification of surface conditions can give rise to them, including vegetation disturbance, cliff retreat, and river-course changes.

**Thaw lakes** are prevalent in thermokarst landscapes. Many thaw lakes are elliptical in plan, with their long axes pointing in the same direction, at right-angles to the prevailing wind during periods of open water. The alignment may relate to zones of maximum current, littoral drift, and erosion, but its causes are far from fully studied. **Oriented thaw lakes** are common in permafrost regions, but oriented lakes occur in other environments, too.

## Patterned ground

In the periglacial zone, the ground surface commonly bears a variety of cells, mounds, and ridges that create a regular geometric pattern. Such ground patterning occurs in other environments, but it is especially common in periglacial regions, where the patterns tend to be more prominent. The main forms are circles, polygons, nets, steps, and stripes (Washburn 1979, 122–56). All these may occur in sorted or non-sorted forms. In sorted forms, coarser material is separated from finer material, whereas in non-sorted forms there is no segregation of particles by size and the patterns are disclosed by microtopography or vegetation or both. The various forms usually connect, with a transition from polygons, circles, and nets on flattish surfaces grading into steps and then stripes as slopes become steeper and mass movements become important (Box 9.2).

### Box 9.2

#### TYPES OF PATTERNED GROUND

##### Circles

Circles occur individually or in sets. They are usually 0.5 to 3 m in diameter. **Sorted circles** have fine material at the centre and a rim of stones, the stones being large in larger circles (Plate 9.1). The debris island is a particular type of sorted stone circle in which a core of fine material is girded by blocks and boulders on steep, debris-covered slopes. **Non-sorted circles** are dome-shaped, lack stony borders, and are fringed by vegetation. Circles are not restricted to areas of permafrost and unsorted sorts are recorded from non-periglacial environments.



Plate 9.1 Stone circles, Kongsfjord, Spitsbergen.  
(Photograph by Wilfred H. Theakstone)

## Polygons

Polygons occur in sets. **Non-sorted polygons** range in size from about a metre across to large tundra or ice-wedge polygons that may be a hundred metres or more across. **Sorted polygons** are at most 10 m across and their borders are formed of stones with finer material between them (Plate 9.2a). They are usually associated with flat land, while non-sorted polygons may occur on fairly steep slopes. Non-sorted polygons are edged by furrows or cracks (Figure 9.3). The best developed polygons occur in regions with frosty climates, but polygons are known from hot deserts. **Ice-wedge polygons** are exclusively found in permafrost zones, the ice wedges often occurring at the edges of large, non-sorted polygons. Two kinds of ice-wedge polygons are recognized. The first is a saucer-shaped polygon with a low centre, which may hold standing water in summer, and marginal ridges on either side of the ice-wedge trough. The second has a high centre hemmed by ice-wedge troughs.

## Nets

Nets are a transitional form between circles and polygons. They are typically small with a diameter

of less than a couple of metres. **Earth hummocks** or **thufur**, which consist of a domed core of mineral soil crowned by vegetation, are a common type of unsorted net. They are about 0.5 m high and 1 to 2 m in diameter and form mainly in fine-grained material in cold environments where ample moisture and seasonal frost penetration permanently displaces surface materials. Thufur occur mainly in polar and subpolar regions, but examples are known from alpine environments. They are present and periodically active in the alpine Mohlesi Valley of Lesotho, southern Africa (Grab 1994).

## Steps

Steps are terrace-like landforms that occur on fairly steep slopes. They develop from circles, polygons, and nets and run either parallel to hillside contours or become elongated downslope to create lobate forms. In **unsorted steps**, the rise of the step is well vegetated and the tread is bare. In **sorted steps**, the step is edged with larger stones. The lobate varieties are called **stone garlands**. No step forms are limited to permafrost environments.



Plate 9.2 (a) Sorted polygons and (b) sorted stone stripes, Svartisen, northern Norway. The polygons and the stripes are found at the same site, the polygons on a very gently sloping area and the stripes on the steeper slope below. (Photographs by Wilfred H. Theakstone)





*Plate 9.2 (b)*

### Stripes

Stripes, which are not confined to periglacial environments, tend to develop on steeper slopes than steps. **Sorted stripes** are composed of alternating stripes of coarse and fine material downslope (Plate 9.2b). **Unsorted stripes** are marked by lines of vegetation lying in slight troughs with bare soil on the intervening slight ridges. Sorted stripes at

High Pike in the northern English Lake District occur at 658 m on a scree with an aspect of 275° and slope angle of 17–18° (Warburton and Caine 1999). These stripes are formed at a relatively low altitude, possibly because the scree has a large proportion of fine material susceptible to frost action and is free of vegetation. The sorted stripes are still active.

The origin of patterned ground is not fully clear. Three sets of processes seem important – sorting processes, slope processes, and patterning processes (Figure 9.5). The main patterning processes are cracking, either by thermal contraction (frost cracking), drying (desiccation cracking), or heaving (dilation cracking), of which only frost cracking is confined to periglacial environments. Patterning may also result from frost heaving and mass displacement. Frost heaving is also an important source of sorting, helping to segregate the large stones by shifting them upwards and outwards leaving a fine-grained centre. As many forms of patterned ground are so regular, some geomorphologists have suggested that convective cells form in the active layer. The cells would develop because

water is at its densest at 4°C. Water at the thawing front is therefore less dense than the overlying, slightly warmer water and rises. Relatively warm descending limbs of the convective cells would cause undulations in the interface between frozen and unfrozen soil that might be echoed in the ground surface topography. How the echoing takes place is uncertain, but frost heaving is one of several possible mechanisms. Stripe forms would, by this argument, result from a downslope distortion of the convective cells. Another possibility is that convective cells develop in the soil itself, and evidence for a cell-like soil circulation has been found. But the processes involved in patterned ground formation are complex, and all the more so because similar kinds of patterned ground appear to be created by different processes

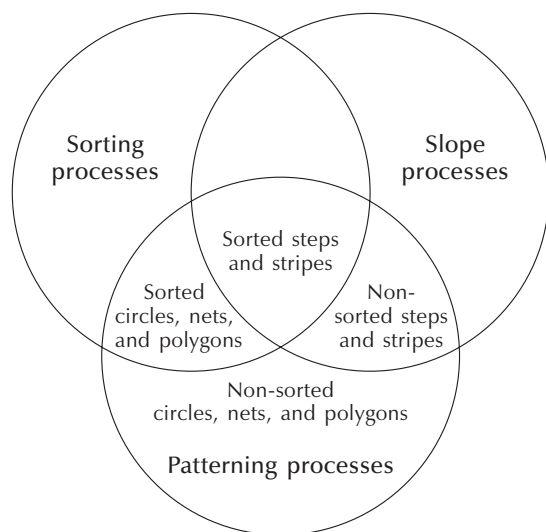


Figure 9.5 Relationships between patterned ground and sorting processes, slope processes, and patterning processes.

Source: Adapted from Washburn (1979, 160)

(an example of equifinality – see p. 30), and the same processes can produce different kinds of patterned ground.

### Periglacial slopes

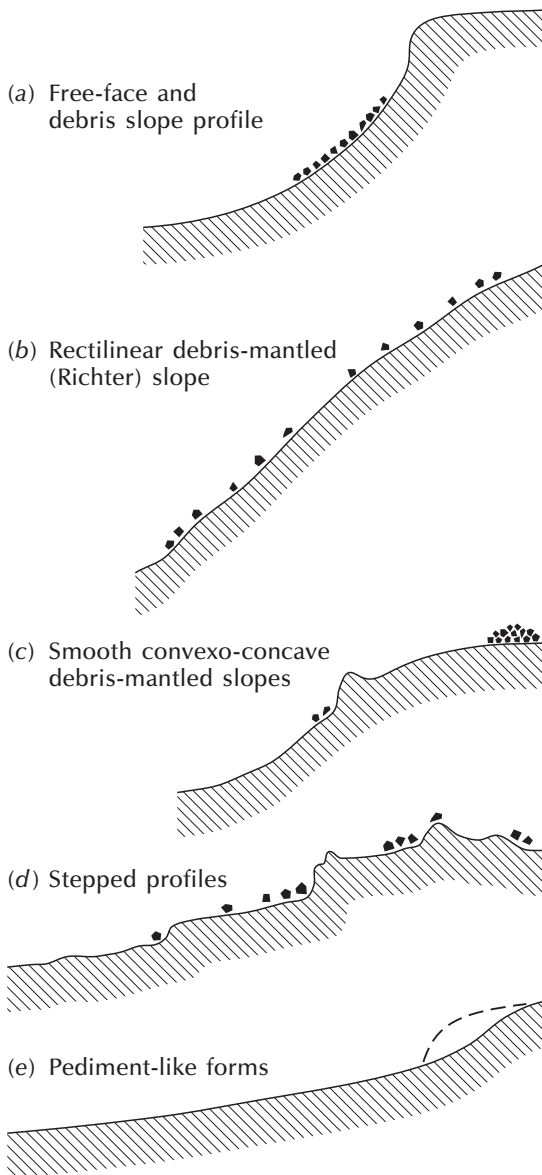
Periglacial slopes are much like slopes formed in other climatic regimes, but some differences arise owing to frost action, a lack of vegetation, and the presence of frozen ground. Frost-creep and gelifluction are important periglacial processes and form sheets, lobes, and terraces (Colour Plate 14, inserted between pp. 210–11). Gelifluction sheets, which occur mainly in the High Arctic, where vegetation is absent, tend to produce smooth terrain with low slope gradients ( $1^\circ$  to  $3^\circ$ ). Tongue-like lobes are more common in the tundra and forest tundra, where some vegetation patches occur. Lobes tend to form below snow patches. Terraces are common on lower slopes of valleys.

**Rock glaciers** are lobes or tongues of frozen, angular rock and fine debris mixed with interstitial

ice and ice lenses. They occur in high mountains of polar, subpolar, mid-latitude, and low-latitude regions. Active forms tend to be found in continental and semi-arid climates, where ice glaciers do not fill all suitable sites. They range from several hundred metres to more than a kilometre long and up to 50 m thick.

Slope profiles in periglacial regions seem to come in five forms (French 1996, 170–80). Type 1, which is the best-known slope form from periglacial regions, consists of a steep cliff above a concave debris (talus) slope, and gentler slope below the talus (Figure 9.6a). Type 2 are rectilinear debris-mantled slopes, sometimes called **Richter slopes**, in which debris supply and debris removal are roughly balanced (Figure 9.6b). They occur in arid and ice-free valleys in parts of Antarctica and in the unglaciated northern Yukon, Canada. Type 3 comprises frost-shattered and gelifluction debris with moderately smooth, **concavo-convex profiles** (Figure 9.6c). Residual hillside tors may project through the debris on the upper valley sides. Such profiles are often identified as relict periglacial forms dating from the Pleistocene, but they are not widely reported from present-day periglacial regions. Type 4 profiles are formed of gently sloping **cryoplanation terraces** (also called ‘goletz’ terraces, **altiplanation terraces**, **nivation terraces**, and **equiplanation terraces**) in the middle and upper portions of some slopes that are cut into bedrock on hill summits or upper hillslopes (Figure 9.6d). Cryoplanation terraces range from 10 m to 2 km across and up to 10 km in length. The risers between the terraces may be 70 m high and slope at angles of  $30^\circ$  or more where covered with debris or perpendicularly where cut into bedrock. Cryoplanation terraces occur chiefly in unglaciated northern Yukon and Alaska, and in Siberia. They are attributed to nivation and scarp recession through gelifluction (e.g. Nelson 1998). Type 5 profiles are rectilinear **cryopediments**, which are very gently concave erosional surfaces that are usually cut into the base of valley-side or mountain slopes, and are common in very dry periglacial regions (Figure 9.6e). Unless they cut across geological structures, they are





*Figure 9.6* Types of periglacial slope. (a) Cliff above a debris slope. (b) Rectilinear, debris-mantled or Richter slope. (c) Smooth concavo-convex profile with frost-shattered and solifluction debris. (d) Stepped profiles: cryoplanation or altiplanation terraces. (e) Pediment-like forms, or cryopediments.

Source: Adapted from French (1996, 171)

difficult to distinguish from structural benches. Lithological and structural controls are important in their development, which occurs in much the same way as cryoplanation terraces except that slope wash, rather than gelifluction, is more active in aiding scarp recession. The processes involved in their formation appear to be bedrock weathering by frost action combined with gravity-controlled cliff retreat and slope replacement from below. In profile types 3 and 4, residual hilltop or summit tors surrounded by gentler slopes are common on the interflues. Many authorities argue that periglacial slopes evolve to become smoother and flatter, as erosion is concentrated on the higher section and deposition on the lower section.

## HUMANS AND PERIGLACIAL ENVIRONMENTS

Attempts to develop periglacial regions face unique and difficult problems associated with building on an icy substrate (Box 9.3). Undeterred, humans have exploited tundra landscapes for 150 years or more, with severe disturbances occurring after the Second World War with the exploration for petroleum and other resource development (e.g. Bliss 1990). **Permafrost degradation** occurs where the thermal balance of the permafrost is broken, either by climatic changes or by changing conditions at the ground surface.

In the Low Arctic, mineral exploration has led to the melting of permafrost. Under natural conditions, peat, which is a good insulator, tends to prevent permafrost from melting. Where the peat layer is disturbed or removed, as by the use of tracked vehicles along summer roads, permafrost melt is encouraged. Ground-ice melting and subsequent subsidence produce **thermokarst**, which resembles karst landscapes (cf. p. 244). In the Tanana Flats, Alaska, USA, ice-rich permafrost that supports birch forest is thawing rapidly, the forests being converted to minerotrophic floating mat fens (Osterkamp *et al.* 2000). A hundred years ago or more at this site, some 83 per cent of 260,000 ha

**Box 9.3****PROBLEMS OF DEVELOPMENT ON PERMAFROST**

Buildings, roads, and railways erected on the ground surface in permafrost areas face two problems (e.g. French 1996, 285–91). First, the freezing of the ground causes frost heaving, which disturbs buildings, foundations, and road surfaces. Second, the structures themselves may cause the underlying ice to thaw, bringing about heaving and subsidence, and they may sink into the ground. To overcome this difficulty, a pad or some kind of fill (usually gravel) may be placed upon the surface. If the pad or fill is of the appropriate thickness, the thermal regime of the underlying permafrost is unchanged. Structures that convey significant amounts of heat to the permafrost, such as heated buildings and warm oil pipelines, require additional measures. A common practice is to mount buildings on piles, so allowing for an air space between the building and the ground surface in which cold air may circulate (Colour Plate 13, inserted between pp. 210–11). Even so, in ground subject to seasonal freezing, the pile foundations may move, pushing the piles upwards. In consequence, bridges, buildings, military installations, and pipelines may be damaged or destroyed if the piles are not placed judiciously. Other measures include inserting open-ended culverts into pads and the laying of insulating matting beneath them. In addition, where the cost is justified, refrigeration units may be set around pads or through pilings. Pipes providing municipal services, such as water supply and sewage disposal, cannot be laid underground in permafrost regions. One solution, which was used at Inuvik, in the Canadian Northwest Territories, is to use utilidor. Utilidors are continuously insulated aluminium boxes that run above ground on supports, linking buildings to a central system.

The Trans-Alaska Pipeline System (TAPS), which was finished in 1977, is a striking

achievement of construction under permafrost conditions. The pipeline is 1,285 km long and carries crude oil from Prudhoe Bay on the North Slope to an ice-free port at Valdez on the Pacific Coast. It was originally planned to bury the pipe in the ground for most of the route, but as the oil is carried at 70–80°C, this would have melted the permafrost and the resulting soil flow would have damaged the pipe. In the event, about half of the pipe was mounted on elevated beams held up by 120,000 vertical support members (VSMs) that were frozen firmly into the permafrost using special heat-radiating thermal devices to prevent their moving. This system allows the heat from the pipe to be dissipated into the air, so minimizing its impact on the permafrost.

Few roads and railways have been built in permafrost regions. Most roads are unpaved. Summer thawing, with concomitant loss of load-bearing strength in fine-grained sediments, and winter frost heaving call for the constant grading of roads to maintain a surface smooth enough for driving. Paved roads tend to become rough very quickly, most of them requiring resurfacing every 3 to 5 years. Railways are difficult to build and expensive to keep up in permafrost regions. The Trans-Siberian Railway, and some Canadian railways in the north of the country (e.g. the Hudson Bay railway), cross areas where the ground ice is thick. At these sites, year-round, costly maintenance programmes are needed to combat the effects of summer thawing and winter frost heaving and keep the track level. The Hudson Bay railway has been operating for over 60 years. For all that time, it has faced problems of thaw settlement along the railway embankment and the destruction of bridge decks by frost heave. Heat pipes help to minimize thaw subsidence but they are very expensive.

was underlain by permafrost. About 42 per cent of this permafrost has been affected by thermokarst development within the last 100 to 200 years. The thaw depths are typically 1 to 2 m, with some values as high as 6 m. On the Yamal Peninsula of north-west Siberia, land-use and climatic changes since the 1960s, when supergiant natural gas fields were discovered, have led to changes in the tundra landscape (Forbes 1999). Extensive exploration meant that large areas were given over to the construction of roads and buildings. Disturbance associated with this development has affected thousands of hectares of land. The increasing amount of land given over to roads and buildings, together with the associated disturbed land, has driven a fairly constant or increasing reindeer population onto progressively smaller patches of pasture. In consequence, the patches have suffered excessive grazing and trampling of lichens, bryophytes, and shrubs. In many areas, sandy soils have been deflated. The human- and reindeer-induced disturbance may easily initiate thermokarst formation and aeolian erosion, which would lead to significant further losses of pasture.

Thermokarst is less likely to develop in the High Arctic, owing to the lower permafrost temperatures and the generally lower ice content. Nonetheless, gully erosion can be a serious problem in places lacking a peat cover. For instance, snow piled up when clear areas for airstrips and camps are ploughed melts in the spring. The meltwater runs along minor ruts caused by vehicles. In a few years, these minor ruts may be eroded into sizeable gullies. A trickle of water may become a potent erosive force that transforms the tundra landscape into a slurry of mud and eroding peat. Restoration work is difficult because gravel is in short supply and a loss of soil volume occurs during the summer melt. In any case, gravel roads, although they will prevent permafrost melt and subsidence if they are thick enough, have deleterious side-effects. For instance, culverts designed to take water under the roads may fill with gravel or with ice in the winter. In three sites within the Prudhoe Bay Oil Field, studied from 1968 to 1983, blocked drainage-ways have led to 9

per cent of the mapped area being flooded and 1 per cent of the area being thermokarst (Walker *et al.* 1987). Had not the collecting systems, the camps, and the pipeline corridors been built in an environmentally acceptable manner, the flooding and conversion to thermokarst might have been far greater. Water running parallel to the roads and increased flow from the culverts may lead to a combined thermal and hydraulic erosion and the production of thermokarst.

**Global warming** during the twenty-first century is bound to have a large impact on permafrost landscapes and no effectual countermeasures are available (Lunardini 1996). Much of the discontinuous permafrost in Alaska is now extremely warm, usually within 1–2°C of thawing. Ice at this temperature is highly susceptible to thermal degradation and any additional warming during the current century will result in the formation of new thermokarst (Osterkamp *et al.* 2000). In the Yamal Peninsula, a slight warming of climate, even without the human impacts on the landscape, would produce massive thermokarst erosion (Forbes 1999).

## SUMMARY

Periglacial landscapes experience intense frosts during winter and snow-free ground during the summer. They are underlain by either continuous or patchy permafrost (permanently frozen ground), which at present lies beneath about 22 per cent of the land surface. Several geomorphic processes operate in periglacial environments. Frost action is a key process. It causes weathering, heaving and thrusting, mass displacement, and cracking. Frost creep and gelifluction dominate mass movements. Nivation combines several processes to form hollows under snow patches. Fluvial and aeolian action may also be very effective land-formers in periglacial environments. Periglacial landforms, some of them bizarre, include ice wedges, a range of frost mounds (pingos, palsa, peat plateaux, string bogs, frost blisters, icing mounds and icing blisters),

thermokarst and oriented lakes, patterned ground, and distinctive slopes. Patterned ground is a geometrical arrangement of circles, polygons, nets, steps, and stripes. Periglacial slopes include cryoplanation terraces. Humans activities in periglacial environments and global warming are leading to permafrost degradation and the formation of thermokarst.

---

### ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How distinctive are periglacial landforms?**
  - 2 How does patterned ground form?**
  - 3 Examine the problems of living in periglacial environments.**
- 

### FURTHER READING

Embleton, C. and King, C. A. M. (1975) *Periglacial Geomorphology*. London: Edward Arnold.

Old but thorough.

French, H. M. (1996) *The Periglacial Environment*, 2nd edn. Harlow: Addison Wesley Longman.

The best recent account of periglacial landforms and processes.

Washburn, A. L. (1979) *Geocryology: A Survey of Periglacial Processes and Environments*. London: Edward Arnold.

Another good account of periglacial landscapes.

## AEOLIAN LANDSCAPES

---

Where conditions are dry and the ground surface bare, wind is a forceful instrument of erosion and deposition. This chapter covers:

- places where wind is an important geomorphic agent
- how the wind erodes and deposits sediments
- landforms fashioned by wind erosion
- landforms fashioned by wind deposition
- humans and wind processes

### Wind in action

As an agent of transport, and therefore of erosion and deposition, the work of the wind is familiar wherever loose surface materials are unprotected by a covering of vegetation. The raising of clouds of dust from ploughed fields after a spell of dry weather and the drift of wind-swept sand along a dry beach are known to everyone. In humid regions, except along the seashore, wind erosion is limited by the prevalent cover of grass and trees and by the binding action of moisture in the soil. But the trials of exploration, warfare and prospecting in the desert have made it hardly necessary to stress the fact that in arid regions the effects of the wind are unrestrained. The 'scorching sand-laden breath of the desert' wages its own war on nerves. Dust-storms darken the sky, transform the air into a suffocating blast and carry enormous quantities of material over great distances. Vessels passing through the Red Sea often receive a baptism of fine sand from the desert winds of Arabia; and dunes have accumulated in the Canary Islands from sand blown across the sea from the Sahara.

(Holmes 1965, 748–9)

---

## AEOLIAN ENVIRONMENTS

Wind is a geomorphic agent in all terrestrial environments. It is a potent agent only in dry areas with fine-grained soils and sediments and little or no vegetation. The extensive sand seas and grooved bedrock in the world's arid regions attest to the potency of aeolian processes. More local wind action is seen along sandy coasts and over bare fields, and in alluvial plains containing migrating channels, especially in areas marginal to glaciers and ice sheets. In all other environments, wind activity is limited by a protective cover of vegetation and moist soil, which helps to bind soil particles together and prevent their being winnowed out and carried by the wind, and only in spaces between bushes and on

such fast-drying surfaces as beaches can the wind free large quantities of sand.

**Deserts** are regions with very low annual rainfall (less than 300 mm), meagre vegetation, extensive areas of bare and rocky mountains and plateaux, and alluvial plains (Figure 10.1). Many deserts are hot or tropical, but some polar regions, including Antarctica, are classed as deserts.

Although wind action is an important process in shaping desert landforms, desert landform assemblages vary in different tectonic settings. These regional differences are brought out in Table 10.1, which shows the proportion of landforms in the tectonically active south-west USA and in the tectonically stable Sahara.

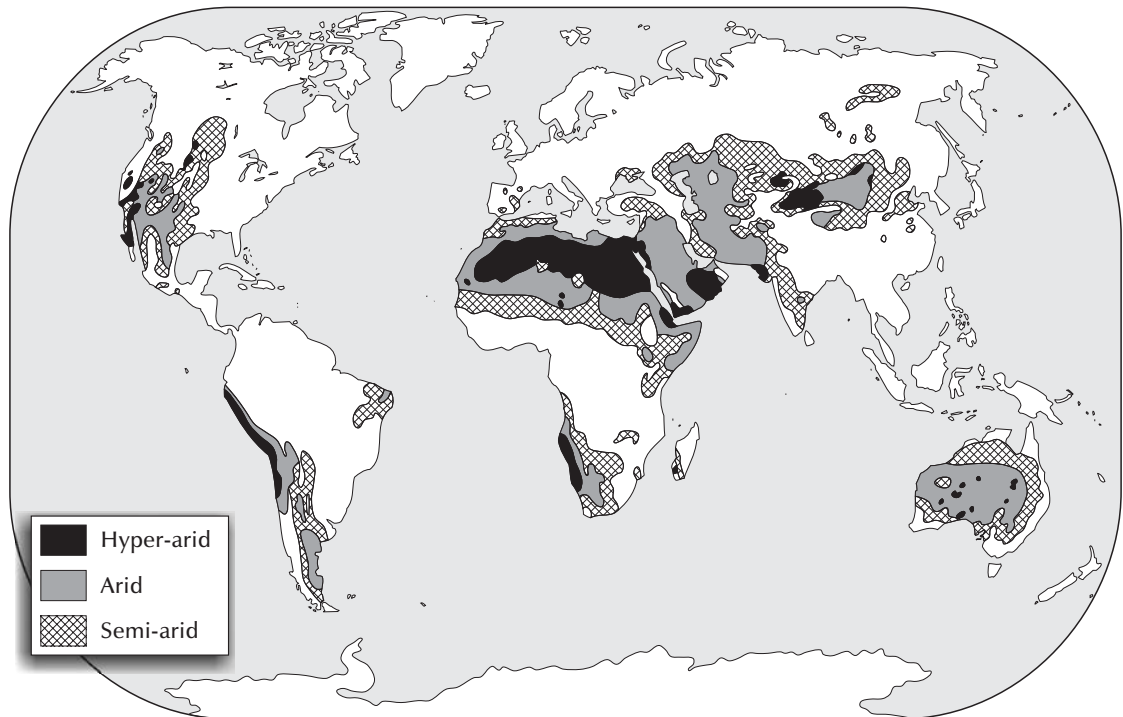


Figure 10.1 The world's deserts.

Source: Adapted from Thomas (1989)

Table 10.1 Landform assemblages in deserts of the south-west USA and the Sahara

Landform	South-west USA (per cent)	Sahara (per cent)
Desert mountains	38.1	43.0
Playas	1.1	1.0
Desert flats	20.5	10.0
Bedrock fields (including hamadas)	0.7	10.0
Regions bordering through-flowing rivers	1.2	1.0
Dry washes (ephemeral stream beds)	3.6	1.0
Alluvial fans and bajadas	31.4	1.0
Sand dunes	0.6	28.0
Badlands	2.6	2.0
Volcanic cones and fields	0.2	3.0

Source: Adapted from Cooke *et al.* (1993, 20)

### AEOLIAN PROCESSES

#### Wind as a geomorphic agent

Air is a dusty gas. It moves in three ways: (1) as **streamlines**, which are parallel layers of moving air; (2) as **turbulent flow**, which is irregular movements of air involving up-and-down and side-to-side currents; and (3) **vortexes**, which are helical or spiral flows, commonly around a vertical central axis. Streamlined objects, such as aircraft wings, split streamlines without creating much turbulence. Blunt objects, such as rock outcrops and buildings, split streamlines and stir up turbulent flow, the zones of turbulence depending on the shape of the object.

Air moving in the lower 1,000 m of the atmosphere (the boundary layer) is affected by the frictional drag associated with the ground surface. The drag hampers motion near the ground and greatly lessens the mean wind speed. In consequence, the wind-speed profile looks much like the velocity profile of water in an open channel and increases at a declining rate with height, as established in wind-tunnel experiments by the English engineer and professional soldier, Brigadier Ralph Alger Bagnold (1941). The **wind-velocity profile** (Figure 10.2) may be written as:

$$u_z = \frac{u_*}{\kappa} \ln \frac{z}{z_0}$$

where  $u_z$  is the wind speed at height  $z$ ,  $z$  is height above the ground,  $\kappa$  (kappa) is the Kármán constant (which is usually taken as  $\approx 0.4$ ),  $z_0$  is roughness length (which depends on grain size), and  $u_*$  is the shear or friction, defined as:

$$u_* = \sqrt{\frac{\tau_0}{\rho_a}}$$

where  $\tau_0$  (tau-zero) is the shear force per unit area and  $\rho_a$  (rho-a) is the air density.

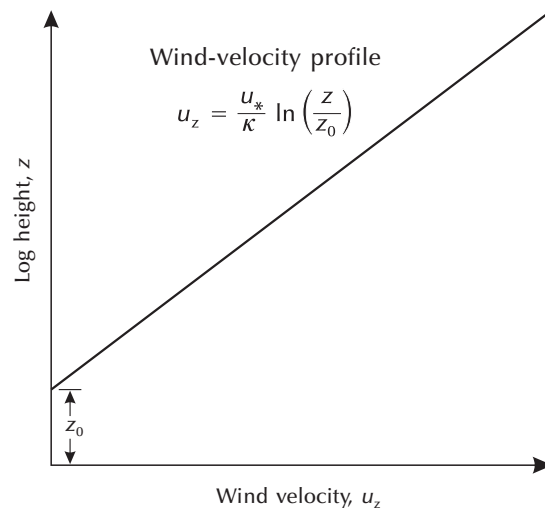


Figure 10.2 Wind-velocity profile



In moving, air behaves much like water. As air is about a thousand times less dense than water, it cannot transport such large particles. Nonetheless, the wind is an agent of erosion and transport. The ability of wind to erode, entrain, and convey rock and soil particles depends upon the nature of the wind, the nature of the ground surface, and the nature of the soil or rock. Crucial wind factors are the wind velocity and the degree of turbulence, with air density and viscosity playing lesser roles. Ground-surface factors include vegetation cover, roughness, obstacles, and topographic form. Soil factors include moisture content, structure, and density.

## Wind erosion

### Deflation

Wind erosion engages two processes – deflation and abrasion. **Deflation** is the removal of loose particles by the wind. Smaller sedimentary particles are more susceptible to wind erosion than larger particles. Particles of about 100 micrometres diameter are the most vulnerable to wind erosion. Above that size, increasingly higher velocities are needed to entrain increasingly large grains and to keep them airborne. Below that diameter, and especially for clay particles, greater wind velocities are needed to surmount the cohesive forces binding individual grains together.

Deflation of sand-sized particles is localized and it takes a long time to move sand great distances. Silt and clay, on the other hand, are far more readily lifted by turbulence and carried in suspension in the atmosphere, the finest material being transported great distances. The world's hot deserts are a leading source of atmospheric dust. Even temperate areas may produce dust. In south-eastern Australia, a wind-blown dust, locally called **parna**, covers wide areas. **Soil erosion** by wind is well documented and well known. It will be discussed in the final section of this chapter.

### Abrasion

Wind without grains is an impotent geomorphic agent; wind armed with grains may be a powerful erosive agent. **Abrasion** is the cannonading of rock and other surfaces by particles carried in the wind – a sort of natural 'sandblasting'. Rocks and boulders exposed at the ground surface may be abraded by sand and silt particles. Abrasion rates appear to be highest where strong winds carry hard sand grains from soft and friable rocks upwind. Sand particles are carried within a metre or two of the ground surface, and abrasion is not important above that height.

## Wind transport

Before the wind can transport particles, it must lift them from the ground surface. Particles are raised by 'lift', which is produced by the **Bernoulli effect** and the local acceleration of wind, and bombardment by particles already in the air. The Bernoulli effect arises from the fact that windspeed increases swiftly away from the ground surface so that a surface particle sits in a pressure gradient, the top of the particle experiencing a lower pressure than the bottom of the particle. The Bernoulli effect is boosted where airflow accelerates around protruding objects. However, the most effective mechanism for getting particles airborne is bombardment by particles already in flight. So the movement of particles is slow when a wind starts, as only lift is operative, but it picks up by leaps and bounds once saltation and associated bombardment come into play.

Wind transport encompasses four processes – saltation, reptation, suspension, and creep (Figure 10.3):

- 1 **Saltation.** Sand grains bound, land, and rebound, imparting renewed impetus to other sand grains. Such motion is confined to short distances and heights of about 2 m.
- 2 **Reptation.** On hitting the surface, saltating grains release a small splash-like shower of

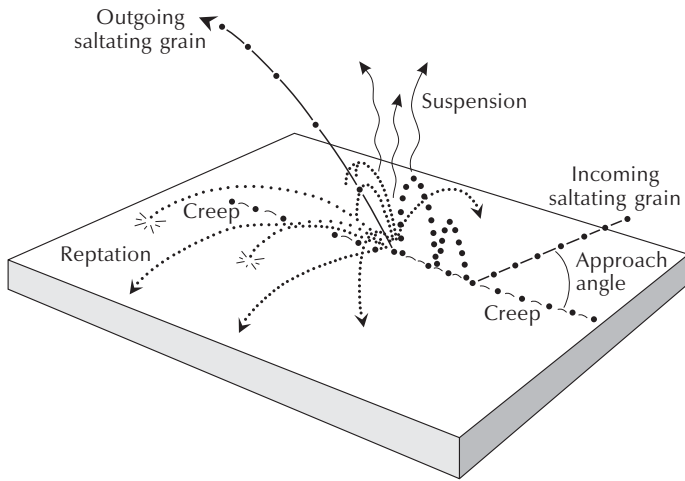


Figure 10.3 Modes of grain transport by wind.

Source: Adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 13)

particles that make small hops from the point of impact. This process is reptation.

- 3 **Suspension.** Particles of silt and clay lifted into the atmosphere become suspended and may be carried great distances. Sand particles may be lifted into the lower layers of the atmosphere, as in sandstorms, but will fall out near the point of takeoff. Dust particles may be carried around the globe. Dust storms may carry 100 million tonnes of material for thousands of kilometres. A dramatic dust storm, which carried an estimated 2 million tonnes of dust, engulfed Melbourne, Australia, on 8 February 1983 (Raupach *et al.* 1994).
- 4 **Creep** and related near-surface activity. Coarse sand and small pebbles inch forwards by rolling and sliding with the momentum gained from the impact of jumping sand particles and down the tiny crater-slopes produced by an impacting particle.

It should be stressed that saltation is the key process. Once saltation cuts in, it powers all the other processes, especially creep and reptation. Even the entrainment of fine particles destined to become suspended is mainly induced by jumping grains.

The dividing line between saltation and suspension appears to lie at about particles of 100

micrometres diameter. Particles smaller than that have fall velocities lower than the upward velocity of the turbulent wind and so stay in the air until the wind abates, which may be thousands of kilometres from the point of entrainment. Indeed, dust particles can be carried around the world (in less than eighty days!) (p. 43). **Dust** is a somewhat loose term but can be taken as a suspension of solid particles in the air (or a deposit of such particles, familiar to anyone who has done housework). Most atmospheric dust is smaller than 100 micrometres and a large portion is smaller than 20 micrometres.

### Wind deposition

Wind moves much sediment around the globe, although by no means so much as the sediment moved by rivers. Some of this sediment, representing 10 per cent of that carried by rivers, is delivered to the oceans. The rest is deposited on land. In Israel, the average fall is 0.25 kg/m<sup>2</sup>/yr but falls of as much as 8.3 kg/m<sup>2</sup>/yr are recorded after storms.

Wind deposition may take place in three ways (Bagnold 1941): (1) sedimentation, (2) accretion, and (3) encroachment. **Sedimentation** occurs when grains fall out of the air or stop creeping forwards. For sand grains, this happens if the air is moving

with insufficient force to carry the grains forward by saltation or to move other grains by creep. For silt and clay, this happens if particles are brought to the ground by air currents or if the air is still enough for them to settle out (**dry deposition**), or if they are brought down by rain (**wet deposition**). Wet deposition appears to be significant where dust plumes pass over humid regions and out over the oceans. It is the main pathway by which Saharan dust is brought down in the Mediterranean region (Löye-Pilot and Martin 1996). Wet deposition may give rise to blood rains and red rains. Measured deposition rates on land range from 3.5 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr to 200 t/km<sup>2</sup>/yr (Goudie 1995; Middleton 1997). **Accretion** occurs when grains being moved by saltation hit the surface with such force that some grains carry on moving forward as surface creep but the majority come to rest where they strike. Accretion deposits are thus moulded by the combined action of saltation and surface creep. **Encroachment** takes place when deposition occurs on a rough surface. Under these conditions, grains moving as surface creep are held up, while saltating grains may move on. Deposition by encroachment occurs on the front of a dune when grains roll down the surface and come to rest. Coarse grains are often associated with erosional surfaces, as the fine grains

are winnowed by the wind. Fine grains tend to occur on depositional surfaces. Coarse particles may also move to the ground surface from below.

## AEOLIAN EROSIONAL FORMS

Landforms resulting from wind erosion are seldom preserved except in arid areas. In alluvial plains and beaches, subsequent action by rivers and by waves erases traces of aeolian erosion. In arid areas, other denudational agents are often weak or absent and fail to destroy erosional landforms. The chief erosional forms in drylands caused by wind erosion are lag deposits, desert pavements, ventifacts, yardangs, and basins (see Livingstone and Warren 1996; Breed *et al.* 1997; Goudie 1999).

### Lag deposits and stone pavements

Deflation winnows silt and fine sand, lowering the level of the ground surface and leaving a concentrated layer of rock and coarse sand that acts as a protective blanket. Such thin veneers of gravel, or coarser material, that overlie predominantly finer materials are called **lag deposits** (Plate 10.1). Lag deposits cover a significant proportion of the world's



*Plate 10.1* Lag deposits lying on a stone pavement, Dhakla, Western Desert, Egypt. (Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos)

deserts, but they also occur in other environments with little vegetation, including mountains and periglacial zones. The coarse material has several local names – gibber in Australia, desert armour in North America, and *hammada*, *serir*, and *reg* in the Arab world.

Lag deposits may result from the deflation of poorly sorted deposits, such as alluvium, that contain a mix of gravel, sand, and silt. The wind removes the finer surface particles, leaving a blanket of material too coarse to undergo deflation. The blanket shields the underlying finer materials from the wind. However, other processes can lead to the concentration of coarse particles on bare surfaces – surface wash, heating and cooling cycles, freezing and thawing cycles, wetting and drying cycles, and the solution and recrystallization of salts.

Where the stone cover is continuous (and the particles generally flat), surfaces covered by lag deposits are called **stone pavements**, but they go by a variety of local names – desert pavements in the USA, gibber plains in Australia, *gobi* in Central Asia, and *hammada*, *reg*, or *serir* in the Arab world. *Hammada* is rocky desert, in which the lag consists of coarse, mechanically weathered regolith. *Serir* is pebbly desert with a lag of rounded gravel and coarse sand produced by deflation of alluvial deposits.

### Deflation hollows and pans

Deflation can scour out large or small depressions called **deflation hollows** or **blowouts**. Blowouts are the commonest landforms produced by wind erosion. They are most common in weak, unconsolidated sediments. In size, they range from less than a metre deep and a few metres across, through enclosed basins a few metres deep and hundreds of metres across (pans), to very large features more than 100 m deep and over 100 km across. They are no deeper than the water table, which may be several hundred metres below the ground surface, and may attain diameters of kilometres.

**Pans** are closed depressions that are common in many dryland areas and that seem to be at least partly

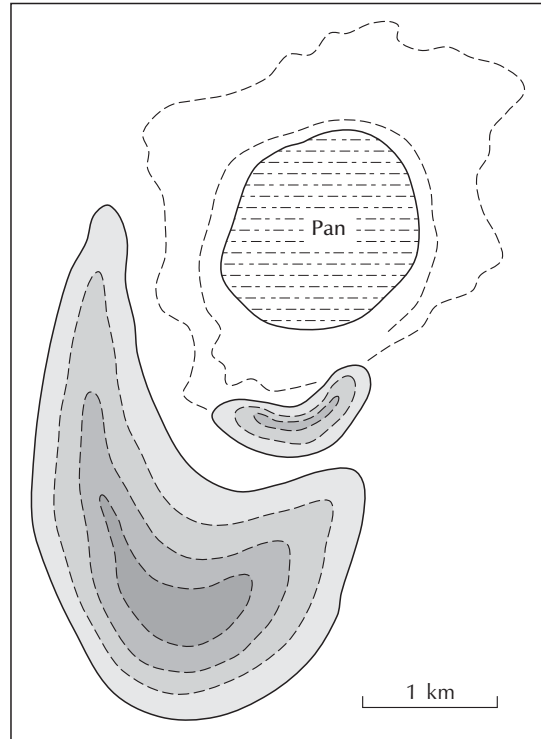


Figure 10.4 A pan and lunette in southern Africa.  
Source: Adapted from Grove (1969)

formed by deflation (Figure 10.4; Plate 10.2). In size, they arrange from a few metres wide and only centimetres deep, to kilometres across and tens of metres deep. The largest known pan, which was discovered in eastern Australia, is 45 km wide. Pans are prominently developed in southern Africa, on the High Plains of the USA, in the Argentinian pampas, Manchuria, western and southern Australia, the west Siberian steppes, and Kazakhstan (Goudie 1999). They sometimes have **clay dunes** or **lunette dunes** formed on their leeside that are composed of sandy, silty, clayey, and salty material from the pan floor. The presence of a lunette is a sure sign that a pan has suffered deflation. The evolution of pans is a matter of debate (Box 10.1).

Deflation appears to have played a starring role in scooping out great **erosional basins**, such as the



*Plate 10.2* Floor of Rooipan, a small pan or deflation hollow in the south-west Kalahari. The pan accumulates limited rainfall (less than 150 mm per annum in this area) in the wet season, but receives additional moisture by groundwater seepage.  
(*Photograph by Dave Thomas*)

### **Box 10.1**

#### **THE ORIGIN OF PANS**

A uniquely aeolian origin for pans is disputable. Recent research indicates that a range of processes may lead to pan formation. Deflation may top the list, but excavation by animals and karst-type solution may play a role in some cases. Pan formation appears to run along the following lines (Goudie and Wells 1995). First, certain environmental conditions are prerequisites to pan formation. Low effective precipitation and sparse vegetation cover are the main necessary conditions, but salt accumulation helps as it curbs vegetation growth. Second, the local ground surface and sedimentary cover must be susceptible to erosion. Vulnerable materials include sands and sandstones,

clays and shales, and marls. These materials are susceptible only where they are not capped by more than a thin layer of a resistant deposit such as calcrete. Once an initial depression is created, several processes may assist its growth. Deflation is the chief process but it may be enhanced by animals overgrazing and trampling the ground and by salt weathering, which may attack bedrock. A depression will not continue to grow unless it is protected from fluvial processes by being isolated from an effective and integrated fluvial system. Such protection may be afforded by low slope angles, episodic desiccation and dune encroachment, dolerite intrusions, and tectonic disturbance.

large oasis depressions in the Libyan Desert. However, such large basins are almost certain to have had a complex evolution involving processes additional to deflation, including tectonic subsidence. The deepest of such basins is the Qattara Depression in northern Egypt, which is cut into Pliocene sediments. At its lowest point, the Qattara Depression lies 134 m below sea level.

#### **Yardangs and Zeugen**

**Yardangs** are normally defined as spectacular streamlined, sharp and sinuous ridges that extend parallel to the wind, and are separated by parallel depressions. They are sometimes said to resemble upturned ships' hulls. Yet the form of yardangs varies. Two size classes are distinguished – megayardangs and yardangs. **Mega-yardangs**, which are



over 100 m long and up to 1,000 m wide, are reported only from the central Sahara and Egypt, some good examples occurring in the Boukou area near the Tibesti Mountains of Chad.

In the Qaidam Basin, Central Asia, eight forms of yardang occur: mesas, sawtooth crests, cones, pyramids, very long ridges, hogbacks, whalebacks, and low streamlined whalebacks (Halimov and Fezer 1989). Yardangs have been reported from Central Asia (the Taklimakan Desert, China), the Near East (the Lut Desert, south-eastern Iran; the Khash Desert, Afghanistan; the Sinai Peninsula; and Saudi Arabia), several localities across the Saharan region, North America (the Mojave Desert, California), and South America (the Talara and Paracas–Ica Regions, Peru). The yardangs in the Lut Basin, Iran, are among the largest on the planet. They stand up to 80 m tall and are carved out of the Lut Formation, which consists of fine-grained, horizontally bedded, silty clays and limey gypsum-bearing sands.

Yardangs are carved out of sediments by abrasion and deflation, although gully formation, mass movements, and salt weathering may also be involved. Yardang evolution appears to follow a series of steps (Halimov and Fezer 1989; Goudie 1999). First, suitable sediments (e.g. lake beds and swamp

deposits) form under humid conditions. These sediments then dry out and are initially eaten into by the wind or by fluvial gullying. The resulting landscape consists of high ridges and mesas separated by narrow corridors that cut down towards the base of the sediments. Abrasion then widens the corridors and causes the ridge noses to retreat. At this stage, slopes become very steep and mass failures occur, particularly along desiccation and contraction cracks. The ridges are slowly converted into cones, pyramids, sawtooth forms, hogbacks, and whalebacks. Once the relief is reduced to less than 2 m, the whole surface is abraded to create a simple aerodynamic form – a low streamlined whaleback – which is eventually reduced to a plain surface.

*Zeugen* (singular *Zeuge*), also called **perched** or **mushroom rocks**, are related to yardangs (Plate 10.3). They are produced by the wind eating away strata, and especially soft strata close to the ground. Exceptionally, where sand-laden wind is funnelled by topography, even hard rocks may be fluted, grooved, pitted, and polished by sandblasting. An example comes from Windy Point, near Palm Springs, in the Mojave Desert, California.



Plate 10.3 Zeugen, Farafra, Western Desert, Egypt. The limestone pillars are undercut by sandblasting.  
(Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos)

### Ventifacts

Cobbles and pebbles on stony desert surfaces often bear facets called **ventifacts**. The number of edges or keels they carry is sometimes connoted by the German terms *Einkanter* (one-sided), *Zweikanter* (two-sided), and *Dreikanter* (three-sided). The pyramid-shaped *Dreikanter* are particularly common. The abrasion of more than one side of a pebble or cobble does not necessarily mean more than one prevailing wind direction. Experimental studies have shown that ventifacts may form even when the wind has no preferred direction. And, even where the wind does tend to come from one direction, a ventifact may be realigned by dislodgement.

The mechanisms by which ventifacts form are debatable, despite over a century of investigation (see Livingstone and Warren 1996, pp. 30–2), but abrasion by dust and silt, rather than blasting by sand, is probably the chief cause. Interestingly, the best-developed ventifacts come from polar and periglacial regions, where, partly due to the higher density of the air and partly due to the higher wind speeds, larger particles are carried by the wind than in other environments.

### AEOLIAN DEPOSITIONAL FORMS

Sand accumulations come in a range of sizes and forms. Deposition may occur as **sheets of sand** (dune fields and sand seas) or **loess** or as characteristic **dunes**. It is a popular misconception that the world's deserts are vast seas of sand. Sandy desert (or *erg*) covers just 25 per cent of the Sahara, and little more than a quarter of the world's deserts. Smaller sand accumulations and dune fields are found in almost all the world's arid and semi-arid regions.

Sand accumulations, in sand seas and in smaller features, usually evolve bedforms. They are called bedforms because they are produced on the 'bed' of the atmosphere as a result of fluid movement – airflow. They often develop regular and repeating patterns in response to the shearing force of the wind

interacting with the sediment on the ground surface. The wind moulds the sediment into various landforms. In turn, the landforms modify the airflow. A kind of equilibrium may become established between the airflow and the evolving landforms, but it is readily disrupted by changes in sand supply, wind direction, wind speed, and, where present, vegetation.

### Dune formation

Traditionally, geomorphologists studied dune form and the texture of dune sediments. Since around 1980, emphasis has shifted to investigations of sediment transport and deposition and their connection to dune inception, growth, and maintenance. Research has involved field work and wind-tunnel experiments, as well as mathematical models that simulate dune formation and development (see Nickling and McKenna Neuman 1999). Nonetheless, it is still not fully clear how wind, blowing freely over a desert plain, fashions dunes out of sand. The interactions between the plain and the flow of sand in which regular turbulent patterns are set up are probably the key. Plainly, it is essential that wind velocity is reduced to allow grains to fall out of the conveying wind. Airflow rates are much reduced in the lee of obstacles and in hollows. In addition, subtle influences of surface roughness, caused by grain size differences, can induce aerodynamic effects that encourage deposition. Deposition may produce a sand patch. Once a sand patch is established, it may grow into a dune by trapping saltating grains, which are unable to rebound on impact as easily as they are on the surrounding stony surface. This mechanism works only if the sand body is broader than the flight lengths of saltating grains. A critical lower width of 1 to 5 m seems to represent the limiting size for dunes. On the leeside of the dune, airflow separates and decelerates. This change enhances sand accumulation and reduces sand erosion, so the dune increases in size. The grains tend to be trapped on the slip face, a process aided by wind compression and consequent acceleration over the windward slope. The accelerated airflow erodes



the windward slope and deposits the sand on the lee slope. As the sand patch grows it becomes a dune. Eventually, a balance is reached between the angle of the windward slope, the dune height, the level of airflow acceleration, and so the amount of erosion and deposition on the windward and lee slopes. The dune may move downwind (Figure 10.5).

Figure 10.6 is a speculative model of the conditions conducive to the formation of different dune types, which are discussed below (Livingstone and Warren 1996, 80). The two axes represent the two main factors controlling dune type. The first represents an unspecified measure of the amount of sand available for dune formation, while the second axis represents the variability of wind direction.

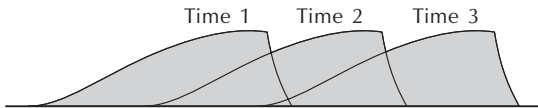


Figure 10.5 The downwind progress of a transverse dune.

Source: Adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 73)

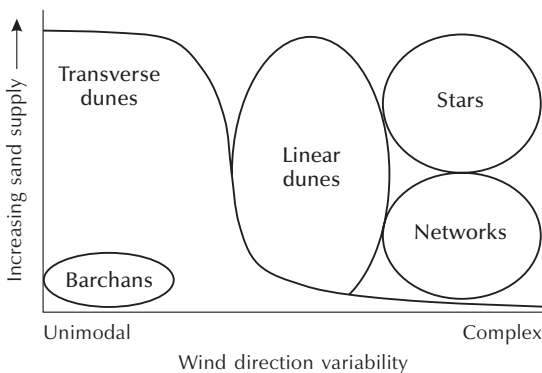


Figure 10.6 Dune types in relation to the variability of wind direction and sand supply.

Source: Adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 80)

## Dune types

Some researchers believe that aeolian bedforms form a three-tiered hierarchy. Nicholas Lancaster (1995) identified three superimposed bedforms, the first two of which occur in all sand seas: (1) wind ripples; (2) individual simple dunes or superimposed dunes on compound and complex dunes; and (3) compound and complex dunes or draa.

## Ripples

**Wind ripples** are the smallest aeolian bedform. They are regular, wave-like undulations lying at right-angles to the prevailing wind direction. The size of ripples increases with increasing particle size, but they typically range from about 10 to 300 mm high and are typically spaced a few centimetres to tens of metres apart (Colour Plate 15; Plate 10.4). Wind ripples develop in minutes to hours and quickly change if wind direction or wind speed alter.

Seemingly simple aeolian bedforms, ripples have withstood attempts to explain them. Several hypotheses have been forthcoming, but most are flawed (see Livingstone and Warren 1996, 27). According to what is perhaps the most plausible model (Anderson 1987; Anderson and Bunas 1993), ripple initiation requires an irregularity in the bed that perturbs the population of reptating grains. By simulating the process, repeated ripples occurred after about 5,000 saltation impacts with a realistic wavelength of about six mean reptation wavelengths. In a later version of the model (Anderson and Bunas 1993), two grain sizes were included. Again, ripples developed and these bore coarser particles at their crests, as is ordinarily the case in actual ripples.

## Free dunes

**Dunes** are collections of loose sand built piecemeal by the wind (Figure 10.7). They usually range from a few metres across and a few centimetres high to 2 km across and 400 m high. Typical sizes are 5–30 m high and spaced at 50–500-m intervals. The largest dunes are called **draa** or **mega-dunes** and



Plate 10.4 Mega-ripples formed on a hard *sebkha* surface in the United Arab Emirates.

(Photograph by Dave Thomas)

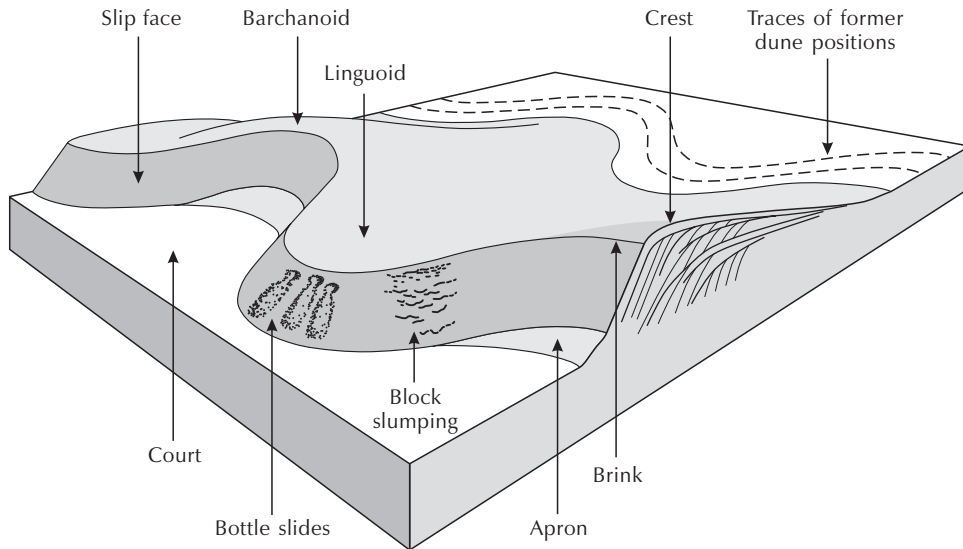


Figure 10.7 The main features of a dune.

Source: Adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 65)

may stand 400 m high and sit more than 500 m apart, with some displaying a spacing of up to 4 km.

Dunes may occur singly or in dune fields. They may be active or else fixed by vegetation. And they may be free dunes or dunes anchored in the lee of an obstacle (impeded dunes). The form of free dunes is

determined largely by wind characteristics, while the form of anchored dunes is strongly influenced by vegetation, topography, or highly local sediment sources. Classifications of dune forms are many and varied, with local names often being used to describe the same forms. A recent classification is based upon

dune formation and identifies two primary forms – free and anchored – with secondary forms being established according to morphology or orientation, in the case of free dunes, and vegetation and topography, in the case of anchored dunes (Livingstone and Warren 1996, 75) (Table 10.2).

**Free dunes** may be classed according to orientation (transverse) or form (linear, star, and sheet)

(Figure 10.8). All types of **transverse dune** cover about 40 per cent of active and stabilized sand seas. The transverse variety (Table 10.2) is produced by unidirectional winds and forms asymmetric ridges that look like a series of barchan dunes whose horns are joined, with their slip faces all facing roughly in the same direction. **Barchans** are isolated forms that are some 0.5–100 m high and 30–300 m wide

Table 10.2 A classification of dunes

Primary dune forms	Criteria for subdivision	Secondary dune forms	Description
Free	<i>Morphology or orientation:</i> Transverse	Transverse	Asymmetric ridge
		Barchan	Crescentic form
		Dome	Circular or elliptical mound
		Reversing	Asymmetric ridge with slip faces on either side of the crest
	Linear	Seif	Sharp-crested ridge
		Sand ridge	Rounded, symmetric ridge, straight or sinuous
	Star	Star	Central peak with three or more arms
		Network	Confused collection of individual dunes whose slip faces have no preferred orientation
	Sheets	Zibar	Coarse-grained bedform of low relief and possessing no slip face
		Streaks or stringers or sand sheets	Large bodies of sand with no discernible dune forms
Anchored	<i>Vegetation and topography:</i> Topography	Echo	Elongated ridge lying roughly parallel to, and separated from, the windward side of a topographic obstacle
		Climbing dune or sand ramp	Irregular accumulation going up the windward side of a topographic obstacle
		Cliff-top	Dune sitting atop a scarp
		Falling	Irregular accumulation going down the leeward side of a large topographic obstacle
		Lee	Elongated downwind from a topographic obstacle
		Fore	Roughly arcuate with arms extending downwind around either side of a topographic obstacle
	Vegetation	Lunette	Crescent-shaped opening upwind
		Vegetated sand mounds	Roughly elliptical to irregular in plan, streamlined downwind
		Parabolic	U-shaped or V-shaped in plan with arms opening upwind
		Coastal Blowout	Dunes formed behind a beach Circular rim around a depression

Source: Based on Livingstone and Warren (1996, 74–101)

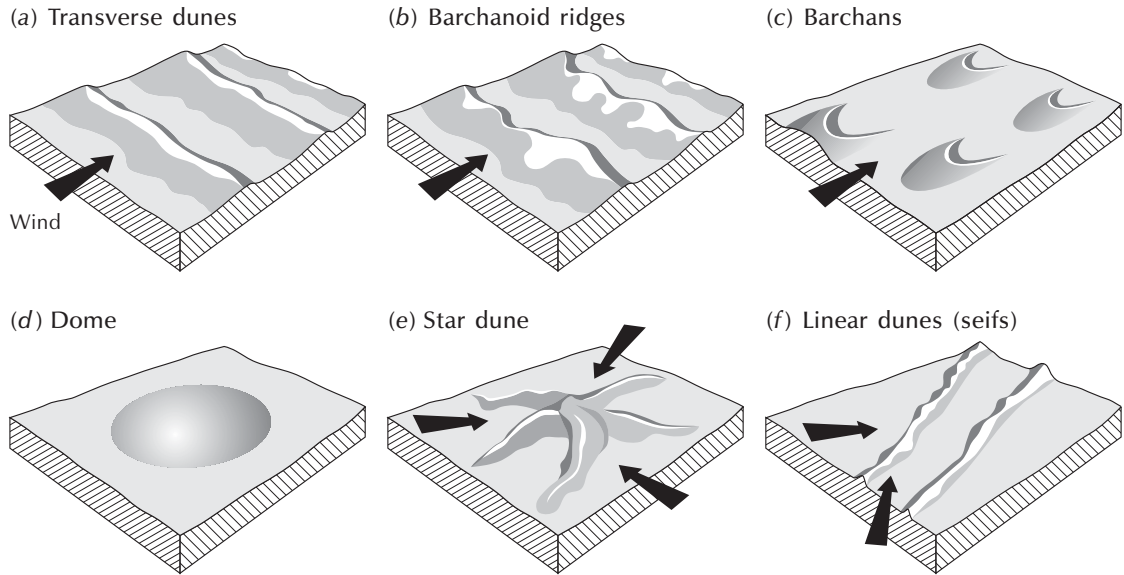


Figure 10.8 Types of free dune.  
Source: Adapted from McKee (1979)



Plate 10.5 A barchan in the United Arab Emirates. The dune is a mobile form that is migrating over a hard, clay-rich surface.  
(Photograph by Dave Thomas)

(Plate 10.5). They rest on firm desert surfaces, such as stone pavements, and move in the direction of the horns, sometimes as much as 40 m/yr. They form under conditions of limited sand supply and unidirectional winds. Other transverse dune types are domes and reversing dunes. **Domes** lack slip faces but have an orientation and pattern of sand transport allied to transverse dunes. **Reversing**

**dunes**, which have slip faces on opposite sides of the crest that form in response to wind coming from two opposing directions, are included in the transverse class because net sand transport runs at right-angles to the crest.

**Linear dunes** have slip faces on either side of a crest line, but only one of them is active at any time, and sand transport runs parallel to the crest. They

may be divided into sharp-crested *seifs*, also called *siefs* and *sayfs* (Plate 10.6), and more rounded sand ridges. Both are accumulating forms that trap downwind sand from two directions. Linear dunes occur in all the world's major sandy deserts. They stand from less than a couple of metres high to around a couple of hundred metres high and may extend for tens of kilometres. They often run parallel but many meander with varied spacing and may join at 'Y' or 'tuning fork' junctions.

**Dune networks** and **star dunes** possess a confused set of slip faces that point in several directions. Dune networks, which are very widespread, usually occur in a continuous sand cover. They are composed of dunes no more than a few metres high and spaced 100 m or so apart. Stars dunes bear several arms that radiate from a central peak (Plate



Plate 10.6 Partially vegetated and sinuous linear dunes in the south-west Kalahari.  
(Photograph by Dave Thomas)



Plate 10.7 A large star dune, over 200 m high, near Sossus Vlei in the Namib Desert.  
(Photograph by Dave Thomas)

10.7). They may be up to 400 m high and spaced between about 150 and at least 5,000 m. Found in many of the world's major sand seas, star dunes cover a large area only in the Great Eastern sand sea of Algeria.

Sheets of sand come in two varieties – zibars and streaks. **Zibars** are coarse-grained bedforms of low relief with no slip faces. Their surfaces consist exclusively of wind ripples and local shadow and shrub-coppice dunes. They are common on sand sheets and upwind of sand seas. **Streaks**, also called **sand sheets** or **stringers**, are large bodies of sand that bear no obvious dune forms. They occupy larger areas of sand seas than accumulations with dunes.

### Anchored dunes

Several types of dune are controlled by vegetation, topography, or local sediment sources. These **anchored** or **impeded dunes** come in a variety of forms (Table 10.2; Figure 10.9). Several distinct types of anchored dune are caused by topographic features. **Lee dunes** and **foredunes** are connected to the pattern of airflow around obstacles. Wind-tunnel experiments have shown that the growth of

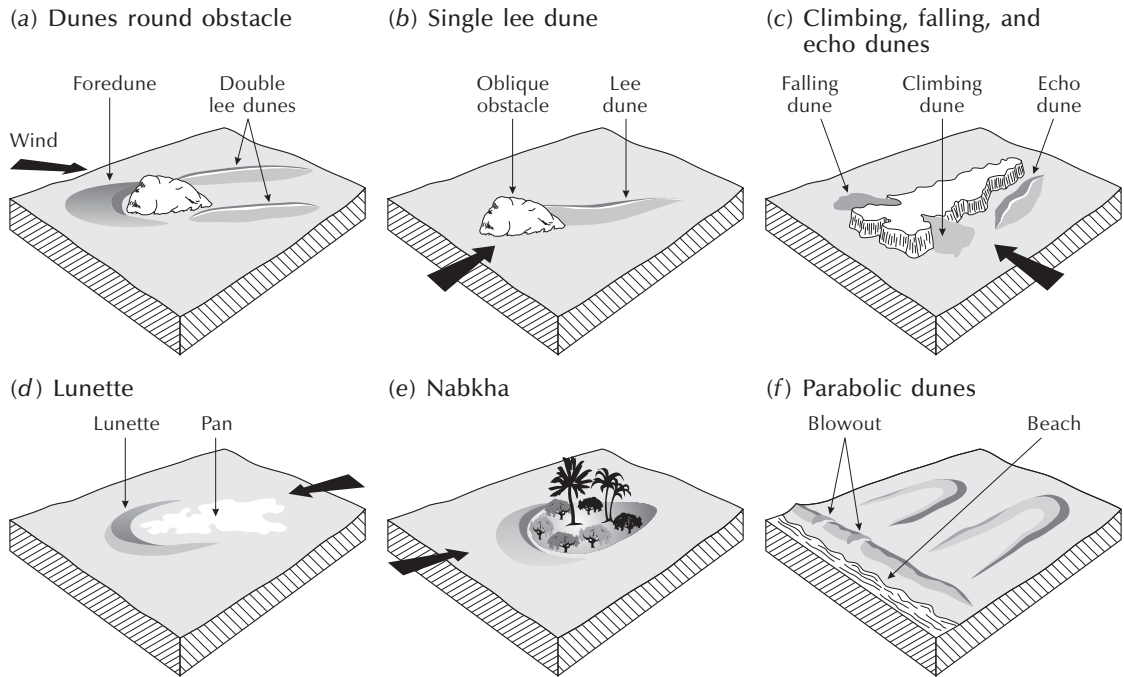


Figure 10.9 Types of anchored dune.

Source: Partly adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 88)



Plate 10.8 Small climbing dunes in the Mohave Desert, western USA.

(Photograph by Dave Thomas)

climbing dunes (Plate 10.8) and echo dunes depends upon the slope of the obstacle. When the upwind slope of an obstacle is less than around  $30^\circ$ , sand blows over it. When it is above  $30^\circ$ , then sand

is trapped and a climbing dune or sand ramp forms. If it exceeds  $50^\circ$ , then an echo dune forms at an upwind distance of some thrice the height of the obstacle. Cliff-top dunes may form in the zone of



slightly lower wind velocity just beyond the crest of an obstacle. **Falling dunes** form in the lee of an obstacle, where the air is calmer. If the obstacle is narrow, then sand moving around the edges may form lee dunes that extend downwind. **Lunettes** are crescent-shaped dunes that open upwind and are associated with pans (p. 259).

Plants may act as foci for dune formation and three types of dune are associated with vegetation. The commonest type of plant-anchored dune is **vegetated sand mounds**, also known as *nabkha*, *nebkha*, shrub dunes, or hummock dunes (Plate 10.9). These form around a bush or clump of grass, which acts as an obstacle for sand entrapment. **Parabolic dunes**, or 'hairpin' dunes, are U-shaped or V-shaped in plan with their arms opening upwind. They are common in vegetated desert margins. In the Thar Desert, India, they may attain heights of many tens of metres. They are also found in cold climates, as in Canada and the central USA, and at coastal sites. As to their formation, it is generally thought that parabolic dunes grow from blowouts. **Blowouts** are depressions created by the deflation of loose sand partly bound by plant roots. They are bare hollows within vegetated dunes and are very common in coastal dunes and in stabilized (vegetated) dunes around desert margins.

## Dunefields and sand seas

**Dunefields** are accumulations of sand, occupying areas of less than 30,000 km<sup>2</sup> with at least ten individual dunes spaced at distances exceeding the dune wavelength (Cooke *et al.* 1993, 403). They contain relatively small and simple dunes. They may occur anywhere that loose sand is blown by the wind, even at high latitudes, and there are thousands of them. In North America, dunefields occur in the south-western region, and in intermontane basins such as Kelso and Death Valley, California.

**Sand seas** differ from dunefields in covering areas exceeding 30,000 km<sup>2</sup> and in bearing more complex and bigger dunes. In both sand seas and dunefields, ridges or mounds of sand may be repeated in rows, giving the surface a wavy appearance. About 60 per cent of sand seas are dune-covered, while others may be dune-free and comprise low sand sheets, often with some vegetation cover. Sand seas have several local names: ergs in the northern Sahara, *edeyen* in Libya, *qoz* in the Sahara, *koum* or *kum* and *peski* in Central Asia, and *nafud* or *nefud* in Arabia. They are regional accumulations of windblown sand with complex ancestry that are typically dominated by very large dunes (at least 500 m long or wide or both) of compound or complex form with transverse or pyramidal shapes (Figure 10.10). They also



Plate 10.9 *Nebkha* dunes formed from gypsum-rich sands in central Tunisia. Note that the palm trees in the background are growing on an artesian spring mound. (Photograph by Dave Thomas)



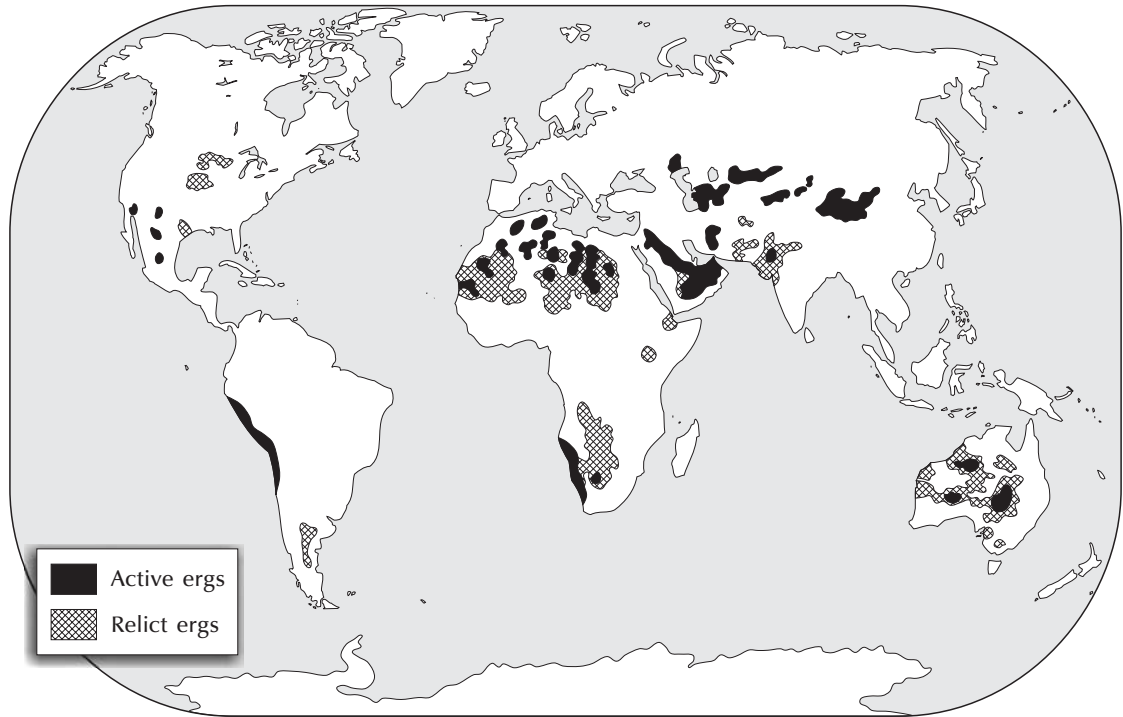


Figure 10.10 World distribution of active and relict ergs.  
Sources: Adapted from Sarnthein (1978) and Wells (1989)

include accumulations of playa and lake deposits between the dunes and areas of fluvial, lake, and marine sediments. Sand seas are confined to areas where annual rainfall is less than 150 mm within two latitudinal belts, one  $20^{\circ}$ – $40^{\circ}$  N and the other  $20^{\circ}$ – $40^{\circ}$  S. The largest sand sea is the Rub' al Khali (the 'Empty Quarter') in Saudi Arabia, which is part of a 770,000-km<sup>2</sup> area of continuous dunes. About fifty comparable, if somewhat less extensive, sand seas occur in North and southern Africa, Central and Western Asia, and central Australia. In South America, the Andes constrain the size of sand seas, but they occur in coastal Peru and north-western Argentina and contain very large dunes. In North America, the only active sand sea is in the Gran Desierto of northern Sonora, northern Mexico, which extends northwards into the Yuma Desert of Arizona and the Algodones Dunes of south-eastern California. The Nebraska Sand Hills are a sand sea

that has been fixed by vegetation. A single sand sea may store vast quantities of sand. The Erg Oriental, with an area of 192,000 km<sup>2</sup> and average thickness of 26 m, houses 4,992 km<sup>3</sup> of sand. The Namib Sand Sea is more modest, storing 680 km<sup>3</sup> of sand (Lancaster 1999). Sand seas that have accumulated in subsiding basins may be at least 1,000 m thick, but others, such as the ergs of linear dunes in the Simpson and Great Sandy Deserts of Australia, are as thick as the individual dunes that lie on the alluvial plains.

Dunefields and sand seas occur largely in regions lying downwind of plentiful sources of dry, loose sand, such as dry river beds and deltas, floodplains, glacial outwash plains, dry lakes, and beaches. Almost all major ergs are located downwind from abandoned river courses in dry areas lacking vegetation that are prone to persistent wind erosion. Most of the Sahara sand supply, for instance,

probably comes from alluvial, fluvial, and lacustrine systems fed by sediments originating from the Central African uplands, which are built of Neogene beds. The sediments come directly from deflation of alluvial sediments and, in the cases of the Namib, Gran Desierto, Sinai, Atacama, and Arabian sand seas, indirectly from coastal sediments. Conventional wisdom holds that sand from these voluminous sources moves downwind and piles up as very large dunes in places where its transport is curtailed by topographic barriers that disrupt airflow or by airflow being forced to converge. By this process, whole ergs and dunefields may migrate downwind

for hundreds of kilometres from their sand sources. However, the pattern of dunes within sand seas appears to involve several factors (Box 10.2).

### Loess

Loess is a terrestrial sediment composed largely of windblown silt particles made of quartz. It covers some 5 to 10 per cent of the Earth's land surface, much of it forming a blanket over pre-existing topography that may be up to 400 m thick (Figure 10.11; Plate 10.10). Loess is easily eroded by running water and possesses underground pipe

#### Box 10.2

##### DUNE PATTERNS IN SAND SEAS: THE HISTORICAL DIMENSION

The dune forms in a sand sea are primarily a response to wind conditions and sand supply. Nonetheless, the pattern of dunes in many sand seas is much more intricate and requires more involved explanations (Lancaster 1999). Recent research points to the significance of sea-level and climatic changes in affecting sediment supply, sediment availability, and wind energy. The upshot of such changes is the production of different generations of dunes. So, the varied size, spacing, and nature of dunes in sand seas catalogue changes in sand supply, sand availability, and sand mobility that have produced many superimposed generations of dune forms, each of a distinct type, size, alignment, and composition. In addition, the large dunes that characterize sand seas – compound dunes and complex dunes, mega-dunes, and draa – commonly seem to be admixtures of several phases of dune building, stabilization, and reworking. The indications are that, rather than being solely the production of contemporary processes, the form of sand seas is partly inherited and to unlock the historical processes involved requires investigations of past conditions affecting sand

accumulation. Vast sand accumulations take much time to grow. Ergs with very large dunes, as in the Arabian Peninsula, North Africa, and Central Asia, may have taken a million or more years to form (Wilson 1971). Certainly, cycles of climatic change during the Quaternary period, involving swings from glacial to interglacial conditions, have played a key role in influencing sediment supply, availability, and mobility. Furthermore, different sand seas may react differently to sea-level and climatic changes. A crucial factor appears to be the size of the sand source. Where the sand supply is small, as in the Simpson Desert and the Akchar sand sea of Mauritania, the chief control on aeolian accumulation is sediment availability and sand seas suffer multiple episodes of dune reworking. Where sand supply is plentiful, as in the Gran Desierto, Namib, and Wahiba sand seas, the accumulation of sand is effectively unlimited and multiple dune generations are likely to develop. A third possibility, which applies to the Australian Desert, is where sand accumulation is limited by the transporting capacity of the wind.

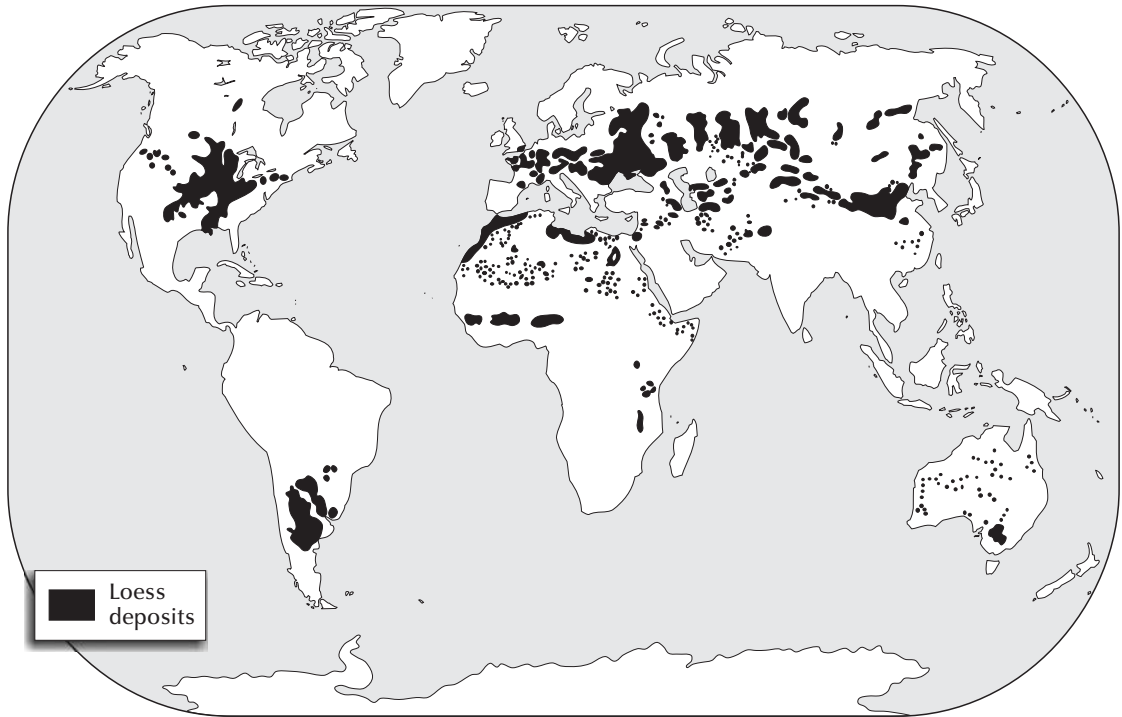


Figure 10.11 World distribution of loess.

Source: Adapted from Livingstone and Warren (1996, 58)



Plate 10.10 Section through a ~15-m-thick loess exposure on the Columbia Plateau in Washington state, USA. (Photograph by Kate Richardson)

systems, pseudo-karst features, and gullies. In areas of high relief, landslides are a hazard.

To form, loess requires three things: (1) a source of silt; (2) wind to transport the silt; and (3) a suitable site for deposition and accumulation (Pye

and Sherwin 1999). In the 1960s, it was thought that the quartz-dominated silt needed for loess formation was provided by glacial grinding of rocks. It is now known that several other processes produce silt-sized particles – comminution by rivers,

abrasion by wind, frost weathering, salt weathering, and chemical weathering. However produced, medium and coarse silt is transported near the ground surface in short-term suspension and by saltation. Materials of this size are easily trapped by vegetation, topographic obstacles, and water bodies. Fine silt may be borne further and be brought down by wet or dry deposition. This is why loess becomes thinner and finer-grained away from the dust source. To accumulate, dust must be deposited on rough surfaces because deposits on a dry and smooth surface are vulnerable to resuspension by wind or impacting particles. Vegetation surfaces encourage loess accumulation. Even so, for a 'typical' loess deposit to form, the dust must accumulate at more than 0.5 mm/year, which is equivalent to a mass accumulation of 625 g/m<sup>2</sup>/yr. A lower rate of deposition will lead to dilution by weathering, by mixing by burrowing animals, by mixing with other sediments, and by colluvial reworking. During the late Pleistocene in North America and Western Europe, loess accumulated at more than 2 mm/yr, equivalent to 2,600 g/m<sup>2</sup>/yr.

## HUMANS AND AEOLIAN LANDSCAPES

Wind erosion may bring about long-term impacts on humans and human activities. It may damage agricultural and recreational lands, and, on occasions, impair human health. As Livingstone and Warren (1996, 144) put it:

There has been and continues to be massive investment across the world in the control of aeolian geomorphological processes. It has happened in Saharan and Arabian oases for thousands of years; on the Dutch coast since the fourteenth century; on the Danish sandlands particularly in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries; in the Landes of south-western France from the nineteenth century; in the United States since the Dust Bowl of the 1930s; on the Israeli coast since shortly after the creation of the State in the late 1940s; on the Russian and central Asian steppes since the Stalinist period; since the 1950s in the oil-rich desert countries of the Middle East; since the early 1970s in the Sahel, North Africa, India and China; and less intensively but signif-

icantly in other places. In most of these situations, applied aeolian geomorphology won huge resources and prestige.

The chief problems are the erosion of agricultural soils, the raising of dust storms, and the activation of sand dunes, all of which may result from human disturbance, overgrazing, drought, deflated areas, and the emissions of alkali-rich dust (see Livingstone and Warren 1996, 144–71).

### Cases of wind erosion

The **Dust Bowl** of the 1930s is the classic example of wind erosion (Box 10.3). Even greater soil-erosion events occurred in the Eurasian steppes in the 1950s and 1960s. On a smaller scale, loss of soil by wind erosion in Britain, locally called blowing, is a worse problem than erosion by water. The light sandy soils of East Anglia, Lincolnshire, and east Yorkshire, and the light peats of the Fens are the most susceptible. **Blows** can remove up to 2 cm of topsoil containing seeds, damage crops by sandblasting them, and block ditches and roads. Blowing is recorded as long ago as the thirteenth century, but the problem worsened during the 1960s, probably owing to a change in agricultural practices. Inorganic fertilizers replaced farmyard manure, heavy machinery was brought in to cultivate and harvest some crops, and hedgerows were grubbed to make fields better-suited to mechanized farming. Intensively cultivated areas with light soils in Europe are generally prone to wind erosion and the subject of the European Union research project on **Wind Erosion and European Light Soils (WEELS)** (e.g. Riksen and De Graaff 2001). This international project was started in 1998 and looked at sites in England, Sweden, Germany, and the Netherlands where serious wind-erosion problems occur. The damage recorded depended very much on landscape factors and land-use. Most on-site damage, mainly in the form of crop losses and the cost of reseeded, occurred in sugar beet, oilseed rape, potato, and maize fields. In the cases of sugar beet and oilseed rape, the costs may be as much as €500 per hectare every five years, although farmers are fully aware of

**Box 10.3****THE DUST BOWL**

The natural vegetation of the southern Great Plains of Colorado, Kansas, New Mexico, Oklahoma, and Texas is prairie grassland adapted to low rainfall and occasional severe droughts. During the 'Dirty Thirties', North American settlers arrived from the east. Being accustomed to more rainfall, they ploughed up the prairie and planted wheat. Wet years saw good harvests; dry years, which were common during the 1930s, brought crop failures and dust storms. In 1934 and 1935, conditions were atrocious. Livestock died from eating excessive amounts of sand, human sickness increased due to the dust-laden air. Machinery was ruined, cars were damaged, and some roads became impassable. The starkness of the conditions is evoked in a report of the time:

The conditions around innumerable farmsteads are pathetic. A common farm scene is one with high drifts filling yards, banked high against buildings, and partly or wholly covering farm machinery, wood piles, tanks, troughs, shrubs, and young trees. In the fields near by may be seen the stretches of hard, bare, unproductive subsoil and sand drifts piled along fence rows, across farm roads, and around Russian-thistles and other plants. The effects of the black blizzards [massive dust storms that blotted out the Sun and turned day into night] are generally similar to those

of snow blizzards. The scenes are dismal to the passerby; to the resident they are demoralizing.  
(Joel 1937, 2)

The results were the abandonment of farms and an exodus of families, remedied only when the prairies affected were put back under grass. The effects of the dust storms were not always localized:

On 9 May [1934], brown earth from Montana and Wyoming swirled up from the ground, was captured by extremely high-level winds, and was blown eastward toward the Dakotas. More dirt was sucked into the airstream, until 350 million tons were riding toward urban America. By late afternoon the storm had reached Dubuque and Madison, and by evening 12 million tons of dust were falling like snow over Chicago – 4 pounds for each person in the city. Midday at Buffalo on 10 May was darkened by dust, and the advancing gloom stretched south from there over several states, moving as fast as 100 miles an hour. The dawn of 11 May found the dust settling over Boston, New York, Washington, and Atlanta, and then the storm moved out to sea. Savannah's skies were hazy all day 12 May; it was the last city to report dust conditions. But there were still ships in the Atlantic, some of them 300 miles off the coast, that found dust on their decks during the next day or two.  
(Worster 1979, 13–14)

the risk of wind erosion and take preventive measures. In Sweden, measures taken to reduce wind erosivity include smaller fields, autumn sowing, rows planted on wind direction, mixed cropping, and shelterbelts. And measures taken to reduce soil erodibility include minimum tillage, manuring, applying rubber emulsion, watering the soil, and pressing furrows.

**Modelling wind erosion**

Researchers have devised empirical models, similar in form to the Universal Soil Loss Equation (p. 61),

to predict the potential amount of wind erosion under given conditions and to serve as guide to the management practices needed to control the erosion. The **Wind Erosion Equation (WEQ)**, originally developed by William S. Chepil, takes the form:

$$E = f(I, C, K, L, V)$$

where  $E$  is the soil loss by wind,  $I$  is the erodibility of the soil (vulnerability to wind erosion),  $C$  is a factor representing local wind conditions,  $K$  is the soil surface roughness,  $L$  is the width of the field in the direction of the prevailing wind, and  $V$  is a

measure of the vegetation cover. Although this equation is similar to the ULSE, its components cannot be multiplied together to find the result. Instead, graphical, tabular, or computer solutions are required. Originally designed to predict wind erosion in the Great Plains, the WEQ has been applied to other regions in the USA, especially by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). However, the WEQ suffered from several drawbacks. It was calibrated for conditions in eastern Kansas, where the climate is rather dry; it was only slowly adapted to tackle year-round changes in crops and soils; it was unable to cope with the complex interplay between crops, weather, soil, and erosion; and it over-generalized wind characteristics.

Advances in computing facilities and databases have prompted the development of a more refined **Wind Erosion Prediction System (WEPS)**, which is designed to replace WEQ. This computer-based model simulates the spatial and temporal variability of field conditions and soil erosion and deposition within fields of varying shapes and edge types and complex topographies. It does so by using the basic processes of wind erosion and the processes that influence the erodibility of the soil. Another **Revised Wind Erosion Equation (RWEQ)** has been used in conjunction with GIS databases to scale up the field-scale model to a regional model (Zobeck *et al.* 2000). An **integrated wind-erosion modelling system**, built in Australia, combines a physically based wind-erosion scheme, a high-resolution atmospheric model, a dust-transport model, and a GIS database (Lu and Shao 2001). The system predicts the pattern and intensity of wind erosion, and especially dust emissions from the soil surface and dust concentrations in the atmosphere. It can also be used to predict individual dust-storm events.

## SUMMARY

Wind erodes dry, bare, fine-grained soils and sediments. It is most effective in deserts, sandy coasts,

and alluvial plains next to glaciers. Wind erodes by deflating sediments and sandblasting rocks. Particles caught by the wind bounce (saltation), hop (reptation), 'float' (suspension), or roll and slide (creep). Wind deposits particles by dropping them or ceasing to propel them along the ground. Several landforms are products of wind erosion. Examples are lag deposits and stone pavements, deflation hollows and pans, yardangs and *Zeugens*, and ventifacts. Sand accumulations range in size from ripples, through dunes, to dunefields and sand seas. Dunes may be grouped into free and anchored types. Free dunes include transverse dunes, seifs, star dunes, and zibars. Anchored dunes form with the help of topography or vegetation. They include echo dunes, falling dunes, parabolic dunes, and coastal dunes. Dunefields and sand seas are collection of individual dunes. The largest sand sea – the Rub' al Khali of Saudi Arabia – occupies 770,000 km<sup>2</sup>. Loess is an accumulation of windblown silt particles and covers about 5 to 10 per cent of the land surface. Wind erosion can often be a self-inflicted hazard to humans, damaging agricultural and recreational land and harming human health. Several models predict wind erosion at field and regional scales, the latest examples combining physical processes with GIS databases and atmospheric models.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How does wind shape landforms?
  - 2 How do sand dunes form?
  - 3 Discuss the problems and remedies of soil erosion by wind.
- 

## FURTHER READING

Cooke, R. U., Warren, A., and Goudie, A. S. (1993) *Desert Geomorphology*. London: UCL Press. Comprehensive and clear account of form and process in arid and semi-arid environments.

Goudie, A. S., Livingstone, I., and Stokes, S. (eds) (1999) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

Perhaps a little heavy for the neophyte, but full of excellent papers.

Lancaster, N. (1995) *Geomorphology of Desert Dunes*. London: Routledge.

If you are interested in sand dunes, then look no further.

Livingstone, I. and Warren, A. (1996) *Aeolian Geomorphology: An Introduction*. Harlow, Essex: Longman. The best introduction to the subject. A must for the serious student.

Thomas, D. S. G. (ed.) (1997) *Arid Zone Geomorphology: Process, Form and Change in Drylands*, 2nd edn. Chichester, John Wiley & Sons.

An excellent collection of essays that is full of interesting ideas and examples.



## COASTAL LANDSCAPES

---

The relentless buffeting of coasts by waves and their perpetual washing by currents fashion a thin line of unique landforms. This chapter covers:

- waves, tides, and currents
- shoreline processes
- cliffs, caves, and other erosional coastal landforms
- beaches, barriers, and other depositional coastal landforms
- humans and coasts

### Cliff retreat: the Beachy Head rockfall

Beachy Head and the Seven Sisters cliffs to the west are made of a hard chalk and stand up to 160 m above sea level along the southern coast of England. On 10 and 11 January 1999, the upper part of Beachy Head collapsed. The fallen portion was about 70 m long and 17 m deep with a mass of 50,000–100,000 tonnes, which buried the cliff base and is seen as 5–10 m of accumulated chalk rubble with blocks up to 4 m in diameter. The failure occurred along one of the vertical joints or minor fault planes that are common in the chalk. To the east of the main slip, a fracture some 2 m deep and 1 m wide and extending up to 10 m from the cliff edge has appeared. It runs down most of the cliff face. The toe of the chalk rubble is eroded at high tide, when it produces a sediment plume that runs from just east of Beachy Head Cave to the unmanned Beachy Head Lighthouse. The cause of the rockfall is not certain, but 1998 was a wetter year than normal and during the fortnight before the fall, heavy rain fell on most days. The wet conditions may have increased the pore pressures in the chalk and triggered the rockfall. Events such as the Beachy Head rockfall have been occurring for thousands of years along southern and eastern English coastlines and have led to cliff retreat.

---

## COASTAL ENVIRONMENTS

### Waves

Waves are undulations formed by wind blowing over a water surface. They are caused by turbulence in airflow generating pressure variations on the water. Once formed, waves help to disturb the airflow and are partly self-sustaining. Energy is transferred from the wind to the water within the wave-generation area. The amount of energy transfer depends upon the wind speed, the wind duration (how long the wind blows), and the fetch (the extent of water over which the wind blows). **Sea waves** are formed by the wind within the generation area. They often have short crests and steep cross-sections, and are irregular. In mid-ocean, prolonged strong winds associated with severe storms and blowing over hundreds of kilometres produce waves more than 20 m high that travel up to 80 km/hr. On passing out of the generation area, sea waves become **swell waves** (or simply **swell**) and they are more regular with longer periods and longer crests. They may travel thousands of kilometres across oceans.

Waves formed in water deep enough for free orbital motion to occur are called **waves of oscillation**. The motion is called 'free orbital' because the chief movement of the water is roughly circular in the direction of flow, moving forwards on the crest, upwards on the front, backwards in the trough, and downwards on the back (Figure 11.1). Water moves slowly in the direction of wave propagation because water moves faster on the crest than in the troughs. Oscillatory waves form **wave trains**. **Solitary waves** or **waves of translation**, in contrast, involve water moving in the direction of propagation without any compensatory backward motion. They are single, independent units and not associated with wave trains. They lack the distinct crests and troughs of oscillatory waves and appear as weals separated by almost flat water surfaces and are effective transporters and eroders of sediments and rocks. They are often generated by the breaking of oscillatory waves.

Once waves approaching a coastline 'feel bottom', they slow down. The waves crowd together and their fronts steepen. **Wave refraction** occurs because the inshore part of a wave crest moves more slowly than the offshore part, owing to the shallow

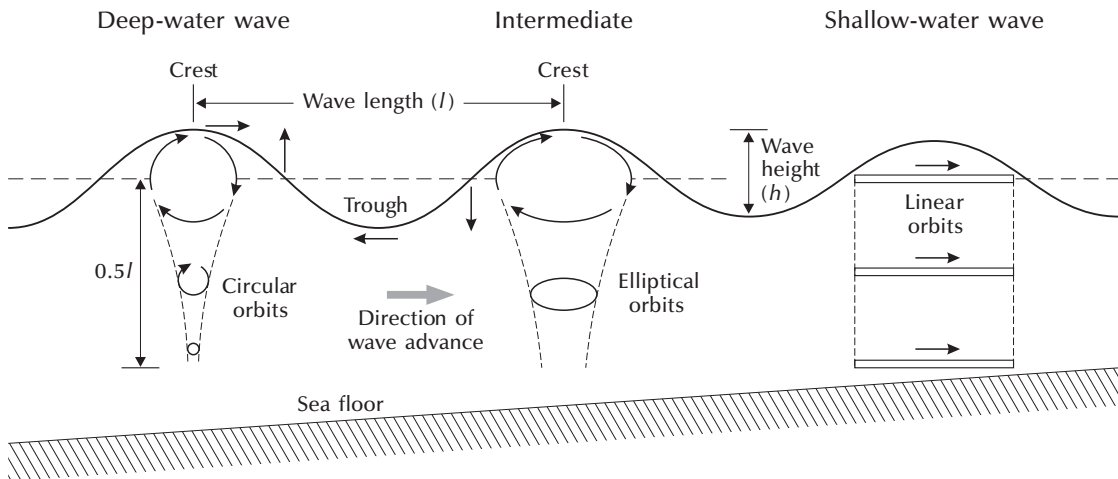


Figure 11.1 Terms associated with waves, including the orbital motion of waves in deep, intermediate, and shallow water.

Source: Adapted from Komar (1998, 166)

water depth, and the offshore part swings forwards and the wave crests tend to run parallel to the depth contours. Wave refraction near a submarine canyon and a headland is shown in Figure 11.2.

Eventually, the waves lunge forwards or break to form surf. In breaking, waves of oscillation convert to waves of translation and rush up the beach as **swash**. After having attained its farthestmost forward position, the water runs down the seaward slope as **backwash**. Four types of breaking wave are recognized: spilling, plunging, collapsing, and surging (Figure 11.3). **Spilling breakers** give the appearance of foam cascading down from the peaking wave crest. **Plunging breakers** have waves curling over and a mass of water collapsing onto the sea surface. **Collapsing breakers** have wave crests peaking as if about to plunge, but the base of the wave then rushes up the shore as a thin layer of foaming water. **Surging breakers** retain a smooth wave form with no prominent crest as they slide up the shore, entraining little air in the act. The occurrence of these waves depends upon the deep-water wave height and the bottom slope. For a given deep-water wave height, waves will spill, plunge, collapse, and surge with increasing bottom slope. Spilling waves require a slope of less than about  $11^\circ$ , plunging waves up to  $36^\circ$ , collapsing waves up to  $50^\circ$ , and surging waves more than  $50^\circ$ .

Breaking waves are either **constructive** or **destructive**, depending on whether they cause a net shoreward or a net seaward movement of beach material. As a rule of thumb, surging, spilling, and collapsing breakers create a strong swash and gentle backwash and tend to be constructive, washing sediment onto a beach. Plunging waves have a relatively short swash and longer backwash and tend to be destructive, removing material from a beach.

### Nearshore currents

Currents are created in the nearshore zone that have a different origin from ocean currents, tidal currents, and wind-induced currents. **Nearshore currents** are produced by waves. They include longshore currents, rip currents, and offshore currents. **Long-**

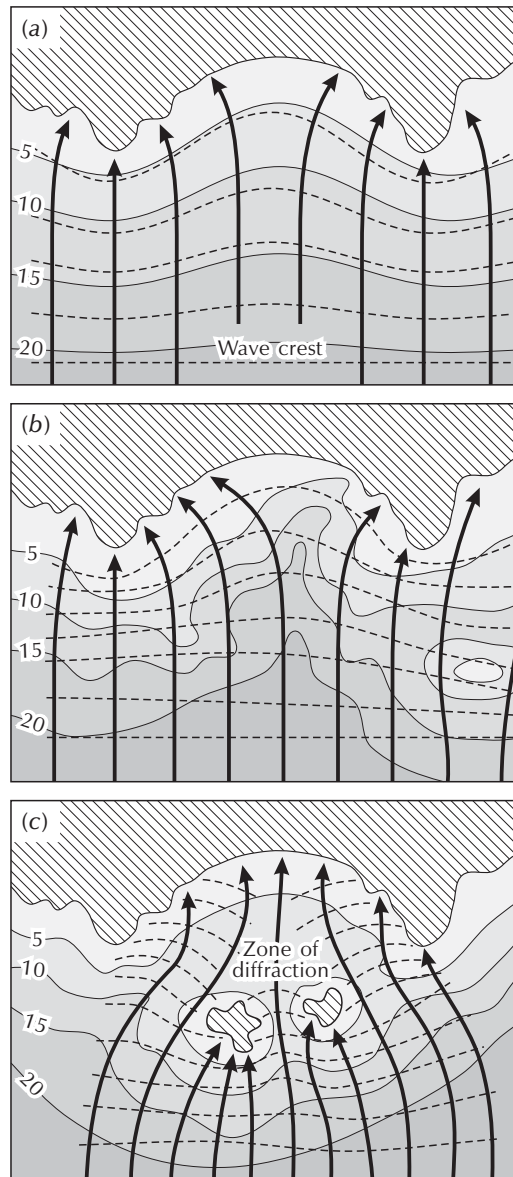


Figure 11.2 Wave refraction approaching headlands and bays above differing offshore topography.

Source: Adapted from Bird (2000, 11)

**shore or littoral currents** are created when waves approach a coastline obliquely. They dominate the surf zone and travel parallel to the coast. **Rip**

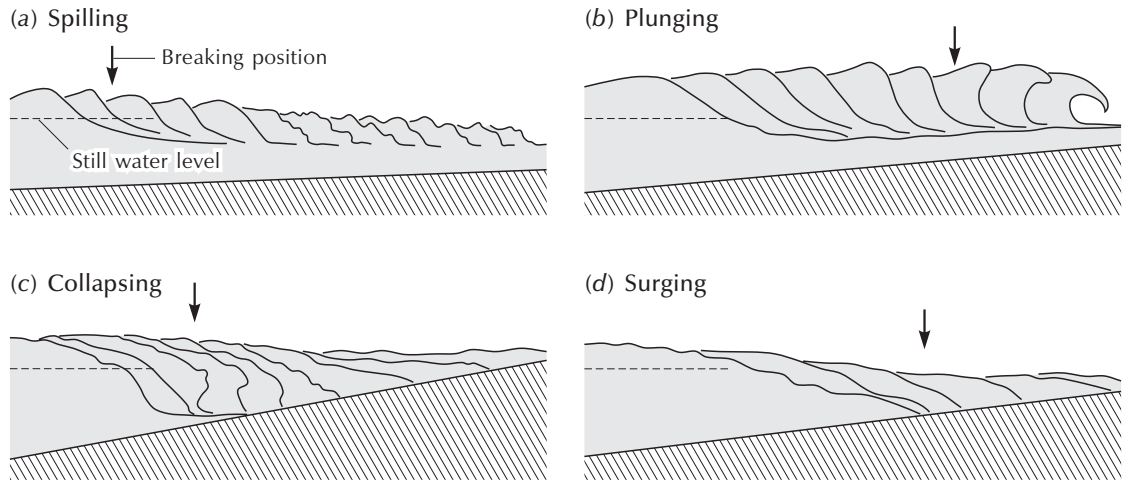


Figure 11.3 Kinds of breaking waves derived from high-speed moving pictures.  
 Source: Adapted from Komar (1998, 210)

**currents, or rips**, are fed by longshore currents and develop at more or less regular intervals perpendicularly to the beach and flow through the breaker zone. They are strong currents and dangerous to swimmers. **Onshore currents** are slower and develop between rip currents. Even where waves approach a coastline head on, a nearshore circulation of longshore currents, rip currents, and onshore currents may evolve.

## Tsunamis

**Tsunamis** are commonly produced by faulting of the sea floor, and much less commonly by volcanic eruptions, landslides or slumping, or by impacting asteroids and comets. They are also referred to as tidal waves, although they bear no relation to tides and are named after the Japanese word meaning 'harbour wave'. The pushing up of water by sudden changes in the ocean floor generates a tsunami. From the site of generation, a tsunami propagates across the deep ocean at up to 700 km/hr. While in the deep ocean, a tsunami is not perceptible as it is at most a few metres high with a wavelength about 600 times longer than its height. On approaching

land, a tsunami slows down to around 100 km/hr and grows in height by a factor of about ten. It rushes ashore, either as a tide-like flood, or, if wave refraction and shoaling allow, a high wall of water.

Tsunamis occur on a regular basis. The historical average is fifty-seven tsunamis per decade, but in the period 1990–99 eighty-two were reported, ten of which were generated by earthquakes associated with plate collisions around the Pacific Rim and killed more than 4,000 people (Box 11.1).

## Tides

Tides are the movement of water bodies set up by the gravitational interaction between celestial bodies, mainly the Earth, the Moon, and the Sun. They cause changes of water levels along coasts. In most places, there are **semi-diurnal tides** – two highs and two lows in a day. **Spring tides**, which are higher than normal high tides, occur every 14–15 days when the Moon and Sun are in alignment. **Neap tides**, which are lower than normal low tides, alternate with spring tides and occur when the Sun and Moon are positioned at an angle of 90° with respect to the Earth. The form of the 'tidal wave'

**Box 11.1****THE 1998 PAPUA NEW GUINEAN TSUNAMI**

On 17 July 1998, a major earthquake occurred some 70 km south-east of Vanimo, Papua New Guinea. It had an epicentre about 20 km offshore and a depth of focus of less than 33 km. It registered a magnitude of 7.1. The earthquake stirred up three locally destructive tsunamis. Minutes after the earthquake rocked the area, the successive tsunamis, the largest of which was about 10 m high, buffeted three fishing villages – Sissano, Arop, and Warapu – and other smaller villages along a 30 km stretch of coast west of Arape. The subsequent events were described by a survivor, retired Colonel John Sanawe, who lived near the south-east end of the sandbar at Arop (González 1999). He reported that, just after the main shock struck, the sea rose above the horizon and then sprayed vertically some 30 m. Unexpected sounds – first like distant thunder and then like a nearby helicopter – faded as he watched the sea recede below the normal low-water mark. After four or five minutes' silence, he heard a rumble like a low-flying jet plane and then spotted

his first tsunami, perhaps 3–4 m high. He tried to run home but the wave overtook him. A second and larger wave flattened the village and swept him a kilometre into a mangrove forest on the inland shore of the lagoon. Other villagers were not so lucky. Some were carried across the lagoon and became impaled on broken mangrove branches. Many were struck by debris. Thirty survivors eventually lost limbs to gangrene, and saltwater crocodiles and wild dogs preyed on the dead before help could arrive. Two of the villages, one on the spit separating the sea from Sissano lagoon, were swept away by the rush of water. A priest's house was swept 200 m inland. At Warapu and at Arop no house was left standing and palm and coconut trees were torn out of the ground. In all, the tsunamis killed more than 2,200 people, including 240 children, and left more than 6,000 people homeless. About 18 minutes after the earthquake, the sea was calm again and the sand bar barren, with bare spots marking the former site of structures.

depends upon several factors, including the size and shape of the sea or ocean basin, the shape of the shoreline, and the weather. Much of the coastline around the Pacific Ocean has mixed tides, with highs and lows of differing magnitude in each 24-hour period. Antarctic coasts have diurnal tides with just one high and one low every 24 hours.

**Tidal ranges** have a greater impact on coastal processes than tidal types. Three tidal ranges are distinguished – **microtidal** (less than 2 m), **mesotidal** (2 to 4 m), and **macrotidal** (more than 4 m) – corresponding to small, medium, and large tidal ranges (Figure 11.4). A large tidal range tends to produce a broad intertidal zone, so waves must cross a wide and shallow shore zone before breaking against the high-tide line. This saps some of the

waves' energy and favours the formation of salt marshes and tidal flats. The greatest tidal ranges occur where the shape of the coast and the submarine topography effect an oscillation of water in phase with the tidal period. The tidal range is almost 16 m in the Bay of Fundy, north-eastern Canada. Some estuaries, such as the Severn Estuary in England, with high tidal ranges develop **tidal bores**, which are single waves several metres high that form as incoming tidal flow suffers drag on entering shallower water. Tidal bores run at up to 30 km/hr and are effective agents of erosion. Small tidal ranges encourage a more unremitting breaking of waves along the same piece of shoreline, which deters the formation of coastal wetlands.

Tides also produce tidal currents that run along

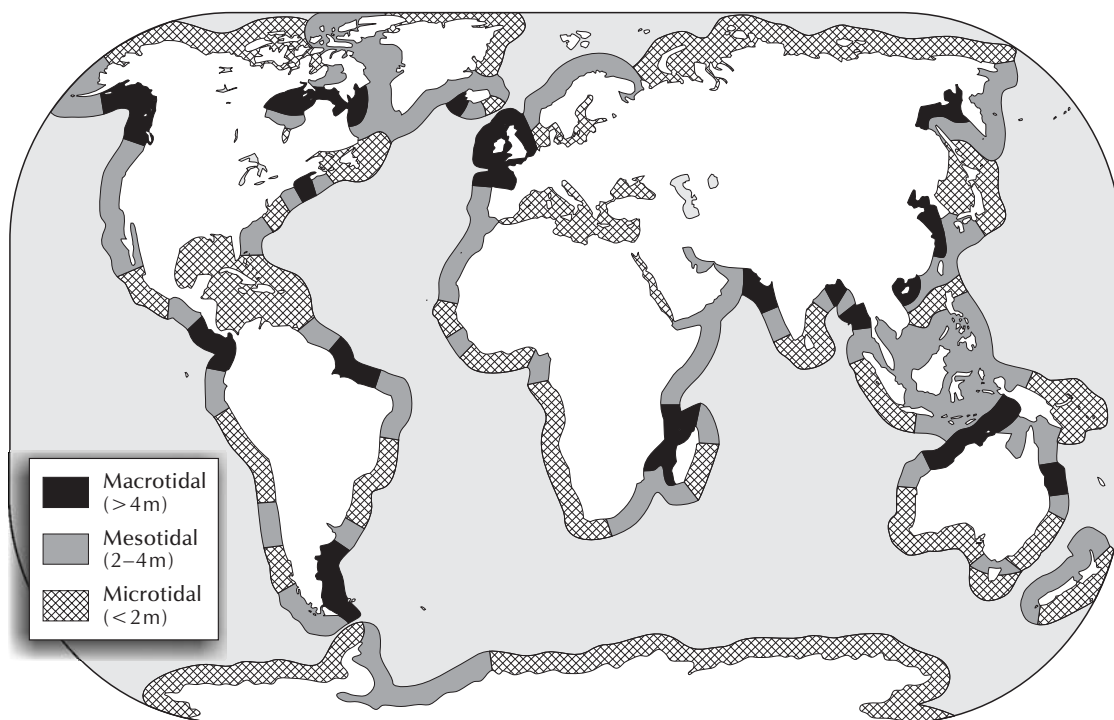


Figure 11.4 Global pattern of tidal range. The ranges indicated are for spring tides.  
 Source: Adapted from Davies (1980, 51)

the shoreline. They transport and erode sediment where they are strong, as in estuaries. Currents associated with rising or flood tides and falling or ebb tides often move in opposite directions.

## COASTAL PROCESSES

### Degradational processes

#### Shoreline weathering

The same weathering processes act upon shore environments as upon land environments, but the action of seawater and the repeated wetting and drying of rocks and sediments resulting from tides are extra factors with big effects. Direct chemical attack by seawater takes place on limestone coasts:

solution of carbonate rocks occurs, but as seawater is normally supersaturated with respect to calcium carbonate, it presumably takes place in rock pools, where the acidity of the seawater may change. Salt weathering is an important process in shoreline weathering, being most effective where the coastal rocks are able to absorb seawater and spray. As tides rise and fall, so the zone between the low-water mark and the highest limit reached by waves and spray at high tide is wetted and dried. Water-layer weathering is associated with these wetting and drying cycles. Biological erosion, or **bioerosion**, is the direct action of organisms on rock. It is probably more important in tropical regions, where wave energy is fairly weak and coastal substrates are home to a multitude of marine organisms. Tactics employed by organisms in the erosive process are chemical, mechanical, or a mixture of the two.

Algae, fungi, lichens, and animals without hard parts are limited to chemical attack through secretions. Algae, and especially cyanobacteria, are probably the most important bioerosional instruments on rock coasts. Many other animals secrete fluids that weaken the rock before abrading it with teeth and other hard parts. Grazing animals include gastropods, chitons, and echinoids (p. 120).

### Wave erosion

The pounding of the coast by waves is an enormously powerful process of erosion. The effects of waves vary with the resistance of the rocks being attacked and upon the wave energy. Where cliffs plunge straight into deep water, waves do not break before they strike and cause little erosion. Where waves break on a coastline, water is displaced up the shore and erosion and transport occur. Plunging breakers produce the greatest pressures on rocks – up to 600 kPa or more – because air may be trapped and compressed between the leading wave front and the shore. Air compression and the sudden impact of a large mass of water dislodges fractured rock and other loose particles, a process called **quarrying**. Well-jointed rocks and unconsolidated or loosely consolidated rocks are the most susceptible to wave erosion. Breaking waves also pick up debris and throw it against the shore, causing abrasion of shoreline materials. Some seashore organisms erode rocks by boring into them – some molluscs, boring sponges, and sea urchins do this (p. 120).

## Aggradational processes

### Sediment transport and deposition

Coastal sediments come from land inland of the shore or littoral zone, the offshore zone and beyond, and the coastal landforms themselves. In high-energy environments, cliff erosion may provide copious sediment, but in low-energy environments, which are common in the tropics, such erosion is minimal. For this reason, few tropical coasts

are formed in bedrock and tropical cliffs recede slowly, although fossil beaches and dunes are eroded by waves. Sediment from the land arrives through mass movement, especially where cliffs are being undercut. Gelifluction is common in periglacial environments. Nevertheless, the chief sediment source is fluvial erosion. Globally, rivers contribute a hundred times more sediment to coasts than marine erosion, with a proportionally greater contribution in the tropics and lower contribution at higher latitudes. Onshore transport of sediments may carry previously eroded beach material or fluvial sediments from the offshore zone to the littoral zone. Very severe storm waves, storm surges, and tsunamis may carry sediments from beyond the offshore zone. During the Holocene, sediment deposited on exposed continental shelves and then submerged by rising sea levels has been carried landwards. In some places, this supply of sediment appears to have dried up and some Holocene depositional landforms are being eroded.

Tides and wave action tend to move sediments towards and away from shorelines. However, owing to the effects of longshore currents, the primary sediment movement is along the coast, parallel to the shoreline. This movement, called **longshore drift**, depends upon the wave energy and the angle that the waves approach the coast. Longshore drift is maximal when waves strike the coast at around 30 degrees. It occurs below the breaker zone where waves are steep, or by beach drift where waves are shallow. **Beach drift** occurs as waves approaching a beach obliquely run up the shore in the direction of wave propagation, but their backwash moves down the steepest slope, normally perpendicular to the shoreline, under the influence of gravity (Figure 11.5). Consequently, particles being moved by swash and backwash follow a parabolic path that slowly moves them along the shore. Wherever beach drift is impeded, coastal landforms develop. Longshore currents and beach drifting may act in the same or opposite directions.



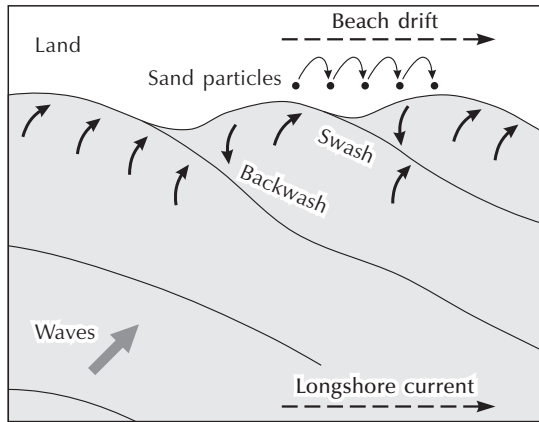


Figure 11.5 Beach drift.

Source: After Butzer (1976, 226)

### Biological activity

Some marine organisms build, and some help to build, particular coastal landforms. Corals and other carbonate-secreting organisms make coral reefs, which can be spectacularly large. The Great Barrier Reef extends along much of the north-east coast of Australia. Corals grow in the tropics, extratropical regions being too cold for them. Coral reefs cover about 2 million km<sup>2</sup> of tropical oceans and are the largest biologically built formation on Earth. Calcareous algae produce carbonate encrustations along many tropical shores.

Salt-tolerant plants colonize salt marshes. Mangroves are a big component of coastal tropical vegetation. With other salt-tolerant plants, they help to trap sediment in their root systems. Plants stabilize coastal dunes.

### COASTAL EROSIONAL LANDFORMS

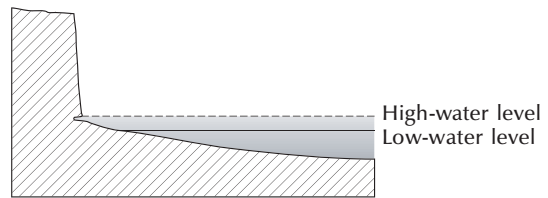
Erosional landforms dominate rocky coasts, but are also found in association with predominantly depositional landforms. Tidal creeks, for instance, occur within salt marshes. For the purposes of discussion, it seems sensible to deal with erosional

features based in depositional environments under the 'depositional landform' rubric, and to isolate rocky coasts as the quintessential landforms of destructive wave action.

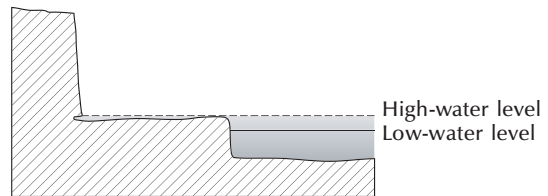
### Shore platforms and plunging cliffs

Rocky coasts fall into three chief types – two varieties of **shore platform** (sloping shore platform and horizontal shore platform) and **plunging cliff** (Figure 11.6). Variants of these basic types reflect rock types and geological structures, weathering properties of rocks, tides, exposure to wave attack, and the inheritance of minor changes in relative sea level (Sunamura 1992, 139).

(a) Sloping shore platform



(b) Horizontal shore platform



(c) Plunging cliff

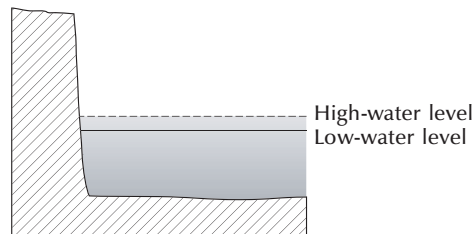


Figure 11.6 Three major forms on rocky coasts: shore platforms and plunging cliffs.



*Plate 11.1* Sloping shore platform at Flamborough Head, Yorkshire, England. (Photograph by Nick Scarle)

**Sloping platforms** are eye-catching features of rocky coasts (Plate 11.1). As their name intimates, they slope gently between about 1 and 5°. They are variously styled abrasion platforms, beach platforms, benches, coastal platforms, shore platforms, submarine platforms, wave-cut benches, wave-cut platforms, wave-cut terraces, and wave ramps. **Horizontal platforms** are flat or almost so (Plate 11.2). They too go by a host of names: abrasion or denuded benches, coastal platforms, low-rock terraces or platforms, marine benches, rock platforms, shore benches, shore platforms, storm-wave platforms, storm terraces, wave-cut benches, and wave-cut platforms. Some of these terms indicate causal agents, e.g. 'wave-cut' and 'abrasion'. Because the processes involved in platform evolution are not fully known, the purely descriptive term 'shore platform' is preferable to any others from the wide choice available.

Shore platforms can form only if cliffs recede through cliff erosion, which involves weathering and the removal of material by mass movement. Two basic factors determine the degree of cliff erosion: the force of the assailing waves and the resisting force of the rocks. Rock resistance to wave



*Plate 11.2* Horizontal shore platform at low tide, Atia Point, Kaikoura Peninsula, New Zealand. Higher Pleistocene coastal terraces are also visible, the highest standing at 108 m. (Photograph by Wayne Stephenson)

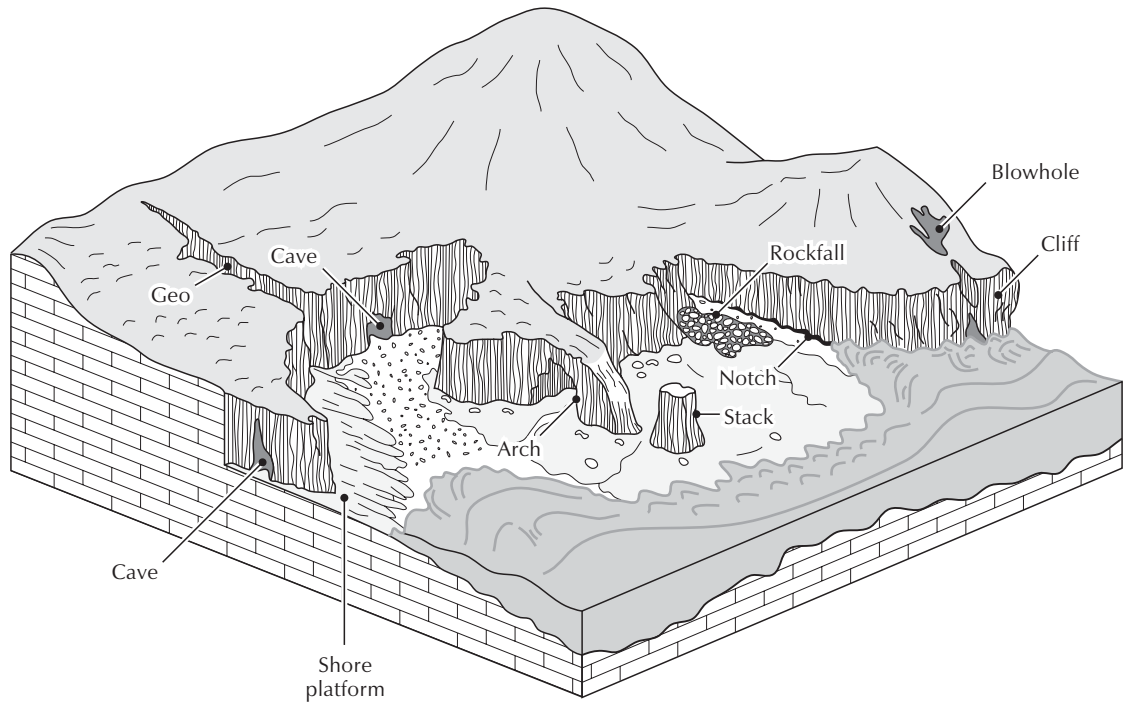


Figure 11.7 Erosional features of a rocky coast.

Source: After Trenhaile (1998, 264)

attack depends on weathering and fatigue effects and upon biological factors. Tidal effects are also significant as they determine the height of wave attack and the kind of waves doing the attacking, and as they may influence weathering and biological activities. The tide itself possesses no erosive force.

**Plunging-cliff coasts** lack any development of shore platforms. Most plunging cliffs are formed by the drowning of pre-existing, wave-formed cliffs resulting from a fall of land level or a rise of sea level.

### Landforms of cliffs and platforms

Several coastal features of rocky coasts are associated with the shore platforms and plunging cliffs (Figure 11.7), including cliffs, notches, ramps and ramparts, and several small-scale weathering (including solution pools and tafoni, p. 124) and

erosional features. Indeed, shore platforms, cliffs, stacks, arches, caves, and many other landforms routinely form conjointly.

### Cliffs, notches, ramps, ramparts, and potholes

**Cliffs** are steep or vertical slopes that rise precipitously from the sea or from a basal platform (Plate 11.3). About 80 per cent of the world's oceanic coasts are edged with cliffs (Emery and Kuhn 1982). Cliff-base **notches** are sure signs of cliff erosion (Plate 11.4). Shallow notches are sometimes called **nips**. The rate at which notches grow depends upon the strength of the rocks in which the cliff is formed, the energy of the waves arriving at the cliff base, and the amount of abrasive material churned up at the cliff-beach junction.



*Plate 11.3* Chalk cliffs at Flamborough Head, Yorkshire.  
(*Photograph by Nick Scarle*)



*Plate 11.4* Wave-cut, cliff-base notch in limestone, Ha Long Bay, Vietnam.  
(*Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos*)

**Ramps** occur at cliff bases and slope more steeply than the rest of the shore platform. They occur on sloping and horizontal shore platforms. Horizontal shore platforms may carry ridges or **ramparts**, perhaps a metre or so high, at their seaward margins.

Marine **potholes** are roughly cylindrical or bowl-shaped depressions in shore platforms that are ground out by the swirling action of sand, gravel, pebbles, and boulders associated with wave action.

#### Caves, arches, stacks, and related landforms

Small bays, narrow inlets, sea caves, arches, stacks, and allied features usually result from enhanced erosion along lines of structural weakness in rocks. Bedding planes, joints, and fault planes are all vulnerable to attack by erosive agents. Although the lines of weakness are eroded out, the rock body still has sufficient strength to stand as high, almost

perpendicular slopes, and as cave, tunnel, and arch roofs.

A **gorge** is a narrow, steep-sided, and often spectacular cleft, usually developed by erosion along vertical fault planes or joints in rock with a low dip. They may also form by the erosion of dykes, the collapse of lava tunnels in igneous rock, and the collapse of mining tunnels. In Scotland, and sometimes elsewhere, gorges are known as **geos** or **yawns** (Plate 11.5) and on the granitic peninsula of Land's End in Cornwall, south-west England, as **zawns**.

A **sea cave** is a hollow excavated by waves in a zone of weakness on a cliff. The cave depth is greater than the entrance width. Sea caves tend to form at points of geological weakness, such as bedding



Plate 11.5 Geo at Huntsman's Leap fault cleft, Castlemartin, South Dyfed, Wales.  
(Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos)

planes, joints, and faults. Fingal's Cave, Isle of Staffa, Scotland, which is formed in columnar basalt, is a prime example. It is 20 m high and 70 m long. A **blowhole** may form in the roof of a sea cave by the hydraulic and pneumatic action of waves, with fountains of spray emerging from the top. If blowholes become enlarged, they may collapse. An example of this is the Lion's Den on the Lizard Peninsula of Cornwall, England.

Where waves attack a promontory from both sides, a hollow may form at the promontory base, often at a point of geological weakness, to form a sea arch (Plate 11.6). If an arch is significantly longer than the width of its entrance, the term 'sea tunnel' is more appropriate. Merlin's Cave, at Tintagel, Cornwall, England, is a 100-m-long sea tunnel that has been excavated along a fault line. The toppling of a sea arch produces a **sea stack** (Plates 11.7 and 11.8). Old Harry Rocks are a group of stacks that were once part of the Foreland, which lies on the chalk promontory of Ballard Down in Dorset, England. On the west coast of the Orkney Islands, Scotland, the Old Man of Hoy is a 140-m stack separated from towering cliffs formed in Old Red Sandstone.

## COASTAL DEPOSITIONAL LANDFORMS

### Beaches

**Beaches** are the most significant accumulations of sediments along coasts. They form in the zone where wave processes affect coastal sediments. In composition, they consist of a range of organic and inorganic particles, mostly sands or shingle or pebbles. **Pebble beaches** are more common at middle and high latitudes, where pebbles are supplied by coarse glacial and periglacial debris. **Sand beaches** are prevalent along tropical coasts, probably because rivers carry predominantly fine sediments and cliff erosion donates little to littoral deposits in the tropics (Plate 11.9). Under some conditions, and notably in the tropics, beach





*Plate 11.6* Sea arch on  
Flamborough Head, Yorkshire.  
*(Photograph by Nick Scarle)*



*Plate 11.7* Sea stack on  
Flamborough Head, Yorkshire.  
*(Photograph by Nick Scarle)*



*Plate 11.8* Sea stacks at  
Bedruthan Steps, Cornwall,  
England.  
*(Photograph by Richard Huggett)*

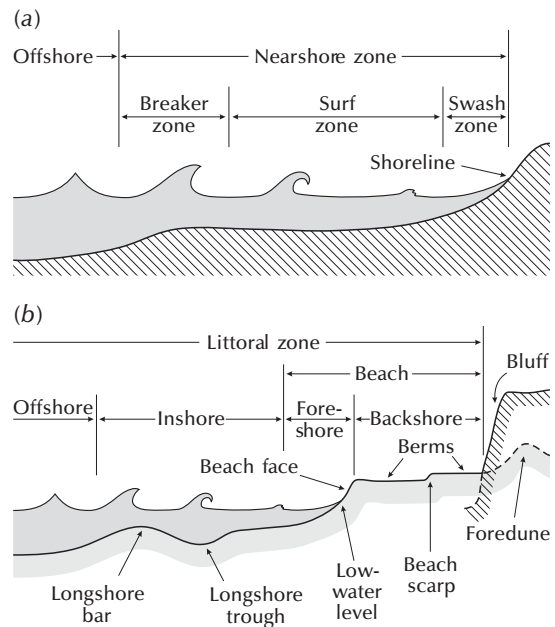


*Plate 11.9* Sandy beach near Poipu, Kauai, Hawaii.  
(Photograph by Tony Waltbam Geophotos)

sediments may, through the precipitation of calcium carbonate, form **beachrock**.

### Beach profile

Beaches have characteristic profiles, the details of which are determined by the size, shape, and composition of beach material, by the tidal range, and by the kind and properties of incoming waves (Figure 11.8). Beach profiles all consist of a series of ridges and troughs, the two extreme forms being steep, storm profiles and shallow, swell profiles, with all grades in between. The most inland point of the beach, especially a storm beach, is the **berm**, which marks the landward limit of wave swash. Over the berm crest lies the **beach face**, the gradient of which is largely controlled by the size of beach sediment. Fine sand beaches slope at about  $2^\circ$  and coarse pebble beaches slope at as much as  $20^\circ$ , the difference being accounted for by the high permeability of pebbly sediment, which discourages backwash. On shallow-gradient beaches, a submerged **longshore bar** often sits offshore, separated from the beach by a **trough**. Offshore bars, which are more common on swell beaches, seem to result from the action of breaking



*Figure 11.8* Terminology used to describe (a) wave and current processes in the nearshore, and (b) the beach profile.

*Source:* Adapted from Komar (1998, 46)

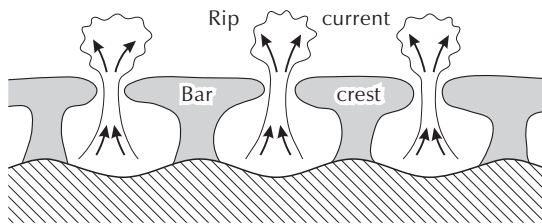


waves and migrate to and from the shoreline in response to changing wave characteristics. Similarly, the beach profile changes as wave properties run through an annual cycle. Beach-profile shape adjusts swiftly to changes in the wave 'climate'.

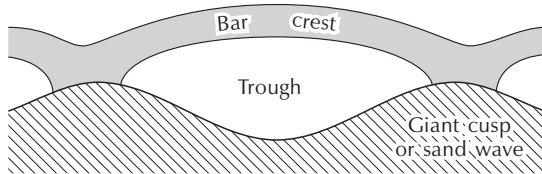
### Beach cusps and crescentic bars

Viewed from the air, beaches possess several distinctive, curved plan-forms that show a series of regularly spaced secondary curved features (Figure 11.9). The primary and secondary features range in size from metres to more than 100 km. **Beach cusps** are crescent-shaped scallops lying parallel to the shore

(a) Rhythmic topography on inner bar



(b) Crescentic bars



(c) Combination

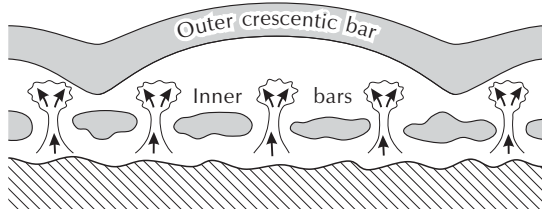


Figure 11.9 Cusps and crescentic bars.  
Source: Adapted from Komar (1998, 475)

on the upper beach face and along the seaward margins of the berm with a spacing of less than about 25 m. Most researchers believe that they form when waves approach at right-angles to the shore, although a few think that oblique waves cause them. Their mode of formation is disputed, and they have been variously regarded as depositional features, erosional features, or features resulting from a combination of erosion and deposition.

**Inner and outer crescentic bars** are sometimes called **rhythmic topography**. They have wavelengths of 100–2,000 m, although the majority are somewhere between 200 and 500 m. Inner bars are short-lived and associated with rip currents and cell circulations. Their horns often extend across surf-zone shoals into very large shoreline cusps known as sand waves, which lie parallel to the shore and have wavelengths of about 200–300 m. Outer crescentic bars may be detached from the shore and are more stable than inner crescentic bars.

Many coasts display an orderly sequence of **capes and bays**. The bays usually contain **bayhead** or **pocket beaches** (Figure 11.10). In some places, including parts of the east coast of Australia, asymmetrically curved bays link each headland, with each beach section recessed behind its neighbour. These are called **headland bay beaches**, or **fish-hook beaches**, or **zetaform beaches**, owing to their likeness in plan-view to the Greek letter zeta, ζ (Figure 11.11).

### Spits, barriers, and related forms

Accumulation landforms occur where the deposition of sediment is favoured (Figure 11.10). Suitable sites include places where obstructions interrupt long-shore flow, the coast abruptly changes direction, and in sheltered zones ('wave shadows') between islands and the mainland. Accumulation landforms are multifarious. They may be simply classified by their degree of attachment to the land (Table 11.1). Beaches attached to the land at one end are **spits** of different types and **forelands**. Spits are longer than they are wide, while forelands are wider than they are long. Beaches that are attached to the land at two

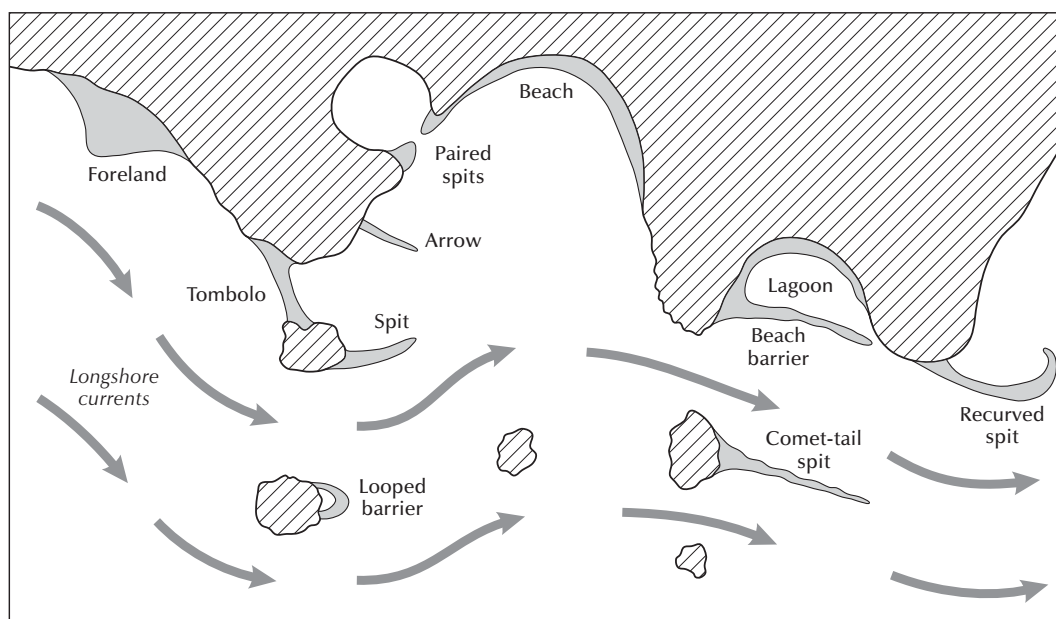


Figure 11.10 Depositional coastal landforms, shown diagrammatically.

ends are **looped barriers** and **cusate barriers**, **tombolos**, and **barrier beaches**. Beaches detached from the land are **barrier islands**.

### Spits and forelands

**Barrier spits** often form at the mouths of estuaries and other places where the coast suddenly changes direction. Sediment moving along the shore is laid down and tends to extend along the original line of the coast. Some spits project into the ocean and then curve round to run parallel to the coast. An example is Orfordness on the east coast of England, where the River Alde has been deflected some 18 km to the south. **Recurved spits** have their ends curving sharply away from incoming waves towards the land, and compound recurved spits have a series of landward-turning recurved sections along their inner side. Blakeney Point, which lies in north Norfolk, England, is a famous recurved spit. Spits that have twisting axes, created in response to shifting currents, are called '**serpentine**'. **Comet-tail spits** form where longshore movement of

material down each side of an island leads to accumulation in the island's lee, as has happened at the Plage de Grands Sables on the eastern end of the Île de Groix, which lies off the coast of Brittany, France. **Arrows** are spit-like forms that grow seawards from a coast as they are nourished by longshore movement on both sides. Sometimes spits grow towards one another owing to the configuration of the coast. Such **paired spits** are found at the entrance to Poole Harbour, in Dorset, England, where the northern spit, the Sandbanks peninsula, has grown towards the southern spit, the South Haven peninsula.

**Forelands** or **cusate spits** tend to be less protuberant than spits. They grow out from coasts, making them more irregular.

### Tombolos

**Tombolos** are wave-built ridges of beach material connecting islands to the mainland or islands to islands. They come in single and double varieties. Chesil Beach in Dorset, England, is part of a **double**

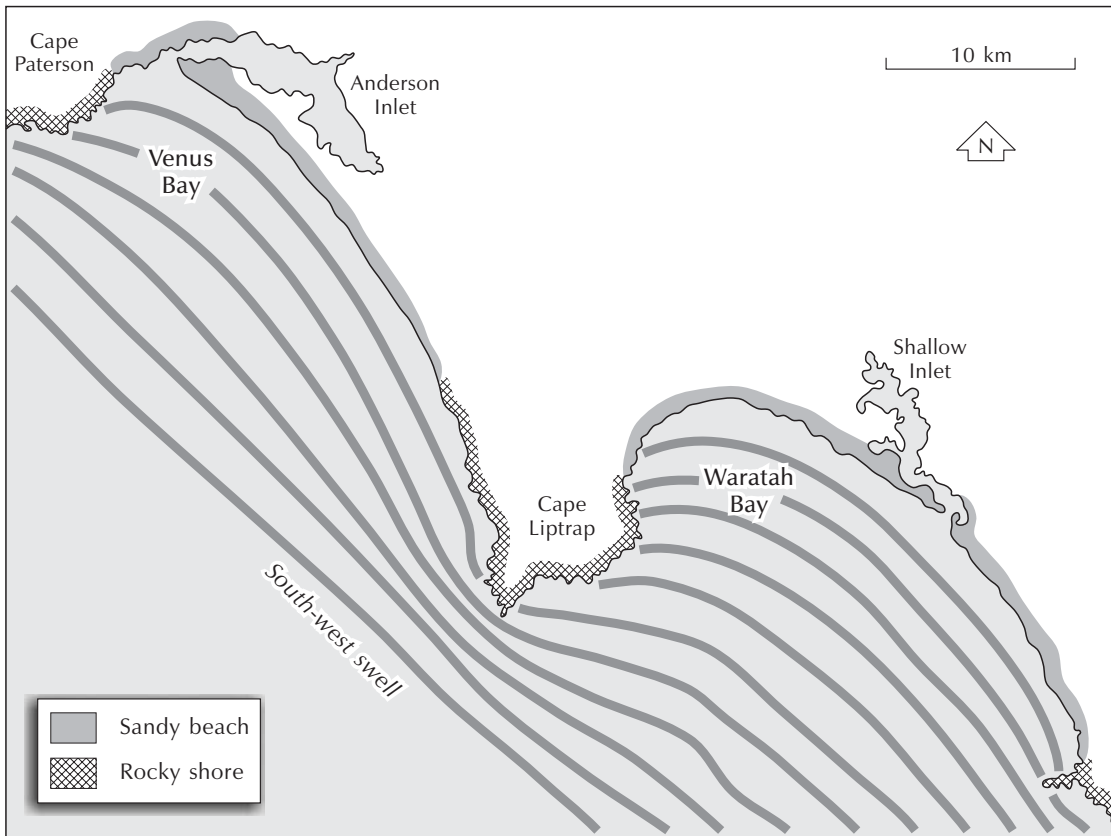


Figure 11.11 Zetaform beaches: Venus Bay and Waratah Bay, Victoria, Australia.  
Source: Adapted from Bird (2000, 119)

**tombolo** that attaches the Isle of Purbeck to the Dorset mainland. Tombolos tend to grow in the lee of islands, where a protection is afforded from strong wave action and where waves are refracted and convergent. **Y-shaped tombolos** develop where comet-tail spits merge with cusped forms projecting from the mainland or where a cusped barrier is extended landwards or seawards. A **tombolino** or **tie-bar** is a tombolo that is partly or completely submerged by the sea at high tide.

#### Barriers and barrier beaches

Coastal barriers and barrier islands are formed on beach material deposited offshore, or across the

mouths of inlets and embayments. They extend above the level of the highest tides, in part or in whole, and enclose lagoons or swamps. They differ from bars, which are submerged during at least part of the tidal cycle.

**Coastal barriers** are built of sand or gravel. Lopped barriers and cusped barriers result from growing spits touching an opposite shore, another spit, or an island. **Looped barriers** grow in the lee of an island when two comet-tail spits join. **Cusped barriers** (cusped forelands) resemble forelands except that they have been enlarged by the building of beach ridges parallel to their shores and contain lagoons or swampy areas. An example is Dungeness in Kent, England, which is backed by marshland. If

Table 11.1 Beach types

<i>Form</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Comment</i>
<i>Beaches attached to land at one end</i>		
Length greater than width	Barrier spit	A continuation of the original coast or running parallel to the coast <sup>1</sup>
	Comet-tail spit	Stretch from the leeside of an island
	Arrow	Stretch from the coast at high angles <sup>2</sup>
Length less than width	Foreland (cusped spit)	—
<i>Beaches attached to land at two ends</i>		
Looped forms stretching out from the coast	Looped barriers	Stretch from the leeside of an island
Cusped barriers	Looped spit	A spit curving back onto the land
	Double-fringing spit	Two joined spits or tombolos
Connecting islands with islands or islands with the mainland (tombolos)	Tombolo	Single form
	Y-tombolo	Single beach looped at one end
	Double tombolo	Two beaches
Closing off a bay or estuary (barrier beaches)	Baymouth barrier	At the mouth (front) of a bay
	Midbay barrier	Between the head and mouth of a bay
	Bayhead barrier	At the head (back) of a bay
<i>Forms detached from the land</i>		
A discrete, elongated segment	Barrier island	No connection with the land. Runs parallel to the coast. Often recurved at both ends and backed by a lagoon or swamp

*Notes:*

<sup>1</sup> A winged headland is a special case. It involves an eroding headland providing sediment to barrier spits that extend from each side of the headland

<sup>2</sup> A flying spit is a former tombolo connected to an island that has now disappeared

Source: Adapted from Trenhaile (1998, 244)

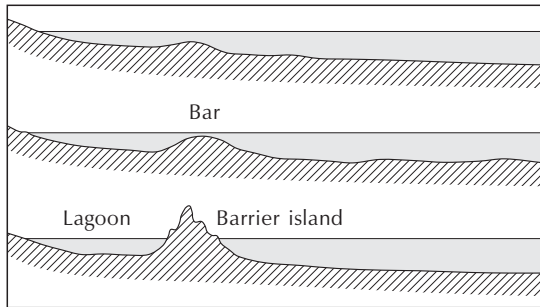
the lagoons or swamps drain and fill with sediment, cusped barriers become forelands. Cusped barriers form by a spit curving back to the land (a looped spit), or else by two spits or tombolos becoming joined to an island, which then vanishes (double-fringing spit).

**Barrier beaches** seal off or almost seal off the fronts, middles, or heads of bays and inlets. They are the product of single spits growing across bays or from pairs of converging spits built out by opposing longshore currents. They may also possibly form by sediment carried into bays by wave action independently of longshore movement.

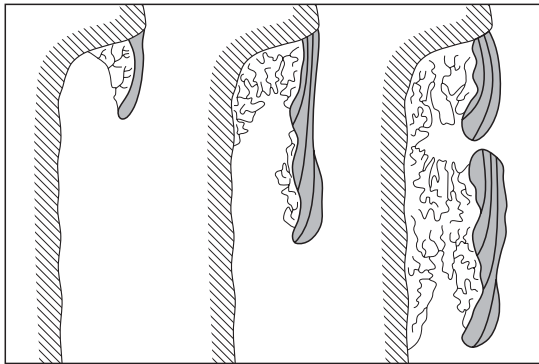
### Barrier islands

**Barrier islands** are elongated offshore ridges of sand paralleling the mainland coast and separated for almost their entire length by lagoons, swamps, or other shallow-water bodies, which are connected to the sea by channels or tidal inlets between islands. They are also called **barrier beaches**, **barrier bars**, and **offshore bars**. Sections of long barrier-island chains may be large spits or barrier beaches still attached to land at one end. As to their formation, some barriers are sections of long spits that have become detached, while some may simply be 'overgrown' bars (Figure 11.12). Others may have

(a) Submarine bar



(b) Spit elongation



(c) Rise in sea level

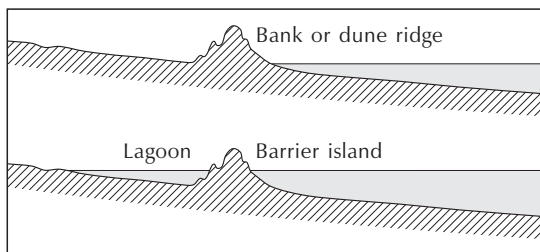


Figure 11.12 Ways in which barrier islands may form. (a) The growth of a submarine bar. (b) The elongation of a spit. (c) The submergence of a beach ridge or dunes by a rising sea level.

Source: Adapted from Hoyt (1967)

been formed by the rising sea levels over the last 10,000 years and perhaps have grown on former dunes, storm ridges, and berms, with lagoons

forming as the land behind the old beaches was flooded. Barrier beaches may also have formed by the accumulation of sediment carried landwards by wave action as sea level rose.

Interestingly, tectonic plate margins strongly influence the occurrence of barrier coasts (barrier spits, barrier beaches, and barrier islands). Of all the world's barrier coasts, 49 per cent occur on passive margins, 24 per cent on collisional margins, and 27 per cent on marginal sea coasts.

### Beach ridges and cheniers

Sandy **beach ridges** mark the position of former shorelines, forming where sand or shingle have been stacked up by wave action along a prograding coast. They may be tens of metres wide, a few metres high, and several kilometres long. Beach ridge plains may consist of 200 individual ridges and intervening swales.

**Cheniers** are low and long ridges of sand, shelly sand, and gravel surrounded by low-lying mudflats or marshes. They were first described from south-western Louisiana and south-eastern Texas, USA, where five major sets of ridges sit on a 200-km long and 20–30-km wide plain. These ridges bear rich vegetation and are settled by people. The word 'chenier' is from a Cajun expression originating from the French word for oak (*chêne*), which species dominates the crests of the higher ridges. Cheniers can be up to 1 km wide, 100 km long, and 6 m high. **Chenier plains** consist of two or more ridges with marshy or muddy sediments between. Most cheniers are found in tropical and subtropical regions, but they can occur in a wide range of climates (Figure 11.13). They cannot form in coasts with high wave energy as the fine-grained sediments needed for their growth are carried offshore (Figure 11.14).

### Coastal sand dunes

**Coastal dunes** are heaps of windblown sediment deposited at the edge of large lakes and seas. With

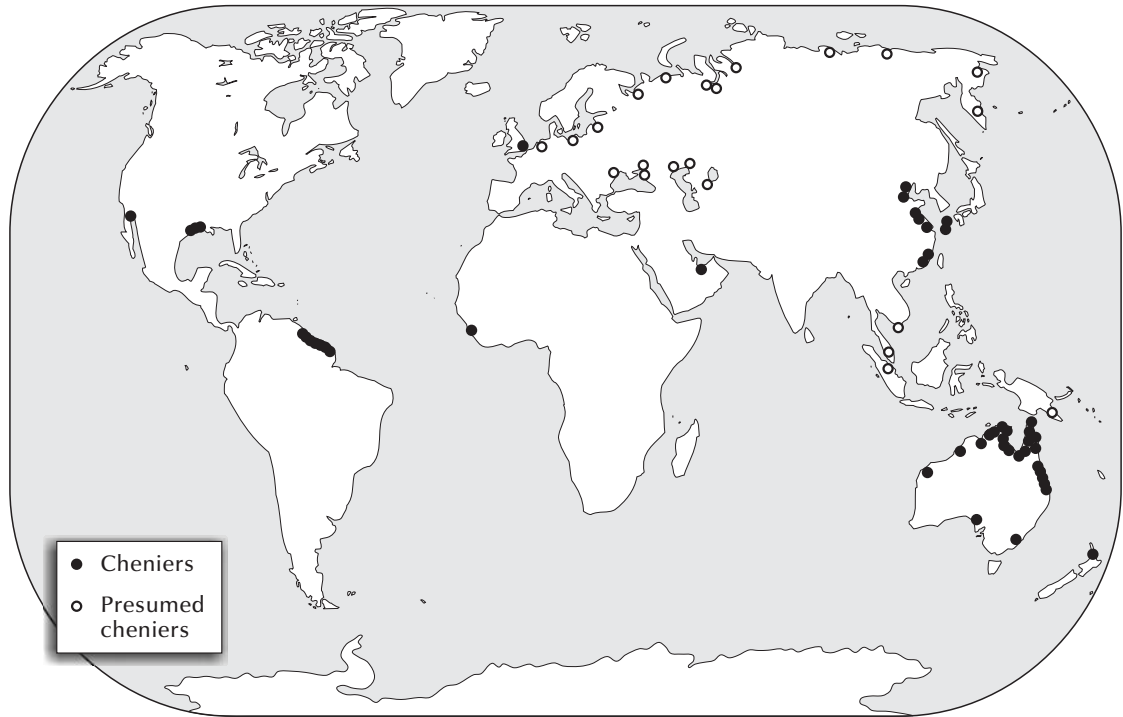


Figure 11.13 World distribution of cheniers.

Source: Adapted from Augustinus (1989)

few exceptions, they are made from sediment blown off a beach to accumulate in areas sheltered from the action of waves and currents. Small, crescentic dune fields often form at the back of bays enclosed by rocky headlands, while larger prograding dune fields form on straight, sandy coasts that are exposed to prevailing and dominant onshore winds. They shield the land from extreme waves and tides and are stores of sediment that may replenish beaches during and after storms. Dunes may also occur on cliff tops. Coastal dunes are similar to desert dunes, but the foredune (the first dune formed behind the beach) is a prominent feature resulting from the interaction of nearshore processes, wind, sediments, and vegetation.

Coastal dunes are mainly composed of medium-sized to fine quartz grains that are well to very well sorted, but calcium carbonate is common in warm

tropical and mediterranean regions. They are found in a range of environments (Carter *et al.* 1990) (Figure 11.15). The largest dune systems occur in mid-latitudes, behind high-energy to intermediate wave-energy coasts and facing the prevailing and dominant westerly winds. Dunes also develop on east-facing swell and trade wind coasts, but they are less common and smaller in polar and tropical regions. The occurrence and nature of coastal dunes are the outcome of a set of interacting factors (Box 11.2).

**Blowouts** are shallow, saucer-shaped depressions or deep and elongated troughs occurring in dune fields (cf. p. 269). They are begun by wave erosion, overwash, a lack of aeolian deposition, or deflation of vegetation or poorly vegetated areas. Once started, they are enlarged by wind scour and slumping, and avalanching on the sidewalls.

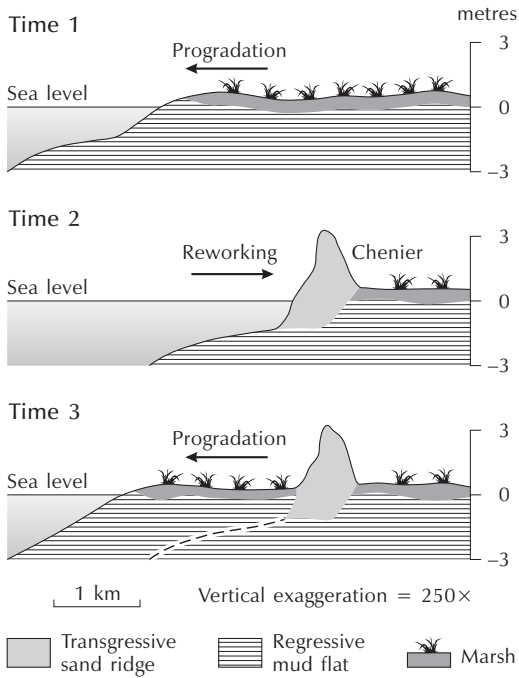
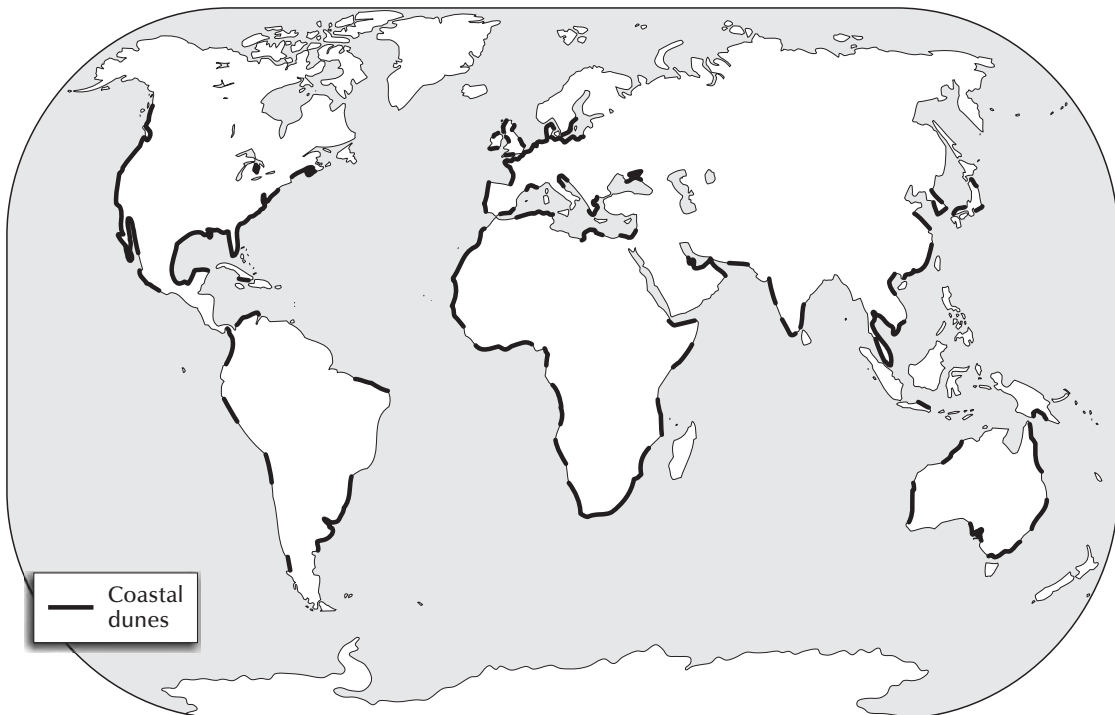


Figure 11.14 (left) Formation of a chenier plain.  
Source: Adapted from Hoyt (1969)

Figure 11.15 (below) World distribution of coastal dunes.  
Source: Adapted from Carter *et al.* (1990)





**Box 11.2****COASTAL DUNES: NATURE AND OCCURRENCE**

Coastal dunes are fashioned by the interplay of wind, waves, vegetation, and sediment supply (Pye 1990). Figure 11.16 depicts six basic cases. Rapidly prograding beach ridge plains with little dune development form where the beach sand budget is positive and wind energy is low (Figure 11.16a). Parallel foredune ridges occur under similar circumstances save that wind energy is higher and sand-trapping vegetation is present, leading to slower beach progradation (Figure 11.16b). Irregular 'hummock' dunes with incipient blowouts and parabolic dunes form on moderately prograding coasts where the beach sand sediment budget is positive, wind energy is moderate, and there is an ineffectual or patchy

vegetation cover (Figure 11.16c). Single foredune ridges, which grow upwards with no change of shore position, occur when sand supplied to the beach is delivered to the dunes and trapped by vegetation (Figure 11.16d). Slowly migrating parabolic dunes, blowouts, and salt-scalded vegetation occur behind beaches that slowly retreat landwards when the sand supplied to the beach is slightly less than that supplied to the dunes (Figure 11.16e). Transgressive sand sheets of low relief form when little or no sand is supplied to the beach and wind energy is high. Under these conditions, the beach is rapidly lowered and dune vegetation destroyed, which increases exposure to storms and initiates coastal retreat (Figure 11.16f).

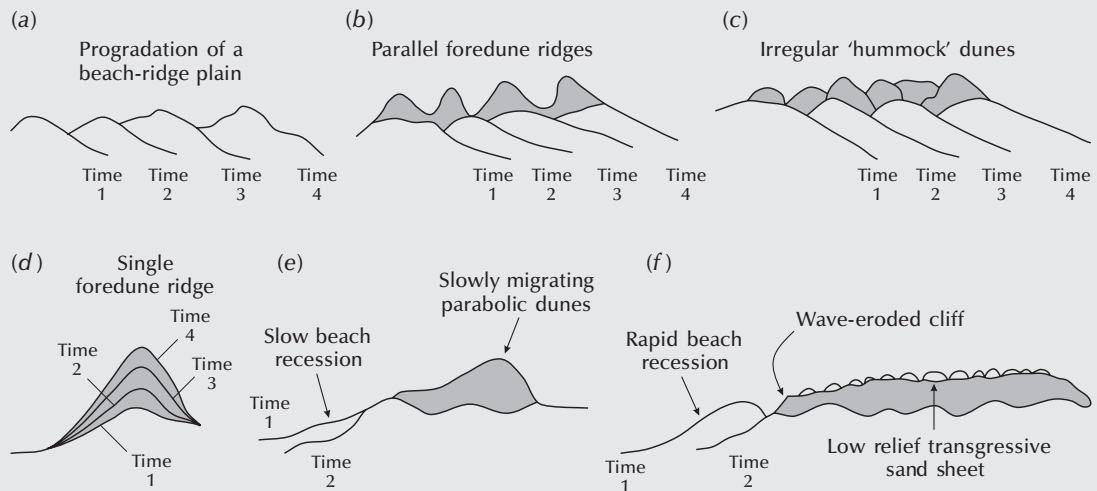


Figure 11.16 Factors affecting dune morphology. For explanation, see text.

Source: Adapted from Pye (1990)

## Estuaries

**Estuaries** are tidal inlets, often long and narrow inlets, that stretch across a coastal alluvial plain or run inwards along a river to the highest point reached by the tide. They are partially enclosed but connected to the open sea. They are transition zones between rivers and the sea in which fresh river water mixes with salty ocean water. Early in their evolution, their shape is determined by coastal topography, but this changes fairly rapidly as sediment erosion and deposition reach a steady state. Many are young features formed in valleys that were carved out during the last glacial stage and then drowned by rising sea levels during the Holocene epoch. Figure 11.17 is a physiographic classification due to Rhodes W. Fairbridge (1980). Figure 11.18 shows an alternative estuary classification based upon the mixing of river water with seawater.

## Tidal flats, salt marshes, and mangals

Currents associated with tides carry copious amounts of sediment inside areas of shallow water. The ebb and flow of tidal currents fashions a range of coastal landforms.

### Tidal flats

**Tidal flats** are banks of mud or sand that are exposed at low tide. They are not actually flat but slope very gently towards the sea from the high-tide level down to a little below the low-tide level. Three basic units may be identified in tidal flats: the **high-tide flat** (a gently sloping surface that is partly submerged at high tide); the **intertidal slope** (a steeper but still gently inclined zone lying between the high-tide flat and the lower tidal limit); and the **subtidal slope**, which is submerged even at low tide (Figure 11.19).

Tidal flats end at the edge of the sea or in major **tidal channels**, the floors of which lie below the lowest tide levels. As well as major tidal channels, **tidal creeks** flow across tidal flats. These are shallower than tidal channels and run down to low-

tide level. On muddy tidal flats, tidal creeks often display a dendritic pattern with winding courses and point bars. On sandy tidal flats, tidal creeks have ill-defined banks, straight courses, and few tributaries.

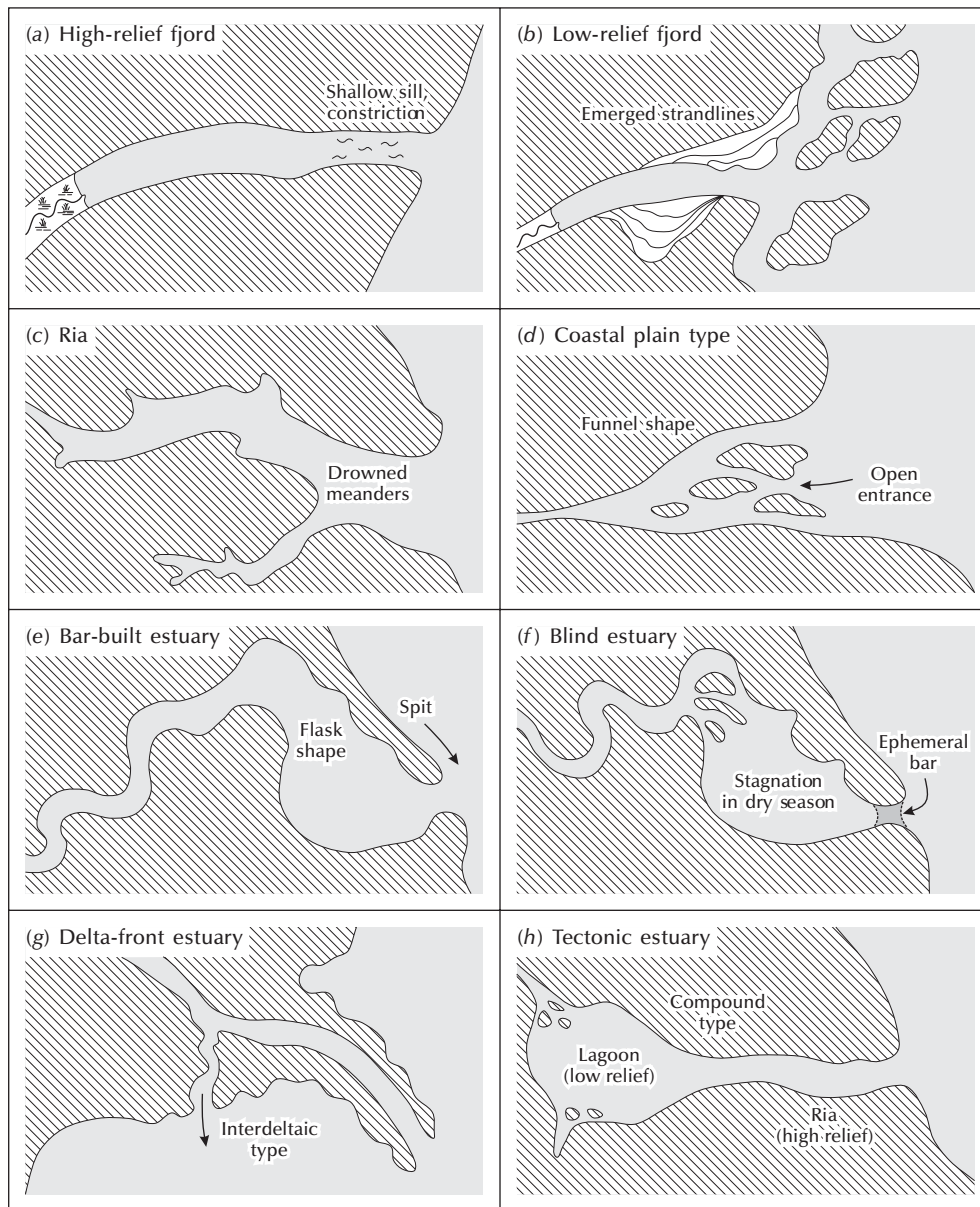
Tidal flats are built up from clay-sized and fine silt-sized sediments carried to the coast by rivers. On meeting salt water, particles of clay and silt flocculate (form clot-like clusters) to become larger aggregates. They then settle out as mud in quiet coastal waters such as lagoons and sheltered estuaries. The mud is carried in by the incoming tide and deposited before the tide reverses. If the mud continues to build upwards, a part of the tidal flat will be exposed just above normal high-tide level. This area is then open to colonization by salt-tolerant plants and salt marshes or mangroves may develop.

### Salt marshes

**Salt marshes** are widespread in temperate regions, but are not uncommon in the tropics (Figure 11.20). They start to form when tidal flats are high enough to permit colonization by salt-tolerant, terrestrial plants. Depending on their degree of exposure, salt marshes stretch from around the mean high-water neap-tide level to a point between the mean and extreme high-water spring-tide levels. Their seaward edge abuts bare intertidal flats, and their landward edge sits where salt-tolerant plants fail to compete with terrestrial plants. Salt marsh sediments are typically heavy or sandy clay, silty sand, or silty peat. Many salt marshes contain numerous shallow depressions, or pans, that are devoid of vegetation and fill with water at high spring tides.

### Mangals

'**Mangrove**' is a general term for a variety of mainly tropical and subtropical salt-tolerant trees and shrubs inhabiting low inter-tidal areas. **Mangals** are communities of mangroves – shrubs and long-lived trees and with associated lianas, palms, and ferns – that colonize tidal flats in the tropics, and occur in



*Figure 11.17* Types of estuary: a physiographic classification. Fjords are drowned glacial troughs (p. 219). Rias are erstwhile river valleys drowned by Holocene sea-level rise. They may include mudflats and have barrier spits at their mouths. Coastal plain estuaries are, as their name suggests, estuaries in coastal plains. Bar-built or barrier estuaries have barriers that enclose broad and shallow lagoons. Blind estuaries are closed by an ephemeral bar and stagnate in dry seasons. Delta-front estuaries are associated with river deltas. Tectonic estuaries are formed by folding, faulting, or other tectonic processes. Part of the San Francisco Bay, California, estuary comes under this heading.

*Source:* Adapted from Fairbridge (1980)

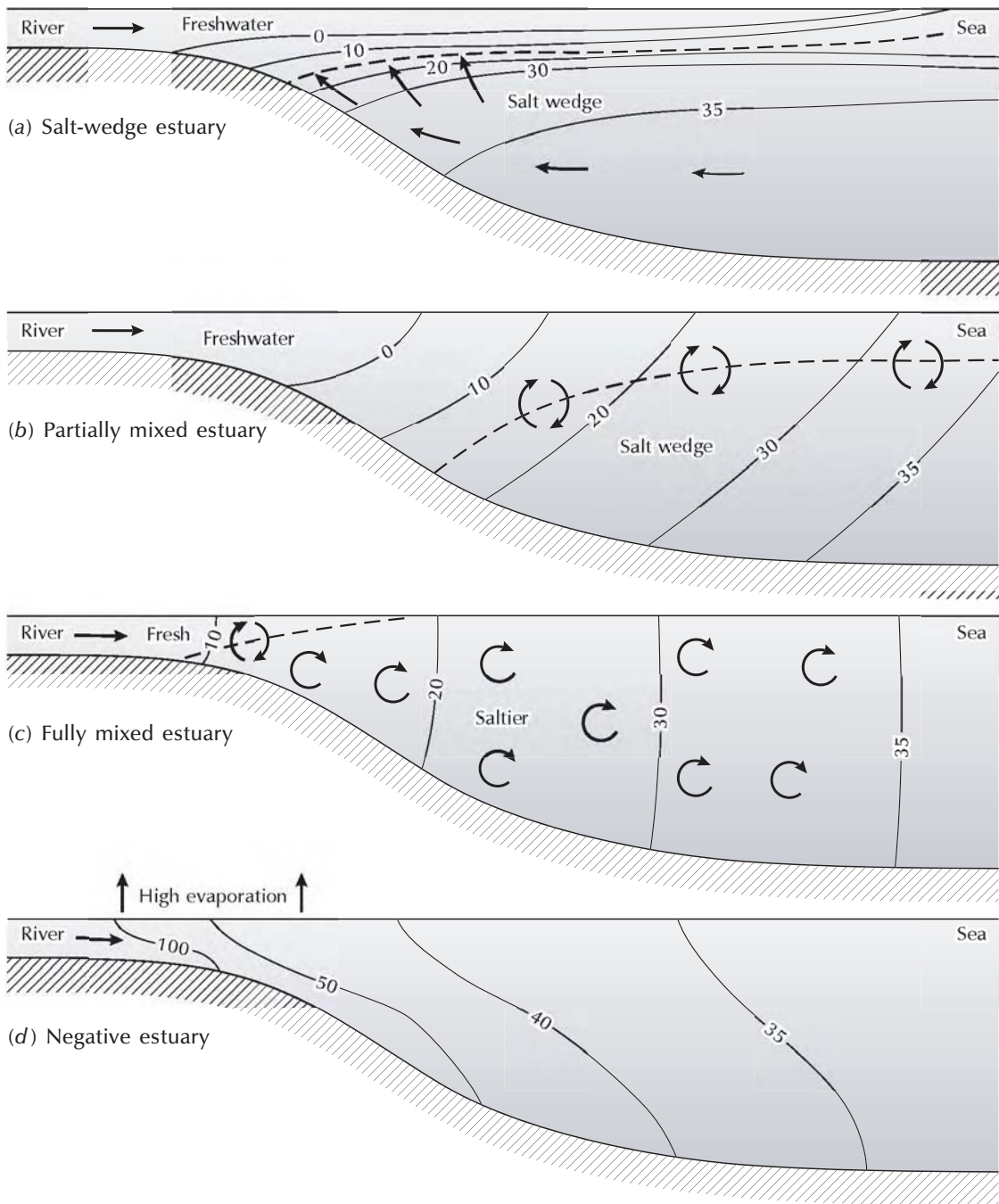


Figure 11.18 Types of estuary: a classification based on freshwater–seawater mixing.  
 Source: Adapted from Postma (1980) and Trenhaile (1998, 254)

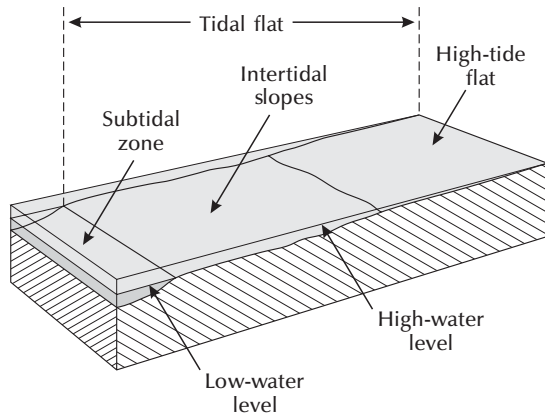


Figure 11.19 Tidal flats and their morphological units based on low- and high-tide positions.

Source: Adapted from Davies (1980, 170)

river-dominated, tide-dominated, and wave-dominated coastal environments (Woodroffe 1990). They specifically favour tidal shorelines with low wave energy, and in particular brackish waters of estuaries and deltas (Figure 11.20). Some mangrove species are tolerant of more frequent flooding than salt marsh species, and so mangals extend from around the high spring-tide level to a little above mean sea level. They often contain lagoons and pools, but not the pans of salt marshes. Like salt marshes, mangals have creek systems, although their banks are often formed of tree roots.

### Marine deltas

Marine deltas are formed by deposition where rivers run into the sea. So long as the deposition rate surpasses the erosion rate, a delta will grow. Deltas

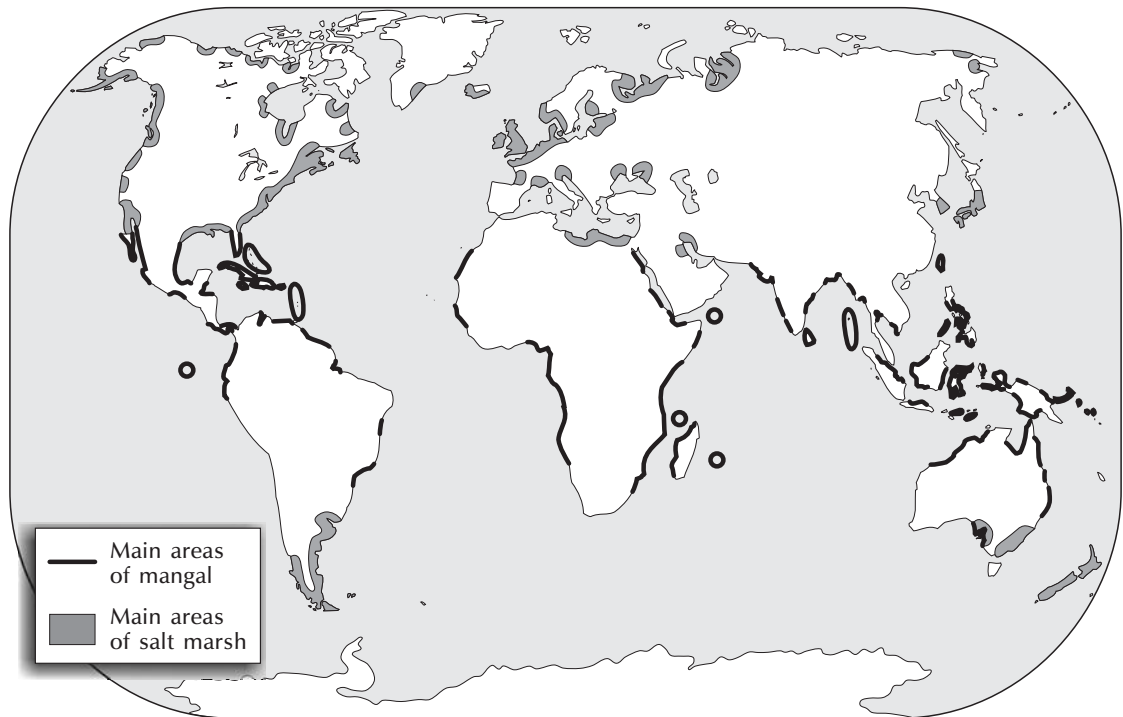


Figure 11.20 World distribution of salt marshes and mangals.

Source: Adapted from Chapman (1977)

are found in a range of coastal environments. Some deltas form along low-energy coasts with low tidal ranges and weak waves. Others form in high-energy coasts with large tidal ranges and powerful waves. The trailing-edge coasts of continents (passive margins) and coasts facing marginal seas appear to favour the growth of large deltas.

Some deltas are triangular in plan, like the Greek letter delta,  $\Delta$ , after which they were named almost 2,500 years ago by Herodotus. But deltas come in a multiplicity of forms, their precise shape depending upon the ability of waves to rework and redistribute the incoming rush of river-borne sediment. Six basic types are recognized (Box 11.3).

### Box 11.3

#### TYPES OF DELTA

On the basis of their overall morphology, six basic delta types are recognized that may be classified according to the importance of river, wave, and tidal processes (Wright 1985; Figure 11.21). The characteristics of the six types are as follows (Trenhaile 1997, 227–8):

**Type 1 deltas** are dominated by river processes. They are elongated distributary mouth bar sands, aligned roughly at right-angles to the overall line of the coast. The protrusions are called bar-finger sands. In the modern birdfoot delta of the Mississippi River, seaward progradation of the principal distributaries has formed thick, elongated bodies of sand up to 24–32 km long and 6–8 km wide. Type 1 deltas form in areas with a low tidal range, very low wave energy, low offshore slopes, low littoral drift, and high, fine-grained suspended load. Examples are the deltas of the Mississippi in the USA, the Paraná in Brazil, the Dnieper in the Ukraine, and the Orinoco in Venezuela.

**Type 2 deltas** are dominated by tides. They have broad, seawards-flaring, finger-like channel sand protuberances. They are fronted by sandy tidal ridges produced by tidal deposition and reworked river sediments at distributary mouths. They occur in areas with a high tidal range and strong tidal currents, low wave energy, and low littoral drift. Examples are the deltas of the Ord in Western Australia, the Indus in Pakistan, the Colorado in the USA, and the Ganges–Brahmaputra in Bangladesh.

**Type 3 deltas** are affected by waves and tidal currents. The tidal currents create sand-filled river channels and tidal creeks running approximately at right-angles to the coast, while the waves redistribute the riverine sand to produce beach–dune ridge complexes and barriers running parallel to the coast. Type 3 deltas are common in areas of intermediate wave energy, moderate to high tides, and low littoral drift. Examples are the Irrawaddy delta in Burma, the Mekong delta in Vietnam, and the Danube delta in Romania.

**Type 4 deltas** consist of finger-like bodies of sand deposited as distributary mouth bars, or they may coalesce to form a broad sheet of sand. They prograde into lagoons, bays, or estuaries sheltered by offshore or baymouth barriers. Their development is encouraged by intermediate wave energy, low offshore slopes, low sediment yields, and a low tidal range. Examples are the Brazos delta in Texas and the Horton delta in Canada.

**Type 5 deltas** have extensive beach ridges and dune fields. These extensive sand sheets are shaped by wave redistributing of river-borne sands. They form where moderate to high wave energy is unremitting, where littoral drift is low, and where offshore slopes are moderate to steep. Examples are the deltas of the São Francisco in Brazil and the Godavari in India.

**Type 6 deltas** form on coasts totally dominated by wave action. The waves straighten the coasts





and deltas consist of numerous sandy spit barriers running parallel to the coastline that alternate with fine-grained, abandoned channel fills. They are found in environments with strong waves,

unidirectional longshore transport, and steep offshore slopes. Examples are the deltas of the Shoalhaven in New South Wales, Australia, and the Tumpat in Malaysia.

## HUMANS AND COASTS

Humans affect erosion and deposition along coasts. They do so through increasing or decreasing the sediment load of rivers, by building protective structures, and indirectly by setting in train climatic processes that lead to sea-level rise. Two important issues focus around beach erosion and beach nourishment and the effect of rising sea levels over the next century.

### Beach erosion and beach nourishment

To combat **beach erosion**, especially where it threatens to undermine and ruin roads and buildings, humans have often built **sea walls**. The idea is that a sea wall will stop waves attacking the eroding coast, commonly a retreating cliff, and undermining a slumping bluff or a truncated dune. Sea walls often start as banks of earth but once these are damaged, they are usually replaced by stone or concrete constructions. Other options are boulder ramparts (also called revetments or riprap) and artificial structures such as tetrapods, which are made of reinforced concrete. Solid sea walls, and even boulder barriers and other artificial structures, are effective and reflect breaking waves seawards, leading to a backwash that scours the beach of material. Such is the demand for countermeasures against coastal erosion that the world's coastline is littered with a battery of artificial structures. Some structures are successful, but the unsuccessful ones stand in ruins. Some have helped to maintain beaches, but others, by promoting eroding backwash, simply worsen beach erosion.

In an effort to prevent beach loss, the dumping of sand or gravel on the shore has become a common

practice, mainly in the USA, Western Europe, and Australia. Such beach nourishment aims to create a beach formation, depleted by erosion, that 'will protect the coastline and persist in the face of wave action' (Bird 2000, 160). Many **beach nourishment** programmes were implemented at seaside resorts, where beaches are needed for recreational use (Box 11.4). Recently, the value of a beach in absorbing wave energy has been realized and nourishment beaches are sometimes used to defend against further cliff erosion or damage to coastal roads and buildings. The key to a successful beach nourishment programme is a thorough comprehension of coastal geomorphology. Before developing and implementing a programme, it is necessary to find out the movement of sand and gravel in relation to the wave regimes and the effects of any artificial structures on the section of shore to be treated. It is also necessary to understand why the beach is eroding and where the sediment has gone – landward, seaward, or alongshore. The modelling of beach forms and processes can be helpful at this stage, but an experimental approach, based on accumulated experience, is often more productive. The sediment used to nourish a beach should be at least as coarse as the natural beach sediment and durable, but it may come from any source. More material than is necessary to restore the beach (so allowing for onshore, offshore, and alongshore losses) is usually dumped to form a beach terrace that is worked on by waves and currents to form a natural beach profile, often with sand bars just offshore. The restored beach may be held in place by building a retaining backwater or a series of groynes. In some cases, a beach can be nourished by dumping material where it is known that longshore or shoreward drift will carry it to the shore. Nourished beaches normally still erode and

**Box 11.4****BEACH EROSION VERSUS BEACH NOURISHMENT – A DELAWARE CASE STUDY**

It costs money to nourish beaches and any beach nourishment programme has to consider the economics of letting beaches retreat compared with the economics of sustaining them. Take the Atlantic coastline of Delaware, eastern USA (Daniel 2001). Delaware's coastline combines high values of shoreline property with a growing coastal tourism industry. It is also a dynamic coastline, with storm damage and erosion of recreational beaches posing a serious threat to coastal communities. The problem is being tackled by local and state officials. A comprehensive management plan, called Beaches 2000, considered beach nourishment and retreat. The goal of Beaches 2000 is to safeguard Delaware's beaches for the citizens of Delaware and out-of-state beach visitors. Since Beaches 2000 was published, Delaware's shore-

lines have been managed through nourishment activities, which have successfully maintained beach widths. Coastal tourism, recreational beach use, and real estate values in the area continue to grow. The possibility of letting the coastline retreat was considered in the plan, but shelved as an option for the distant future. One study estimated the land and capital costs of letting Delaware's beaches retreat inland over the next 50 years (Parsons and Powell 2001). The conclusion was that, if erosion rates remain at historical levels for the next 50 years, the cost would be \$291,000,000 but would be greater should erosion rates accelerate. In the light of this figure, beach nourishment makes economic sense, at least over the 50-year time period.

occasionally need replacing. More details of beach management are found in Bird (1996).

**The effects of rising sea levels in the twenty-first century**

A current worry is how coastlines will respond to rising sea levels during the present century. Estimates of sea-level rise are 10 to 15 cm by the year 2030, accelerating to 30 to 80 cm by 2100 (Wigley and Raper 1993). Inevitably, submerging coastlines, presently limited to areas where the land is subsiding, will become widespread and emerging coastlines will become a rarity. Broadly speaking, low-lying coastal areas will be extensively submerged and their high- and low-tide lines will advance landwards, covering the present intertidal zone. On steep, rocky coasts, high- and low-tide levels will simply rise and the coastline stay in the same position. It seems likely that the sea will continue to

rise, with little prospect of stabilization. If it does so, then coastal erosion will accelerate and become more prevalent as compensating sedimentation tails off. The rising seas will reach, reshape, and eventually submerge 'raised beaches' created during the Pleistocene interglacials. Forms similar to those found around the present world's coasts would not develop until sea level stabilized, which would presumably occur either when the measures adopted to counterbalance increasing greenhouse gases worked, or else when all the world's glaciers, ice sheets, and snowfields had melted, occasioning a global sea-level rise of more than 60 m (Bird 2000, 276).

Specific effects of rising sea levels on different types of coast are summarized in Figure 11.22. Cliffs and rocky shores were largely produced by the tolerably stable sea levels that have dominated over the last 6,000 years. Rising sea levels will submerge shore platforms and rocky shores, allowing larger waves to reach cliffs and bluffs, so accelerating their

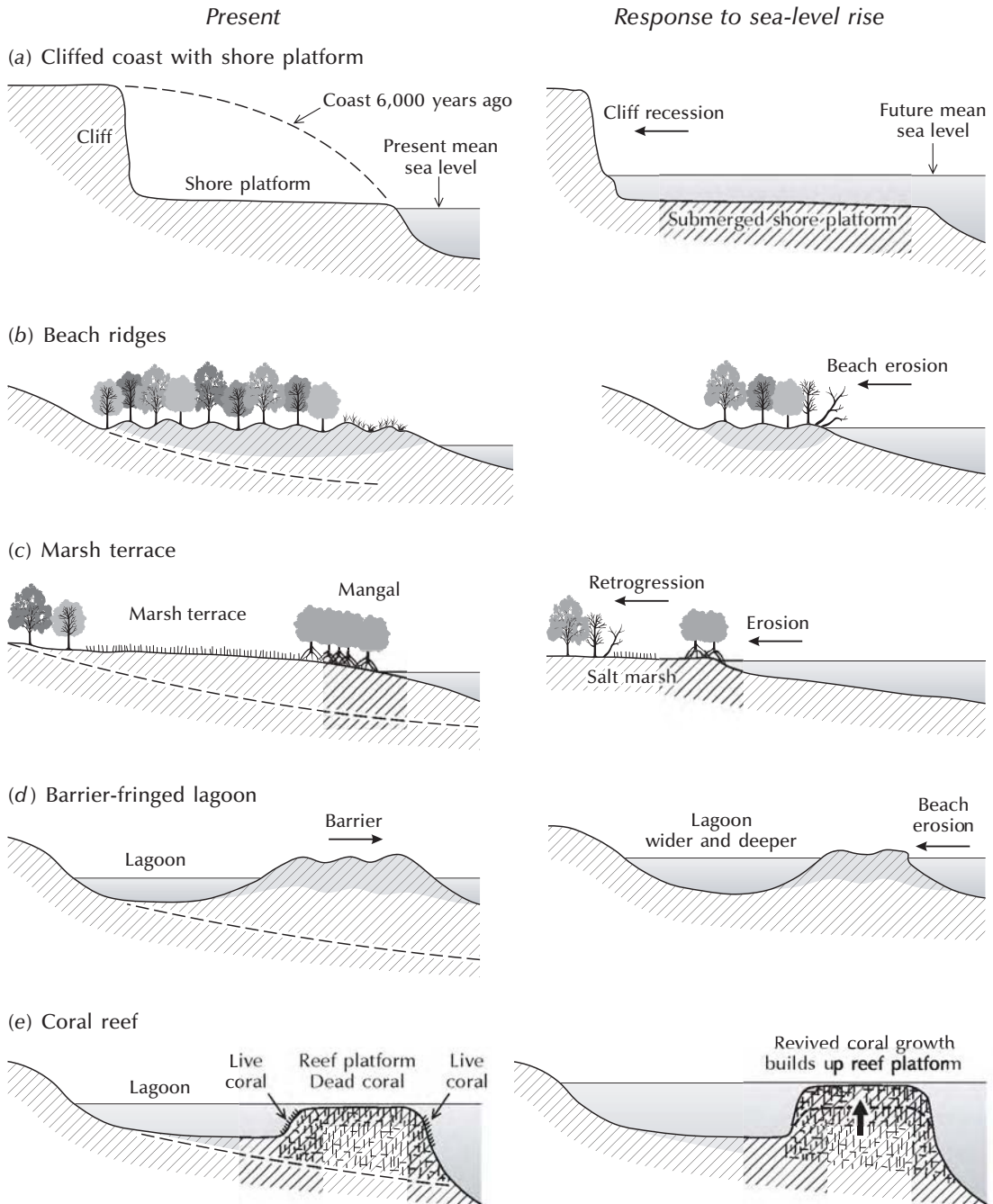


Figure 11.22 Coastal changes brought about by a rising sea level. See text for further details.

Source: Adapted from Bird (2000, 278)

erosion on all but the most resistant rocks (Figure 11.22a). Some eastern British cliffs are retreating about 100 cm a year and this rate will increase by 35 cm a year for every 1 mm rise of sea level (Clayton 1989). Cliff notches will enlarge upwards as the rising sea eats into successively higher levels. Rising sea levels are also likely to increase the occurrence of coastal landslides and produce new and extensive slumps, especially where rocks dip towards the sea. The slump material will add to sediment supply for beaches, perhaps in part compensating for the rising sea level. The rise of sea level by 1 to 2 mm per year over the last few decades has caused beach erosion in many places around the world. Accelerating sea-level rise will greatly exacerbate this problem. The seaward advance of prograding beaches will stop and erosion set in (Figure 11.22b). Where the beach is narrow, with high ground behind it, the beach may rapidly disappear unless nearby cliff erosion provides enough replenishment of sediment. Beaches fronting salt marshes and mangals will probably be eroded and over-washed. Beaches ahead of sea walls will be eroded or be removed by the scour resulting from the reflection of incident waves. Beaches will persist wherever the supply of sand or shingle is sustained, or where additional material is provided by cliff erosion or increased sediment load from rivers. Most present beaches will probably be lost as sea levels rise, but on coastal plains with coastal dunes, new beaches may form by the shoreward drifting of sediment up to the new coastline, along the contour on which submergence stops.

Salt marshes, mangals, and intertidal areas will all be submerged beneath rising sea levels (Figure 11.22c). Small cliffs on the seaward margins of salt marshes and mangrove terraces will erode faster than at present. Continued submergence will see the seaward and landward margins move inland. In low-lying areas, this may produce new salt marshes or mangals, but steep-rising hinterlands will cause a narrowing and perhaps eventual disappearance of the salt marsh and mangal zone. The loss of salt marshes and mangals will not occur in areas where sediment continues to be supplied at a rate sufficient for a depositional terrace to persist. And

modelling suggests the salt marshes of mesotidal estuaries, such as the Tagus estuary in Portugal, do not appear vulnerable to sea-level rise in all but the worst-case scenario with several industrialized nations not meeting the terms of the Kyoto Protocol (Simas *et al.* 2001). Inner salt marsh or mangal edges may expand inland, the net result being a widening of the aggrading salt-marsh or mangrove terrace. Intertidal areas – sandflats, mudflats, and rocky shores – will change as the sea level rises. The outer fringe of the present intertidal zone will become permanently submerged. As backing salt marshes and mangals are eroded and coastal lowland edges cut back, they will be replaced by mudflats or sandflats, and underlying rock areas will be exposed to form new rocky shores.

Estuaries will generally widen and deepen as sea level goes up, and may move inland. Coastal lagoons will become larger and deeper, and their shores and fringing swamp areas suffer erosion (Figure 11.22d). The enclosing barriers may be eroded and breached to form new lagoon inlets that, with continued erosion and submergence, may open up to form marine inlets and embayments. New lagoons may form where rising sea levels cause the flooding of low-lying areas behind dune fringes on coastal plains. They may also form where depressions are flooded as rising water tables promote the development of seasonal or permanent lakes and swamps. Wherever there is a supply of replenishing sediment, the deepening and enlargement of estuaries and lagoons may be countered.

Corals and algae living on the surface of intertidal reef platforms will be spurred into action by a rising sea level and grow upwards (Figure 11.22e). However, reef revival depends upon a range of ecological factors that influence the ability of coral species to recolonize submerging reef platforms. In addition, the response of corals to rising sea levels will depend upon the rate of sea-level rise. An accelerating rate could lead to the drowning and death of some corals, and to the eventual submergence of inert reef platforms. Studies suggest that reefs are likely to keep pace with a sea-level rise of less than 1 cm/year, to be growing upwards when sea-level rise falls

within the range by 1–2 cm/year, and to be drowned when sea-level rise exceeds 2 cm/year (Spencer 1995).

## SUMMARY

Waves and tsunamis buffet coasts, nearshore currents wash them, and tides wet them. Weathering and wave erosion destroy coastlines, while sediment deposition, reef-building corals, and the mangal and marsh builders create them. Rocky coasts are dominated by erosional landforms – shore platforms and plunging cliffs, cave and arches and stacks, and many more. Some erosional landforms occur in predominantly depositional environments, as in tidal creeks cutting across salt marshes. Depositional landforms along coasts are many and varied. Beaches are the commonest features, but assorted species of spits and barriers are widespread. Other depositional landforms include beach ridges, cheniers, coastal sand dunes, estuaries, tidal flats, salt marshes, mangals, and marine deltas. Humans affect coastal erosion and deposition by increasing or decreasing the sediment load of rivers and by building protec-

tive structures. Many beaches in Western Europe, the USA, and Australia need feeding with sand to maintain them. The effects of a rising sea level over the next century following the warming trend are far-reaching and likely to impact severely on humans living at and near coasts.

## FURTHER READING

Bird, E. C. F. (2000) *Coastal Geomorphology: An Introduction*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

A highly readable, systematic coverage of form and process along coasts. Excellent.

Carter, R. W. G. (1992) *Coastal Environments*. London: Edward Arnold.

Covers applied coastal geomorphology, linking the physical and biological resources of coasts with their exploitation and use. Good for students interested in coastal management.

King C. A. M. (1972) *Beaches and Coasts*, 2nd edn. London: Edward Arnold

Dated, but is well worth digging out for the classic examples of coastal features.

Komar, P. D. (1998) *Beach Processes and Sedimentation*, 2nd edn. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.

A top-flight, technical book on beach process, but some mathematical knowledge is needed.

Trenhaile, A. S. (1997) *Coastal Dynamics and Landforms*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

An expansive treatment, brimful with detailed discussions and examples.

Sunamura, T. (1992) *Geomorphology of Rocky Coasts*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

A good, if somewhat technical, account of form and process along rocky coasts.

---

## ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 How do currents and waves produce landforms?**
  - 2 Why do deltas display such a variety of forms?**
  - 3 Assess the likely consequences of a rising sea level during the present century for coastal landforms.**
-



**Part IV**  
**HISTORY**





## ANCIENT LANDSCAPES AND THEIR IMPLICATIONS

---

Some landforms and landscapes are remarkably old, survivors from long-gone climatic regimes. Some landscapes evolve over geological timescales. This chapter covers:

- Ancient landforms (relict, exhumed, and stagnant)
- Landforms in a changing environment
- Landscape evolution

### Landscape inaction

I have seen no inland rocks in Great Britain which seem to point so unequivocally to the action of the sea as the Brimham Rocks [Plate 12.1], about nine miles from Harrogate. They fringe an eminence, or upheaved island, partly spared and partly wrecked by the sea. A group of picturesque columns may be seen on the eastern shore of this ancient island, but the grand assemblage of ruins occurs on the north-western side. . . .



*Plate 12.1* Brimham Rocks, eroded remnants of Millstone Grit sandstone, Nidderdale, North Yorkshire, England.  
(*Photograph by Tony Waltham Geophotos*)

First, a line of cliff . . . extending along the western and north-western part of the risen island of Brimham for more than half a mile. A detached part of this coastline, behind Mrs. Weatherhead's farmhouse, shows a projecting arched rock with associated phenomena, which one familiar with sea-coast scenery could have no more hesitation in referring to wave-action than if he still beheld them whitened by the spray. Farther northwards the line of cliff in some places shows other characteristics of a modern sea-coast. Here an immense block of millstone grit has tumbled down through an undermining process – there a block seems ready to fall, but in that perilous position it would seem to have remained since the billows which failed to detach it retreated to a lower level. Along the base of the cliffs many blocks lie scattered far and near, and often occupy positions in reference to the cliffs and to each other which a power capable of transporting will alone explain. From the cliff-line passages ramify and graduate into the spaces separating the rocky pillars, which form the main attraction of this romantic spot. . . .

As we gaze on this wonderful group of insular wrecks, varying in form from the solemn to the grotesque, and presenting now the same general outlines with which they rose above the sea, we can scarcely resist contrasting the permanence of the 'everlasting hills' with the evanescence of man. Generation after generation of the inhabitants of the valleys within sight of the eminence on which we stand, have sunk beneath the sod, and their descendants can still behold in these rocky pillars emblems of eternity compared with their own fleeting career; but fragile, and transient, compared with the great cycle of geological events. Though the Brimham Rocks may continue invulnerable to the elements for thousands of years, their time will come, and that time will be when, through another submergence of the land, the sea shall regain ascendancy of these monuments of its ancient sway, completing the work of denudation it has left half-finished.

(Mackintosh 1869, 119–24)

## OLD PLAINS

Some geomorphologists, mainly the 'big names' in the field, have turned their attention to the long-term change of landscapes. Starting with William Morris Davis's 'geographical cycle' (p. 5), several theories to explain the prolonged decay of regional landscapes have been promulgated. Common to all these theories is the assumption that, however the land surface may appear at the outset, it will gradually be reduced to a low-lying plain that cuts across geological structures and rock types. These **planation surfaces** or **erosion surfaces** are variously styled peneplains, panplains, and etchplains. Cliff Ollier (1991, 78) suggested that the term **palaeo-plain** is preferable since it has no genetic undertones and simply means 'old plain'. It is worth bearing in mind when discussing the classic theories of landscape evolution that palaeo-plain formation takes hundreds of millions of years to accomplish, so that during the Proterozoic aeon enough time elapsed for but a few erosion surfaces to form. In south-eastern Australia, the palaeo-plain first described by Edwin Sherbon Hills is still preserved along much of the Great Divide and is probably of

Mesozoic age. In South America, where uplift has been faster, there are three or more erosion surfaces. Old erosion surfaces are commonly preserved in the geological record as unconformities.

Erosion surfaces became unfashionable, particularly in British geomorphological circles, during the second half of the twentieth century and their very existence was doubted. However, the current consensus is that they do exist and a revival of interest in them is apparent. As Ollier (1981, 152) not so tactfully put it, 'Most people who are not blind or stupid can tell when they are in an area of relatively flat country: they can recognize a plain when they see one'. Of course, a plain may be depositional, constructed from successive layers of alluvial, lacustrine, marine, or other sediments. Erosional plains cut across diverse bedrock types and geological structures are all planation surfaces of some kind. They occur in low-lying areas and at elevation. Elevated plains sometimes bear signs of an erosional origin followed by subsequent dissection. A good example is a **bevelled cuesta**. Here, the flat top or bevel on a cuesta is credible evidence that an upper erosion surface, sitting at about the level of the bevel, existed before

differential erosion moulded the cuesta. A word of warning is in order here: one bevelled cuesta does not a planation surface make. An isolated bevel might have been a river terrace or some other small flat feature. Only when many bevelled cuestas occur, with the bevels all at about the same elevation, does the former existence of a planation surface seem likely. A **shelf** is produced if planation fails to remove the entire top of a cuesta and instead erodes a bench. A much discussed example is the early Pleistocene bench on the North Downs and Chiltern Hills of England. Plateaux are also elevated plains.

### Penneplains

The Davisian system of landscape evolution (p. 5) consists of two separate and distinct cyclical models, one for the progressive development of erosional stream valleys and another for the development of whole landscapes (Higgins 1975). Valleys are thought to be V-shaped in youth, flat-bottomed in maturity, after lateral erosion has become dominant, and to possess very shallow features of extensive plains in old age, after lateral erosion has removed all hills (Figure 12.1). Young landscapes are characterized by much flat topography of the original uplifted penneplain. Mature landscapes have deeper and wider V-shaped valleys that have consumed much of the interfluves bearing remnants of the

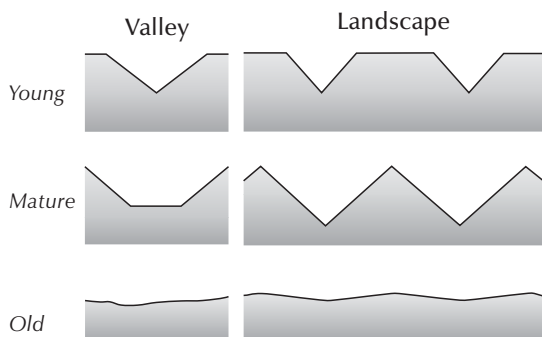


Figure 12.1 Traditional Davisian stage names for valley profiles and for landscape profiles.

Source: Adapted from Ollier and Pain (1996, 204, 205)

original land surface. Old landscapes are characterized by a **penneplain**, in which the interfluves are reduced to minor undulations (Figure 12.1).

### Pediains and panplains

Penck's model of slope retreat was adopted by Lester Charles King, who, in another model of landscape evolution, proposed that slope retreat produces pediments, and that where enough pediments form, a **pediplain** results (King 1953, 1967, 1983). King envisaged 'cycles of pedimentation'. Each cycle starts with a sudden burst of cymatogenic diastrophism and passes into a period of diastrophic quiescence, during which subaerial processes reduce the relief to a pediplain. However, cymatogeny and pediplanation are interconnected. As a continent is denuded, so the eroded sediment is deposited offshore. With some sediment removed, the continental margins rise. At the same time, the weight of sediment in offshore regions causes depression. The concurrent uplift and depression institutes the development of a major scarp near the coast that cuts back inland. As the scarp retreats, leaving a pediplain in its wake, it further unloads the continent and places an extra load of sediment offshore. Eventually, a fresh bout of uplift and depression will produce a new scarp. Thus, because of the cyclical relationship between continental unloading and the offshore loading, continental landscapes come to consist of a huge staircase of erosion surfaces (pediplains), the oldest steps of which occur well inland.

Another variation on slope retreat concerns the notion of **unequal activity** espoused by Colin Hayter Crickmay (1933, 1975). Davis's, Penck's, and King's models of landscape evolution assume that slope processes act evenly on individual slopes. However, geomorphic agents act unequally. For this reason, a slope may recede only where a stream (or the sea) erodes its base. If this should be so, then slope denudation is largely achieved by the lateral corrasion of rivers (or marine erosion at a cliff foot). This will mean that some parts of the landscape will stay virtually untouched by slope recession. Some evidence supports this contention (p. 324).

Crickmay opined that lateral planation by rivers creates panplains.

## Etchplains

Mechanical erosion was assumed to predominate in traditional models of landscape evolution. It was realized that chemical weathering reduces the mass of weathered material, but only on rocks especially vulnerable to solution (such as limestones) were chemical processes thought to have an overriding influence on landscape evolution. However, it now seems that forms of chemical weathering are important in the evolution of landscapes. **Ground-water sapping**, for instance, shapes the features of some drainage basins (e.g. Howard *et al.* 1988). And the solute load in three catchments in Australia comprised more than 80 per cent of the total load, except in one case where it comprised 54 per cent (Ollier and Pain 1996, 216). What makes these figures startling is that the catchments were underlain by igneous rocks. Information of this kind is making some geomorphologists suspect that chemical weathering plays a starring role in the evolution of nearly all landscapes.

In tropical and subtropical environments, chemical weathering produces a thick regolith that is then stripped by erosion (Thomas 1989a, 1989b, 1994). This process is called **etchplanation**. It creates an **etched plain** or **etchplain**. The etchplain

is largely a production of chemical weathering. In places where the regolith is deeper, weakly acid water lowers the weathering front, in the same way that an acid-soaked sponge would etch a metal surface. Some researchers contend that surface erosion lowers the land surface at the same rate that chemical etching lowers the weathering front (Figure 12.2). This is the theory of **double planation**. It envisages land surfaces of low relief being maintained during prolonged, slow uplift by the continuous lowering of double planation surfaces – the **wash surface** and the **basal weathering surface** (Büdel 1957, 1982; Thomas 1965). A rival view, depicted schematically in Figure 12.3, is that a period of deep chemical weathering precedes a phase of regolith stripping (e.g. Linton 1955; Ollier 1959, 1960; Hill *et al.* 1995).

Whatever the details of the etching process, it is very effective in creating landforms, even in regions lying beyond the present tropics. The Scottish Highlands experienced a major uplift in the Early Tertiary. After 50 million years, the terrain evolved by dynamic etching with deep weathering of varied geology under a warm to temperate humid climate (Hall 1991). This etching led to a progressive differentiation of relief features, with the evolution of basins, valleys, scarps, and inselbergs. In like manner, etchplanation may have played a basic role in the Tertiary evolutionary geomorphology of the southern England chalklands, a topic that has

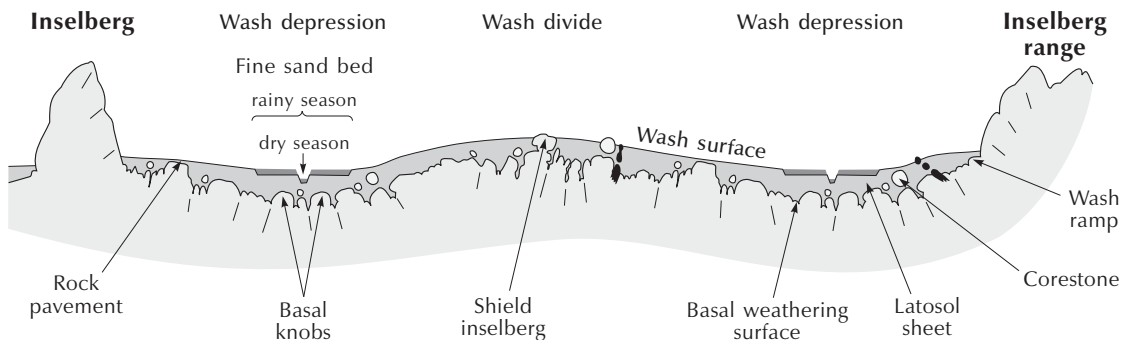


Figure 12.2 Double planation surfaces: the wash surface and the basal weathering surface.

Source: Adapted from Büdel (1982, 126)

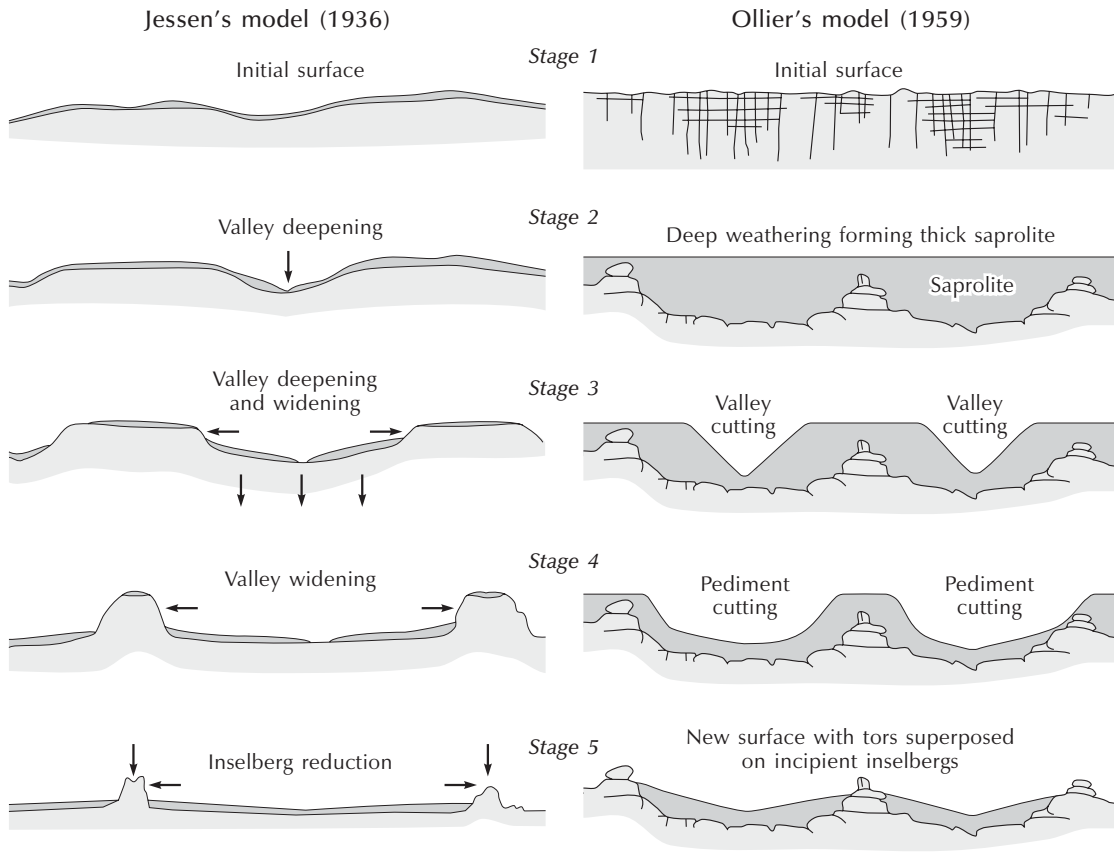


Figure 12.3 Theories of etchplanation.  
Source: Adapted from Jessen (1936) and Ollier (1959)

always generate much heat. There is a growing recognition that the fundamental erosional surface is a summit surface formed by etchplanation during the Palaeogene period, and is not a peneplain formed during the Miocene and Pliocene periods (Jones 1999).

## ANCIENT LANDFORMS

### Relict landforms

'Little of the earth's topography is older than the Tertiary and most of it no older than Pleistocene'

(Thornbury 1954, 26). For many decades, this view was widely held by geomorphologists. Research over the last twenty years has revealed that a significant part of the land surface is surprisingly ancient, surviving in either relict or buried form (see Twidale 1999). **Relict landscapes and landforms** endure for millions, tens of millions, or hundreds of millions of years.

### Relict land surfaces

In tectonically stable regions, land surfaces, especially those capped by duricrusts, may persist a hundred million years or more, witness the Gondwanan and

post-Gondwanan erosion surfaces in the Southern Hemisphere (King 1983). Some weathering profiles in Australia are 100 million years old or even older (Ollier 1991, 53). Remnants of a ferricrete-mantled land surface surviving from the early Mesozoic era are widespread in the Mount Lofty Ranges, Kangaroo Island, and the south Eyre Peninsula of South Australia (Twidale *et al.* 1974). Indeed, much of south-eastern Australia contains many very old topographical features (Young 1983; Bishop *et al.* 1985; Twidale and Campbell 1995). Some upland surfaces originated in the Mesozoic era and others in the early Palaeogene period; and in some areas the last major uplift and onset of canyon cutting occurred before the Oligocene epoch. In southern Nevada, early to middle Pleistocene colluvial deposits, mainly darkly varnished boulders, are common features of hillslopes formed in volcanic tuff. Their long-term survival indicates that denudation rates on resistant volcanic hillslopes in the southern Great Basin have been exceedingly low throughout Quaternary times (Whitney and Harrington 1993).

In Europe, signs of ancient saprolites and duricrusts, bauxite and laterite, and the formation and preservation of erosional landforms, including tors, inselbergs, and pediments, have been detected (Summerfield and Thomas 1987). A kaolin deposit in Sweden has Cretaceous oysters in their growth positions on corestones. These corestones must have been weathered, eroded, and exposed on a beach by around 80 million years ago (Lidmar-Bergström 1988). The palaeoclimatic significance of these finds has not passed unnoticed: for much of the Cenozoic era, the tropical climatic zone of the Earth extended much further polewards than it does today. Indeed, evidence from deposits in the soil landscape, like evidence in the palaeobotanical record, indicates that warm and moist conditions extended to high latitudes in the North Atlantic during the late Cretaceous and Palaeogene periods. Julius Büdel (1982) was convinced that Europe suffered extensive etchplanation during Tertiary times. Traces of a tropical weathering regime have been unearthed (e.g. Battiau-Queney 1996). In the British Isles, several Tertiary weathering products and associated

landforms and soils have been discovered (e.g. Battiau-Queney 1984, 1987). On Anglesey, which has been a tectonically stable area since at least the Triassic period, inselbergs, such as Mynydd Bodafon, have survived several large changes of climatic regime (Battiau-Queney 1987). In Europe, Asia, and North America many karst landscapes are now interpreted as fossil landforms originally produced under a tropical weathering regime during Tertiary times (Büdel 1982; Bosák *et al.* 1989).

### Relict glacial and periglacial landforms

Many of the glacial landforms discussed in Chapter 8 are relicts from the Pleistocene glaciations. In the English Lake District, U-shaped valleys, roches moutonnées, striations, and so on attest to an icy past. However, not all signs of glaciation are incontrovertible. Many landforms and sediments found in glaciated regions, even those regions buried beneath deep and fairly fast-flowing ice, have no modern analogues. Landforms with no modern analogues include drumlins, large-scale flutings, rogens, and hummocky topography. This means that drumlins are not forming at present and the processes that fashion them cannot be studied directly but can only be inferred from the size, shape, composition, and location of relict forms.

Glacial landforms created by Pleistocene ice may be used as analogues for older glaciations. For instance, roches moutonnées have been found in the geological record. Abraded bedrock surfaces in the Neoproterozoic sequence of Mauritania contain several well-developed ones, and others have been found in the Late Palaeozoic Dwykas Tillite of South Africa (Hambrey 1994, 104).

Areas fringing the Northern Hemisphere ice sheets and other areas that were appreciably colder during the Quaternary are rich in relict features of periglaciation. The blockfields (p. 121) of the Appalachian Mountains, eastern USA, are considered to be fossil periglacial landforms, and in Norway, some Tertiary blockfields have been identified that seem to have formed under a mediterranean-type climate. Studies in Europe have yielded a large



number of relict periglacial features (Box 12.1). Periglacial landforms also survive from previous cold periods. Siltstones with fossil root traces and surface mats of fossil plants occur in the mid-Carboniferous Seaham Formation near Lochinvar, New South Wales, Australia (Retallack 1999). They represent ancient soils of tundra and bear signs of freeze–thaw banding and earth hummocks (thufur).

### Relicts and climatic geomorphology

Climatic geomorphologists have made careers out of deciphering the generations of landforms derived from past climates. Their arguments hinge on the assumption that present climatic zones tend to foster distinctive suites of landforms (e.g. Tricart and Cailleux 1972; Büdel 1982; Bremer 1988). Such an

assumption is certainly not without foundation, but has been questioned by many geomorphologists, particularly in English-speaking countries. A close connection between process regimes and process rates has been noted at several points in the book (e.g. pp. 125–6). Whether the set of geomorphic processes within each climatic zone creates characteristic landforms – whether a set of morphogenetic regions may be established – is debatable.

Much climatic geomorphology has been criticized for using temperature and rainfall data, which provide too gross a picture of the relationships between rainfall, soil moisture, and runoff, and for excluding the magnitude and frequency of storms and floods, which are important in landform development. Some landforms are more climatically zonal in character than others. Arid, nival, periglacial, and

#### Box 12.1

##### RELICT PERIGLACIAL FEATURES IN ENGLAND

England possesses many landforms formed under periglacial conditions and surviving as relicts. A few examples will illustrate the point.

'**Head**' is used to describe deposits of variable composition that were mainly produced by gelifluction or solifluction moving material from higher to lower ground. Head deposits are widespread in eastern England and are a relict periglacial feature (Catt 1987). They occur on lower scarp and valley slopes and overlie a variety of bedrock types. Thick **coombe deposits** lie on the floors of dry chalkland valleys. They consist of frost-shattered bedrock that has been carried down slopes greater than 2° by rolling, frost creep, or mass sliding over melting ice lenses or a permafrost table. The more extensive thin spreads of stony fine loams – clay vale head deposits – that cover the floors of clay vales occur on very gentle slopes (often less than 1°) or almost level ground but contain stones from hard rock escarpments several kilometres away. They appear to be cold

climate mudflows initiated on steep slopes (7–10°) that have been a little reworked by fluvial activity.

Non-sorted **frost-wedge polygons** and stripes are found over large areas of the chalk outcrop in eastern England, including many areas covered by coombe deposits. They are readily apparent in soil and crop marks in aerial photographs. Near Evesham, in southern England, polygonal patterns with meshes 8 m across have been noted. Remnants of **pingos** occur in the south of Ireland, beyond the limits of the last glaciation (Coxon and O'Callaghan 1987). The pingo remnants are large (10–100 m in diameter) and occur as individuals, as small groups, and as large clusters.

The tors, rock platforms, and debris slopes on the Stiperstones in Shropshire appear to have formed concurrently under periglacial conditions (Clark 1994). The landscape is thus inherited. The crest-line cryoplanation platforms are probably the clearest of the remnants and they display manifest relationships with the tors and debris slopes.

glacial landforms are quite distinct. Other morpho-climatic zones have been distinguished, but their constituent landforms are not clearly determined by climate. In all morphoclimatic regions, the effects of geological structure and etching processes are significant, even in those regions where climate exerts a strong influence on landform development (Twidale and Lageat 1994). So climate is not of overarching importance for the development of landforms in over half the world's land surface. Indeed, some geomorphologists opine that landforms, and especially hillslopes, will be the same regardless of climate in all geographical and climatic zones (see Ruhe 1975).

The conclusion is that, mainly because of ongoing climatic and tectonic change, the climatic factor in landform development is not so plain and simple as climatic geomorphologists have on occasions suggested. Responses to these difficulties go in two directions – towards complexity and towards simplicity. The complexities of climate–landform relations are explored in at least two ways. One way is to attempt a fuller characterization of climate. A recent study of climatic landscape regions of the world's mountains used several pertinent criteria: the height of timberline, the number and character of altitudinal vegetational zones, the amount and seasonality of moisture available to vegetation, physiographic processes, topographic effects of frost, and the relative levels of the timberline and permafrost limit (Thompson 1990). Another way of delving into the complexity of climatic influences is to bring modern views on fluvial system dynamics

to bear on the question. One such study has taken a fresh look at the notion of morphogenetic regions and the response of geomorphic systems to climatic change (Bull 1992). A simpler model of climatic influence on landforms is equally illuminating (Ollier 1988). It seems reasonable to reduce climate to three fundamental classes: humid where water dominates, arid where water is in short supply, and glacial where water is frozen (Table 12.1). Each of these 'climates' favours certain weathering and slope processes. Deep weathering occurs where water is unfrozen. Arid and glacial landscapes bear the full brunt of climatic influences because they lack the protection afforded by vegetation in humid landscapes. Characteristic landforms do occur in each of these climatic regions, and it is usually possible to identify past tropical landscapes on the basis of clay minerals in relict weathering profiles. It seems reasonable, therefore, by making the assumption of actualism (p. 32), to use these present climate–landform associations to interpret relict features that bear the mark of particular climatic regimes. Julius Büdel (1982, 329–38), for instance, interprets the 'etchplain stairways' and *polja* of central Dalmatia as relicts from the Late Tertiary period, when the climate was more 'tropical', being much warmer and possibly wetter. Such conditions would favour *polje* formation through 'double planation' (p. 316): chemical decomposition and solution of a basal weathering surface under a thick sheet of soil or sediment, the surface of which was subject to wash processes.

*Table 12.1* A simple scheme relating geomorphic processes to climate

<i>Climate</i>	<i>Weathering process</i>	<i>Weathering depth</i>	<i>Mass movement</i>
Glacial	Frost (chemical effects reduced by low temperatures)	Shallow	Rock glacier Solifluction (wet) Scree slopes
Humid	Chemical	Deep	Creep Landslides
Arid	Salt	Deep	Rockfalls

Source: Adapted from Ollier (1988)

## Exhumed landforms

Exhumed landscapes and landforms are common, preserved for long periods beneath sediments then uncovered by erosion (Box 12.2). They are common

on all continents (e.g. Lidmar-Bergström 1989, 1993, 1995, 1996; Twidale 1994; Thomas 1995).

Exhumed erosion surfaces are quite common. The geological column is packed with unconformities, which are marked by surfaces dividing older,

### Box 12.2

#### BURIED, EXHUMED, AND RELICT KARST

Karst that formed in the geological past and survives to the present is surprisingly common. Such old karst is known as **palaeokarst**, although sometimes the term 'fossil karst', which is rather ambiguous, is employed (see Bosák *et al.* 1989). Palaeokarst may be divided into buried karst and intrastratal karst.

**Buried karst** is karst that is formed at the ground surface and then covered by later sediments. **Intrastratal karst** is karst formed within bedding planes or unconformities of soluble rocks that are already buried by younger strata. An important distinction between buried karst and intrastratal karst is that buried karst is older than the covering rocks, while intrastratal karst is younger than the covering rocks. **Subjacent karst** is the most common form of intrastratal karst and develops in soluble rocks that lie below less soluble or insoluble strata. No intrastratal karst feature has ever belonged to a former karst landscape. A complication here is that, in many places, intrastratal karst is forming today. Palaeo-intrastratal karst is inactive or inert. The oldest known buried karst features are caves and cave deposits in the Transvaal, South Africa, which formed 2,200 million years ago (Martini 1981). In Quebec, Canada, Middle Ordovician dolines, rounded solution runnels, and solution pans have been discovered, exposed after survival beneath a blanket of later rocks (Desrochers and James 1988).

Another group of karst features were formed in the past when the climate and other environmental factors were different, but survive today,

often in a degraded state, under conditions that are no longer conducive to their development. Such karst features are called **relict karst** and occur above and below ground. A cave system abandoned by the groundwater streams that carved it, owing to a lowering of the groundwater table, is an example of subterranean relict karst. Some caves are Tertiary in age, and some relict cave passages may even survive from the Mesozoic era (Osborne and Branagan 1988). Similar processes have operated over these timescales to produce deposits that can be investigated to reconstruct changing conditions. Other processes have operated to leave relict features that have no modern analogues (Gillieson 1996, 106). An example of a surface relict karst feature is the stream-sink dolines found in the Northaw Great Wood, Hertfordshire, England, where the Cuffley Brook cuts down through London Clay and Reading Beds to reach chalk. At the eastern end of the wood, where the chalk lies just below alluvium, there are several stream-sink dolines standing higher than the present stream channel and were probably formed when the stream occupied a different and higher course. On a larger scale, the Qattara Depression, Egypt, may have started as a river valley, but it was mainly formed by karst processes during the Late Miocene period. It has subsequently been lowered by deflation (p. 260) but is partly a relict karst feature (Albritton *et al.* 1990).

To complicate matters even more, buried karst is sometimes re-exposed through the erosion of the

covering strata to form **exhumed karst**. Near Madoc, Ontario, Canada, pure dolostones dating from the Grenville Orogeny some 977 million years ago today form a hilly terrain that is being exhumed from the Late Cambrian–Lower Ordovician cover rocks. Cone karst and cockpits, together with lesser dolines and grikes, have been identified in the exhumed surface (Springer 1983). If the environmental conditions on re-exposure are favourable, renewed karstification may proceed and create **rejuvenated karst**. The present upland

surface of the Mendip Hills of Somerset, England, is the rejuvenated surface of a Triassic island, and some of the fissures on the Mendips may have been dolines or cenotes (Ford 1989). Similarly, the Yunnan Stone Forest (p. 144) started as a rugged tor-and-pediment topography that was buried by Tertiary sands and clays. Smooth and rounded pinnacles developed while the cover was present. Recent re-exposure is sharpening the pinnacles over an area of 35,000 ha.

often folded, rocks from overlying, often flat-lying rocks. Some unconformities seem to be old plains, either peneplains formed by coastal erosion during a marine transgression or by fluvial erosion, or else etchplains formed by the processes of etchplanation. The overlying rocks can be marine, commonly a conglomerate laid down during a transgression, or terrestrial. The unconformity is revealed as an exhumed erosion surface when the overlying softer rocks are removed by erosion. It is debatable how the exhumed erosion surface relates to landscape evolution. If a thin cover has been stripped, then the old erosion surface plays a large part in the modern topography, but where hundreds or thousands of metres of overlying strata have been removed, then the exhumed erosion surface is all but a chance component part of the modern landscape, much like any other structural surface (Ollier 1991, 97). The Kimberley Plateau of Western Australia bears an erosion surface carrying striations produced by the Sturtian glaciation some 700 million years ago and then covered by a glacial till. The thin till was later stripped to reveal the Kimberley surface, the modern topography of which closely matches the Precambrian topography and displays the exhumed striations (Ollier 1991, 24).

The relief differentiation on the Baltic Shield, once thought to result primarily from glacial erosion, is considered now to depend on basement-surface exposure time during the Phanerozoic aeon (Figure 12.4; Colour Plate 16a–d, inserted between pp.

210–11). Three basic relief types occur on the Fennoscandian Shield (Lidmar-Bergström 1999). The first is the exhumed and extremely flat sub-Cambrian peneplain, which with sub-Vendian and sub-Ordovician facets has been the starting surface for all relief upon the shield (Figure 12.5a). The second is the exhumed sub-Mesozoic etchplains, which possess an undulating and hilly relief and vestiges of a kaolinitic saprolite and Mesozoic cover rocks (Figure 12.5b, c). The third is a set of plains with residual hills that are the end result of surface denudation during the Tertiary period (Figure 12.5d).

In northern England, a variety of active, exhumed, and buried limestone landforms are present (Douglas 1987). They were originally created by sedimentation early in the Carboniferous period (late Tournaisian and early Viséan ages). Subsequent tectonic changes associated with a tilt-block basement structure have effected a complex sequence of landform changes (Figure 12.6). The Waulsortian knolls are exhumed mounds of carbonate sediment formed about 350 million years ago. They were covered by shales and later by chalk, and then exhumed during the Tertiary period to produce **reef knoll hills** that are features of the present landscape. In the Clitheroe region, they form a series of isolated hills, up to 60 m high and 100–800 m in diameter at the base, standing above the floor of the Ribbles valley. The limestone fringing reefs formed in the Asbian and Brigantian ages today form prominent reef knoll hills close to Cracoe, Malham, and Settle.

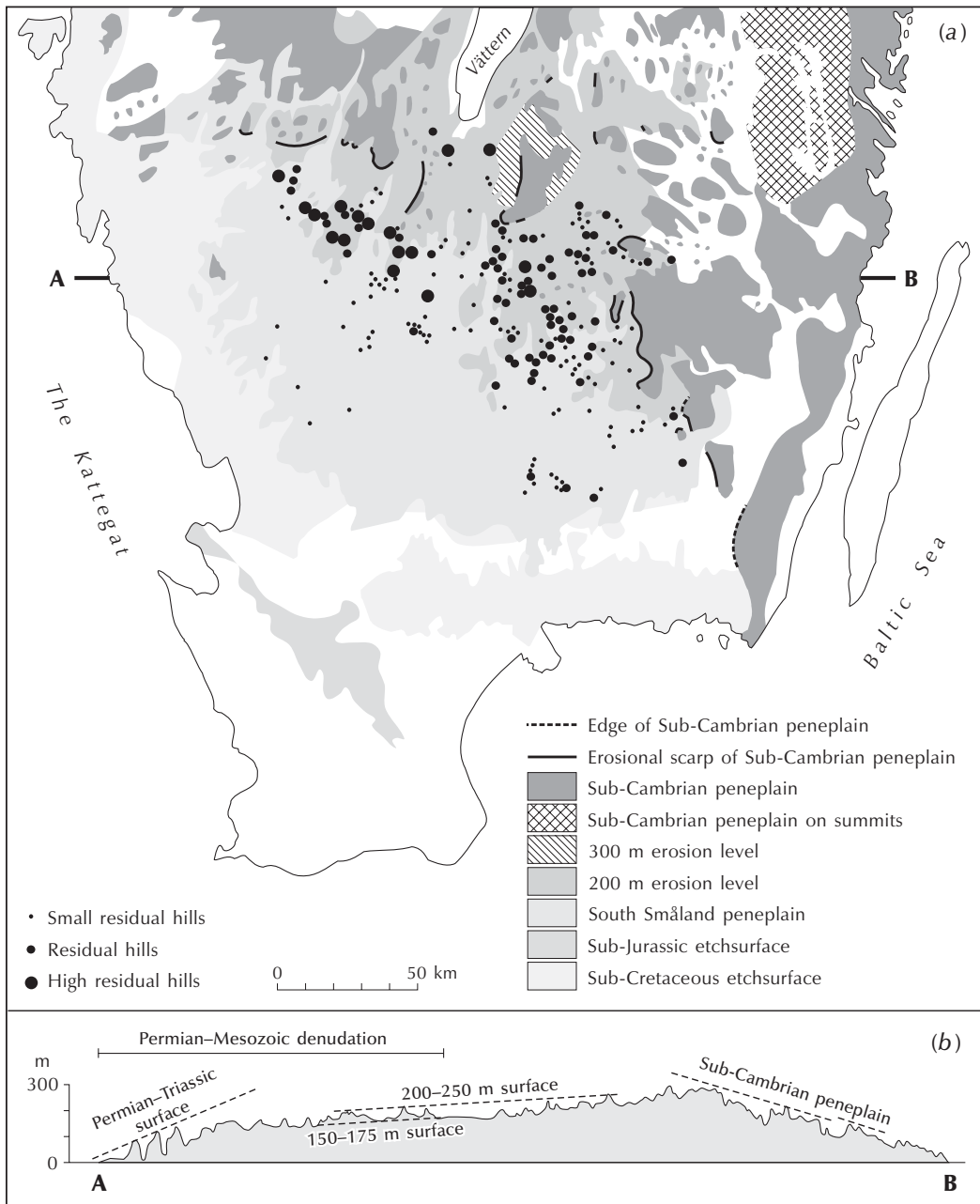
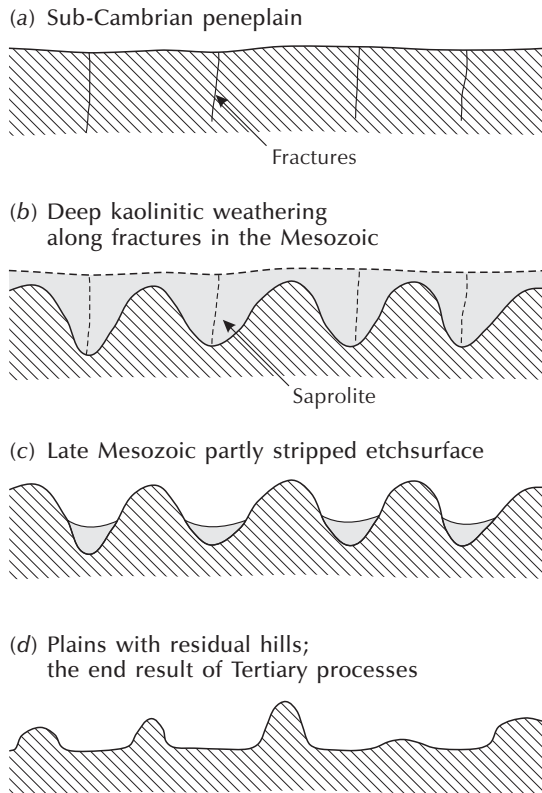


Figure 12.4 Denudation surfaces and tectonics of southern Sweden. (a) Mapped features. (b) West–east profile across the dome-like uplift of the southern Baltic Shield. Note the exhumed sub-Cretaceous hilly relief evolved from the Permo-Triassic surface.

Source: Adapted from Lidmar-Bergström (1993, 1996)



*Figure 12.5* The three basic relief types within the Fennoscandian Shield. (a) Sub-Cambrian peneplain. This exhumed and extremely flat palaeoplain, together with sub-Vendian and sub-Ordovician facets, is the starting point for all relief on the Fennoscandian shield. (b) Deep kaolinitic weathering along fractures in the Mesozoic. This is not a basic relief type, but led to (c) Late Mesozoic partly stripped etchplains, with a characteristic undulating hilly terrain and remnants of kaolinitic saprolite and Mesozoic cover rocks. (d) Late Tertiary plains with residual hills, which are the product of Tertiary surface denudation.  
*Source:* Adapted from Lidmar-Bergström (1999)

Carboniferous sedimentation in the southernmost section of the Gaspé Peninsula in eastern Quebec, Canada, has fossilized a palaeosurface – the Saint Elzéar surface – that is now gradually being exhumed by erosion (Jutras and Schroeder 1999).

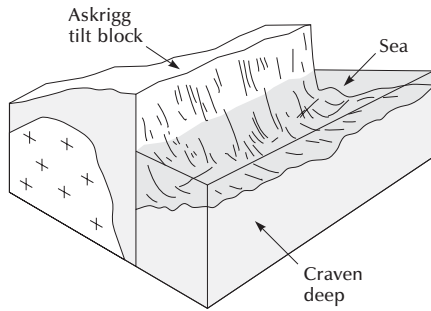
Part of the surface is a nearly perfect planation surface, cut between 290 and 200 million years ago, a time spanning the Permian and Jurassic periods. The planation surface cuts horizontally across all geological structures and has suffered little dissection (Figure 12.7). The exhumation of the surface must also have begun by the Jurassic period following the *en bloc* uplift of the evolving Atlantic Ocean's passive margins. Some geomorphic features on the exhumed palaeosurface are guides to Carboniferous palaeoenvironments and tectonics in the area. The Saint Elzéar planation surface is separated from the uplands of the Gaspesian Plateau – a higher planation surface formed in the same formations – by the 200 to 300 m-high Garin Scarp. So far as is known, four processes could have produced an erosion surface bounded by a scarp: faulting, etching and double planation, rock pedimentation controlled by differential erosion, and coastal erosion by a transgressive sea. Pierre Jutras and Jacques Schoeder (1999) favour the latter process and interpret the erosion surface as a wide wave-cut platform produced by the Windsor transgression. They interpret the Garin Scarp as an old sea-cliff.

### Stagnant landscapes

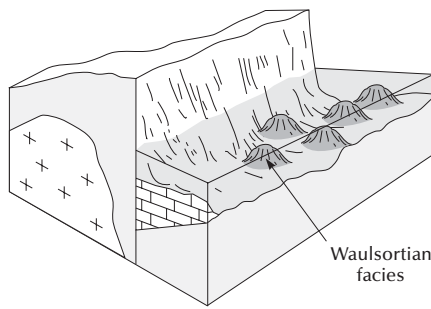
Just what proportion of the Earth's land surface predates the Pleistocene epoch has yet to be ascertained, but it looks to be a not insignificant figure. In Australia, Gondwanan land surfaces constitute 10–20 per cent of the contemporary cratonic landscape (Twidale 1994). An important implication of all this work is that some landforms and their associated soils can survive through various climatic changes when tectonic conditions permit. A problem arises in accounting for the survival of these palaeoforms. Most modern geomorphological theory would dictate that denudational processes should have destroyed them long ago. It is possible that they have survived under the exceptional circumstance of a very long-lasting arid climate, under which the erosional cycle takes a vast stretch of time to run its course (Twidale 1976, 1998, 1999). A controversial explanation is that much of



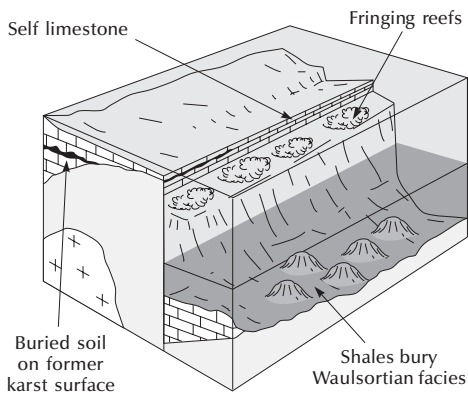
(a) Pre-Tournaisian



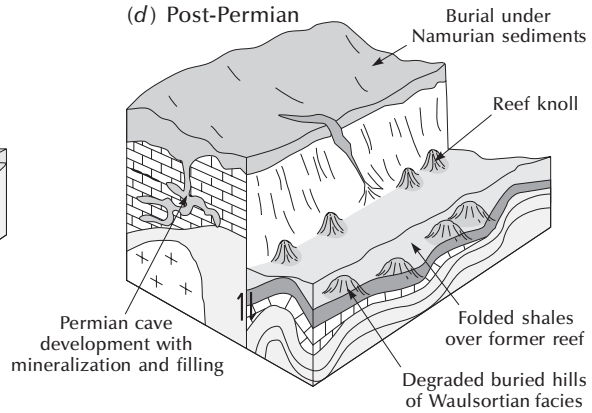
(b) Late Tournaisian–Early Viséan



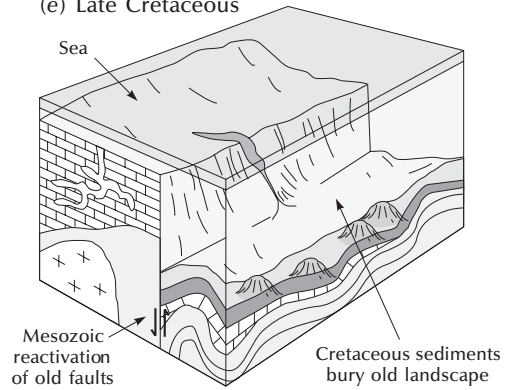
(c) Mid–late Viséan



(d) Post-Permian



(e) Late Cretaceous



(f) Late Tertiary

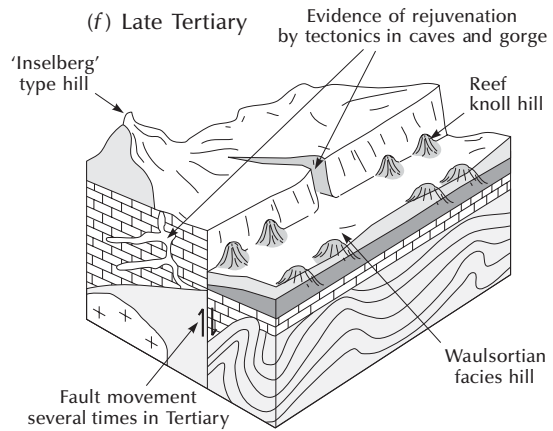


Figure 12.6 Schematic diagram showing the evolution of limestone landscapes in northern England. The Askrigg tilt-block is separated from the Craven Deep by the Craven Fault, a major east–west fault across the northern Pennines.

Source: Adapted from Douglas (1987)



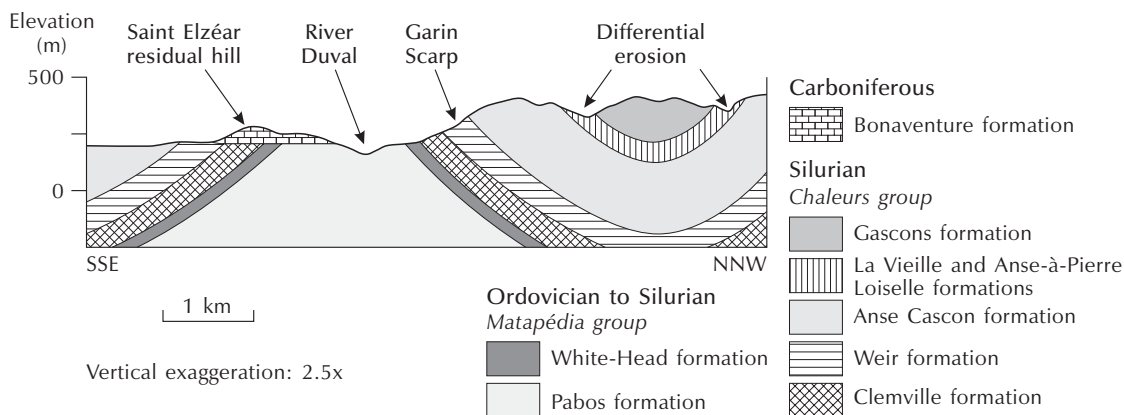


Figure 12.7 Cross-section across the Saint Elzéar region. The palaeosurface, which has been exhumed by erosion, can be seen to the south-south-east of the Garin Scarp cutting across Ordovician and Silurian rocks.

Source: Adapted from Jutras and Schroeder (1999)

the Earth's surface is geomorphically rather inactive: the ancient landscape of south-eastern Australia, rather than being an exceptional case, may be typical of Africa and, to a lesser extent, Eurasia and the Americas (e.g. Young 1983; Twidale 1998).

Two related mechanisms might explain stagnant parts of landscapes (cf. Twidale 1999). The first mechanism is **unequal erosion**. Some parts of landscapes are more susceptible to erosion than others (cf. Brunsdon and Thornes 1979). Mobile, fast-responding parts (rivers, some soils, and beaches) erode readily. They quickly adopt new configurations and act as focal points for landscape change. Relatively immobile, slowly responding parts (plateaux and interfluvies, some soils and weathering features) lie far from susceptible parts. This differential susceptibility of landscapes to erosion would permit fast-changing 'soft spots' to exist alongside stagnant areas. But it does not explain why some areas are stagnant. Weathering should construct regolith and erosional processes should destroy it on all exposed surfaces, though the balance between constructive and destructive forces would vary in different environments. The second mechanism helps to explain the occurrence of stagnant areas. It is **the persistence and dominating influence of rivers** (Twidale 1997). Rivers are self-reinforcing

systems: once established and dominant, they tend to sustain and augment their dominance. Thus, major rivers tend to persist in a landscape. In Australia, some modern rivers are 60 million years old and have been continuously active since their initiation in the Eocene epoch. Other equally old or even older rivers, but with slightly checkered chronologies, also persist in the landscape (see Ollier 1991, 99–103). Likewise, some landscapes reveal the ghosts of other very old rivers. Rivers of similar antiquity occur in other Gondwanan landscapes. Such long-running persistence of rivers means that parts of landscapes remote from river courses – interfluvies and summits for example – may remain virtually untouched by erosive processes for vast spans of time and they are, in geomorphic terms, stagnant areas. A third possible mechanism for landscape stagnation comes from theoretical work. It was found that landscape stability depends upon time-lags between soil processes, which act at right-angles to hillslopes, and geomorphic processes, which act tangentially to hillslopes (Phillips 1995). When there is no lag between debris production and its availability for removal, regolith thickness at a point along a hillside displays chaotic dynamics. On the other hand, when a time-lag is present, regolith thickness is stable and non-chaotic. The emergence

of landscape stability at broad scales may therefore result from time-lags in different processes. Where regolith production is slow, and erosion even slower, stagnation might occur. Even so, the conditions necessary for the first two mechanisms to produce landscape stagnation would surely be required for a landscape to maintain stability for hundreds of millions of years.

If substantial portions of landscapes are indeed stagnant and hundreds of millions of years old, the implications for process geomorphology are not much short of sensational. It would mean that cherished views on rates of denudation and on the relation between denudation rates and tectonics would require a radical revision, and the connections between climate and landforms would be even more difficult to establish.

## LANDSCAPES AND ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGE

### Landscape cycles

Several geomorphologists believe that landscape history has been *cyclical* or *episodic*. The Davisian system of landscape evolution combined periods dominated by the gradual and gentle action of geomorphic processes interrupted by brief episodes

of sudden and violent tectonic activity. A land mass would suffer repeated 'cycles of erosion' involving an initial, rapid uplift followed by a slow wearing down. The Kingian model of repeated pediplanation envisaged long-term cycles, too. Remnants of erosion surfaces can be identified globally (King 1983). They correspond to pediplanation during the Jurassic, Early to Middle Cretaceous, Late Cretaceous, Miocene, Pliocene, and Quaternary times (Table 12.2). However, King's views are not widely accepted, and have been challenged (e.g. Summerfield 1984; Ollier 1991, 93).

A popular theme, with several variations, is that the landscape alternates between stages of relative stability and stages of relative instability. An early version of this idea, which still has considerable currency, is the theory of *biostasy* and *rhexistasy* (Erhart 1938, 1956). According to this model, landscape change involves long periods of *biostasy* (biological equilibrium), associated with stability and soil development, broken in upon by short periods of *rhexistasy* (disequilibrium), marked by instability and soil erosion. During *biostasy*, which is the 'normal' state, streams carry small loads of suspended sediments but large loads of dissolved materials: silica and calcium are removed to the oceans, where they form limestones and chert, leaving deep ferrallitic soils and weathering profiles on the continents. *Rhexistatic* conditions are

Table 12.2 Lester King's global planation cycles and their recognition

<i>Cycle</i>	<i>Old name</i>	<i>New name</i>	<i>Recognition</i>
I	Gondwana	Gondwana planation	Jurassic, only rarely preserved
II	Post-Gondwana	'Kretacic' planation	Early to mid-Cretaceous
III	African	Moorland planation	Late Cretaceous to mid-Cenozoic. Planed uplands with no trees and poor soils
IV		Rolling land surface	Mostly Miocene. Undulating country above incised valleys
V	Post-African	Widespread landscape	Pliocene. The most widespread global planation cycle. Found mainly in basins, lowlands, and coastal plains and not in uplifted mountain regions
VI	Congo	Youngest cycle	Quaternary. Represented in deep valleys and gorges of the main rivers

Source: Adapted from Ollier (1991, 92)

triggered by bouts of tectonic uplift and lead to the stripping of the ferrallitic soil cover, the headward erosion of streams, and the flushing out of residual quartz during entrenchment. Intervening plateaux become desiccated owing to a falling water table, and duricrusts form. In the oceans, red beds and quartz sands are deposited.

The theory of **K-cycles** is an elaboration of the Erhart model (Butler 1959, 1967). It proposed that landscapes evolve through a succession of cycles called K-cycles. Each cycle comprises a stable phase, during which soils develop forming a 'ground-surface', and an unstable phase, during which erosion and deposition occur.

More recent versions of the stability–instability model take account of regolith, tectonics, sedimentation, and sea-level change. A **cratonic regime model**, based on studies carried out on the stable craton of Western Australia, envisaged alternating planation and transgression occurring without major disturbance for periods of up to a billion years (Fairbridge and Finkl 1980). During this long time, a **thalassocratic regime** (corresponding to Erhart's biostasy and associated with high sea levels) is interrupted by short intervals dominated by an **epeirocratic regime** (corresponding to Erhart's rhexistasy and associated with low sea levels). The alternations between thalassocratic and epeirocratic regimes may occur every 10–100 million years. However, more frequent alternations have been reported. A careful study of the Koidu etchplain in Sierra Leone has shown that interruptions mirror environmental changes and occur approximately every 1,000–10,000 years (Thomas and Thorp 1985).

A variant of the cratonic regime model explains the evolution of many Australian landscape features (Twidale 1991, 1994). An Early Cretaceous marine transgression flooded large depressed basins on the Australian land mass (Figure 12.8). The transgression covered about 45 per cent of the present continent. The new submarine basins subsided under the weight of water and sediment. Huge tracts of the Gondwanan landscape were preserved beneath the unconformity. Hinge lines (or fulcra)

would have formed near shorelines. Adjacent land areas would have been uplifted, raising the Gondwanan palaeoplain, and basin margins warped and faulted. Parts of this plain were preserved on divides as palaeoplain remnants. Other parts were dissected and reduced to low relief by rivers graded to Cretaceous shorelines. Subsequent erosion of the Cretaceous marine sequence margins has exhumed parts of the Gondwanan surface, which is an integral part of the present Australian landscape.

### The fluvial system and environmental change

The fluvial system responds to environmental change. It is especially responsive to tectonic changes, climatic changes, and changes in vegetation cover and land use. The effects of tectonic processes on drainage and drainage patterns were explored in Chapter 3.

Climatic changes are evidenced in **misfit streams** (streams presently too small to have created the valleys they occupy), **entrenched meanders**, and **relict fluvial features** in deserts. Deserts with hyperarid climates today contain landforms created by fluvial processes – alluvial spreads, pediments, and valleys carved out by streams. These features are not readily obliterated by wind erosion and linger on as vestiges of former moist episodes.

The response of river systems to **Holocene climatic changes** is complex and is partly governed by the response of vegetation to the same changes (Knox 1984). In the USA, alluvial episodes occurred between roughly 8,000 and 6,000, 4,500 and 3,000, and 2,000 and 800 years ago. Before 8,000 years ago, changing vegetation and rapid climatic warming caused widespread alluviation. The magnitude of this alluvial episode generally rose to the west in parallel with increased drying and increased vegetation change. Between 8,000 and 7,500 years ago, alluviation was broken in upon by erosion. Although of minor proportions in the East and humid Mid-West, this erosion was severe in the South-West. For the next, 2,000 years, warm and dry conditions in the southern South-West and parts

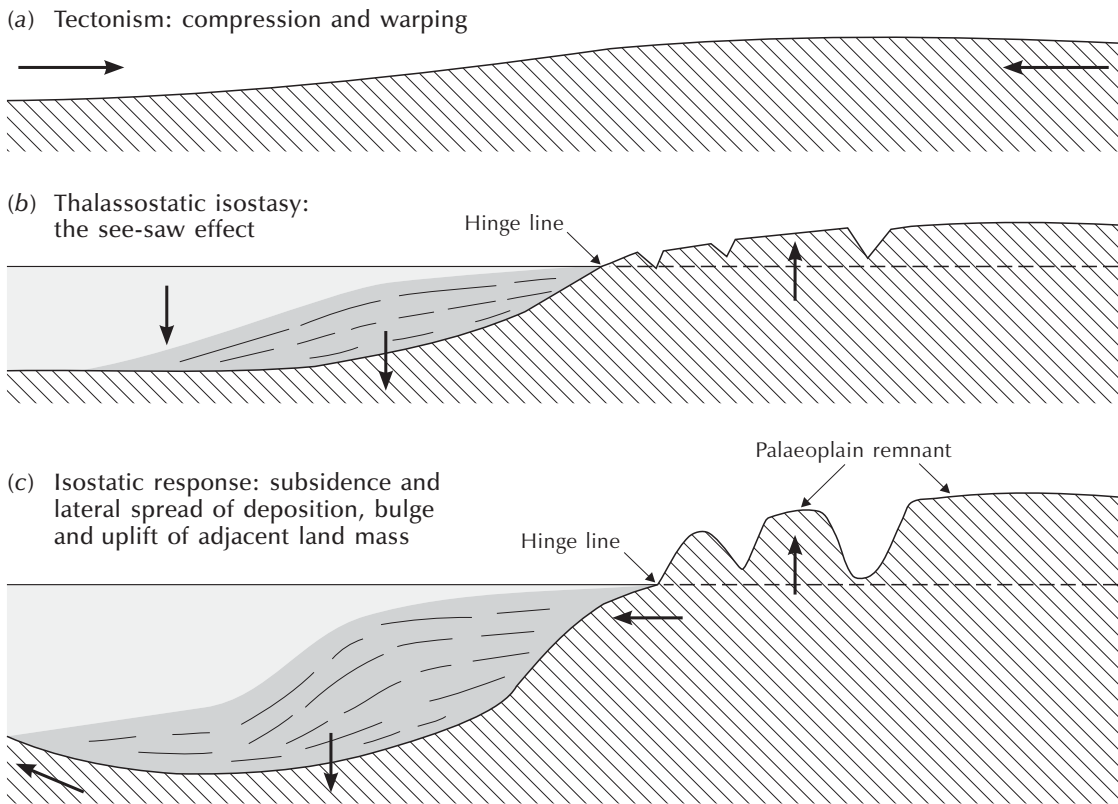


Figure 12.8 Sequence of events following a marine incursion into an Australian cratonic basin, and consequent uplift of adjacent land.

Source: Adapted from Twidale (1994)

of the East and South-East (caused by the persistent zonal circulation of the early Holocene epoch), led to a slowing of alluviation in all places except the South-West, where major erosion of valley fills occurred. Although the South-East was warm and wet at the time, it did not suffer erosion because forests were established. From 6,000 to 4,500 years ago, all the Holocene valley fills were eroded, except those in the South-West, where alluviation continued. The extensive erosive phase resulted from a climatic cooling that improved the vegetation cover, reduced sediment loads, and promoted trenching; and from the circulation of the atmosphere becoming more meridional during summer, so bringing higher rainfall and larger floods. The

South-West was untouched by the erosive phase because the climate there became more arid, owing to the northward displacement of the subtropical high-pressure cell. Between about 4,500 and 3,000 years ago, the rates of erosion and deposition slackened but were high again in many regions between 3,000 and 1,800 years ago. The nature of the intensification of erosion and deposition varied from place to place. In the northern Mid-West, very active lateral channel migration with erosion and deposition took place. On the western edge of the Great Plains, alluviation occurred at many sites. In the southern Great Plains of Texas, erosion and entrenchment were rife. The intensity of fluvial activity then died down again and stayed subdued

until 1,200 to 800 years ago, when cutting and filling and active lateral channel migration occurred. From 800 years ago to the late nineteenth century, a moderate alluviation took place, after which time trenching started in most regions.

### **Aeolian activity in the past**

'The Earth's most imposing aeolian landforms are inherited rather than products of contemporary processes' (Livingstone and Warren 1996, 125). Why should this be? The answer seems to lie in the changing windiness of the planet and in the changing distribution of arid desert environments.

#### **A drier and windier world**

The Earth is calm at present. During periods of the Pleistocene, and notably around the last glacial maximum, some 18,000 years ago, it was much windier and, in places, drier. Many aeolian features are inherited from those windy times in the Pleistocene when episodes of aeolian accumulation occurred in the world's drylands. Some sand seas expanded considerably and accumulated vast quantities of sand. Areas of expansion included the Sahel in northern Africa, the Kalahari in southern Africa, the Great Plains in the central USA, and large parts of Hungary and central Poland. Many of these inherited sand accumulations are now fixed by grass and trees. Inherited Pleistocene landforms include the largest desert dunes, mega-yardangs as seen in the Tibesti region of the Sahara, and loess deposits, some 400 m thick, that cover about 10 per cent of the land area. High winds of the Pleistocene were also the main contributors to the large thickness of dust in ocean floors.

How are ancient dune systems distinguished from their modern counterparts? Several lines of biological, geomorphic, and sedimentological evidence are used to interpret the palaeoenvironments of aeolian deposits (e.g. Tchakerian 1999) (Table 12.3). Dune surface vegetation is a piece of biological evidence. Geomorphic evidence includes dune form, dune mobility, dune size, and dune dating.

Sedimentological evidence includes granulometric analysis, sedimentary structures, grain roundness, palaeosols and carbonate horizons, silt and clay particles, dune reddening, scanning electron microscopy of quartz grain microfeatures, and aeolian dust.

By using methods of palaeoenvironmental reconstruction and dating, reliable pictures of Pleistocene changes in the world's drylands are emerging. The Kalahari sand sea was once much larger, covering 2.5 million km<sup>2</sup>. This Mega-Kalahari sand sea now consists mainly of linear dunes bearing vegetation interspersed with dry lakes (Thomas and Shaw 1991). Luminescence dating shows that the three chief linear dunefields present in the Mega-Kalahari – the northern, southern, and eastern – were active at different times during the late Quaternary (Stokes *et al.* 1997). In the south-western portion of the sand sea, two dune-building (arid) episodes occurred, one between 27,000 and 23,000 years ago and the other between 17 and 10 million years ago. In the north-eastern portion, four dune-building episodes occurred at the following times: 115,000–95,000 years ago, 46,000–41,000 years ago, 26,000–22,000 years ago, and 16,000–9,000 years ago. The arid, dune-building phases lasted some 5,000 to 20,000 years, while the intervening humid periods lasted longer – between 20,000 and 40,000 years. Figure 12.9 shows the compounded nature of large, complex, linear dunes in the Akchar Erg, Mauritania (Kocurek *et al.* 1991). The dune core consists of Pleistocene sand laid down 20–13 thousand years ago. When rainfall increased, from 11,000 to 4,500 years ago, vegetation stabilized the dunes, soil formation altered the dune sediments, and lakes formed between the dunes. Renewed dune formation after 4,000 years ago cannibalized existing aeolian sediments on the upwind edge of the sand sea. The active crescentic dunes that cap the older, linear dunes date from the last 40 years.

It is possible that major dune production episodes are linked to Croll–Milankovitch climatic cycles, which induce swings from glacial to interglacial climates. Gary Kocurek (1998, 1999) has presented a model relating the two (Figure 12.10). The key feature of the model is the interplay of sediment

Table 12.3 Evidence used in reconstructing dune palaeoenvironments

<i>Evidence</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
<i>Biological evidence</i>	
Dune vegetation	Presence of dune vegetation indicates reduced aeolian activity and dune stabilization
<i>Geomorphological evidence</i>	
Dune form	Degraded or wholly vegetated dunes in areas not presently subject to aeolian activity (with mean annual rainfall less than 250 mm) indicate relict dunes
Dune mobility	A 'dune mobility index' (Lancaster 1988) indicates whether dunes are active or inactive <sup>a</sup>
Dune size	Mega-dunes may form only during sustained high winds, as blew in the tropical deserts around the peak of the last ice age around 18,000 years ago
Dune dating	Relative or absolute dating techniques may be used to fix the age of a dune, luminescence dating being a promising approach in environments where organic remains are very limited
<i>Sedimentological evidence</i>	
Granulometric analysis	Standard granulometric measures – mean grain size, sorting (standard deviation), skewness, and kurtosis – may sometimes be used to distinguish ancient from modern dunes
Sedimentary structures	Primary structures may be altered or destroyed by processes after deposition, but may help in identifying past aeolian beds
Grain roundness	Active aeolian sand grains tend to be sub-rounded to sub-angular; ancient sand grains tend to be more rounded, but roundness also varies with dune type
Palaeosols and carbonate horizons	When found in aeolian accumulations, these suggest periods of geomorphic stability and act as useful dating markers
Silt and clay particles	Ancient dunes tend to contain a higher proportion of silt and clay particles than active dunes
Dune reddening	Ancient dune sediments tend to be redder than modern dune sediments, though factors determining the redness of sediments are complex and ambiguous
Quartz surface microfeatures	Scanning electron microscope analysis of sand grains may help to identify aeolian sediments and to distinguish between different depositional environments
Aeolian dust	May be found in alluvial fans, soils, and marine sediments

Note: <sup>a</sup> The dune mobility index,  $M$ , is defined as the length of time the wind blows above the threshold velocity for sand transport (5 m/s),  $W$ , multiplied by the precipitation–potential evapotranspiration ratio,  $P/PE$ :  $M = W/(P/PE)$ . Lancaster (1988) suggests four classes of dune activity: (1) inactive dunes ( $M < 50$ ); (2) dune crests only active ( $50 < M < 100$ ); (3) dune crests active, lower windward and slip faces and interdune depressions vegetated ( $100 < M < 200$ ); (4) fully active dunes ( $M > 200$ )

Source: Adapted from discussion in Tchakerian (1999)

production, sediment availability, and transport capacity through a humid–arid cycle. Sediment is produced during the humid period but becomes available only during the arid period. The wind is capable of transporting sediment throughout the cycle, but its transport capacity is higher during the humid phase. The combined effects of these changes

are complex. Sediment is produced and stored during the humid phase, with some sediment influx limited by availability. As the humid phase gives way to the arid phase, sediment influx increases as availability increases. It goes on increasing to the peak of the arid phases as transporting capacity rises to a maximal level. As the arid phase starts to decline, the lack of

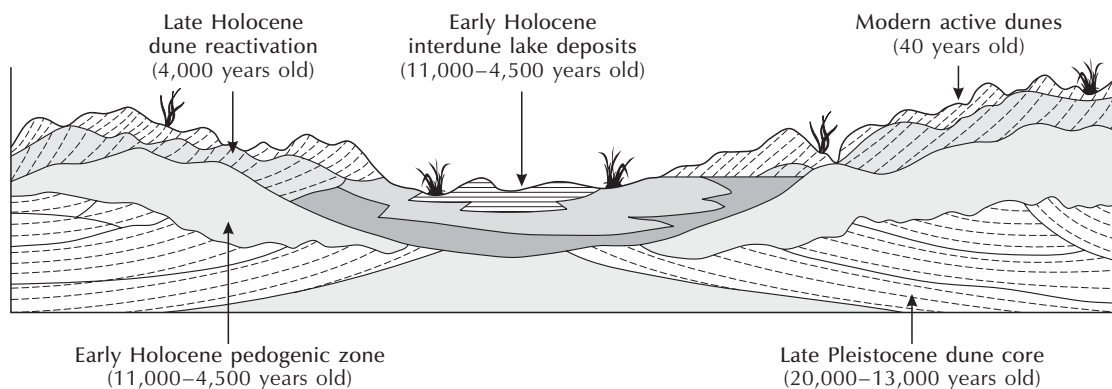


Figure 12.9 Amalgamated deposits of linear dunes in the Akchar Sand Sea, Mauritania.

Source: Adapted from Kocurek *et al.* (1991)

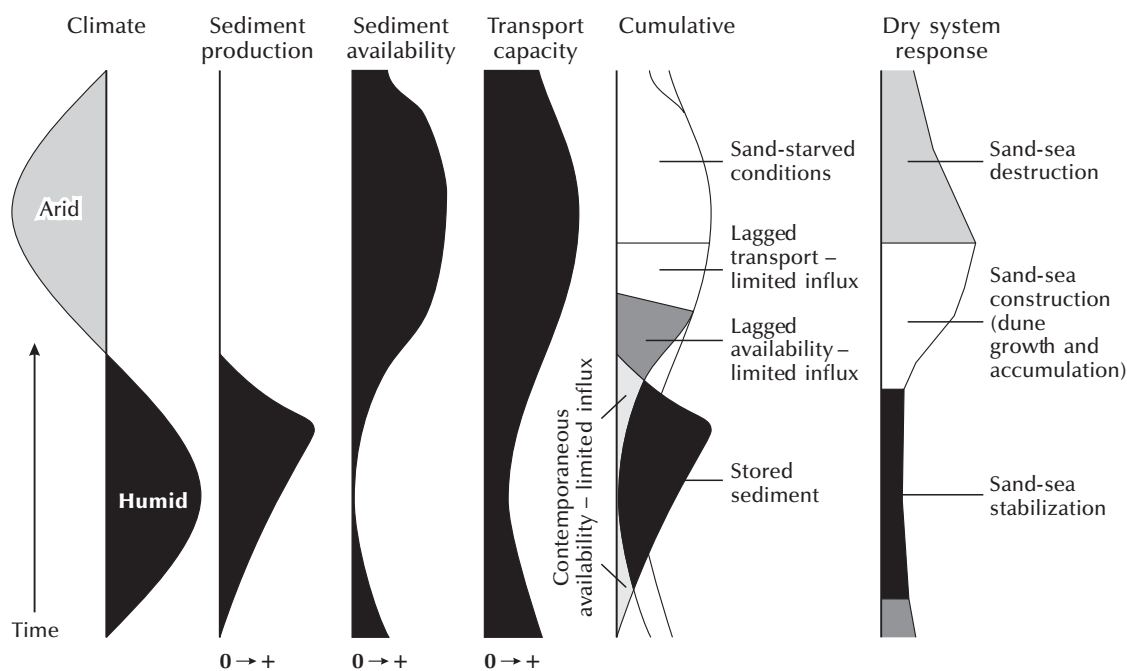


Figure 12.10 Process–response model for Saharan sand seas based on sediment production, sediment availability (supply), and transport capacity. The system is driven by a climatic cycle from humid to arid, shown on the left. An explanation is given in the text.

Source: Adapted from Kocurek (1998)



sediment production leads to sand-starved conditions. The dune-fields respond to these changes as follows. During the humid phase, the dunes are stabilized. As the arid phase kicks in, dune-building occurs using sediments released by increased availability and then increased transport capacity. Once the sediment supply dries up, the dunes are destroyed. This plausible model requires detailed field testing.

### Ancient aridity

The distribution of desert climates has shifted during geological time. Most modern areas of aridity began during late Tertiary times, and especially in the Mid to Late Miocene, as the climates of subtropical regions took on a modern aspect.

In the more distant past, the geological record of aeolian sandstones and evaporite deposits furnishes evidence for extensive deserts at several times in Earth history. The oldest aeolian deposits discovered so far come from Precambrian rocks in the North-

west Territories of Canada and from India. In Britain, the oldest aeolian deposits are of Devonian age and were formed when Britain lay south of the Equator in an arid and semi-arid palaeoclimatic belt. Remnants of large star dunes have been identified in Devonian sandstones of Scotland and fossil sand seas in Ireland. The best-known aeolian sandstones in Britain and northern Europe occur in Permo-Triassic rocks deposited when Britain had moved north of the Equator and into another arid climatic zone. The Rotliegendes (Early Permian) sandstones of the North Sea basin trap oil and gas. Quarry sections at Durham, England, reveal large linear mega-dunes with smaller features superimposed. Some of the Triassic sandstones of Cheshire and Lancashire are also aeolian deposits.

### Sea-level changes

Sea level seldom remains unchanged for long for it is altered by changes in ocean volume or a change of the distribution of mass within oceans (Box 12.3).

#### Box 12.3

##### CAUSES OF SEA-LEVEL CHANGE

Sea-level change is caused by volumetric and mass distribution changes in the oceans (Table 12.4). Ocean volume changes are eustatic or steric. **Eustatic change** results from water additions or extractions from the oceans (glacio-eustatic change), and from changes in ocean-basin volume (tectono-eustatic change). **Steric change** results from temperature or density changes in seawater. Much of the predicted sea-level rise during the twenty-first century will result from the thermal expansion of seawater. Ocean thermal expansion is about 20 cm/°C/1,000 m (Mörner 1994).

##### Glacio-eustatic change

Glacio-eustatic change is tightly bound to climatic change. Globally, inputs from precipitation and

runoff normally balance losses from evaporation. (Gains from juvenile water probably balance losses in buried connate water.) However, when the climate system switches to an icehouse state, a substantial portion the world's water supply is locked up in ice sheets and glaciers. Sea level drops during glacial stages and rises during interglacial stages. Additions and subtractions of water from the oceans, other than that converted to ice, may cause small changes in ocean volume. This minor process might be termed hydro-eustasy.

##### Tectono-eustatic change

Tectono-eustatic change is driven by geological processes. Even when the water cycle is in a steady state, so that additions from precipitation are

Table 12.4 Causes of eustatic change

Seat of change	Type of change	Approximate magnitude of change (m)	Causative process
Ocean basin volume	Tectono-eustatic	50–250	Orogeny, mid-ocean ridge growth, plate tectonics, sea-floor subsidence, other Earth movements
Ocean water volume	Glacio-eustatic	100–200	Climatic change Changes in liquid water stored in sediment, lakes, and clouds; additions of juvenile water; loss of connate water
	Hydro-eustatic	Minor	
Ocean mass distribution and surface 'topography'	Geoidal eustatic	Up to 18	Tides
		A few metres	Obliquity of the ecliptic
	Climo-eustatic	1 m per millisecond of rotation	Rotation rate
		Up to 5	Differential rotation
	2 (during Holocene)	Deformation of geoid relief	
	Up to 5 for major ocean currents	Short-term meteorological, hydrological, and oceanographic changes	

Source: From Huggett (1997b, 151), partly adapted from Möner (1987, 1994)

balanced by losses through evaporation, sea level may change owing to volumetric changes in the ocean basins. An increasing volume of ocean basin would lead to a fall of sea level and a decreasing volume to a rise of sea level. Decreasing volumes of ocean basin are caused by sedimentation, the growth of mid-ocean ridges, and Earth expansion (if it has occurred); increasing volumes are caused by a reduced rate or cessation of mid-ocean ridge production.

### Other eustatic effects

Geoidal eustasy results from processes that alter the Earth's equipotential surface, or **geoid**. The ocean geoid is also called the geodetic sea level. The relief of the geoid is considerable: there is a

180-m sea-level difference between the rise at New Guinea and the depression centred on the Maldives, which places lie a mere 50–60 degrees of longitude from one another. There is also a geoid beneath the continents. The configuration of the geoid depends on the interaction of the Earth's gravitational and rotational potentials. Changes in geoid relief are often rapid and lead to swift changes of sea level.

On a short timescale, local changes in weather, hydrology, and oceanography produce relatively tame fluctuations of sea level. These fluctuations might be called climo-eustasy. They may involve up to 5 m of sea-level change for major ocean currents, but less than half that for meteorological and hydrological changes.

Whatever the cause of sea-level change, higher and lower sea levels, especially those that occurred during the Quaternary, leave traces in landscapes (e.g. Butzer 1975; Bloom and Yonekura 1990; Gallup *et al.* 1994; Ludwig *et al.* 1996). Highstands

and lowstands of sea level during Quaternary ice ages are recorded in **marine terraces** and **drowned landscapes**. High levels during interglacial stages alternate with low levels during glacial stages, the system largely being driven by glacio-eustatic

mechanisms. Classical work around the Mediterranean Sea recognized a suite of higher levels corresponding to glacial stages (Figure 12.11).

### Highstands of sea level

Evidence of higher sea levels is found along many shorelines. Various types of raised shoreline – stranded beach deposits, beds of marine shells, ancient coral reefs, and platforms backed by steep, cliff-like slopes – all attest to higher stands of sea level. Classic examples come from fringing coasts of formerly glaciated areas, such as Scotland, Scandinavia, and North America. An example is the *Patella* raised beach on the Gower Peninsula, South Wales (Bowen 1973). A shingle deposit lies underneath tills and periglacial deposits associated with the last glacial advance. The shingle is well cemented and sits upon a rock platform standing 3–5 m above the present beach. It probably formed around 125,000 years ago during the last interglacial stage, when the sea was 5 m higher than now.

Ancient coral reefs sitting above modern sea level are indicative of higher sea levels in the past. In Eniwetok atoll, the Florida Keys, and the Bahamas, a suite of ancient coral reefs correspond to three

interglacial highstands of sea-level 120,000 years ago, 80,000 years ago, and today (Broecker 1965). Similarly, three coral-reef terraces on Barbados match interglacial episodes that occurred 125,000, 105,000, and 82,000 years ago (Broecker *et al.* 1968).

### Lowstands of sea level

Lower sea levels during the Quaternary are recorded in submerged coastal features. Examples are the drowned mouths of rivers (rias), submerged coastal dunes, notches and benches cut into submarine slopes, and the remains of forests or peat layers lying below modern sea level. The lowering of the sea was substantial. During the Riss glaciation, a lowering of 137–159 m is estimated, while during the last glaciation (the Würm) a figure of 105–123 m is likely. A fall of 100 m or thereabouts during the last glaciation was enough to link several islands with nearby mainland: Britain to mainland Europe, Ireland to Britain, New Guinea to Australia, and Japan to China. It would have also led to the floors of the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf becoming dry land.

Of particular interest to geomorphologists is the rise of sea level following the melting of the ice,

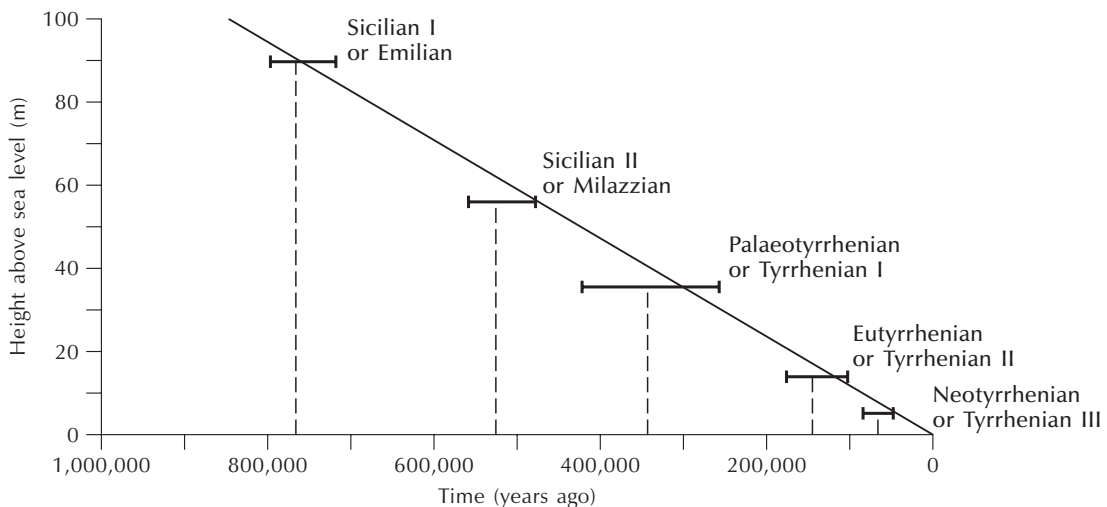


Figure 12.11 Quaternary sea-levels in the Mediterranean: the classic interpretation

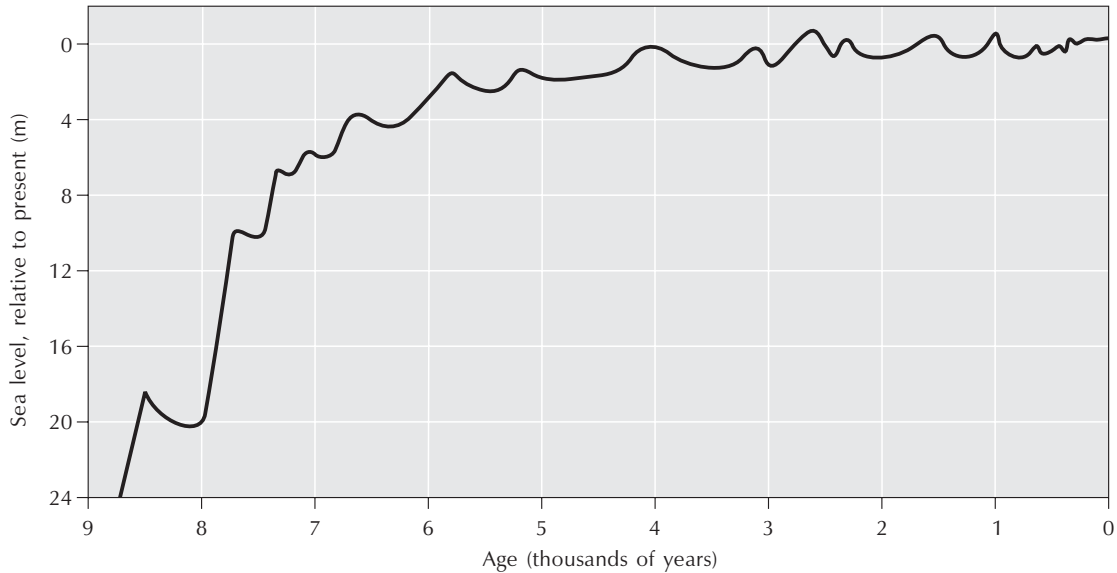


Figure 12.12 Flandrian transgression in north-western Europe. Notice the rapid rise between about 9,000 and 7,000 years ago; this amounted to about 20 m, an average increase of 1 m per century.

Source: Adapted from Mörner (1980)

which started around 12,000 years ago. This rise is known as the Holocene or **Flandrian transgression**. It was very rapid at first, up to about 7,000 years ago, and then tailed off (Figure 12.12). Steps on coastal shelves suggest that the rapid transgression involved stillstands, or even small regressions, superimposed on an overall rise. The spread of sea over land during this transgression would have been swift. In the Persian Gulf regions, an advance rate of 100–120 m a year is likely and even in Devon and Cornwall, England, the coastline would have retreated at about 8 m a year.

## EVOLVING LANDSCAPES

### Evolutionary geomorphology

Directional change in landscape development is made explicit in the non-actualistic system of land-surface history known as **evolutionary geomorphology** (Ollier 1981, 1992). The argument runs

that the land surface has changed in a definite direction through time, and has not suffered the ‘endless’ progression of erosion cycles first suggested by James Hutton and implicit in Davis’s geographical cycle. An endless repetition of erosion cycles would simply maintain a steady state with Silurian landscapes looking very much like Cretaceous landscapes and modern landscapes. Evolutionary geomorphologists contend that the Earth’s landscapes have evolved as a whole. In doing so, they have been through several geomorphological ‘revolutions’, which have led to distinct and essentially irreversible changes of process regimes, so that the nature of erosion cycles has changed with time. These revolutions probably occurred during the Archaean aeon, when the atmosphere was reducing rather than oxidizing, during the Devonian period, when a cover of terrestrial vegetation appeared, and during the Cretaceous period, when grassland appeared and spread.

The breakup and coalescence of continents would also alter landscape evolution. The geomorphology

of Pangaea was, in several respects, unlike present geomorphology (Ollier 1991, 212). Vast inland areas lay at great distances from the oceans, many rivers were longer by far than any present river, and terrestrial sedimentation was more widespread. When Pangaea broke up, rivers became shorter, new continental edges were rejuvenated and eroded, and continental margins warped tectonically. Once split from the supercontinent, each Pangaeon fragment followed its own history. Each experienced its own unique events. These included the creation of new plate edges and changes of latitude and climate. The landscape evolution of each continental fragment must be viewed in this very long-term perspective. In this evolutionary context, the current fads and fashions of geomorphology – process studies, dynamic equilibrium, and cyclical theories – have limited application (Ollier 1991, 212).

A good example of evolutionary geomorphology is afforded by tectonics and landscape evolution in south-east Australia (Ollier and Pain 1994; Ollier 1995). Morphotectonic evolution in this area appears to represent a response to unique, non-cyclical events. Today, three major basins (the Great Artesian Basin, the Murray Basin, and the Gippsland–Otway basins) are separated by the Canobolas and Victoria Divides, which are intersected by the Great Divide and putative Tasman Divide to the east (Figure 12.13). These divides are major watersheds. They evolved in several stages from an initial Triassic palaeoplain sloping down westwards from the Tasman Divide (Figure 12.14). First, the palaeoplain was downwarped towards the present coast, forming an initial divide. Then the Great Escarpment formed and retreated westwards, facing the coast. Much of the Great Divide is at this stage. Retreat

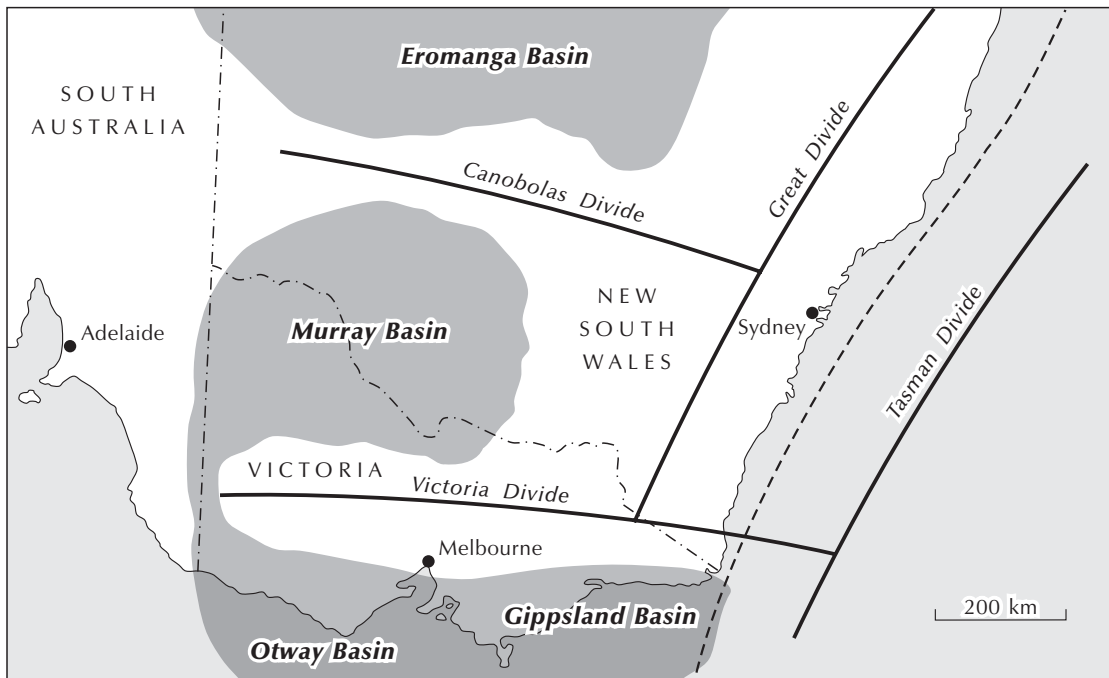
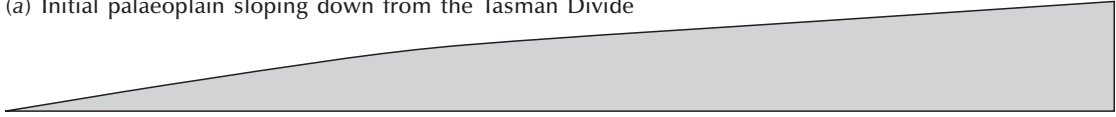


Figure 12.13 Major basins and divides of south-east Australia. The Eromanga Basin is part of the Great Artesian Basin.

Source: Adapted from Ollier (1995)

(a) Initial palaeoplain sloping down from the Tasman Divide



(b) Downwarp of palaeoplain to coast, forming the initial divide



(c) Formation and retreat of the Great Escarpment facing the coast



(d) Retreat of slopes from the coast and inland reduces the palaeoplain to isolated high plains



(e) Continued retreat of the escarpment of the inland slopes consumes the high plains and produces a sharp divide



*Figure 12.14* Evolution of the south-east Australian drainage divides.

*Source:* Adapted from Ollier (1995)

of slopes from the coast and from inland reduced the palaeoplain to isolated high plains, common on the Victoria Divide. Continued retreat of the escarpment consumed the high plains and produced a sharp ridge divide, as is seen along much of the Victoria Divide. The sequence from low-relief palaeoplain to knife-edge ridge is the reverse of peneplanation. With no further tectonic complications, the present topography would presumably end up as a new lower-level plain. However, the first palaeoplain is Triassic in age and the 'erosion cycle' is unlikely to end given continuing tectonic changes to interrupt the erosive processes. The morpho-tectonic history of the area is associated with unique events. These include the sagging of the Murray Basin, the opening of the Tasman Sea and creation of a new continental margin, the eruption of the

huge Monaro volcano, and the faulting of huge blocks in Miocene times. The geomorphology is evolving, and there are no signs of erosional cycles or steady states.

### Reconciling history and process

Jonathan D. Phillips (1999), after many years of research into the behaviour of Earth surface systems, has offered eleven principles that have immense relevance to geomorphology and may help to reconcile the split between the process and historical aspects of the subject (Box 12.4). Furthermore, it seems clear from the discussion in this chapter that, on empirical and theoretical fronts, the hegemony of process geomorphology is fast being eroded. The new historical geomorphology is giving the subject

**Box 12.4****PHILLIPS'S ELEVEN 'PRINCIPLES OF EARTH SURFACE SYSTEMS' APPLIED TO GEOMORPHIC SYSTEMS**

These principles are not easy to appreciate fully without a background in non-linear dynamical systems theory (see Stewart 1997 for an excellent and accessible introduction to the subject). However, the tenderfoot geomorphologist should be able to grasp the general thinking involved. It may help to define a few terms first. An **unstable system** is susceptible to small perturbations and is potentially chaotic. A **chaotic system** behaves in a complex and pseudo-random manner purely because of the way the system components are interrelated, and not because of forcing by external disturbances, or at least independently of those external factors. The chaos is not generated by chance-like (stochastic) events but is determined by the equations describing the system and is said to be deterministic. Systems displaying chaotic behaviour through time usually display spatial chaos, too. So, a landscape that starts with a few small perturbations here and there, if subject to chaotic evolution, displays increasing spatial variability as the perturbations grow. **Self-organization** is the tendency of, for example, flat or irregular beds of sand on stream beds or in deserts to organize themselves into regularly spaced forms – ripples and dunes – that are rather similar in size and shape. Self-organization is also seen in patterned ground, beach cusps, and river channel networks. **Self-destruction (non-self-organization)** is the tendency of some systems to consume themselves, as when relief is reduced to a plain.

Now, here are Phillip's principles:

- 1 Geomorphic systems are inherently unstable, chaotic, and self-organizing. This behaviour is seen in the tendency of many, but emphatically not all, geomorphic systems to diverge or to become more differentiated through time in some places and at some times. This happens, for example, when a landscape is dissected by rivers and relief increases, or when an initially uniform mass of weathered rock or sediment develops distinct horizons.
- 2 Geomorphic systems are inherently orderly. Deterministic chaos in a geomorphic system is governed by an 'attractor' that constrains the possible states of the system. Such a geomorphic system is not random. In addition, dynamic instability is bounded. Beyond these bounds, orderly patterns emerge that contain the chaotic patterns inside them. Thus, even a chaotic system must exhibit order at certain scales or under certain circumstances. At local scales, for instance, soil formation is sometimes chaotic, with wild spatial variations in soil properties, but as the scale is increased, regular soil–landscape relationships emerge. In like manner, chaotic turbulence in fluids does not prevent water from flowing downhill or wind from blowing according to pressure gradients; and further, it does not prevent scientists from predicting the aggregate flows of water or air.
- 3 Order and complexity are emergent properties of geomorphic systems. This principle means that orderly, regular, stable, non-chaotic patterns and behaviours and irregular, unstable, and chaotic behaviours appear and disappear as the spatial or temporal scale is altered. In debris flows, collisions between particles where the flow is highly sheared are governed by deterministic chaos and are sensitive to initial conditions and unpredictable. However, the bulk behaviour of granular flows is orderly and predictable from a relationship between kinetic energy (drop height) and travel length.



So, the behaviour of a couple of particles is perfectly predictable using basic physics. A collection of particles interacting with each other is chaotic. The aggregate behaviour of the flow at a still broader scale is again predictable. Accordingly, in moving up or down the hierarchy from a few particles to many particles to the aggregate behaviour of particles, order and predictability or complexity and unpredictability may appear or disappear.

- 4 Geomorphic systems have both self-organizing and non-self-organizing modes. This principle follows from the first three. Some geomorphic systems may operate in both modes at the same time. The evolution of topography, for example, may be self-organizing where relief increases and self-destructing where relief decreases. Mass-wasting denudation is a self-destructing process that homogenizes landscapes by decreasing relief and causing elevations to converge. Dissection is a self-organizing process that increases relief and causes elevations to diverge.
- 5 Both unstable—chaotic and stable—non-chaotic features may coexist in the same landscape at the same time. Because a geomorphic system may operate in either mode, different locations in the system may display different modes at the same time. This is captured by the idea of ‘complex response’, in which different parts of a system respond differently at a given time to the same stimulus. An example is channel incision in headwater tributaries occurring simultaneously with valley aggradation in trunk streams. Another example is the evolution of regoliths, in which soils and weathering profiles may experience progressive (increasing development and horizonation) or regressive (homogenizing) pathways.
- 6 Simultaneous order and disorder, which are observed in real landscapes, may be explained by a view of Earth surface systems as complex nonlinear dynamical systems. They may also arise from stochastic forcings and environmental processes.
- 7 The tendency of small perturbations to persist and grow over finite times and spaces is an inevitable outcome of geomorphic system dynamics. In other words, small changes are sometimes self-reinforcing and lead to big changes. Examples are the growth of nivation hollows and dolines. An understanding of nonlinear dynamics helps to determine the circumstances under which some small changes grow and others do not. In some cases, for example, initial variations in rock resistance to weathering and erosion are exaggerated over time, while in other cases they are erased. An approach that expressly considers the unstable growth of initial variations (or their stable self-destruction) should help towards an understanding of these different evolutionary pathways.
- 8 Geomorphic systems do not necessarily evolve towards increasing complexity. This principle arises from the previous principles and particularly from principle 4. Geomorphic systems may become more complex or simpler at any given scale, and may do either at a given time.
- 9 Neither stable, self-destructing nor unstable, self-organizing evolutionary pathways can continue indefinitely in geomorphic systems. No geomorphic system changes indefinitely. Stable development implies convergence, for example of elevations in a landscape, which eventually leads to a lack of differentiation in space or time, as in a plain. Such stable states are disrupted by disturbances that reconfigure the system and reset the geomorphic clock. Divergent evolution is also self-limiting. For example, landscape dissection is ultimately limited by baselevels, and weathering is limited by the supply of weatherable minerals.
- 10 Environmental processes and controls operating at distinctly different spatial and

temporal scales are independent. Processes of wind transport are effectively independent of tectonic processes, although there are surely remote links between them. For this reason, tectonophysicists and aeolian geomorphologists may safely pursue their subjects separately.

- 11 Scale independence is a function of the relative rates, frequencies, and durations of geomorphic phenomena. Tools are available to identify the scales at which processes operate independently. Information required to make

such identification includes process rates, the frequency of formative events, the duration of responses, or relaxation times. Interestingly, historical and process studies are both required to address the question of scale linkage, scale independence, and stability and instability as emergent properties. As Phillips (1999, 138) put it, 'no magic nonlinear formula or complex system elixir' for understanding geomorphic systems exists; geomorphologists must 'go into the field and measure or infer, how far, how fast, how many, and how much'.

a fresh direction. The message is plain: the understanding of landforms must be based on a knowledge of history and process. Without an understanding of process, history is undecipherable; without a knowledge of history, process lacks a context. Together, process and history lead to better appreciation of the Earth's surface forms, their behaviour and their evolution.

## SUMMARY

Old landscapes, like old soldiers, never die. Geomorphic processes, as effective as they are at reducing mountains to mere monadnocks, fail to eliminate all vestiges of past landforms in all parts of the globe. Old plains (palaeoplains) survive that are tens and hundreds of millions of years old. These old plains may be peneplains formed by fluvial action, pediplains and panplains formed by scarp retreat and lateral planation by rivers respectively, etchplains, or plains formed by marine erosion. Many other landforms are antiques. Relict landforms survive today under environmental conditions different from those that created them. Examples are the tors and inselbergs in England and Wales. Some karst formed long ago also survives to the present from times when the environmental conditions were conducive to karst formation. Exhumed landforms are old landforms that were buried

beneath a cover of sediments and then later re-exposed as the cover rocks were eroded. Several exhumed palaeoplains and such other landforms as reef knolls have been discovered. Exhumed karst is also found. Stagnant landscapes are geomorphic backwaters where little erosion has occurred and the land surface has been little altered for millions of years or far longer. They appear to be more common than was once supposed. Several geomorphologists, following in the footsteps of James Hutton, favour a cyclical interpretation of land-surface history. William Morris Davis and Lester King were doughty champions of cyclical landscape changes. More recently, ideas on the cyclical theme have included alternating biostasis and rhexistasis, K-cycles, and, linking geomorphic processes with plate tectonics, a cratonic regime model. All landscapes are affected by environmental change. Fluvial system response to environmental change is usually complex. Many aeolian landforms are inherited from the height of the last ice age, some 18,000 years ago, when the planet was drier and windier. The geological record registers older times when the aridity prevailed. Sea-level changes are brought about by gains and losses of water to and from the oceans (glacio-eustatic changes), from increases and decreases in oceanic basin volume (tectono-eustatic changes), and from fluctuations in ocean temperature or density (steric changes). Highstands and lowstands of sea level leave their marks on the land

surface and beneath the waves. Stranded beach deposits, beds of marine shells, ancient coral reefs, and platforms backed by steep, cliff-like slopes mark higher ocean levels. Submerged coastal features, including rias, notches and benches cut into submarine slopes, and sunken forests mark lower levels. The rise of sea level associated with deglaciation may be very rapid; witness the Flandrian transgression. Evolutionary geomorphologists cast aside the notions of indefinitely repeated cycles and steady states and argue for non-actualistic, directional change in land-surface history, with happenstance playing a role in the evolution of each continental block. Phillip's eleven principles of Earth surface systems promise to help bridge the gap between process geomorphology and historical geomorphology.

---

### ESSAY QUESTIONS

- 1 Discuss the chief theories of long-term landform evolution.**
  - 2 Discuss the evidence for long-term changes of landforms.**
  - 3 How significant are pre-Quaternary events to the understanding of present landforms?**
- 

### FURTHER READING

Davis, W. M. (1909) *Geographical Essays*. Boston, Mass.: Ginn.

Once the foundation tome of historical geomorphology. Well worth discovering how geomorphologists used to think.

King, L. C. (1983) *Wandering Continents and Spreading Sea Floors on an Expanding Earth*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.

The grandeur of King's vision is remarkable.

Ollier, C. D. (1991) *Ancient Landforms*. London and New York: Belhaven Press.

A little gem from the Ollier stable, penned in his inimitable style. Another essential read for those interested in the neo-historical approach to the discipline.

Smith, B. J., Whalley, W. B., and P. A. Warke (eds) *Uplift, Erosion and Stability: Perspectives on Long-Term Landscape Development* (Geological Society, London, Special Publication 162). London: the Geological Society of London.

A mixed collection of papers that should be consulted.

Twidale, C. R. (1999) Landforms ancient and recent: the paradox. *Geografiska Annaler* 81A, 431–41.

The only paper in the further reading section. Please read it.

# Appendix

## THE GEOLOGICAL TIMESCALE

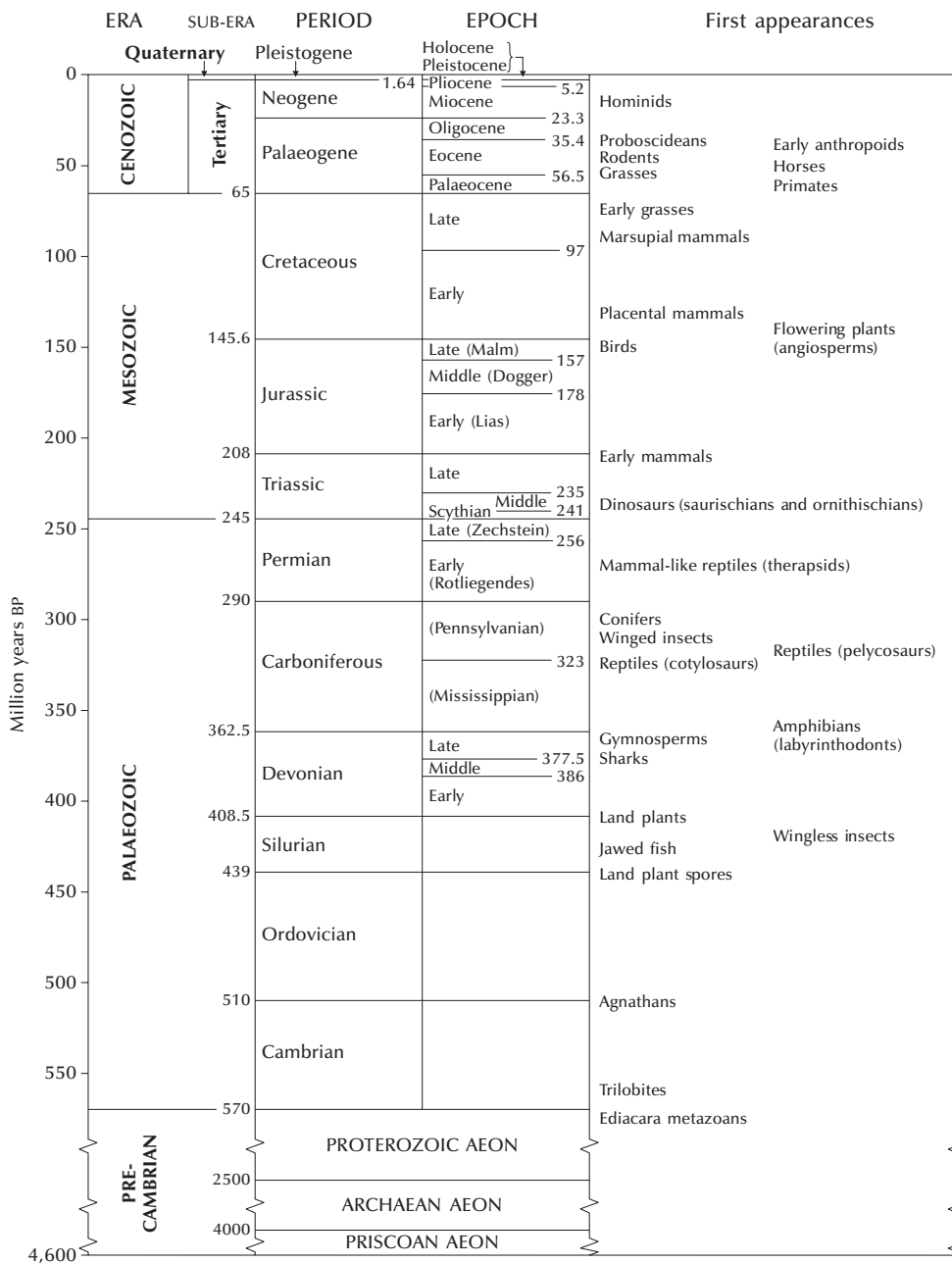


Figure A1 The geological timescale.  
Source: Adapted from Harland *et al.* (1990).

# GLOSSARY

*Most geomorphological terms are defined when used in the text. This glossary provides thumbnail definitions of terms that may be unfamiliar to students.*

**active margin** The margin of a continent that corresponds with a tectonically active plate boundary.

**aeolian** Of, or referring to, the wind.

**aggradation** A building up of the Earth's surface by the accumulation of sediment deposited by geomorphic agencies such as wind, wave, and flowing water.

**alcrete** A duricrust rich in aluminium, commonly in the form of hardened bauxite.

**allitization** The loss of silica and concentration of sesquioxides in the soil, with the formation of gibbsite, and with or without the formation of laterite; more or less synonymous with soluviation, ferrallitization, laterization, and latosolization.

**alluvial** Of, or pertaining to, alluvium.

**alluvial fill** The deposit of sediment laid down by flowing water in river channels.

**alluvial terrace** A river terrace composed of alluvium and created by renewed downcutting of

the floodplain or valley floor (which leaves alluvial deposits stranded on the valley sides), or by the covering of an old river terrace with alluvium.

**alluvium** An unconsolidated, stratified deposit laid down by running water, sometimes applied only to fine sediment (silt and clay), but more generally used to include sands and gravels, too.

**alumina** Aluminium oxide,  $\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3$ ; occurs in various forms, for example as the chief constituent of bauxite.

**amphibole** A group of minerals, most of which are mainly dark-coloured hydrous ferromagnesian silicates. Common in intermediate rocks and some metamorphic rocks.

**anaerobic** Depending on, or characterized by, the absence of oxygen.

**andesite** A grey to black, fine-grained, extrusive igneous rock that contains the minerals plagioclase and hornblende or augite. The extrusive equivalent of diorite.

**anhydrite** Anhydrous calcium sulphate,  $\text{CaSO}_4$ , occurring as a white mineral. Generally found in association with gypsum, rock salt, and other evaporite minerals.

- anion** A negatively charged ion.
- aquifer** A rock mass that readily stores and conveys groundwater and acts as a water supply.
- aragonite** A form of calcium carbonate, dimorphous with calcite.
- arête** A sharp, knifelike divide or crest.
- argillaceous** Referring to, containing, or composed of clay. Used to describe sedimentary rocks containing clay-sized material and clay minerals.
- arkose** A coarse-grained sandstone made of at least 25 per cent feldspar as well as quartz.
- arroyo** In the south-west USA, a small, deep, flat-floored gully cut by an ephemeral or an intermittent stream.
- aspect** The compass orientation of sloping ground or any other landscape feature. May be measured as an azimuth angle from north.
- asthenosphere** The relatively weak and ductile sphere of rock lying beneath the lithosphere and occupying the uppermost part of the mantle that allows continents to move. Also called the rheosphere.
- atmosphere** The dusty, gaseous envelope of the Earth, retained by the Earth's gravitational field.
- atoll** A circular or closed-loop coral reef that encloses a lagoon.
- bacteria** Micro-organisms, usually single-celled, that exist as free-living decomposers or parasites.
- backswamp** An area of low-lying, swampy ground lying between a natural levee and the valley sides on the floodplain of an alluvial river.
- badlands** A rugged terrain of steep slopes that looks like miniature mountains. Formed in weak clay rocks or clay-rich regolith by rapid fluvial erosion.
- barrier reef** A coral reef that is separated from the mainland shoreline by a lagoon.
- basalt** A hard, but easily weathered, fine-grained, dark grey igneous rock. The commonest rock produced by a volcano, it consists mainly of calcic plagioclase feldspar, augite or other pyroxenes, and, in some basalts, olivine. The fine-grained equivalent of gabbro.
- batolith** A large and deep-seated mass of igneous rock, usually with a surface exposure of more than 100 km<sup>2</sup>.
- bauxite** A pale-coloured, earthy mix of several hydrated aluminous minerals (Al<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>·*n*H<sub>2</sub>O). The chief ore of aluminium.
- bedrock** Fresh, solid rock in place, largely unaffected by weathering and unaffected by geomorphic processes.
- Bernoulli effect** The reduction of internal pressure with increased stream velocity in a fluid.
- biogeochemical cycles** The cycling of minerals or organic chemical constituents through the biosphere; for example, the sulphur cycle.
- biosphere** The totality of all living things.
- biota** All the animals and plants living in an area.
- bluffs** The steep slopes that often mark the edge of a floodplain.
- breccia** A bedded, rudaceous rock consisting of angular fragments of other rocks larger than 2 mm in diameter cemented in a fine matrix.
- calcareous** Refers to any soil, sediment, or rock rich in calcium carbonate.
- calcite** A crystalline form of calcium carbonate (CaCO<sub>3</sub>). The chief ingredient of limestone, marble, and chalk. A natural cement in many sandstones.
- cation** A positively charged ion.
- cavitation** A highly corrosive process in which water velocities over a solid surface are so high that the vapour pressure of water is exceeded and bubbles form.
- chalk** A soft, white, pure, fine-grained limestone. Made of very fine calcite grains with the remains of microscopic calcareous fossils.

**chamosite** A hydrous iron silicate.

**chert** A cryptocrystalline form of silica, a variety of chalcedony, often occurring as nodules and layers in limestones.

**chitons** Marine molluscs.

**chronosequence** A time sequence of landforms constructed by using sites of different ages

**clasts** Rock fragments broken off a parent rock.

**clastic sediment** Sediment composed of particles broken off a parent rock.

**clay** A name commonly used to describe fine-grained sedimentary rock, plastic when wet, that consist of grains smaller than 0.004 mm, sometimes with a small portion of silt- and sand-sized particles. The grains are largely made of clay minerals but also of calcite, iron pyrite, altered feldspars, muscovite flakes, iron oxides, and organic material.

**clay minerals** A group of related hydrous aluminosilicates. The chief ingredients of clay and mudstone.

**claystone** A sedimentary rock composed of clay-sized particles (< 0.002 mm in diameter) that does not split into flakes or scales. Consolidated clay. Claystone is a member of the mudstone group and is common in Palaeozoic deposits. Most Precambrian claystones have been metamorphosed to slates or schists.

**cohesion** In soils, the ability of clay particles to stick together owing to physical and chemical forces.

**colloids** Fine, clay-sized particles (1–10 micrometres in size), usually formed in fluid suspensions.

**colluvium** An unconsolidated mass of rock debris at the base of a cliff or a slope, deposited by surface wash.

**conglomerate** A bedded, rudaceous sedimentary rock comprising rounded granules, pebbles, cobbles, or boulders of other rocks lodged in a fine-grained matrix, generally of sand.

**connate water** Meteoric water trapped in hydrous minerals and the pore spaces of sediments during deposition that has been out of contact with the atmosphere for perhaps millions of years.

**corestone** A spheroidal boulder of fresh (unweathered) rock, originally surrounded by saprolite, and formed by subsurface weathering of a joint block.

**cryosphere** All the frozen waters of the Earth (snow and ice).

**cryostatic pressure** The pressure caused by ice on water-saturated material sandwiched between an advancing seasonal layer of frozen ground and an impermeable layer such as permafrost.

**cyanobacteria** A group of unicellular and multicellular organisms, formerly called blue-green algae, that photosynthesize.

**cyclic** Recurring at regular intervals; for example, lunar cycles, which occur twice daily, fortnightly, and so on.

**dacite** A fine-grained rock, the extrusive equivalent of granodiorite, with the same general composition as andesite, though with less calcic plagioclase and more quartz. Also called quartz andesite.

**degradation** A running down or loss of sediment.

**dendrochronology** The study of annual growth rings of trees. Used as a means of dating events over the last millennium or so.

**denudation** The sum of the processes – weathering, erosion, mass wasting, and transport – that wear away the Earth's surface.

**diapir** A dome or anticlinal fold produced by an uprising plume of plastic core material. The rising plume ruptures the rocks as it is squeezed up.

**diatom** A unicellular organism (kingdom Protista) with a silica shell.

**diorite** A group of plutonic rocks with a composition intermediate between acidic and basic. Usually composed of dark-coloured amphibole, acid



plagioclase, pyroxenes, and sometimes a little quartz.

**dolerite** A dark-coloured, medium-grained, hypabyssal igneous rock forming dykes and sills. Consists of pyroxene and plagioclase in equal proportions or more pyroxene than plagioclase, as well as a little olivine. An intrusive version of gabbro and basalt.

**dolomite** A mineral that is the double carbonate of calcium and magnesium, having the chemical formula  $(\text{CaMg})\text{CO}_3$ . The chief component of dolomitic limestones.

**eclogite** A coarse- to medium-grained igneous rock made mainly of garnet and sodic pyroxene.

**ecosphere** The global ecosystem – all life plus its life support system (air, water, and soil).

**endogenic** Of, or pertaining to, the Earth's interior (cf. exogenic).

**episodic** Events that have a tendency to occur at discrete times.

**erosion** The weathering (decomposition and disintegration), solution, corrosion, corrasion, and transport of rock and rock debris.

**erosion surface** A more or less flat plain created by erosion; a planation surface.

**eustatic** Referring to a true change of sea level, in contrast to a local change caused by the upward or downward movement of the land.

**exogenic** Of, or pertaining to, the surface (or near the surface) of the Earth (cf. endogenic).

**exsudation** A type of salt weathering by which rock surfaces are scaled off, owing to the growth of salt and gypsum crystals from water raised by capillary action.

**feldspar** A group of minerals including orthoclase and microcline, both of which are potassium aluminosilicates ( $\text{KAlSi}_3\text{O}_8$ ), and the plagioclase feldspars (such as albite and anorthite). Albite contains more than 90 per cent sodium aluminosilicate ( $\text{NaAlSi}_3\text{O}_8$ ); anorthite contains more than 90 per cent calcium aluminosilicate ( $\text{CaAl}_2\text{Si}_2\text{O}_8$ ). Calcic feldspars are rich in anorthite. Alkali feldspars are rich in potash and soda, contain relatively large amounts of silica, and are characteristic minerals in acid igneous rocks.

**flag (flagstone)** A hard, fine-grained sandstone, usually containing mica, especially along the bedding planes. Occurs in extensive thin beds with shale partings.

**flood** A short-lived but large discharge of water coursing down, and sometimes overflowing, a watercourse.

**flood basalts** Basalt erupted over a large area.

**fulvic acid** An organic acid formed from humus.

**gabbro** A group of dark-coloured plutonic rocks, roughly the intrusive equivalent of basalt, composed chiefly of pyroxene and plagioclase, with or without olivine and orthopyroxene.

**gastropod** Any mollusc of the class Gastropoda. Typically has a distinct head with eyes and tentacles, and, in most cases, a calcareous shell closed at the apex.

**gibbsite** A form of alumina and a component of bauxite.

**gley** A grey, clayey soil, sometimes mottled, formed where soil drainage is restricted.

**gneiss** A coarse-grained, banded, crystalline metamorphic rock with a similar mineralogical composition to granite (feldspars, micas, and quartz).

**goethite** A brown-coloured, hydrated oxide of iron; the main ingredient of rust.

**gorge** A steep-sided, narrow-floored valley cut into bedrock.

**granite** A coarse-grained, usually pale-coloured, acid plutonic rock made of quartz, feldspar, and mica. The quartz constitutes 10–50 per cent of felsic compounds and the ratio of alkali feldspar to total feldspar lies in the range 65–90 per cent. Biotite and

muscovite are accessories. The feldspar crystals are sometimes large, making the rock particularly attractive as a monumental stone. In the stone trade, many hard and durable rocks are called granite, though many of them are not granites according to geological definitions of the word.

**granodiorite** A class of coarse-grained plutonic rocks made of quartz, plagioclase, and potassium feldspars with biotite, hornblende, or more rarely, pyroxene.

**gravel** A loose, unconsolidated accumulation of rounded rock fragments, often pebbles or cobbles. Most gravels also contain sand and fines (silt and clay).

**greywacke** A dark grey, firmly indurated, coarse-grained sandstone.

**grit (gritstone)** A name used, often loosely, to describe a coarse sandstone, especially one with angular quartz grains that is rough to the touch.

**groundwater (phreatic water)** Water lying within the saturation zone of rock and soil. Moves under the influence of gravity.

**grus** A saprolite on granite consisting of quartz in a clay matrix.

**gypsum** A white or colourless mineral. Hydrated calcium sulphate,  $\text{CaSO}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ .

**halite (rock salt, common salt)** Sodium chloride,  $\text{NaCl}$ , although calcium chloride and magnesium chloride are usually present, and sometimes also magnesium sulphate.

**halloysite** A clay mineral, similar to kaolinite, formed where aluminium and silicon are present in roughly equal amounts, providing the hydronium concentration is high enough and the concentration of bases is low.

**hematite** A blackish-red to brick-red or even steely-grey oxide of iron ( $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ), occurring as earthy masses or in various crystalline forms. The commonest and most important iron ore.

**hillslope** A slope normally produced by weathering, erosion, and deposition.

**hornblende** A mineral of the amphibole group.

**humic acid** An organic acid formed from humus.

**hydraulic conductivity** The flow rate of water through soil or rock under a unit hydraulic gradient. Commonly measured as metres per day.

**hydrosphere** All the waters of the Earth.

**hydrostatic pressure** The pressure exerted by the water at a given point in a body of water at rest. In general, the weight of water at higher elevations within the saturated zone.

**hydrothermal** Associated with hot water.

**hydrous minerals** Minerals containing water, especially water of crystallization or hydration.

**hydroxyl** A radical (a compound that acts as a single atom when combining with other elements to form minerals) made of oxygen and hydrogen with the formula (OH).

**hypabyssal** Said of rocks that solidify mainly as minor intrusions (e.g. dykes or sills) before reaching the Earth's surface.

**Ice Age** An old term for the full Quaternary glacial–interglacial sequence.

**ice age** A time when ice forms broad sheets in middle and high latitudes, often in conjunction with the widespread occurrence of sea ice and permafrost, and mountain glaciers form at all latitudes.

**illite** Any of three-layered, mica-like clay minerals.

**infiltration** The penetration of a fluid (such as water) into a solid substance (such as rock and soil) through pores and cracks.

**inselberg** A large residual hill within an eroded plain; an 'island mountain'.

**intermittent stream** A stream that, in the main, flows through a wet season but not through a dry season.

**ion** An atom or group of atoms that is electrically charged owing to the gain or loss of electrons.

**ionic load** The cargo of ions carried by a river.

**island arc** A curved line of volcanic islands linked to a subduction zone.

**isostasy** The idea of balance on the Earth's crust, in which lighter, rigid blocks of crustal material 'float' on the denser, more plastic material of the mantle. The redistribution of mass at the Earth's surface by erosion and deposition or by the growth and decay of ice upsets the balance, causing the crustal blocks to float higher or lower in the mantle until a new balance is achieved.

**jökulhlaup** A glacier burst – the sudden release of vast volumes of water melted by volcanic activity under a glacier and held in place by the weight of ice until the glacier eventually floats.

**juvenile water** Primary or new water that is known not to have entered the water cycle before. It may be derived directly from magma, from volcanoes, or from cosmic sources (e.g. comets).

**kaolinite** A 1:1 clay mineral, essentially a hydrated aluminium silicate formed under conditions of high hydronium (hydrated hydrogen ion,  $H_3O^+$ ) concentration and an absence of bases. Its ideal structural formula is  $Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$ .

**knickpoint** An interruption or break of slope, especially a break of slope in the long profile of a river.

**landslide** A general term for the *en masse* movement of material down slopes.

**laterite** A red, iron-rich, residual material with a rich variety of definitions.

**lava** Molten rock.

**leaching** The washing-out of water-soluble materials from a soil body, usually the entire solum (the genetic soil created by the soil-forming processes), by the downward or lateral movement of water.

**limestone** A bedded sedimentary rock composed largely of the mineral calcite.

**limonite** A hydrated iron oxide,  $FeO(OH).nH_2O$ ; not a true mineral as it consists of several similar hydrated iron oxide minerals, especially goethite.

**lithified** The state of being changed to rock, as when loose sediments are consolidated or indurated to form rocks.

**lithology** The physical character of a rock.

**magma** Liquid rock coming from the mantle and occurring in the Earth's crust. Once solidified, magma produces igneous rocks.

**magnesian limestone** A limestone containing an appreciable amount of magnesium.

**marble** Limestones that have been crystallized by heat or pressure, though some special types of non-metamorphosed limestone are called marble. Pure marble is white.

**marcasite** White iron pyrites, an iron sulphide with the identical composition to pyrite (*see* pyrite).

**marl** A soft, mainly unconsolidated rock made of clay or silt and fine-grained aragonite or calcite mud. The clay or silt fraction must lie in the range 30 to 70 per cent. Marls are friable when dry and plastic when wet.

**marlstone** Consolidated marl.

**mesosphere** A transition zone between the asthenosphere and the lower mantle.

**metamorphism** The processes by which rocks are transformed by recrystallization owing to increased heat or intense pressure or both.

**meteoric water** Water that is derived from precipitation and cycled through the atmosphere and hydrosphere.

**mica** A group of minerals, all hydrous aluminosilicates of potassium, most members of which may be cleaved into exceptionally thin, flexible, elastic

sheets. Muscovite (or white mica) and biotite (or dark mica) are common in granites.

**mineral** A naturally occurring inorganic substance, normally with a definite chemical composition and typical atomic structure.

**monadnock** An isolated mountain or large hill rising prominently from a surrounding peneplain and formed of a more resistant rock than the plain itself.

**mud** A moist or wet, loose mixture of silt- and clay-sized particles. Clay is a mud in which clay-sized particles predominate, and silt is a mud in which silt-sized particles predominate.

**mudstone** A sedimentary rock, consisting mainly of clay-sized and silt-sized particles, with a massive or blocky structure and derived from mud. If clay-sized particles are dominant, the rock is a claystone; if silt-sized particles are dominant, the rock is siltstone. Mudstone, claystone, and siltstone are all members of the argillaceous group of clastic sedimentary rocks.

**muskeg** In Canada, a swamp or bog composed of accumulated bog moss (*Sphagnum*).

**nappe** A large body or sheet of rock that has been moved 2 km or more from its original position by folding or faulting. It may be the hanging wall of a low-angle thrust fault or a large recumbent fold.

**Old Red Sandstone** A thick sequence of Devonian rocks formed on land in north-west Europe some 408 to 360 million years ago.

**orogeny** The creation of mountains, especially by folding and uplift.

**orthoclase** Potassium aluminium silicate, an essential constituent of more acid igneous rocks, such as granite and rhyolite.

**Pangaea** The Triassic supercontinent comprising Laurasia to the north and Gondwana to the south.

**passive margin** The margin of a continent that is not associated with the active boundary of a tectonic plate and, therefore, lies within a plate.

**pedosphere** The shell or layer of the Earth in which soil-forming processes occur. The totality of soils on the Earth.

**perennial stream** A stream that flows above the surface year-round.

**peridotite** A coarse-grained, ultrabasic, plutonic rock, mainly made of olivine with or without mafic minerals.

**plan curvature** Contour curvature, taken as negative (convex) over spurs and positive (concave) in hollows.

**plinthite** A hardpan or soil crust, normally rich in iron.

**podzolization** A suite of processes involving the chemical migration of aluminium and iron (and sometimes organic matter) from an eluvial (leached) horizon in preference to silica.

**pores** Small voids within rocks, unconsolidated sediments, and soils.

**pore water pressure** The force that builds up owing to the action of gravity on water in the pore spaces in soils and sediments.

**porosity** The amount of pore space or voids in a rock, unconsolidated sediment, or soil body. Usually expressed as the percentage of the total volume of the mass occupied by voids.

**porphyry** Any igneous rock that contains conspicuous phenocrysts in a fine-grained groundmass.

**pressure melting point** The temperature at which ice can melt at a given pressure. The greater the pressure, the lower the pressure melting point.

**profile curvature** The curvature (rate of change of slope) at a point along a slope profile.

**pyrite (pyrites, iron pyrites)** Iron sulphide,  $\text{FeS}_2$ ; a mineral.

**pyroxene** A group of minerals, most of which are generally dark-coloured anhydrous ferromagnesian silicates. Characteristically occur in ultrabasic and basic rocks as the mineral augite.

**quartz** A widely distributed mineral with a range of forms, all made of silica.

**quartzite** Sandstone that has been converted into solid quartz rock, either by the precipitation of silica from interstitial waters (orthoquartzite) or by heat and pressure (metaquartzite). Quartzite lacks the pores of sandstone.

**quartzose** Containing quartz as a chief constituent.

**radiolarian** A unicellular organism (kingdom Protista), usually with a silica skeleton, that possesses a beautiful and intricate geometric form.

**rectilinear** Characterized by a straight line or lines.

**rhyolite** A fine-grained, extrusive, acid igneous rock composed mainly of quartz and feldspar and commonly mica; mineralogical equivalent of granite.

**rock salt** Halite (sodium chloride, NaCl).

**sand** A loose, unconsolidated sediment made of particles of any composition with diameters in the sand-sized range (0.625 to 2 mm in diameter). Most sands have a preponderance of quartz grains, but calcite grains derived from shells preponderate in some sands.

**sandstone** A medium-grained, bedded, clastic sedimentary rock made of abundant rounded or angular, sand-sized fragments in a fine-grained (silt or clay) matrix. Consolidated sand. Arkoses are sandstones rich in feldspar. Greywackes are sandstones containing rock fragments and clay minerals. Flags or flagstones are sandstones with flakes of mica occurring along the bedding planes.

**schist** A strongly foliated, crystalline rock formed by dynamic metamorphism. Readily split into thin flakes or slabs.

**sediment yield** The total mass of sedimentary particles reaching the outlet of a drainage basin. Usually expressed as tonnes/year, or as a specific sediment yield in tonnes/km<sup>2</sup>/year.

**serpentine** Any of a group of hydrous magnesium-rich silicate minerals.

**shale** A group of fine-grained, laminated sedimentary rocks made of silt- and clay-sized particles. Some 70 per cent of all sedimentary rocks are shales.

**siderite** Iron carbonate, FeCO<sub>3</sub>, usually with a little manganese, magnesium, and calcium present; a mineral.

**silica** Chemically, silicon dioxide, SiO<sub>2</sub>, but there are many different forms, each with its own name. For example, quartz is a crystalline mineral form. Chalcedony is a cryptocrystalline form, of which flint is a variety.

**siliceous ooze** A deep-sea pelagic sediment containing at least 30 per cent siliceous skeletal remains.

**silicic** Pertaining to, resembling, or derived from silica or silicon.

**silt** A loose, unconsolidated sediment of any composition with diameters in the silt-sized range (0.004 to 0.0625 mm in diameter). The chief component of loess.

**siltstone** A consolidated sedimentary rock composed chiefly of silt-sized particles that usually occurs as thin layers and seldom qualifies as formations. Consolidated silt.

**slate** A fine-grained, clayey metamorphic rock. It readily splits into thin slabs used in roofing.

**slope** An inclined surface of any part of the Earth's surface.

**smectite** A name for the montmorillonite group of clay minerals.

**soil pipes** Subsurface channels up to several metres in diameter, created by the dispersal of clay particles in fine-grained, highly permeable soil.

**soil wetness** The moisture content of a soil.

**subaerial** Occurring at the land surface.

**talus** Rock fragments of any shape and size derived from, or lying at, the base of a cliff or steep rocky slope.

**talus slope** A slope made of talus.

**tectosphere** A name for the continental lithosphere.

**terracette** A small terrace; several often occur together to form a series of steps on a hillside.

**toposphere** The totality of the Earth's surface features, natural and human-made.

**vadose water** Subsurface water lying between the ground surface and the water table.

**Van der Waals bonds** The weak attraction that all molecules bear for one another that results from the electrostatic attraction of the nuclei of one molecule for the electrons of another.

**vermiculite** A clay mineral of the hydrous mica group.

**viscosity** The resistance of a fluid (liquid or gas) to a change of shape. It indicates an opposition to flow. Its reciprocal is fluidity.

**vivianite** Hydrated iron phosphate,  $\text{Fe}_3\text{P}_2\text{O}_8 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; a mineral.

**voids** The open spaces between solid material in a porous medium.

**vortex** A fast-spinning or swirling mass of air or water.

**vugs** Pore spaces, sometimes called vugular pore spaces, formed by solution eating out small cavities.

**water table** The surface defined by the height of free-standing water in fissures and pores of saturated rock and soil.

**weathering** The chemical, mechanical, and biological breakdown of rocks on exposure to the atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere.

**weathering front** The boundary between unaltered or fresh bedrock and saprolite. It is often very sharp.

**zone** A latitudinal belt.

## REFERENCES

- Acreman, M. (2000) *The Hydrology of the UK: A Study of Change*. London: Routledge.
- Affleck, J. (1970) Definition of regional structures by magnetics. In H. Johnson and B. L. Smith (eds) *The Megatectonics of Continents and Oceans*, pp. 3–11. New Brunswick, N.J.: Rutgers University Press.
- Ahnert, F. (1998) *Introduction to Geomorphology*. London: Arnold.
- Albritton, C. C., Brooks, J. E., Issawi, B., and Swedan, A. (1990) Origin of the Qattara Depression, Egypt. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 102, 952–60.
- Allsop, D. G. (1992) *Visitor's Guide to Poole's Cavern*. Buxton, Derbyshire: Buxton and District Civic Association.
- Andersen, B. G. and Borns, H. W., Jr (1994) *The Ice Age World*. Oslo: Scandinavian University Press.
- Anderson, R. S. and Bunas, K. L. (1993) Grain size aggregation and stratigraphy in aeolian ripples modelled with a cellular automaton. *Nature* 365, 740–3.
- Anderson, R. S. (1987) A theoretical model for aeolian impact ripples. *Sedimentology* 34, 943–88.
- Attewell, P. B. and Taylor, D. (1988) Time-dependent atmospheric degradation of building stone in a polluting environment. In P. G. Marinos and G. C. Koukis (eds) *Engineering Geology of Ancient Works, Monuments and Historical Sites*, pp. 739–53. Rotterdam: Balkema.
- Augustinus, P. G. E. F. (1989) Cheniers and chenier plains: a general introduction. *Marine Geology* 90, 219–29.
- Bagnold, R. A. (1941) *The Physics of Blown Sand and Desert Dunes*. London: Chapman & Hall.
- Baker, A. and Genty, D. (1998) Environmental pressures on conserving cave speleothems: effects of changing surface land use and increased cave tourism. *Journal of Environmental Management* 53, 165–75.
- Baker, V. R. (1977) Stream channel response to floods with examples from central Texas. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 88, 1057–71.
- Baker, V. R. (1983) Large-scale fluvial palaeohydrology. In K. J. Gregory (ed.) *Background to Palaeohydrology*, pp. 453–78. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.



- Battiau-Queney, Y. (1984) The pre-glacial evolution of Wales. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 9, 229–52.
- Battiau-Queney, Y. (1987) Tertiary inheritance in the present landscape of the British Isles. In V. Gardiner (ed.) *International Geomorphology 1986, Part II* (Proceedings of the First International Conference on Geomorphology), pp. 979–89. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Battiau-Queney, Y. (1991) Les marges passives. *Bulletin de l'Association de Géographes Français* 1991–2, 91–100.
- Battiau-Queney, Y. (1996) A tentative classification of paleoweathering formations based on geomorphological criteria. *Geomorphology* 16, 87–102.
- Beasley, D. B., Huggins, L. F., and Monke, E. J. (1980) ANSWERS: a model for watershed planning. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers* 23, 938–44.
- Beaumont, C., Kooi, H., and Willett, C. (2000) Coupled tectonic–surface process models with applications to rifted margins and collisional orogens. In M. A. Summerfield (ed.) *Geomorphology and Global Tectonics*, pp. 29–55. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Benedict, P. C., Bondurant, D. C., McKee, J. E., Piest, R. F., Smallshaw, J., and Vanoni, V. A. (1971) Sediment transportation mechanics: Q. Genetic classification of valley sediment deposits. *Journal of the Hydraulics Division, Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers*, 97, 43–53.
- Berner, E. K. and Berner, R. A. (1987) *The Global Water Cycle: Geochemistry and Environment*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- Best, J. L. and Bristow, C. S. (eds) (1993) *Braided Rivers* (Geological Society Special Publication No. 75). London: The Geological Society Publishing House.
- Bird, E. C. F. (1996) *Beach Management*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Bird, E. C. F. (2000) *Coastal Geomorphology: An Introduction*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Bishop, P., Young, R. W., and McDougall, I. (1985) Stream profile change and long term landscape evolution: early Miocene and modern rivers of the east Australian highland crest, central New South Wales, Australia. *Journal of Geology* 93, 455–74.
- Blake, S. (1989) Viscoplastic models of lava domes. In *IAVCEI (International Association of Volcanology and Chemistry of the Earth's Interior) Proceedings in Volcanology, Volume 2. Lava Flows and Domes*, pp. 88–126. Heidelberg: Springer.
- Bliss, L. C. (1990) Arctic ecosystems: patterns of change in response to disturbance. In G. M. Woodwell (ed.) *The Earth in Transition: Patterns and Process of Biotic Impoverishment*, pp. 347–66. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Bloom, A. L. (1998) *Geomorphology: A Systematic Analysis of Late Cenozoic Landforms*, 3rd edn. Upper Saddle River, N.J. and London: Prentice Hall.
- Bloom, A. L. and Yonekura, N. (1990) Graphic analysis of dislocated Quaternary shorelines. In Geophysics Study Commission (eds) *Sea-Level Change*, pp. 104–154. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- Bögli, A. (1960) Kalklösung und Karrenbildung. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 2, 7–71.
- Bosák, P., Ford, D. C., and Głazek, J. (1989) Terminology. In P. Bosák, D. C. Ford, J. Głazek, and I. Horáček (eds) *Paleokarst: A Systematic and Regional Review* (Developments in Earth Surface Processes 1), pp. 25–32. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Bosák, P., Ford, D. C., Głazek, J., and Horáček, I. (eds) (1989) *Paleokarst: A Systematic and Regional Review* (Developments in Earth Surface Processes 1). Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Bowen, D. Q. (1973) The Quaternary deposits of the Gower. *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association* 84, 249–72.

- Breed, C. S., McCauley, J. F., Whitney, M. I., Tchakarian, V. D., and Laity, J. E. (1997) Wind erosion in drylands. In D. S. G. Thomas (ed.) *Arid Zone Geomorphology: Process, Form and Change in Drylands*, 2nd edn, pp. 437–64. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Bremer, H. (1988) *Allgemeine Geomorphologie: Methodik – Grundvorstellungen – Ausblick auf den Landschaftsbaubehalt*. Berlin: Gebrüder Bornträger.
- Broecker, W. S. (1965) Isotope geochemistry and the Pleistocene climatic record. In H. E. Wright Jr and D. G. Frey (eds) *The Quaternary of the United States*, pp. 737–53. Princeton, N. J.: Princeton University Press.
- Broecker, W. S., Thurber, D. L., Goddard, J., Ku, T., Matthews, R. K., and Mesolella, K. J. (1968) Milankovitch hypothesis supported by precise dating of coral reefs and deep-sea sediments. *Science* 159, 1–4.
- Brook, G. A. and Ford, D. C. (1978) The origin of labyrinth and tower karst and the climatic conditions necessary for their development. *Nature* 275, 493–6.
- Brookes, A. J. (1985) Downstream morphological consequences of river channelisation in England and Wales. *The Geographical Journal* 151, 57–65.
- Brookes, A. J. and Shields, F. D. (1996) *River Channel Restoration: Guiding Principles for Sustainable Projects*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Brown, R. J. E. (1970) *Permafrost in Canada: Its Influence on Northern Development*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Brunsdon, D. and Kesel, R. H. (1973) The evolution of a Mississippi river bluff in historic time. *Journal of Geology* 81, 576–97.
- Brunsdon, D. and Thornes, J. B. (1979) Landscape sensitivity and change. *Transactions of the Institute of British Geographers* NS 4, 463–84.
- Büdel, J. (1957) Die ‘Doppelten Einebnungsflächen’ in den feuchten Tropen. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 1, 201–28.
- Büdel, J. (1982) *Climatic Geomorphology*. Translated by Lenore Fischer and Detlef Busche. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.
- Bull, W. B. (1992) *Geomorphic Responses to Climatic Change*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Burbank, D. W. and Anderson, R. S. (2001) *Tectonic Geomorphology: A Frontier in Earth Science*. Malden, Mass.: Blackwell Science.
- Burger, D. (1990) The travertine complex of Antalya/Southwest Turkey. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 77, 25–46.
- Butler, B. E. (1959) *Periodic Phenomena in Landscapes as a Basis for Soil Studies* (CSIRO Soil Publication 14). Canberra: CSIRO.
- Butler, B. E. (1967) Soil periodicity in relation to landform development in south-eastern Australia. In J. N. Jennings and J. A. Marbut (eds) *Landform Studies from Australia and New Guinea*, pp. 231–55. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Butzer, K. W. (1975) Pleistocene littoral-sedimentary cycles of the Mediterranean basin: a Mallorquin view. In K. W. Butzer and G. L. L. Isaacs (eds) *After the Australopithecines*, pp. 25–71. The Hague: Mouton.
- Butzer, K. W. (1976) *Geomorphology from the Earth*. New York: Harper & Row.
- Carter, R. W. G. (1992) *Coastal Environments*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Carter, R. W. G., Nordstrom, K. F. and Psuty, N. P. (1990) The study of coastal dunes. In K. F. Nordstrom, N. P. Psuty, and R. W. G. Carter (eds) *Coastal Dunes: Form and Process*, pp. 1–16. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Catt, J. A. (1987) Effects of the Devensian cold stage on soil characteristics and distribution in eastern England. In J. Boardman (ed.) *Periglacial Processes and Landforms in Britain and Ireland*, pp. 145–152. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Chapman, P. (1993) *Caves and Cave Life* (New Naturalist Series No. 79). London: HarperCollins.

- Chapman, V. J. (1977) Introduction. In V. J. Chapman (ed.) *Wet Coastal Ecosystems*, pp. 1–29. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Chernyakhovsky, A. G., Gradusov, B. P., and Chizhikova, N. P. (1976) Types of recent weathering crusts and their global distribution. *Geoderma* 16, 235–55.
- Chorley, R. J. (1965) A re-evaluation of the geomorphic system of W. M. Davis. In R. J. Chorley and P. Haggett (eds) *Frontiers in Geographical Teaching*, pp. 21–38. London: Methuen.
- Chorley, R. J. (1978) Bases for theory in geomorphology. In C. Embleton, D. Brunnsden, and D. K. C. Jones (eds) *Geomorphology: Present Problems and Future Prospects*, pp. 1–13. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Chorley, R. J. and Kennedy, B. A. (1971) *Physical Geography: A Systems Approach*. London: Prentice Hall.
- Chorley, R. J., Dunn, A. J., and Beckinsale, R. P. (1964) *A History of the Study of Landforms or the Development of Geomorphology*. Volume 1, *Geomorphology Before Davis*. London: Methuen Wiley.
- Clark, R. (1994) Tors, rock platforms and debris slopes at Stiperstones, Shropshire, England. *Field Studies* 8, 451–72.
- Clayton, K. M. (1989) Sediment input from the Norfolk cliffs, eastern England – a century of coast protection and its effects. *Journal of Coastal Research* 5, 433–42.
- Colls, A. E., Stokes, S., Blum, M. D., and Straffin, E. (2001) Age limits on the Late Quaternary evolution of the upper Loire River. *Quaternary Science Reviews* 20, 743–50.
- Colman, S. M. and Pierce, K. L. (2000) Classification of Quaternary geochronologic methods. In J. S. Noller, J. M. Sowers, and W. R. Lettis (eds) *Quaternary Geochronology: Methods and Applications* (AGU Reference Shelf 4), 2–5. Washington, D.C.: American Geophysical Union.
- Condie, K. C. (1989) Origin of the Earth's crust. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology (Global and Planetary Change Section)* 75, 57–81.
- Coney, P. J., Jones, D. L., and Monger, J. W. H. (1980) Cordilleran suspect terranes. *Nature* 288, 329–33.
- Cooke, R. U. (1990) *Geomorphology in Environmental Management: A New Introduction*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Cooke, R. U. (1994) Salt weathering and the urban water table in deserts. In D. A. Robinson and R. B. G. Williams (eds) *Rock Weathering and Landform Evolution*, pp. 193–205. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Cooke, R. U., Warren, A., and Goudie, A. S. (1993) *Desert Geomorphology*. London: UCL Press.
- Cox, K. G. (1989) The role of mantle plumes in the development of continental drainage patterns. *Nature* 342, 873–6.
- Coxon, P. and O'Callaghan, P. (1987) The distribution and age of pingo remnants in Ireland. In J. Boardman (ed.) *Periglacial Processes and Landforms in Britain and Ireland*, pp. 195–202. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Crickmay, C. H. (1933) The later stages of the cycle of erosion. *Geological Magazine* 70, 337–47.
- Crickmay, C. H. (1975) The hypothesis of unequal activity. In W. N. Melhorn and R. C. Flemal (eds) *Theories of Landform Development*, pp. 103–9. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Curi, N. and Franzmeier, D. P. (1984) Toposequence of oxisols from the central plateau of Brazil. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 48, 341–6.
- Dackombe, R. V. and Gardiner, V. (1983) *Geomorphological Field Manual*. London: Allen & Unwin.
- Dalrymple, J. B., Blong, R. J., and Conacher, A. J. (1968) A hypothetical nine-unit landsurface model. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 12, 60–76.

- Daniel, H. (2001) Replenishment versus retreat: the cost of maintaining Delaware's beaches. *Ocean and Coastal Management* 44, 87–104.
- Davies, G. F. (1977) Whole mantle convection and plate tectonics. *Geophysical Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society* 49, 459–86.
- Davies, G. F. (1992) On the emergence of plate tectonics. *Geology* 20, 963–6.
- Davis, J. L. (1980) *Geographical Variation in Coastal Development*, 2nd edn. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Davis, W. M. (1889) The rivers and valleys of Pennsylvania. *National Geographical Magazine* 1, 183–253. (Also in *Geographical Essays*)
- Davis, W. M. (1899) The geographical cycle. *Geographical Journal* 14, 481–504. (Also in *Geographical Essays*)
- Davis, W. M. (1909) *Geographical Essays*. Boston, Mass.: Ginn.
- Day, M. and Urich, P. (2000) An assessment of protected karst landscapes in Southeast Asia. *Cave and Karst Science* 27, 61–70.
- de Margerie, E. (1886) Géologie. *Polybiblion Revue Bibliographique Universelle, Partie littéraire* 2, 24, 310–30.
- De Roo, A. P. J., Wesseling, C. G., Jetten, V. G., and Ritsema, C. J. (1996) LISEM: a physically-based hydrological and soil erosion model incorporated in a GIS. In *HydroGIS 96: Applications of Geographic Information Systems in Hydrology and Water Resources Management (Proceedings of the Vienna Conference, April 1996)* (IAHS Publication No. 235), pp. 395–403. Rozendaalselaan, the Netherlands: International Association of Hydrological Sciences.
- Desrochers, A. and James, M. P. (1988) Early Palaeozoic surface and subsurface paleokarst: Middle Ordovician carbonates, Mingan Islands, Quebec. In N. P. James and P. W. Choquette (eds) *Paleokarst*, pp. 183–210. New York: Springer.
- Doerr, S. H. (1999) Karst-like landforms and hydrology in quartzites of the Venezuelan Guyana shield: pseudokarst or 'real' karst? *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 43, 1–17.
- Doerr, S. H. (2000) Morphology and genesis of some unusual weathering features developed in quartzitic sandstone, north-central Thailand. *Swansea Geographer* 35, 1–8.
- Douglas, I. (1971) Dynamic equilibrium in applied geomorphology – two case studies. *Earth Science Journal* 5, 29–35.
- Douglas, I. (1987) Plate tectonics, palaeoenvironments and limestone geomorphology in west-central Britain. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 12, 481–95.
- Douglas, I. (1990) Sediment transfer and siltation. In B. L. Turner II, W. C. Clark, R. W. Kates, J. F. Richards, J. T. Mathews, and W. B. Meyer (eds) *The Earth as Transformed by Human Action: Global and Regional Changes in the Biosphere over the Past 300 Years*, pp. 215–34. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press with Clark University.
- Douglas, I. (2000) Fluvial geomorphology and river management. *Australian Geographical Studies* 38, 253–62.
- Douglas, I. and Lawson, N. (2001) The human dimensions of geomorphological work in Britain. *Journal of Industrial Ecology* 4, 9–33.
- Duchaufour, P. (1982) *Pedology: Pedogenesis and Classification*. Translated by T. R. Paton. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Dunne, T. and Leopold, L. B. (1978) *Water in Environmental Planning*. San Francisco: W. H. Freeman.
- Dury, G. H. (1969) Relation of morphometry to runoff frequency. In R. J. Chorley (ed.) *Water, Earth, and Man: A Synthesis of Hydrology, Geomorphology, and Socio-Economic Geography*, pp. 419–30. London: Methuen.
- Embleton, C. and King, C. A. M. (1975a) *Glacial Geomorphology*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Embleton, C. and King, C. A. M. (1975b) *Periglacial Geomorphology*. London: Edward Arnold.

- Emery, K. O. and Kuhn, G. G. (1982) Sea cliffs: their processes, profiles, and classification. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 93, 644–54.
- Engebretson, D. C., Kelley, K. P., Cashman, H. J., and Richards, M. A. (1992) 180 million years of subduction. *GSA–Today* 2, 93–5 and 100.
- Erhart, H. (1938) *Traité de Pédologie*, 2 vols. Strasbourg: Institut Pédologique.
- Erhart, H. (1956) *La Genèse des sols en tant que phénomène géologique*. Paris: Masson.
- Evans, I. S. (1980) An integrated system of terrain analysis and slope mapping. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 36, 274–95.
- Evans, I. S. (1994) Cartographic techniques in geomorphology. In A. S. Goudie (ed.) *Geomorphological Techniques*, 2nd edn, 97–108. London and New York: Routledge.
- Eyles, N. and Scheidegger, A. E. (1995) Environmental significance of bedrock jointing in southern Ontario, Canada. *Environmental Geology* 26, 269–77.
- Eyles, N., Arnaud, E., Scheidegger, A. E., and Eyles, C. H. (1997) Bedrock jointing and geomorphology in southwestern Ontario, Canada: an example of tectonic predisign. *Geomorphology* 19, 17–34.
- Fairbridge, R. W. (1980) The estuary: its definition and geodynamics cycle. In E. Olausson and I. Cato (eds) *Chemistry and Biogeochemistry of Estuaries*, pp. 1–35. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Fairbridge, R. W. and Finkl, C. W., Jr (1980) Cratonic erosional unconformities and peneplains. *Journal of Geology* 88, 69–86.
- Flint, R. F. (1971) *Glacial and Quaternary Geology*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Forbes, B. C. (1999) Land use and climate change on the Yamal Peninsula of north-west Siberia: some ecological and socio-economic implications. *Polar Research* 18, 367–73.
- Ford, D. C. and Ewers, R. O. (1978) The development of limestone cave systems in the dimensions of length and depth. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 15, 1783–98.
- Ford, D. C. and Williams, P. W. (1989) *Karst Geomorphology and Hydrology*. London: Chapman & Hall.
- Ford, T. D. (1989) Paleokarst of Britain. In P. Bosák, D. C. Ford, J. Głazek, and I. Horáček (eds) *Paleokarst: A Systematic and Regional Review* (Developments in Earth Surface Processes 1), pp. 51–70. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Fournier, F. (1960) *Climat et érosion: La Relation entre l'érosion du sol par l'eau et les précipitations atmosphériques*. Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.
- Francis, P. (1993) *Volcanoes: A Planetary Perspective*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Fraser, G. S. (1989) *Clastic Depositional Sequences: Processes of Evolution and Principles of Interpretation*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- French, H. M. (1976) *The Periglacial Environment*, 1st edn. London and New York: Longman.
- French, H. M. (1996) *The Periglacial Environment*, 2nd edn. Harlow, Essex: Addison Wesley Longman.
- Fukao, Y., Maruyama, S., Obayashi, M., and Inoue, H. (1994) Geological implication of the whole mantle P-wave tomography. *Journal of the Geological Society of Japan* 100, 4–23.
- Gallup, C. D., Edwards, R. L., and Johnson, R. G. (1994) The timing of high sea levels over the past 200,000 years. *Science* 263, 796–800.
- Genty, D., Baker, A., and Vokal, B. (2001) Intra- and inter-annual growth rate of modern stalagmites. *Chemical Geology* 176, 191–212.
- Gibbs, R. J. (1970) Mechanisms controlling world water chemistry. *Science* 170, 1088–90.
- Gibbs, R. J. (1973) Mechanisms controlling world water chemistry: evaporation–crystallization processes. *Science* 172, 871–2.
- Gilbert, G. K. (1877) *Geology of the Henry Mountains (Utah)* (United States Geographical and Geological



- Survey of the Rocky Mountains Region). Washington, D.C.: United States Government Printing Office.
- Gilbert, G. K. (1914) *The Transportation of Debris by Running Water* (United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 86). Washington, D.C.: United States Government Printing Office.
- Gilchrist, A. R., Kooi, H., and Beaumont, C. (1994) Post-Gondwana geomorphic evolution of southwestern Africa: implications for the controls of landscape development from observation and numerical experiments. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 99B, 12, 211–28.
- Gillieson, D. (1996) *Caves: Processes, Development and Management*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Glasser, N. F. and Barber, G. (1995) Cave conservation plans: the role of English Nature. *Cave and Karst Science* 21, 33–6.
- Godard, A., Lagasquie, J.-J., and Lageat, Y. (2001) *Basement Regions*. Translated by Yanni Gunnell. Heidelberg: Springer.
- González, F. I. (1999) Tsunami! *Scientific American* 280 (May), 44–55.
- Gossman, H. (1970) *Theorien zur Hangentwicklung in verschiedenen Klimazonen: mathematische Hangmodelle und ihre Beziehung zu den Abtragungsvorgängen* (Würzburger Geographische Arbeiten, Heft 31). Würzburg: Geographischen Instituts der Universität Würzburg.
- Goudie, A. S. (ed.) (1994) *Geomorphological Techniques*, 2nd edn. London and New York: Routledge.
- Goudie, A. S. (1995) *The Changing Earth: Rates of Geomorphological Processes*. Oxford: Blackwell Science.
- Goudie, A. S. (1999) Wind erosional landforms: yardangs and pans. In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 167–80. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Goudie, A. S., Livingstone, I., and Stokes, S. (eds) (1999) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Goudie, A. S. and Wells, G. L. (1995) The nature, distribution and formation of pans in arid zones. *Earth-Science Reviews* 38, 1–69.
- Grab, S. W. (1994) Thufur in the Mohlesi Valley, Lesotho, southern Africa. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes* 5, 111–18.
- Gray, J. M. (1993) Quaternary geology and waste disposal in south Norfolk, England, *Quaternary Science Reviews* 12, 899–912.
- Grosswald, M. G. (1998) New approach to the Ice Age paleohydrology of northern Eurasia. In G. Benito, V. R. Baker, and K. J. Gregory (eds) *Palaeohydrology and Environmental Change*, pp. 199–214. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Grove, A. T. (1969) Landforms and climatic change in the Kalahari and Ngamiland. *The Geographical Journal* 135, 191–212.
- Gunnell, Y. and Fleitout, L. (2000) Morphotectonic evolution of Western Ghats, India. In M. A. Summerfield (ed.) *Geomorphology and Global Tectonics*, pp. 321–38. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Gupta, A. (1983) High magnitude floods and stream channel response. In J. D. Collinson and J. Lewin (eds) *Modern and Ancient Fluvial Systems*, pp. 219–27. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Hack, J. T. (1960) Interpretation of erosional topography in humid temperate regions. *American Journal of Science* (Bradley Volume) 258–A, 80–97.
- Halimov, M. and Fezer, F. (1989) Eight yardang types in Central Asia. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 33, 205–17.
- Hall, A. M. (1991) Pre-Quaternary landscape evolution in the Scottish Highlands. *Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh: Earth Sciences* 82, 1–26.

- Hambrey, M. J. (1994) *Glacial Environments*. London: UCL Press.
- Hantke, R. and Scheidegger, A. E. (1999) Tectonic predesign in geomorphology. In S. Hergarten and H. J. Neugebauer (eds) *Process Modelling and Landform Evolution* (Lecture Notes in Earth Sciences, 78), pp. 251–66. Berlin: Springer.
- Harland, W. B., Armstrong, R. L., Cox, A. V., Craig, L. E., and Smith, D. G. (1990) *A Geologic Time Scale 1989*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hayes, M. O. (1967) Relationship between coastal climate and bottom sediment type on the inner continental shelf. *Marine Geology* 5, 11–132.
- Herget, J. (1998) Anthropogenic influence on the development of the Holocene terraces of the River Lippe, Germany. In G. Benito, V. R. Baker, and K. J. Gregory (eds) *Palaeohydrology and Environmental Change*, pp. 167–79. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Higgins, C. G. (1975) Theories of landscape development: a perspective. In W. N. Melhorn and R. C. Flemal (eds) *Theories of Landform Development*, pp. 1–28. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Hill, S. M., Ollier, C. D., and Joyce, E. B. (1995) Mesozoic deep weathering and erosion: an example from Wilsons Promontory, Australia. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 39, 331–9.
- Hjulstøm, F. (1935) Studies of the morphological activity of rivers as illustrated by the River Fyris. *Bulletin of the Geological Institute of Uppsala* 25, 221–527.
- Holmes, A. (1965) *Principles of Physical Geology*, new and fully revised edn. London and Edinburgh: Thomas Nelson & Sons.
- Hooke, J. M. (ed.) (1988) *Geomorphology in Environmental Planning*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Horton, R. E. (1945) Erosional development of streams and their drainage basins: hydrophysical approach to quantitative morphology. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 56, 275–370.
- Hovius, N. (1998) Controls on sediment supply by large rivers. In K. W. Shanley and P. J. McCabe (eds) *Relative Role of Eustasy, Climate, and Tectonism in Continental Rocks* (Society for Economic and Paleontology and Mineralogy, Special Publication 59), pp. 3–16. Tulsa, Okla.: Society for Economic Paleontology and Mineralogy.
- Howard, A. D. (1988) Equilibrium models in geomorphology. In M. G. Anderson (ed.) *Modelling Geomorphological Systems*, pp. 49–72. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Howard, A. D., Kochel, R. C., and Holt, H. E. (eds) (1988) *Sapping Features of the Colorado Plateau: A Comparative Planetary Geology Field Guide* (Scientific and Technical Information Division, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, NASA SP–491). Washington, D.C.: United States Government Printing Office.
- Hoyt, J. H. (1967) Barrier island formation. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 78, 1125–36.
- Hoyt, J. H. (1969) Chenier versus barrier, genetic and stratigraphic distinctions. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin* 53, 299–306.
- Huggett, R. J. (1985) *Earth Surface Systems* (Springer Series in Physical Environment 1). Heidelberg: Springer.
- Huggett, R. J. (1989) *Cataclysms and Earth History: The Development of Diluvialism*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Huggett, R. J. (1991) *Climate, Earth Processes and Earth History*. Heidelberg: Springer.
- Huggett, R. J. (1995) *Geoecology: An Evolutionary Approach*. London: Routledge.
- Huggett, R. J. (1997a) *Catastrophism: Comets, Asteroids and Other Dynamic Events in Earth History*. London: Verso.
- Huggett, R. J. (1997b) *Environmental Change: The Evolving Ecosphere*. London: Routledge.
- Huggett, R. J. and Cheesman, J. E. (2002) *Topography and the Environment*. Harlow, Essex: Prentice Hall.



- IGBP (1990) Past Global Changes Project. In *The IGBP: A Study of Global Change. The Initial Core Projects*, Chapter 7. Stockholm, Sweden: International Geosphere–Biosphere Programme Secretariat.
- Inkpen, R. J., Cooke, R. U., and Viles, H. A. (1994) Processes and rates of urban limestone weathering. In D. A. Robinson and R. B. G. Williams (eds) *Rock Weathering and Landform Evolution*, pp. 119–30. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Jansson, M. B. (1988) *Land Erosion by Water in Different Climates*. (Uppsala Universitet Naturgeografiska Institutionen Rapport No. 57). Uppsala, Sweden: Department of Physical Geography, University of Uppsala.
- Jennings, J. N. (1967) Further remarks on the Big Hole, near Braidwood, New South Wales. *Helictite* 6, 3–9.
- Jennings, J. N. (1971) *Karst* (An Introduction to Systematic Geomorphology, Vol. 7). Cambridge, Mass. and London: MIT Press.
- Jennings, J. N. (1985) *Karst Geomorphology*. Oxford and New York: Blackwell.
- Jessen, O. (1936) *Reisen und Forschungen in Angola*. Berlin: D. Reimer.
- Joel, A. H. (1937) *Soil Conservation Reconnaissance Survey of the Southern Great Plains Wind-Erosion Area* (United States Department of Agriculture, Technical Bulletin No. 556). Washington, D.C.: US Government Printing Office.
- Johnson, R. H. (1980) Hillslope stability and landslide hazard – a case study from Longdendale, north Derbyshire, England. *Proceedings of the Geologists' Association*, 91, 315–25.
- Jones, D. K. C. (1981) *Southeast and Southern England* (The Geomorphology of the British Isles). London and New York: Methuen.
- Jones, D. K. C. (1999) Evolving models of the Tertiary evolutionary geomorphology of southern England, with special reference to the Chalklands. *Geological Society Special Publication* 162, 1–23.
- Jones, J. A. A. (1997) *Global Hydrology: Process, Resources and Environmental Management*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Jutras, P. and Schroeder, J. (1999) Geomorphology of an exhumed Carboniferous paleosurface in the southern Gaspé Peninsula, Québec: paleoenvironmental and tectonic implications. *Géographie Physique et Quaternaire* 53, 249–63.
- Kamb, B. (1964) Glacier geophysics. *Science* 146, 353–65.
- Kearey, P. and Vine, F. J. (1990) *Global Tectonics*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Keller, E. A. and Pinter, N. (1996) *Active Tectonics*. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- Kent, R. (1991) Lithospheric uplift in eastern Gondwana: evidence for a long-lived mantle plume system? *Geology* 19, 19–23.
- King C. A. M. (1972) *Beaches and Coasts*, 2nd edn. London: Edward Arnold.
- King, L. C. (1942) *South African Scenery: A Textbook of Geomorphology*. Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd.
- King, L. C. (1953) Canons of landscape evolution. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 64, 721–52.
- King, L. C. (1967) *The Morphology of the Earth*, 2nd edn. Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd.
- King, L. C. (1983) *Wandering Continents and Spreading Sea Floors on an Expanding Earth*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Kingma, J. T. (1958) Possible origin of piercement structures, local unconformities, and secondary basins in the eastern geosyncline, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics* 1, 269–74.
- Knighton, A. D. (1998) *Fluvial Forms and Processes: A New Perspective*, 2nd edn. London: Arnold.
- Knighton, A. D. and Nanson, G. C. (1993) Anastomosis and the continuum of channel pattern. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 18, 613–25.

- Knisel, W. G. (ed.) (1980) *CREAMS: A Field Scale Model for Chemicals, Runoff and Erosion from Agricultural Management Systems* (USDA, Conservation Research Report, No. 26). Washington, D.C.: United States Department of Agriculture.
- Knox, J. C. (1984) Responses of river systems to Holocene climates. In H. E. Wright Jr (ed.) *Late-Quaternary Environments of the United States*, Vol. 2, *The Holocene*, pp. 21–68. London: Longman.
- Kocurek, G. (1998) Aeolian system response to external forcing factors – a sequence stratigraphic view of the Saharan region. In A. S. Alsharhan, K. W. Glennie, G. L. Whittle, and C. G. St C. Kendall (eds) *Quaternary Deserts and Climatic Change*, pp. 327–37. Rotterdam: Balkema.
- Kocurek, G. (1999) The aeolian rock record (Yes, Virginia, it exists, but it really is rather special to create one). In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 239–59. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Kocurek, G., Havholm, K. G., Deynoux, M., and Blakey, R. C. (1991) Amalgamated accumulations resulting from climatic and eustatic changes, Akchar Erg, Mauritania. *Sedimentology* 38, 751–72.
- Komar, P. D. (1998) *Beach Processes and Sedimentation*, 2nd edn. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- Kondolf, M. and H. Pigay (2002) *Methods in Fluvial Geomorphology*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Kronberg, B. I. and Nesbitt, H. W. (1981) Quantification of weathering, soil geochemistry and soil fertility. *Journal of Soil Science* 32, 453–9.
- Kueny, J. A. and Day, M. J. (1998) An assessment of protected karst landscapes in the Caribbean. *Caribbean Geography* 9, 87–100.
- Lancaster, N. (1988) Development of linear dunes in the southwestern Kalahari, southern Africa. *Journal of Arid Environments* 14, 233–44.
- Lancaster, N. (1995) *Geomorphology of Desert Dunes*. London: Routledge.
- Lancaster, N. (1999) Geomorphology of desert sand seas. In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 49–69. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Larson, R. L. (1991) Latest pulse of the Earth: evidence for a mid-Cretaceous superplume. *Geology* 19, 547–50.
- Leighton, M. W. and Pendexter, C. (1962) Carbonate rock types. *American Association of Petroleum Geologists Memoir* 1, 33–61.
- Leopold, L. B., Wolman, M. G., and Miller, J. P. (1964) *Fluvial Processes in Geomorphology*. San Francisco and London: W. H. Freeman.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1988) Denudation surfaces of a shield area in south Sweden. *Geografiska Annaler* 70A, 337–50.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1989) Exhumed Cretaceous landforms in south Sweden. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 72, 21–40.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1993) Denudation surfaces and tectonics in the southernmost part of the Baltic Shield. *Precambrian Research* 64, 337–45.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1995) Relief and saprolites through time on the Baltic Shield. *Geomorphology* 12, 45–61.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1996) Long term morphotectonic evolution in Sweden. *Geomorphology* 16, 33–59.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K. (1999) Uplift histories revealed by landforms of the Scandinavian domes.

- In B. J. Smith, W. B. Whalley, and P. A. Warke (eds) *Uplift, Erosion and Stability: Perspectives on Long-Term Landscape Development* (Geological Society, London, Special Publication 162), pp. 85–91. London: The Geological Society of London.
- Lidmar-Bergström, K., Ollier, C. D., and Sulebak, J. R. (2000) Landforms and uplift history of southern Norway. *Global and Planetary Change* 24, 211–31.
- Linton, D. L. (1951) The delimitation of morphological regions. In L. D. Stamp and S. W. Wooldridge (eds) *London Essays in Geography*, pp. 199–218. London: Longman.
- Linton, D. L. (1955) The problem of tors. *Geographical Journal* 121, 289–91.
- Livingstone, D. A. (1963) *Chemical Composition of Rivers and Lakes* (United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 440G). Washington, D.C.: US Government Printing Office.
- Livingstone, I. and Warren, A. (1996) *Aeolian Geomorphology: An Introduction*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Lowe, D. J. (1992) A historical review of concepts of speleogenesis. *Cave Science* 19, 63–90.
- Löye-Pilot, M. D. and Martin, J. M. (1996) Saharan dust input to the western Mediterranean: an eleven years' record in Corsica. In S. Guerzoni and R. Chester (eds) *The Impact of Desert Dust across the Mediterranean*, pp. 191–99. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
- Lu, H. and Shao, Y. (2001) Toward quantitative prediction of dust storms: an integrated wind erosion modelling system and its applications. *Environmental Modelling and Software* 16, 233–49.
- Ludwig, K. R., Muhs, D. R., Simmons, K. R., Halley, R. B., and Shinn, E. A. (1996) Sea-level records at ~80 ka from tectonically stable platforms: Florida and Bermuda. *Geology* 24, 211–14.
- Lunardini, V. J. (1996) Climatic warming and the degradation of warm permafrost. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes* 7, 311–20.
- Lundberg, J. and Ford, D. C. (1994) Canadian landform examples – 28 dissolution pavements. *Canadian Geographer* 38, 271–5.
- McCarroll, D. (1991) Relative-age dating of inorganic deposits: the need for a more critical approach. *The Holocene* 1, 174–80.
- MacDonald, G. A. (1972) *Volcanoes*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- Mackin, J. H. (1948) The concept of the graded river. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 59, 463–512.
- Mackintosh, D. (1869) *The Scenery of England and Wales, Its Character and Origin: Being An Attempt to Trace the Nature of the Geological Causes, especially Denudation, by which the Physical Features of the Country have been Produced*. London: Longman, Green.
- Manley, G. (1959) The late-glacial climate of north-west England. *Liverpool and Manchester Geological Journal* 2, 188–215.
- Marcus, M. G. (1969) The hydrology of snow and ice. In R. J. Chorley (ed.) *Water, Earth, and Man: A Synthesis of Hydrology, Geomorphology, and Socio-Economic Geography*, pp. 359–67. London: Methuen.
- Martin, J.-M. and Meybeck, M. (1979) Elemental mass-balance of material carried by major world rivers. *Marine Chemistry* 7, 173–206.
- Martini, I. P., Brookfield, M. E., and Sadura, S. (2001) *Principles of Glacial Geomorphology and Geology*. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Prentice Hall.
- Martini, J. E. J. (1981) Early Proterozoic palaeokarst of the Transvaal, South Africa. In B. F. Beck (ed.) *Proceedings of the Eighth International Congress on Speleology*, Volume 1, pp. 37–59. Huntsville, Ala.: The National Speleological Society.
- Matthews, M. C., Clayton, C. R. I., and Rigby-Jones, J. (2000) Locating dissolution features in the Chalk. *Quarterly Journal of Engineering Geology* 33, 125–40.
- McGee, W. J. (1888) The geology of the head of Chesapeake Bay. *Annual Report of the United States Geological Survey* 7, 537–646.

- McGregor, D. M. and Thompson, D. A. (1995) *Geomorphology and Land Management in a Changing Environment*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- McKee, E. D. (ed.) (1979) *A Study of Global Sand Seas* (United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 1052). Reston, Va.: United States Geological Survey.
- McLean, R. F. (1967) Measurements of beachrock erosion by some tropical marine gastropods. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 17, 551–61.
- Meigs, P. (1953) World distribution of arid and semi-arid homoclimates. In *Reviews on Research on Arid Zone Hydrology* (UNESCO Arid Zone Programme 1), 203–9. Paris: UNESCO.
- Menzies, J. (1989) Subglacial hydraulic conditions and their possible impact upon subglacial bed formation. *Sedimentary Geology* 62, 125–50.
- Meybeck, M. (1987) Les transport fluviaux en solution dans les sciences de la terre. *Institute Géologique de Bassin d'Aquitaine, Bordeaux* 41, 401–28.
- Meybeck, M. (1979) Concentrations des eaux fluviales en éléments majeur et apports en solution aux océans. *Revue de Géologie Dynamique et de Géographie* 21, 215–46.
- Middleton, N. (1997) Desert dust. In D. S. G. Thomas (ed.) *Arid Zone Geomorphology: Process, Form and Change in Drylands*, 413–36. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Milliman, J. D. (1980) Transfer of river-borne particulate material to the oceans. In J.-M. Martin, J. D. Burton, and D. Eisma (eds) *River Inputs to Ocean Systems* (SCOR/UNEP/UNESCO Review and Workshop), pp. 5–12. Rome: FAO.
- Milliman, J. D. and Meade, R. H. (1983) World-wide delivery of sediment to the oceans. *Journal of Geology* 91, 1–21.
- Mills, H. H. (1990) Thickness and character of regolith on mountain slopes in the vicinity of Mountain Lake, Virginia, as indicated by seismic refraction, and implications for hillslope evolution. *Geomorphology* 3, 143–57.
- Mohr, E. J. C. and van Baren, F. A. (1954) *Tropical Soils: A Critical Study of Soil Genesis as Related to Climate, Rock and Vegetation*. New York: Wiley Interscience.
- Moore, I. D., Grayson, R. B., and Ladson, A. R. (1991) Digital terrain modelling: a review of hydrological, geomorphological, and biological applications. *Hydrological Processes* 5, 3–30.
- Moore, I. D., Turner, A. K., Wilson, J. P., Jenson, S., and Band, L. (1993) GIS and land-surface–subsurface process modelling. In M. F. Goodchild, B. O. Parkes, and L. T. Steyaert (eds) *Environmental modeling with GIS*, pp. 196–230. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Moore, J. G. (1985) Structure and eruptive mechanism at Surtsey volcano, Iceland. *Geological Magazine* 122, 649–61.
- Moore, J. G., Jakobsson, S., and Holmjarn, J. (1992) Subsidence of Surtsey volcano, 1967–1991. *Bulletin of Volcanology* 55, 17–24.
- Morgan, R. P. C. (1994) The European Soil Erosion Model: an up-date on its structure and research base. In R. J. Rickson (ed.) *Conserving Soil Resources: European Perspectives*, pp. 286–99. Wallingford: CAB International.
- Morgan, R. P. C. (1995) *Soil Erosion and Conservation*, 2nd edn. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Morisawa, M. (1985) *Rivers*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Mörner, N.-A. (1980) The northwest European ‘sea-level laboratory’ and regional Holocene eustasy. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology* 29, 281–300.
- Mörner, N.-A. (1987) Models of global sea-level change. In M. J. Tooley and I. Shennan (eds) *Sea-Level Changes*, pp. 332–55. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Mörner, N.-A. (1994) Internal response to orbital forcing and external cyclic sedimentary sequences. In P. L. De Boer and D. G. Smith (eds) *Orbital Forcing and Cyclic Sequences* (Special Publication

- Number 19 of the International Association of Sedimentologists), pp. 25–33. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific Publications.
- Mottershead, D. N. (1994) Spatial variations in intensity of alveolar weathering of a dated sandstone structure in a coastal environment, Weston-super-Mare, UK. In D. A. Robinson and R. B. G. Williams (eds) *Rock Weathering and Landform Evolution*, pp. 151–74. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Müller, F. (1968) Pingos, modern. In R. W. Fairbridge (ed.) *The Encyclopedia of Geomorphology* (Encyclopedia of Earth Sciences Series, Vol. III), pp. 845–7. New York: Reinhold.
- Murphy, P. and Cordingley, J. (1999) Some observations on the occurrence of channel karren-like features in flooded karst conduits in the Yorkshire Dales, UK. *Cave and Karst Science* 26, 129–30.
- Murphy, P. J. (2000) The karstification of the Permian strata east of Leeds. *Proceedings of the Yorkshire Geological Society* 53, 25–30.
- Murphy, P. J., Hall, A. M., and Cordingley, J. N. (2000) Anomalous scallop distributions in Joint Hole, Chapel-le-Dale, North Yorkshire, UK. *Cave and Karst Science* 27, 29–32.
- Nanson, G. C. and Knighton, A. D. (1996) Anabranching rivers: their cause, character and classification. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 21, 217–39.
- Nash, D. B. (1981) Fault: a FORTRAN program for modeling the degradation of active normal fault scarps. *Computers & Geosciences* 7, 249–66.
- Nearing, M. A., Foster, G. R., Lane, L. J., and Finkner, S. C. (1989) A process-based soil erosion model for USDA-Water Erosion Prediction Project technology. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers* 32, 1587–93.
- Nelson, F. E. (1998) Cryoplanation terrace orientation in Alaska. *Geografiska Annaler, Series A: Physical Geography* 80, 135–51.
- Nickling, W. G. and McKenna Neuman, C. (1999) Recent investigations of airflow and sediment transport over desert dunes. In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 15–47. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Nicod, J. (1998) Les grottes: retrospective historique et insertion des grottes aménagées dans l'espace géographique. *Annales de Géographie* 603, 508–30.
- Noller, J. S., Sowers, J. M., and Lettis, W. R. (eds) *Quaternary Geochronology: Methods and Applications* (AGU Reference Shelf 4). Washington, D.C.: American Geophysical Union.
- Nur, A. and Ben-Avraham, Z. (1982) Displaced terranes and mountain building. In K. J. Hsü (ed.) *Mountain Building Processes*, pp. 73–84. London and New York: Academic Press.
- Ollier, C. D. (1959) A two-cycle theory of tropical pedology. *Journal of Soil Science* 10: 137–48.
- Ollier, C. D. (1960) The inselbergs of Uganda. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie NF* 4, 470–87.
- Ollier, C. D. (1967) Landform description without stage names. *Australian Geographical Studies* 5, 73–80.
- Ollier, C. D. (1969) *Volcanoes* (An Introduction to Systematic Geomorphology, Vol. 6). Cambridge, Mass. and London: MIT Press.
- Ollier, C. D. (1981) *Tectonics and Landforms* (Geomorphology Texts 6). London and New York: Longman.
- Ollier, C. D. (1988) Deep weathering, groundwater and climate. *Geografiska Annaler* 70A, 285–90.
- Ollier, C. D. (1991) *Ancient Landforms*. London and New York: Belhaven Press.
- Ollier, C. D. (1992) Global change and long-term geomorphology. *Terra Nova* 4, 312–19.



- Ollier, C. D. (1995) Tectonics and landscape evolution in southeast Australia. *Geomorphology* 12, 37–44.
- Ollier, C. D. (1996) Planet Earth. In I. Douglas, R. J. Huggett, and M. E. Robinson (eds) *Companion Encyclopedia of Geography*, pp. 15–43. London: Routledge.
- Ollier, C. D. and Pain, C. (1994) Landscape evolution and tectonics in southeastern Australia. *AGSO Journal of Australian Geology and Geophysics* 15, 335–45.
- Ollier, C. D. and Pain, C. (1996) *Regolith, Soils and Landforms*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Osborne, R. A. L. and Branagan, D. F. (1988) Karst landscapes of New South Wales. *Earth-Science Reviews* 25, 467–80.
- Osterkamp, W. R. and Costa, J. E. (1987) Changes accompanying an extraordinary flood on a sand-bed stream. In L. Mayer and D. Nash (eds) *Catastrophic Flooding*, pp. 201–24. Boston: Allen & Unwin.
- Osterkamp, T. E., Viereck, L., Shur, Y., Jorgenson, M. T., Racine, C., Doyle, A., and Boone, R. D. (2000) Observations of thermokarst and its impact on boreal forests in Alaska, USA. *Arctic, Antarctic, and Alpine Research* 32, 303–15.
- Otto-Bliesner, B. (1995) Continental drift, runoff, and weathering feedbacks: implications from climate model experiments. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 100, 11,537–48.
- Pain, C. F. and Ollier, C. D. (1995) Inversion of relief – a component of landscape evolution. *Geomorphology* 12, 151–65.
- Park, R. G. (1988) *Geological Structures and Moving Plates*. London: Blackie Academic and Professional. An imprint of Chapman & Hall.
- Parsons, G. R. and Powell, M. (2001) Measuring the cost of beach retreat. *Coastal Management* 29, 91–103.
- Partridge, J. and Baker, V. R. (1987) Palaeoflood hydrology of the Salt River, Arizona. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 12, 109–25.
- Pedro, G. (1979) Caractérisation générale des processus de l'altération hydrolitique. *Science du Sol* 2, 93–105.
- Peltier, L. (1950) The geographic cycle in periglacial regions as it is related to climatic geomorphology. *Annals of the Association of American Geographers* 40, 214–36.
- Penck, A. and Brückner, A. (1901–9) *Die Alpen im Eiszeitalter*, 3 vols. Leipzig: Verlag Tauchnitz.
- Penck, W. (1924) *Die morphologische Analyse, ein Kapitel der physikalischen Geologie*. Stuttgart: Engelhorn.
- Penck, W. (1953) *Morphological Analysis of Landforms*. Translated and edited by H. Czech and K. C. Boswell. London: Macmillan.
- Péwé, T. L. (1991) Permafrost. In G. A. Kiersch (ed.) *The Heritage of Engineering Geology: The First Hundred Years* (Geological Society of America Centennial Special Volume No. 3), pp. 277–98. Boulder, Colo.: The Geologic Society of America.
- Phillips, J. D. (1990) Relative importance of factors influencing fluvial loss at the global scale. *American Journal of Science* 290, 547–68.
- Phillips, J. D. (1995) Time lags and emergent stability in morphogenic/pedogenic system models. *Ecological Modelling* 78, 267–76.
- Phillips, J. D. (1999) *Earth Surface Systems: Complexity, Order and Scale*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Pike, R. J. (1995) Geomorphometry – progress, practice, and prospect. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 101, 221–38.
- Pike, R. J. (1999) *A Bibliography of Geomorphometry, the Quantitative Representation of Topography – Supplement 3.0* (United States Geological Survey, Open File Report 99–140). Menlo Park, Calif.: US Department of the Interior, United States Geological Survey.
- Playfair, J. (1802) *Illustrations of the Huttonian Theory of the Earth*. London: Cadell & Davies; Edinburgh: William Creech. [A facsimile reprint was published

- with an introduction by George W. White in 1964 by Dover Books, New York.]
- Postma, H. (1980) Sediment transport and sedimentology. In E. Olausson and I. Cato (eds) *Chemistry and Biogeochemistry of Estuaries*, pp. 153–80. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Potter, P. E. (1978) Petrology and chemistry of modern big-river sands. *Journal of Geology* 86, 423–49.
- Price, R. J. (1973) *Glacial and Fluvio-glacial Landforms*. Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd.
- Pye, K. (1990) Physical and human influences on coastal dune development between the Ribble and Mersey estuaries, northwest England. In K. F. Nordstrom, N. P. Psuty, and R. W. G. Carter (eds) *Coastal Dunes: Form and Process*, pp. 339–59. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Pye, K. and Sherwin, D. (1999) Loess. In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 213–38. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Rapp, A. (1960) Recent development of mountain slopes in Karkevagge and surroundings, northern Scandinavia. *Geografiska Annaler* 42, 73–200.
- Rapp, A. (1986) Slope processes in high latitude mountains. *Progress in Physical Geography* 4, 531–48.
- Raupach, M. R., McTainsh, G. H., and Leys, J. F. (1994) Estimates of dust mass in recent major Australian dust storms. *Australian Journal of Soil and Water Conservation* 7, 20–4.
- Raymo, M. E. and Ruddiman, W. F. (1992) Tectonic forcing of late Cenozoic climate. *Nature* 359, 117–22.
- Rea, B. R., Whalley, W. B., Rainey, M. M., and Gordon, J. E. (1996) Blockfields, old or new? Evidence and implications from some plateaus in northern Norway. *Geomorphology* 15, 109–21.
- Retallack, G. J. (1999) Carboniferous fossil plants and soils of an early tundra ecosystem. *Palaios* 14, 324–36.
- Riksen, M. J. P. M. and De Graaff, J. (2001) On-site and off-site effects of wind erosion on European light soils. *Land Degradation and Development* 12, 1–11.
- Ritter, D. F., Kochel R. C., and Miller J. R. (1995) *Process Geomorphology*, 3rd edn. Dubuque, Ill. and London: William C. Brown.
- Robinson, D. A. and Williams, R. G. B. (1992) Sandstone weathering in the High Atlas, Morocco. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 36, 413–29.
- Robinson, D. A. and Williams, R. G. B. (1994) Sandstone weathering and landforms in Britain and Europe. In D. A. Robinson and R. B. G. Williams (eds) *Rock Weathering and Landform Evolution*, pp. 371–91. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Rose, A. W., Hawkes, H. E., and Webb, J. S. (1979) *Geochemistry in Mineral Exploration*. London: Academic Press.
- Ruddiman, W. F. (ed.) (1997) *Tectonic Uplift and Climatic Change*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Rudoy, A. (1998) Mountain ice-dammed lakes of southern Siberia and their influence on the development and regime of the intracontinental runoff systems of North Asia in the Late Pleistocene. In G. Benito, V. R. Baker, and K. J. Gregory (eds) *Palaeohydrology and Environmental Change*, pp. 215–34. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Ruhe, R. V. (1975) Climatic geomorphology and fully developed slopes. *Catena* 2, 309–20.
- Sarnthein, M. (1978) Sand deserts during glacial maximum and climatic optimum. *Nature* 272, 43–6.
- Saunders, I. and Young, A. (1983) Rates of surface process on slopes, slope retreat and denudation. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 8, 473–501.



- Savigear, R. A. G. (1952) Some observations on slope development in South Wales. *Transactions of the Institute of British Geographers* 18, 31–52.
- Savigear, R. A. G. (1956) Technique and terminology in the investigations of slope forms. In *Premier Rapport de la Commission pour l'Étude des Versants*, pp. 66–75. Amsterdam: Union Géographique Internationale.
- Scheidegger, A. E. (1979) The principle of antagonism in the Earth's evolution. *Tectonophysics* 55, T7–T10.
- Scheidegger, A. E. (1983) Instability principle in geomorphic equilibrium. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 27, 1–19.
- Scheidegger, A. E. (1991) *Theoretical Geomorphology*, 3rd completely revised edn. Berlin: Springer.
- Scheidegger, A. E. (1994) Hazards: singularities in geomorphic systems. *Geomorphology* 10, 19–25.
- Scheidegger, A. E. (1999) Morphotectonics of eastern Nepal. *Indian Journal of Landscape Systems and Ecological Studies* 22, 1–9.
- Scheidegger, A. E. and Hantke, R. (1994) On the genesis of river gorges. *Transactions of the Japanese Geomorphological Union* 15, 91–110.
- Schumm, S. A. (1979) Geomorphic thresholds: the concept and its applications. *Transactions of the Institute of British Geographers*, NS 4, 485–515.
- Schumm, S. A. (1981) Evolution and response of the fluvial system, sedimentologic implications. *Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists, Special Publication* 31, 19–29.
- Schumm, S. A. (1985a) Explanation and extrapolation in geomorphology; seven reasons for geologic uncertainty. *Transactions of the Japanese Geomorphological Union* 6, 1–18.
- Schumm, S. A. (1985b) Patterns of alluvial rivers. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences* 13, 5–27.
- Schumm, S. A. (1991) *To Interpret the Earth: Ten Ways to be Wrong*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Schumm, S. A. and Parker, R. S. (1977) Implications of complex response of drainage systems for Quaternary alluvial stratigraphy. *Nature* 243, 99–100.
- Selby, M. J. (1980) A rock mass strength classification for geomorphic purposes: with test from Antarctica and New Zealand. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 24, 31–51.
- Selby, M. J. (1982) *Hillslope Materials and Processes*, 1st edn. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Selby, M. J. (1993) *Hillslope Materials and Processes*, 2nd edn. With a contribution by A. P. W. Hodder. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Serreze, M. C., Walsh, J. E., Chapin III, F. S., Osterkamp, T., Dyurgerov, M., Romanovsky, V., Oechel, W. C., Morison, J., Zhang, T., and Barry, R. G. (2000) Observational evidence of recent change in the northern high-latitude environment. *Climatic Change* 46, 159–207.
- Sharp, A. D., Trudgill, S. T., Cooke, R. U., Price, C. A., Crabtree, R. W., Pickle, A. M., and Smith, D. I. (1982) Weathering of the balustrade on St Paul's Cathedral, London. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 7, 387–9.
- Shaw, J. (1994) A qualitative review of sub-ice-sheet landscape evolution. *Progress in Physical Geography* 18, 159–84.
- Shaw, J., Kvill, D., and Rains, B. (1989) Drumlins and catastrophic subglacial floods. *Sedimentary Geology* 62, 177–202.
- Sherlock, R. L. (1922) *Man as a Geological Agent: An Account of His Action on Inanimate Nature*. With a foreword by A. S. Woodward. London: H. F. & G. Witherby.
- Shreve, R. L. (1975) The probabilistic–topologic approach to drainage basin geomorphology. *Geology* 3, 527–9.

- Simas, T., Nunes, J. P., and Ferreira, J. G. (2001) Effects of global climate change on coastal salt marshes. *Ecological Modelling* 139, 1–15.
- Simons, D. B. and Richardson, E. V. (1963) Forms of bed roughness in alluvial channels. *Transactions of the American Society of Civil Engineers* 128, 284–302.
- Simons, D. B. (1969) Open channel flow. In R. J. Chorley (ed.) *Water, Earth, and Man: A Synthesis of Hydrology, Geomorphology, and Socio-Economic Geography*, pp. 297–318. London: Methuen.
- Simons, M. (1962) The morphological analysis of landforms: a new view of the work of Walther Penck (1888–1923). *Transactions of the Institute of British Geographers* 31, 1–14.
- Simonson, R. W. (1995) Airborne dust and its significance to soils. *Geoderma* 65, 1–43.
- Singer, A. (1980) The paleoclimatic interpretation of clay minerals in soils and weathering profiles. *Earth-Science Reviews* 15, 303–26.
- Slaymaker, O. (ed.) (2000a) *Geomorphology, Human Activity and Global Environmental Change*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Slaymaker, O. (2000b) Global environmental change: the global agenda. In O. Slaymaker (ed.) *Geomorphology, Human Activity and Global Environmental Change*, pp. 3–20. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Smart, J. S. (1978) The analysis of drainage network composition. *Earth Surface Processes* 3, 129–70.
- Smith, A. G., Smith, D. G., and Funnell, B. M. (1994) *Atlas of Mesozoic and Cenozoic Coastlines*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Smith, B. J., Warke, P. A., and Moses, C. A. (2000) Limestone weathering in contemporary arid environments: a case study from southern Tunisia. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 25, 1343–54.
- Smith, B. J., Whalley, W. B., and Warke, P. A. (eds) (1999) *Uplift, Erosion and Stability: Perspectives on Long-Term Landscape Development* (Geological Society, London, Special Publication 162). London: The Geological Society of London.
- Smith, T. R. and Bretherton, F. P. (1972) Stability and the conservation of mass in drainage basin evolution. *Water Resources Research* 8, 1506–29.
- Sowers, J. M., Noller, J. S., and Lettis, W. R. (2000) Methods for dating Quaternary surficial materials. In J. S. Noller, J. M. Sowers, and W. R. Lettis (eds) *Quaternary Geochronology: Methods and Applications* (AGU Reference Shelf 4), pp. 567. Washington, D.C.: American Geophysical Union.
- Sparks, B. W. (1960) *Geomorphology*. London: Longmans.
- Sparks, B. W. (1971) *Rocks and Relief*. London: Longman.
- Speight, J. G. (1974) A parametric approach to landform regions. In E. H. Brown and R. S. Waters (eds) *Progress in Geomorphology: Papers in Honour of David L. Linton* (Institute of British Geographers Special Publication No. 7), pp. 213–30. London: Institute of British Geographers.
- Spencer, T. (1988) Coastal biogeomorphology. In H. A. Viles (ed.) *Biogeomorphology*, pp. 255–318. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.
- Spencer, T. (1995) Potentialities, uncertainties and complexities in the response of coral reefs to future sea-level rise. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 20, 49–64.
- Springer, J. S. (1983) Ontario Precambrian dolomite as refractory raw material. *Ontario Geological Survey Miscellaneous Papers* 116, 303–12.
- Stallard, R. F. (1995) Tectonic, environmental, and humans aspects of weathering and erosion: a global review using a steady-state perspective. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences* 23, 11–39.
- Stewart, I. (1997) *Does God Play Dice? The New Mathematics of Chaos*, new edn. Harmondsworth, Middlesex: Penguin Books.

- Stokes, S., Thomas, D. G. S., and Washington, R., (1997) Multiple episodes of aridity in southern Africa since the last interglacial period. *Nature* 388, 154–8.
- Strahler, A. N. (1952) Dynamic basis of geomorphology. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 63, 923–38.
- Strahler, A. N. (1980) Systems theory in physical geography. *Physical Geography* 1, 1–27.
- Strahler, A. H. and Strahler, A. N. (1994) *Introducing Physical Geography*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Strakhov, N. M. (1967) *Principles of Lithogenesis*, Vol. 1. Translated by J. P. Fitzsimmons, S. I. Tomkoeff, and J. E. Hemingway. Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd.
- Struthers, W. A. K. (1997) From Manchester Docks to Salford Quays: ten years of environmental improvements in the Mersey Basin Campaign. *Journal of the Chartered Institution of Water and Environmental Management* 11, 1–7.
- Sugden, D. E. and John, B. S. (1976) *Glaciers and Landscape: A Geomorphological Approach*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Summerfield, M. A. (1984) Plate tectonics and landscape development on the African continent. In M. Morisawa and J. T. Hack (eds) *Tectonic Geomorphology* (The Symposia on Geomorphology, International Series No. 15), pp. 27–51. Boston, Mass.: George Allen & Unwin.
- Summerfield, M. A. (1991) *Global Geomorphology: An Introduction to the Study of Landforms*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Summerfield, M. A. (ed.) (2000) *Geomorphology and Global Tectonics*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Summerfield, M. A. and Hulton, N. J. (1994) Natural controls of fluvial denudation in major world drainage basins. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 99, 13, 871–84.
- Summerfield, M. A. and Thomas, M. F. (1987) Long-term landform development: editorial comment. In V. Gardiner (ed.) *International Geomorphology 1986, Part II* (Proceedings of the First International Conference on Geomorphology), pp. 927–33. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Sunamura, T. (1992) *Geomorphology of Rocky Coasts*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Surian, N. (1999) Channel changes due to river regulation: the case of the Piave River, Italy. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 24, 1135–51.
- Sweeting, M. M. (1950) Erosion cycles and limestone caverns in the Ingleborough district of Yorkshire. *Geographical Journal* 115, 63–78.
- Tarboton, D. G., Bras, R. L., and Rodriguez-Iturbe, I. (1992) A physical basis for drainage density. *Geomorphology* 5, 59–76.
- Taylor, G. and Eggleton, R. A. (2001) *Regolith Geology and Geomorphology*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Tchakerian, V. P. (1999) Dune palaeoenvironments. In A. S. Goudie, I. Livingstone, and S. Stokes (eds) *Aeolian Environments, Sediments and Landforms* (British Geomorphological Research Group Symposia Series, Papers from the Fourth International Conference on Aeolian Research (ICAR 4), held in School of Geography and St Catherine's College, University of Oxford, July 1998), pp. 261–92. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thomas, D. S. G. (1989) The nature of arid environments. In D. S. G. Thomas (ed.) *Arid Zone Geomorphology: Process, Form and Change in Drylands*, pp. 1–8. London: Belhaven Press.
- Thomas, D. S. G. (ed.) (1997) *Arid Zone Geomorphology: Process, Form and Change in Drylands*, 2nd edn. Chichester, John Wiley & Sons.
- Thomas, D. S. G. and Shaw, P. A. (1991) 'Relict' desert dune systems: interpretations and problems. *Journal of Arid Environments* 20, 1–14.
- Thomas, M. F. (1965) Some aspects of the geomorphology of tors and domes in Nigeria. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 9, 63–81.

- Thomas, M. F. (1974) *Tropical Geomorphology: A Study of Weathering and Landform Development in Warm Climates*. London and Basingstoke: Macmillan.
- Thomas, M. F. (1989a) The role of etch processes in landform development. I. Etching concepts and their application. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 33, 129–42.
- Thomas, M. F. (1989b) The role of etch processes in landform development. II. Etching and the formation of relief. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 33, 257–74.
- Thomas, M. F. (1994) *Geomorphology in the Tropics: A Study of Weathering and Denudation in Low Latitudes*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thomas, M. F. (1995) Models for landform development on passive margins. Some implications for relief development in glaciated areas. *Geomorphology* 12, 3–15.
- Thomas, M. F. and Thorp, M. B. (1985) Environmental change and episodic etchplanation in the humid tropics of Sierra Leone: the Koidu etchplain. In I. Douglas and T. Spencer (eds) *Environmental Change and Tropical Geomorphology*, pp. 239–67. London: George Allen & Unwin.
- Thompson, W. F. (1990) Climate related landscapes in world mountains: criteria and maps. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie, Supplementband* 78.
- Thorarinsson, S. (1964) *Surtsey, the New Island in the North Atlantic*. New York: Viking Press.
- Thorn, C. E. (1988) *An Introduction to Theoretical Geomorphology*. Boston: Unwin Hyman.
- Thorn, C. E. (1992) Periglacial geomorphology: what, where, when? In J. C. Dixon and A. D. Abrahams (eds) *Periglacial Geomorphology*, pp. 3–31. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thornbury, W. D. (1954) *Principles of Geomorphology*, 1st edn. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thorne, C. R., Hey, R. D., and Newson, M. D. (1997) *Applied Fluvial Geomorphology for River Engineering and Management*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thornes, J. B. (ed.) (1990) *Vegetation and Erosion: Processes and Environments*. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Thornthwaite, C. W. (1948) An approach towards a rational classification of climate. *Geographical Review* 38, 55–94.
- Tooth, S. and Nanson, G. C. (1999) Anabranching rivers of the Northern Plains of arid central Australia. *Geomorphology* 29, 211–33.
- Trenhaile, A. S. (1987) *The Geomorphology of Rock Coasts*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Trenhaile, A. S. (1997) *Coastal Dynamics and Landforms*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Trenhaile, A. S. (1998) *Geomorphology: A Canadian Perspective*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Tricart, J. and Cailleux, A. (1972) *Introduction to Climatic Geomorphology*. Translated from the French by Conrad J. Kiewiet de Jonge. London: Longman.
- Trimble, S. W. (1983) A sediment budget for Coon Creek basin in the driftless area, Wisconsin. *American Journal of Science* 283, 454–74.
- Trimble, S. W. (1995) Catchment sediment budgets and change. In A. Gurnell and G. Petts (eds) *Changing River Channels*, pp. 201–15. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons.
- Trudgill, S. (1985) *Limestone Geomorphology*. Harlow, Essex: Longman.
- Twidale, C. R. (1971) *Structural Landforms: Landforms Associated with Granitic Rocks, Faults, and Folded Strata* (An Introduction to Systematic Geomorphology, Vol. 5). Cambridge, Mass. and London: MIT Press.
- Twidale, C. R. (1976) On the survival of paleoforms. *American Journal of Science* 276, 77–95.
- Twidale, C. R. (1991) A model of landscape evolution involving increased and increasing relief amplitude. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie* NF 35, 85–109.

- Twidale, C. R. (1994) Gondwanan (Late Jurassic and Cretaceous) palaeosurfaces of the Australian craton. *Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology* 112, 157–86.
- Twidale, C. R. (1997) Persistent and ancient rivers – some Australian examples. *Physical Geography* 18, 291–317.
- Twidale, C. R. (1998) Antiquity of landforms: an ‘extremely unlikely’ concept vindicated. *Australian Journal of Earth Sciences* 45, 657–68.
- Twidale, C. R. (1999) Landforms ancient and recent: the paradox. *Geografiska Annaler Series A: Physical Geography* 81, 431–41.
- Twidale, C. R. and Campbell, E. M. (1993) *Australian Landforms: Structure, Process and Time*. Adelaide: Gleneagles Publishing.
- Twidale, C. R. and Campbell, E. M. (1995) Pre-Quaternary landforms in the low latitude context: the example of Australia. *Geomorphology* 12, 17–35.
- Twidale, C. R., Bourne, J. A., and Smith, D. M. (1974) Reinforcement and stabilisation mechanisms in landform development. *Révue de Géomorphologie Dynamique* 28, 81–95.
- Twidale, C. R., Bourne, J. A., and Vidal-Romani J. R. (1999) Bornhardt inselbergs in the Salt River Valley, south of Kellerberrin, Western Australia (with notes on a tessellated pavement in granite and pinnacles in laterite). *Journal of the Royal Society of Western Australia* 82, 33–49.
- Twidale, C. R. and Lageat, Y. (1994) Climatic geomorphology: a critique. *Progress in Physical Geography* 18, 319–34.
- Varnes, D. J. (1978) Slope movement and types and processes. In R. L. Schuster and R. J. Krizek (eds) *Landslides: Analysis and Control* (Transportation Research Board Special Report 176), pp. 11–33. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.
- Viles, H. and Spencer, T. (1996) *Coastal Problems: Geomorphology, Ecology and Society at the Coast*. London: Arnold.
- Vita-Finzi, C. (1973) *Recent Earth History*. London and Basingstoke: Macmillan.
- Walker, D. A., Webber, P. J., Binnian, E. F., Everett, K. R., Lederer, N. D., Nordstrand, E. A., and Walker, M. D. (1987) Cumulative impacts of oil fields on northern Alaskan landscapes. *Science* 238, 757–61.
- Walker, J. (1999) The application of geomorphology to the management of river-bank erosion. *Journal of the Chartered Institution of Water and Environmental Management* 13, 297–300.
- Walling, D. E. and Webb, B. W. (1986) The dissolved load of rivers: a global overview. In K. J. Gregory (ed.) *Dissolved Load of Rivers and Surface Water Quantity/Quality Relationships* (IAHS Publication 141), pp. 3–20. Rozendaalseaan, the Netherlands: International Association of Hydrological Sciences.
- Waltz, J. P. (1969) Ground water. In R. J. Chorley (ed.) *Water, Earth, and Man: A Synthesis of Hydrology, Geomorphology, and Socio-Economic Geography*, pp. 259–67. London: Methuen.
- Warburton, J. and Caine, N. (1999) Sorted patterned ground in the English Lake District. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes* 10, 193–7.
- Warburton, J. and Danks, M. (1998) Historical and contemporary channel change, Swinhope Burn. In J. Warburton (ed.) *Geomorphological Studies in the North Pennines: Field Guide*, pp. 77–91. Durham: Department of Geography, University of Durham, British Geomorphological Research Group.
- Ward, S. D. and Evans, D. F. (1976) Conservation assessment of British limestone pavements based on floristic criteria. *Biological Conservation* 9, 217–33.
- Warwick, G. T. (1953) *The Geomorphology of the Dove–Manifold Region*. Unpublished PhD thesis, University of Birmingham, England.
- Warwick, G. T. (1964) Dry valleys in the southern Pennines. *Erdkunde* 18, 116–23.



- Washburn, A. L. (1979) *Geocryology: A Survey of Periglacial Processes and Environments*. London: Edward Arnold.
- Weertman, J. (1957) On the sliding of glaciers. *Journal of Glaciology* 3, 33–8.
- Wellman, H. W. and Wilson, A. T. (1965) Salt weathering, a neglected geological erosion agent in coastal and arid environments. *Nature* 205, 1097–8.
- Wells, G. (1989) Observing earth's environment from space. In L. Friday and R. Laskey (eds) *The Fragile Environment: The Darwin College Lectures*, pp. 148–92. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- White, W. B. (1976) Cave minerals and speleothems. In T. D. Ford and C. H. D. Cullingford (eds) *The Science of Speleology*. London: Academic Press.
- White, W. D., Jefferson, G. L., and Hama, J. F. (1966) Quartzite karst in southeastern Venezuela. *International Journal of Speleology* 2, 309–14.
- Whitney, J. W. and Harrington, C. D. (1993) Relict colluvial boulder deposits as paleoclimatic indicators in the Yucca Mountain region, southern Nevada. *Bulletin of the Geological Society of America* 105, 1008–18.
- Wigley, T. M. L. and Raper, S. C. B. (1993) Thermal expansion of sea water associated with global warming. *Nature* 330, 127–31.
- Williams, P. W. (1969) The geomorphic effects of groundwater. In R. J. Chorley (ed.) *Water, Earth, and Man: A Synthesis of Hydrology, Geomorphology and Socio-economic Geography*, pp. 269–84. London: Methuen.
- Williams, R. B. G. and Robinson, D. A. (1989) Origin and distribution of polygonal cracking of rock surfaces. *Geografiska Annaler* 71A, 145–59.
- Wilson, I. (1971) Desert sandflow basins and a model for the development of ergs. *Geographical Journal* 137, 180–99.
- Wilson, J. P. and Gallant J. C. (eds) (2000) *Terrain Analysis: Principles and Applications*. New York: John Wiley & Sons.
- Wirthmann, A. (2000) *Geomorphology of the Tropics*. Translated by Detlef Busche. Berlin and Heidelberg: Springer.
- Wischmeier, W. H. and Smith, D. D. (1978) *Predicting Rainfall Erosion Losses: A Guide to Conservation Planning* (USDA Agricultural Handbook 537). Washington DC: United States Department of Agriculture, Science and Education Administration.
- Wohletz, K. H. and Sheridan, M. F. (1983) Hydrovolcanic explosions. II. Evolution of basaltic tuff rings and tuff cones. *American Journal of Science* 283, 385–413.
- Wolman, M. G. and Miller J. P. (1960) Magnitude and frequency of forces in geomorphic processes. *Journal of Geology* 68, 54–74.
- Womack, W. R. and Schumm, S. A. (1977) Terraces of Douglas Creek, northwestern Colorado: an example of episodic erosion. *Geology* 5, 72–6.
- Woodroffe, C. D. (1990) The impact of sea-level rise on mangrove shorelines. *Progress in Physical Geography* 14, 483–520.
- Woodward, H. P. (1936) Natural Bridge and Natural Tunnel, Virginia. *Journal of Geology* 44, 604–16.
- Wooldridge, S. W. (1932) The cycle of erosion and the representation of relief. *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 48, 30–6.
- Worster, D. (1979) *Dust Bowl: The Southern Plains in the 1930s*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Wright, J. V., Smith, A. L., and Self, S. (1980) A working terminology of pyroclastic deposits. *Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research* 8, 315–36.
- Wright, L. D. (1985) River deltas. In R. A. Davies (ed.) *Coastal Sedimentary Environments*, pp. 1–76. New York: Springer.
- Yatsu, E. (1988) *The Nature of Weathering: An Introduction*. Tokyo: Sozosha.

- Young, A. (1974) The rate of slope retreat. In E. H. Brown and R. S. Waters (eds) *Progress in Geomorphology: Papers in Honour of David L. Linton* (Institute of British Geographers Special Publication No. 7), pp. 65–78. London: Institute of British Geographers.
- Young, A. and Saunders, I. (1986) Rates of surface processes and denudation. In A. D. Abrahams (ed.) *Hillslope Processes*, pp. 1–27. Boston, Mass.: Allen & Unwin.
- Young, R. W. (1983) The tempo of geomorphological change: evidence from southeastern Australia. *Journal of Geology* 91, 221–30.
- Zobeck, T. M., Parker, N. C., Haskell, S., and Guoding, K. (2000) Scaling up from field to region for wind erosion prediction using a field-scale wind erosion model and GIS. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 82, 247–59.



# INDEX

Note: Page numbers in ordinary typeface refer to entries in the body of the text; *italicized* page numbers refer to entries in diagrams and plates; and **emboldened** page numbers refer to entries in tables and boxes. ***Bold italic*** numbers refer to entries in figures or plates that occur in boxes.

- abrasion: glacial 214; wind 256
- acid rain 118
- acidity (pH) 118
- active ice 211
- actualism 32
- aeolian: action in periglacial landscape 241–2;
  - depositional forms 262–73; deposits 51;
  - environments 254–5; erosional forms 258–62;
  - landscapes and humans 273–5; processes 255–8;
  - relict landforms 330–3
- allitization 126–7
- allochthonous terranes (exotic terranes) 80
- alluvial: bedforms 194, 195, 196; channels 184–9;
  - fans 196–8; terraces 199–200, 202
- alluviation 182, 328–29
- alluvium 52
- altiplanation terraces 248–9
- anabranching channels 189
- anaerobic bacteria, and reduction 119
- anastomosing: channels 188, 205–6; faults 80
- anchored dunes (impeded dunes) 267–9
- ancient landforms 317–27
- angle of internal friction 44
- angle of plane sliding friction 44
- angulate drainage 99
- annular drainage 99
- anomalous drainage 99–104
- antecedent streams 101–2
- anticlinal hills 93
- anticlines 94
- anti-dip streams 97
- Appalachian-type relief 93
- applied geomorphology 4, 10–12
- arenaceous deposits 49–50
- arête 219, 222, 224
- arête-and-pinnacle karst 144
- argillaceous deposits 50
- arrows 292
- arroyos 182, 201
- ash (volcanic) 83
- Atterberg limits 45–6
- attributes (in DEMs), primary 14, 15; secondary 14, 16
- avalanche 46, 47
- avulsions 184, 189, 205
- backwash 279
- Bagnold, R. A. 9, 255
- bajadas 198
- barchans 265–6
- bare karst 138
- barrier: islands 294–5; spits 292

- barriers, coastal 292–4  
 basal weathering surface 316  
 baselevel 190–1  
 basins 94  
 batholiths (bosses, plutons) 81–2  
 bauxite 122, 318  
 beach: cusps 291; drift 283–4; erosion  
     305; nourishment 305–6; profile 290;  
     ridges 295  
 beaches 288–90  
 bed load (traction load) 177  
 bedrock: channels 182–3; terraces (strath terraces)  
     199  
 beheaded streams 106  
 berm 290  
 bevelled cuesta 314  
 bioerosion 282  
 biogenic sediment 51  
 biogeochemical cycles 41  
 biological weathering 120–1  
 biomechanical effect, of joints 120  
 biostasy 327–8  
 bisiallittization (smectization) 126  
 blind valleys 151–2  
 blockfields 121  
 blowholes 288  
 blowouts 259–60, 265, 269, 296  
*bogaz* 144  
 bollard rocks 157–8  
 bornhardts 108–9  
 bosses 81–2  
 box canyons 184  
 braided channels 187–8  
 braiding 203  
 breached: anticlines 94; domes 94; watersheds 218,  
     219  
 breakers 279  
 Brückner, E. 7  
 bugors 244  
 buried ice 239  
 buried karst 321  
 buttes 92, 93, 97  
 bysmaliths 82, 83  
  
 calcrete 122  
 calc-sinter (*see* travertine)  
 calderas 88–9  
 calibrated-age methods 24  
 caprock 92  
  
 carbonation 119, 137  
 carbonic acid 119, 137  
 cascading system (*see* process system)  
 case-hardened 124, 158  
 castle koppies 108–9  
 catastrophism 21, 33  
 catchment 36  
 cave: form 161; pearls (pisoliths) 164; system 160;  
     tourism 166–7  
 cavitation 178  
 cavity collapse 49  
 cenotes 147  
 centripetal drainage 99  
 chalk 51  
 channel: initiation 180–1; network 191–3; patterns  
     185  
 chaos 19, 339  
 chaotic system 339  
 chattermarks 215, 219, 224  
 chelation 120  
 chemical denudation 55–7; rates 52  
 chemical sediment 50–1  
 chemical weathering (*see* weathering)  
 chenier plains 295, 297  
 cheniers 295–6  
 Chézy equation 176  
 Chorley, R. J. 9  
 chronosequences (landform, topographic) 29–30  
 cinder cones 85  
 cirque glaciers 210, 222  
 cirques 218, 221, 222, 223  
 clastic (detrital) sediment 49–50  
 clay minerals 115–6  
 clays 50, 115–6  
 cliff-base notches 286–7  
 cliffs 123–4; coastal 286–7  
 cliff-top dunes 265, 268–9  
 climatic geomorphology 4, 319  
 climbing dunes 265, 268  
 clints 140, 141–3  
 closed system 16  
 coastal: depositional landforms 288–305;  
     environments 278–82; erosional landforms  
     284–8; karren 141, 146; processes 282–4; sand  
     dunes 265, 295–8; transition zone 51  
 coasts, and humans 305–9; and rising sea-levels  
     306–9  
 cockpit karst 151–3  
 cold glaciers 211

- cold-based glaciers 211  
 cols 218  
 collapse dolines 146–7  
 colloids, definition of 121  
 colluvium 52  
 columns, in caves 163  
 comet-tail spits 292  
 complex drainage (irregular drainage) 97  
 complex systems 19  
 complexity 19, 339  
 cone karst 149–51  
 consequent streams 97  
 continental rifting 76  
 continental-margin orogens 78  
 continuous creep 46, 47  
 convective system, in the Earth 70–1  
 corals 284  
 corestones 108, 122  
 corrasion, in streams 178  
 corridor karst (labyrinth karst) 141, 144–5, 151  
 corrosion, in streams 178  
 coulées 87, 88  
 covered karst 138–9  
 crags-and-tails (leeside cones) 218, 221  
 cratonic regime model 328  
 creep, by wind 257  
 crescentic: bars 291; features 218, 224; gouges 218, 224  
 crevasse fill 225, 226  
 Crickmay, C. H. 315–26  
 critical flow 176  
 cross-valley moraines (rogen or ribbed moraines) 225, 227  
 cryolaccoliths 242  
 cryopediments 248–9  
 cryoplanation terraces 248–9  
 cryosphere 210  
 cuervas 93, 95, 97; bevelled 314  
 cumulo-domes 87, 88  
 current marking 161–2  
 cutters 141  
 cymatogeny 72, 315
- dating techniques 24–9  
 Davis, W. M. 5–6, 315  
 De Geer moraines (washboard moraines) 225, 227  
 debris: cascade (land surface) 38; fall (topple) 49; flow 46, 47, 48
- decantation: flutings 140, 141–2; runnels 140, 141–2  
 deflation 256  
 deflation hollows 259–60; *see also* blowouts  
 deltas: lacustrine (lake) 201; marine 302–5  
 dendritic drainage 98  
 dendrochronology 27  
 denudation 43–9; definition 43; and climate 52–9; and humans 59–63; regional and global patterns of 57–9  
 deposition 49–52; aeolian 51, 262–73; coastal 288–305; fluvial 181–2, 194–202; glacial 214–5, 217–24  
 deranged drainage 97  
 desert pavements (stone pavements) 259  
 deserts 254–5  
 detrital sediment 49  
 diastrophic forces, defined 72  
 diastrophism 72  
 digital elevation models (DEMs) 12, 14  
 digital terrain models (DTMs) 14  
 dip 95; slope 93, 95, 97; stream 97  
 dip-slip faults 104–6  
 directionalism 33  
 dirt cones 225, 226  
 dissolution (solution), defined 117; *see* solution  
 dissolved load 177  
 distributed models, of soil erosion 60, 61  
 dolines 146–8  
 dolomite 51, 134, 135  
 dome dunes 265, 266  
 domes 94, 218, 219  
 double planation 316, 324  
 draa (mega-dunes) 262–4  
 drainage: anomalous patterns 99–104; basin 36, 191–3; centripetal 99; complex 97; density 192–3; deranged 97; irregular 97; modification by volcanoes 89, 90; offset 106, 107; parallel 98; pinnate 98; radial 98–9, 100; rectangular 99; roll-over 105, 106; system 36; tectonic control on 99  
 draperies 164  
*Dreikanter* 262  
 dripstone 163–4  
 drowned landscapes 334  
 drumlins 225, 227  
 dry: deposition 258; valleys 153, 155  
 dune: classification 265; fields 269–71; formation 262–3; relict features 331; types 263–9  
 duricrusts 51, 122–3, 318

- dust 257  
 Dust Bowl 273–4  
 dy 51  
 dykes 82, 83  
 dynamic: equilibrium 9, 20, 337; metastable equilibrium 20; systems theory 19
- earth: falls (topples) 49; hummocks (thufur) 246  
 Earth System Science 41, 42–3  
 earthflow, 46, 47  
 earthquakes, global distribution of 72, 73  
 echo dunes 265, 268  
 egg-box topography 148  
 Eh (redox potential) 118, 119  
 elastic solids 45  
 encroachment 258  
 end moraines 226  
 endogenic forces 16  
 endokarst 136, 137  
 englacial debris 216  
 entrenched meanders 328  
 epeirogeny 72  
 ephemeral streams 172  
 epikarst 136, 137  
 epiphreatic caves 161  
 equilibrium 19–20  
 ergodicity 29  
 ergs 269–70  
 erosion, definition of 43; aeolian 258–62; coastal 284–8; fluvial 177–81, 182–94; glacial 51, 216–17, 224–8  
 erratics 225  
 escarpments (scarps) 95  
 eskers 228, 229, 231  
 estuaries 299–301  
 etchplains 316–17  
 etchplanation 316–7  
 evaporites 50  
 evolving: geomorphology 336–8; landscapes 336–41  
 evorsion 178  
 exfoliation 114–115  
 exhumed karst 321  
 exhumed landforms 321–4  
 exogenic forces 16  
 exotic terranes (allochthonous terranes) 80  
 exsudation 161  
 external variables, of system 16  
 extrusive forces 74
- falling dunes 265, 268–9  
 falls (mass movement) 48, 49  
 fault scarps 104  
 faults: definition of 104; dip-slip 104–6; and landforms 104–7; strike-slip 104, 106; thrust 104  
 felsenmeer 121  
*fengcong* 148  
 ferrallitization 126  
 ferricrete 122  
 fishhook beaches (headland bay beaches, zetaform beaches) 291, 293  
 fjords 218, 219  
 Flandrian transgression 336  
 flatirons (revet crags) 93, 95  
 floods 22–3; geomorphic change and 171  
 flood basalts 75  
 floodplains 194, 196–7, 202  
 flow systems (*see* process systems)  
 flows (mass movement) 46, 47  
 flowstone 163–4; sheets 164  
 fluted moraines 225,  
 flutes 124; in karst 141  
 fluvial: action in periglacial landscapes 241; deposition 181–2; depositional landforms 194–202; deposits 51; environments 172; erosion 177–81; erosional landforms 182–94; karst 151–7; processes 172–82; sediments 181; system and environmental change 328–30; system, human impact on 203–7  
 fluviokarst 136  
 flyggbergs 218, 221  
 floods: drainage patterns and 97–9; rivers and 97–9; types 94–6  
 foredunes 265, 267–8  
 forelands (cusplate spits) 291–2  
 form: in geomorphology 12–14; systems 17  
 free: dunes 263–7; karst 139  
 freeze–thaw cycles 114  
 frequency, of geomorphic events 20–23  
 frost: action 114; blisters 244; cracking 241; creep 47, 241; heaving 240; mounds 242–4; shattering 114; thrusting 240; weathering 114, 240  
 frost-pull hypothesis 240  
 frost-push hypothesis 240  
 frost-wedge polygons 319  
 Froude number 174–5  
 functional geomorphology 4  
 funnel valleys (wineglass valleys) 105

- gelifluction 46, 47, 241  
 geographical cycle 5, 314, 316  
 geomorphic processes: measuring 9–10; modelling of 9  
 geomorphic systems 14–19  
 geomorphology: applied 4, 10–12 (*see also* humans); climatic 4, 319; definition 3; functional 4; and global environmental change 10–12; historical 4–9, 313–92; introduction to 3–4; structural 4  
 geomorphometry 12  
 geos 288  
 giant grikeland (*see* corridor karst)  
 gibber plains 259  
 Gilbert, G. K. 9  
 glacial: deposition 216–17; deposits 51; environments 210–12; erosion 214–15; landforms, depositional 224–8; landforms, erosional 217–24; landscapes, and humans 234; processes 212–17; relicts 318–9; superfloods 209–10; transport 215–16; troughs 217–9  
 glaciated valleys 218, 219  
 glacier mass balance 211–12  
 glaciers 210–11  
 glacio-eustatic change 333  
 glaciofluvial: deposits 51; landforms 228–31  
 glaciokarst 136  
 glaciomarine deposits 51  
 gnammas (rock-basins, weather-pits) 124  
 gorges 194; coastal 288; in karst 151  
 gours 164  
 grabens (rift valleys) 105  
 grade 191  
 gradualism 21, 33  
 gravity: sliding 70; tectonics 49  
 great escarpments 76, 77, 337–8  
 grikes 140, 141–3  
 grooves 124, 218, 219–20  
 ground ice 237–9  
 ground moraine 225, 227  
 groundwater sapping 316  
 grus 108, 122  
 gullies 182  
 gulls (wents) 123  
 gutters 124  
 gypcrete 122–3  
 gypsum 137  
 gyttja 51  
 Hack, J. T. 9  
 hairpin dunes (parabolic dunes) 265, 268–9  
 half-blind valleys 151–2  
 half-grabens 105, 193  
*hammad* 259  
 hanging valleys 218, 219, 222  
 hardpans 123  
 haystack hills 150  
 headland bay beaches (fishhook beaches, zetaform beaches) 291, 293  
 heave 47  
 helictites 164–5  
 historical geomorphology 4–9, 313–42  
 history 23–4, 29–32, 203–7, 313–92  
 Hjulstrøm, F. 9  
 Hjulstrøm diagram 178–9  
 hogbacks 93, 95  
 holokarst 136  
 homoclinal ridges (strike ridges) 93, 95, 97  
 honeycomb weathering (alveolar weathering, stone lattice, stone lace) 124–5  
 horns (pyramidal peaks) 219, 222, 224  
 horsts 105  
 Hortonian overland flow 172, 180  
 hot-spot traces 75  
 humans: and aeolian landscapes 273–5; and coasts 305–9; and fluvial landscapes 203–7; as geomorphic agents 60–3; and glacial landscapes 234; and karst landscapes 165–9; and periglacial environments 249–51; and weathering 129–30  
 hummocky moraines (dead ice moraines, disintegration moraines) 225, 226, 228  
 hydration 117  
 hydraulic: drop 176; geometry 189–90; jump 176  
 hydrofracturing 114  
 hydrogen cation 120  
 hydrolaccoliths 242–4  
 hydrolysis 120  
 hydrothermal action, in caves 138  
 hydroxyl anion 120  
 hydroxyl octhedra 115–6  
 ice: caps 210; fields 210; flow 212–14; sheets 210; shelves 210; wedges 242, 239  
 icing: blisters 244; mounds 244  
 igneous rocks 37  
 ignimbrites 85  
 illite 115–6  
 impeded dunes (anchored dunes) 267–9

- impounded karst 139  
 ingrown meanders 184  
 inlandis 211  
 instability principle 19  
 intact rock strength 44  
 intermittent streams 172  
 internal friction (shearing resistance) 44  
 internal variables, in system 16  
 inter-rill flow 172  
 intra-cratonic basins 76  
 intra-oceanic island arcs 78  
 intrusions 81–3  
 intrusive forces 74  
 inverted relief 89, 123  
 iron hydroxide 50  
 iron oxides 50  
 irregular drainage (complex drainage) 97  
 isoclinal folding 94  
 isolated system 16  
 isostatic movements 72
- joints, definition of 104; and landforms 108–10
- kame: deltas (delta moraines) 229, 231; fields 229, 231; terraces 229, 231  
 kames 229, 230–1  
 kaolinite 115–6, 128  
 kaolinization (monosiallization) 126–7  
 karren 139–43  
 karren fields (*Karrenfeld*) 139  
*Karrenfeld* (karren fields) 139, 141  
 karst: definition 13–4; drainage system 136, 137; humans and 165–9; management 166, 168; mining 166, 168; on quartzite 157–8; processes 136–8; protection 168–9; window 148  
 K-cycles 328  
 kettles (kettle holes) 229, 233  
 King, L. C. 315  
 knickpoints 190  
 knolls (nubbins) 108–9
- laccoliths 82, 83  
 lacustrine: deltas (lake deltas) 201; deposits 51  
 lag deposits 258–9  
 lahars 46  
 lake deltas 201  
 laminar flow 174  
 landform elements 12  
 landform morphometry (*see* geomorphometry)
- landforms: active margin 78–81; ancient 317–27; coastal depositional 288–205; coastal erosional 284–8; exhumed 321–4; and faults 104–7; fluvial depositional 194–202; fluvial erosional 182–94; and folds 92–104; glacial depositional 224–8; glacial erosional 217–24; glaciofluvial 228–31; and joints 108–10; with no modern analogues 318; periglacial 242–9; plate interior 76; plate margin 76–77; relict 317–20; structural, defined 68; surface karst 138–58; tectonic defined 68; related to tectonic plates 76–81; volcanic and plutonic 81–90; weathering 123–5; and weathering products 121–5  
 landscape cycles 327  
 landscapes and environmental change 327–36  
 lapilli 84  
 lateral moraines 225, 226–7  
 laterite 122, 318  
 lava 67, 83; cones 87; discs 87; domes 87; mounds 87; shields 87  
 layer silicates (phyllosilicates, sheet silicates) 115–6  
 leaching regimes 125–6  
 lee dunes 265, 267–8  
 leeside cones (crag-and-tails) 218, 221  
 Leopold, L. B. 9  
 limestone 134, 135  
 limestone pavement 141, 142, 144  
 lineaments 107  
 liquids 45  
 liquid limit 45–6  
 lithosphere, defined 68  
 littoral currents (longshore currents) 279  
 loess 271–3  
 long-profile, of river 190–1  
 longshore bars 290  
 longshore currents (littoral currents) 279  
 longshore drift 283–4  
 lopoliths 82  
 luminescence 28  
 lumped models, of soil erosion 60, 61  
 lunate fractures 218, 224  
 lunettes 265, 268,
- maars 85  
 magnecrete 123  
 magnitude (and frequency) 20–23  
 mangals 299–300, 302  
 manganocrete 123

- mangroves 299
- Manning: equation 176–7; roughness coefficient 176–7
- mantle plume 75, 98–9, 100
- mapping 12
- margins (plate): collision 78–9; steady-state 78; transform 80
- marine: deltas 302–5; deposits 51; terraces 334
- mass: balance, of glacier 211–12; displacement 241; movements 43, 46–9, 60, 138
- mass wasting, definition 43
- maze caves 138
- meander caves 153, 156
- meandering 203, 205–6; channels 184–7
- meanders 184, 186, 188
- mechanical denudation 52–5; rates 52; controlling factors 54–5
- mechanical weathering (*see* weathering)
- medial moraines 225, 226
- mega-dunes (draa) 263–4
- meltwater channels 228–9
- mesas (tables) 92, 93, 97
- metamorphic rocks 38
- metastable: equilibrium 20; state 9
- methodology 32–3
- microplates (platelets) 68
- mineral fuels 51
- minerals, definition 37–8
- misfit streams 328
- mobile zone (pedolith, residuum, zone of lost fabric) 121, 122
- mogotes 150
- Mohr–Coulomb equation 44
- monadnocks 5
- monkstones (penitent rocks, tombstones) 108
- monoclinical blocks (tilted blocks) 106
- monoclines 94
- monosiallitization (kaolinization) 126
- moonmilk 164
- moraine dumps 225
- morphological mapping 12
- morphological system (*see* form systems)
- morphotectonics 68
- mudflows 46, 47
- mushroom rocks 124, 261
  
- nabkhas 268–9
- nappes 49
- native terranes 80
  
- natural arches 184
- natural bridges 153
- nearshore currents 279–80
- necks 83
- needle ice (piprake) 239,
- nine-unit land-surface model 12, 13
- nivation 241; hollows 241
- non-actualism 32
- nubbins (knolls) 108–9
- nuées ardentes* 85, 87–8
- numerical-age methods 24
- nunataks 219, 222, 224
  
- oblique-slip faults (transform faults) 80
- obsequent streams 97
- offset drainage 106, 107
- old plains (palaeoplains) 314–17
- onshore currents 280
- open channel flow 174
- open system 16
- organic muds 51
- oriented thaw lakes 245
- orogeny 72
- outwash plains (sandar) 229, 233
- overflow channels 228–9
- overland flow 172
- oxidation 117–19
- oxidation weathering 119
  
- Pacific-type margins 78
- paired spits 292
- paired terraces 198–9
- palaeoplains 314–17
- palsas 244
- Pangaea, breakup of 72, 337
- pans 259–60
- parabolic dunes (hairpin dunes) 265, 268–9
- parallel drainage 98
- particulate load 177
- passive margin denudation 76, 77
- Past Global Changes (PAGES) 24
- paternoster lakes 219
- patterned ground 245–8
- peat 51
- peat plateaux 244
- pedestal rocks 124
- pediplains 315–6
- pedolith 121
- Peléean domes 88



- Penck, A. 7  
 Penck, W. 5–7  
 peneplains 5, 315  
 penitent rocks 108  
 perched rocks 124, 261  
 perennial streams 172  
 periglacial: environments 236–9; global warming and 251; humans in 249–51; development in 250; landforms 242–9; processes 239–42; relicts 319; slopes 248–9  
 permafrost 237; degradation 249; table 237, 239  
 permeability 39–40  
 p-forms (plastically moulded forms) 218, 220  
 pH (acidity) 118  
 phacoliths 83, 84  
 Phillips, J. D. 10, 338–41  
 phreatic caves 161  
 phyllosilicates (layer silicates, sheet silicates) 115–6  
 physical weathering (*see* weathering)  
 pillars 123  
 pingos 242–4, 319  
 pinnacle karst 141, 144, 150  
 pinnate drainage 98  
 pipes 83  
 pitons (plug domes, upheaved plugs) 88  
 pits, in karst 141  
 pitted plains 229, 233  
 planated relief 93  
 planation 324  
 plastic limit 45–6  
 plastic solids 45  
 plastically moulded forms (p-forms) 218, 220  
 plate boundary: convergent 74; divergent 74; transform (conservative) 74  
 plate tectonic processes 70–2  
 plate tectonics: continental 71–2; driving mechanisms 70; oceanic 70; volcanism and 68–75  
 plateaus 145  
 plateaux 76, 92, 93, 97  
 platelets (microplates) 68  
 plates (tectonic) 68, 69  
 playas 198  
 Playfair, J. 41  
 plinthite 123  
 plug domes (upheaved plugs, pitons) 88  
 plugs (stocks) 82  
 plume tectonics 75  
 plunge 95  
 plunging cliffs 286  
 plunging flow 176  
 plutonic: forces, defined 72; processes 74–5  
 plutons 81–2  
 pocket valleys (steepheads 152)  
 podzolization 126–7  
 polished surface 218, 219  
 polja 148–9, 150  
 pond dolines 146  
 ponors 148  
 pools and riffles 195  
 pore water pressure 44  
 porosity 39–40  
 potholes 161–2; marine 287  
 principle of simplicity (uniformity of process) 32  
 principles of Earth surface systems 339–41  
 principles of stratigraphy 24  
 process: geomorphology 4, 9–10; in geomorphology 14–22; system (cascading system, flow system) 17  
 process–form system (process–response system) 17–18  
 process–response system (*see* process–form system)  
 pseudokarst 134  
 pull-apart basins 80  
 pumice 83, 85  
 push moraines 226, 228  
 pyramidal peaks (*see* horns)  
 pyroclastic rocks 83  
 pyroclastic volcanoes (explosive volcanoes) 84–6  
 quick clays 46  
 radial drainage 98–9, 100  
 radiocarbon 28  
 rainfall erosivity factor 61  
 rainsplash 172  
 ramps 287  
 recessional moraines 226, 228  
 rectangular drainage 99  
 recurrence interval 171  
 recurved spits 292  
 redox potential (Eh) 118, 119  
 reduction 118, 119  
 regolith (weathered mantle) 49, 51, 121, 122  
 relative-age methods 24  
 relict: karst 321; landforms 317–20  
 relief inversion 89, 123  
 reptation 256–7  
 resequent streams (secondary consequent streams) 97

- residuum 121  
 reversing dunes 265  
 revet crags (flatirons) 93  
 Revised Wind Erosion Equation (RWEQ) 275  
 Reynolds number 174–5  
 rhexistasy 327–8  
 rhythmic topography 291  
 ribbed moraines (rogen moraines or cross-valley moraines) 225, 227  
 Richter slopes 248–9  
 riegels 218, 221  
 riffles 195  
 rift valleys (grabens) 105  
 rifting (continental) 776  
 rigid solids 45  
 rill flow 173  
 rills 124, 182  
 rimstone pools 164  
*Rinnenkarren* (solution flutes) 140, 141–2  
 rip currents (rips) 280  
 ripple-marks, giant diluvial 209  
 ripples, wind-generated 262  
 river: capture 99, 101; channel network 191–3; diversion 99; long-profile 190–1; management 207; metamorphosis 189; persistence 102, 104; terraces 198–201  
 roches moutonnées 218, 221, 223  
 rock: creep 46, 47; cycle 36–9; drumlins (whalebacks) 218, 219; flour 214; glaciers 248; pendants 162; steps (valley steps) 218, 222  
 rock-basins (weather-pits, gnammas) 124  
 rockbursts 114  
 rockfalls 48, 49, 277  
 rocks: definition 37–8; relief and 39–40  
 rogen moraines (ribbed or cross-valley moraines) 225, 227  
 roll-over drainage 105, 106  
 rotational slides 47, 48  
 rounded solution runnels 141, 142, 143  
 rudaceous deposits 49  
 ruiform karst 141, 144–5  
 runnels 124  
 runoff 172  
  
*sabkhas* 50–1, 198  
 sag ponds 106  
 salt marshes 299, 302  
 salt weathering 117, 130  
 saltation 256–7  
 sand 49, 50; ridge dune 265; seas 269–71, 330–3; wedges 242  
 sandar (outwash plains) 229, 233  
 saprock 121, 122  
 saprolite 121, 122, 318  
 saturation overland flow (seepage) 172  
 scablands 229, 231  
 scale problem 30  
 scallops 162–3  
 scarps (escarpments) 95, 97  
 Schumm, S. A. 189  
 sclerochronology 27  
 scoria 84  
 scoria cones 85  
 scour-and-fill cycles 182  
 scoured regions 217  
 scree 121  
 sea: arch 288–9; cave 288; stack 288–9  
 sea-level: change, causes of 333–4; changes 333–6; highstands of 335; lowstands of 335–6  
 secondary consequent streams (resequent streams) 97  
 sediment transport along coasts 283–4  
 sediment yield 54  
 sedimentary: environments 51–2; rocks 37  
 sedimentation, of aeolian material 257–8  
 sediments 49–51  
 sediplains 93  
*seif* dunes 265, 266, 267  
 self-destruction, in geomorphic systems 339–41  
 self-organization, in geomorphic systems 339–41  
 sensitive soils 46  
*serir* 259  
 settlement 49  
 shear: moraines 225, 226; strength 44; stress 44–5  
 sheared boulders 215  
 shearing resistance (internal friction) 44  
 sheet silicates (layer silicates, phyllosilicates) 115–6  
 shore platforms 284–5  
 shoreline weathering 282–3  
 shrinkage limit 45–6  
 shutter ridges 106  
 silcrete 122  
 silica tetraheda 115–6  
 siliceous deposits 51  
 sills 82, 83  
 silt 50  
 simple systems 18–19  
 sinkhole (swallet, swallow hole) 146  
 slides 46–7

- slope: decline 6, 7; processes and climate 55;  
 recession 6, 7, 315
- slumps (rotational slides) 47–8
- smectite (montmorillonite) 115–6, 128
- smectization (bisiallitization) 126–7
- snow patches 241
- soil: behaviour, in response to stress 45–6;  
 conservation strategies 60; creep 47; creep rates,  
 and climate 55, 56; erodibility 61; erosion 60,  
 165; *see also* wind erosion *and* Universal Soil Loss  
 Equation
- solid-debris load 177
- solids, definition of 121
- solifluction 46, 47, 241; rates and climate 55,  
 56
- solute load (*see* dissolved load)
- solutes, definition of 121
- solution (dissolution) 117; of limestone 136–7; of  
 silicate rock 137–8
- solution: bevels 140, 141; doline 146–7; flutes  
 (*Rinnenkarren*) 140, 141–2; notches 140, 143;  
 pans (basins) 140, 143; pipes (shafts, wells) 141,  
 143; pits 140, 143; runnels 140, 141; spikes 140,  
 143
- space–time substitution 29
- speleogens 161–3
- speleothems 163
- spillways 229, 231–2
- spits 291–2
- splitkarren 140, 141–3
- springs 173
- stable equilibrium 20
- stagnant ice 211
- stagnant landscapes 324–7
- stalactites 163–4
- stalagmites 163–4
- star dunes 265, 266–7
- static equilibrium 20
- steady state 9, 19–20, 338
- steady-statism 33
- steepheads (pocket valleys) 152
- stepped topography 92
- stocks (plugs) 82
- stone: circles 245; forest (shilin) 141, 144; nets 246;  
 pavements (desert pavements) 259; polygons 246;  
 steps 246; stripes 247
- straight channels 184
- strain 44–5
- strath terraces (bedrock terraces) 199
- strato-volcanoes 86
- streaks (sand sheets, stringers) 265, 267
- stream: capacity 177; competence 177; load 177;  
 order 191–2; power 177
- streamflow 172, 173–7
- streams: antecedent 101–2; anti-dip 97;  
 beheaded 106; corrasion in 178;  
 corrosion in 178; intermittent 172; misfit  
 328; obsequent 97; perennial 172;  
 resequent (secondary consequent) 97; secondary  
 consequent (resequent) 97; strike 97;  
 subsequent 97
- stream-sink dolines 148
- striations 218, 219–20
- strike ridges (homoclinal ridges) 93, 95, 97
- strike 95
- strike streams 97
- strike-slip faults 104, 106
- string bogs (patterned fen) 244
- structural benches 198
- structural geomorphology 4
- structural landforms, defined 68
- subcritical flow 176
- subglacial debris 216
- subjacent karst-collapse dolines 148
- subsequent streams 97
- subsidence 49
- subsidence dolines 147–8
- subsurface flow 173
- subterranean karst 159–64
- suffosion dolines 147–8
- superfloods 209–10
- superimposed drainage 102, 103
- superplumes 75
- supraglacial debris 216
- surface karst, landforms of 138–58
- surface wash rates, and climate 55, 56
- suspect terranes 71, 80
- suspended load 177
- suspension 257
- swallow hole (sinkhole, swallet) 146
- swash 279
- swells 95
- system dynamics 19–20; geomorphic 339–41;  
 unstable 339
- systems approach 9
- tafoni 124
- taliks 237, 239

- talluvium 52  
 talus 52; cone 121; slope 121  
 tectonic: geomorphology defined 68; landforms defined 68; predesign 68  
 tectono-eustatic change 333–4  
 tephra 67, 84  
 tephrochronology 29  
 terminal moraines 226, 228  
 terraces 198–201; formation 200  
 terracettes 47, 49  
 terranes 80  
 thaw lakes 245  
 thermal weathering 114–5, 120  
 thermodynamic equilibrium 20  
 thermokarst 244–5, 249–51  
 tholoids 87, 88  
 thresholds 9, 21  
 thrust: faults 104; moraines 225, 226  
 thrusts 49  
 thufur (earth hummocks) 246  
 tidal: flats 299, 302; ranges 281–2  
 tides 280–2  
 till plains 226, 227  
 tilted blocks (monoclinical blocks) 106  
 tombolinos 293  
 tombolos 292–3  
 tombstones (penitent rocks, monkstones) 108  
 tors 109–110, 319  
 tower karst 151–3  
 traction load (bed load) 177  
 transform faults (oblique-slip faults) 80  
 translational slides 47, 48  
 transverse: drainage 99; dunes 265–6; orogens 80  
 travertine (calc-sinter) 153, 157  
 trellis drainage 98  
 Trimble, S. W. 9  
 triple junction 74  
 tropical karst 136  
 trough heads 218, 220–1  
 true karst 136  
 tsunamis 280–1  
 tufa 153  
 tuff: cone 86; ring 67, 86  
 tunnel valleys 228–9  
 turbulent flow 174  
 undercut solution runnels 140, 143  
 uniformitarianism 33  
 uniformity of law 32  
 uniformity of process (principle of simplicity) 32  
 Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) 60, 165, 274–5  
 unloading 114  
 unpaired terraces 199  
 unstable: equilibrium 20; system 339  
 upheaved plugs (plug domes, pitons) 88  
 uvalas 148  
 vadose caves 161  
 valley: glaciers 210; trains 229, 233  
 valleys 193–4; old 194  
 Van der Waals bonds 44  
 varve chronology 27  
 ventifacts 242, 262  
 volcanic: forces, defined 72; processes 74–5  
 volcanoes 83–9; acid lava 87–8; basic lava 87; compound (multiple) 86; and drainage modification 89, 90; location of 75; mixed eruption (strato) 86; and relief inversion 89; Surtsey, growth of 67  
 warm glaciers 211  
 warm-based glaciers 211  
 wash load 177  
 wash surface 316  
 washboard moraines (De Geer moraines) 225, 27  
 water cycle 36  
 watersheds 36  
 wave erosion 282  
 waves 278–9  
 weathered mantle (regolith) 43, 51, 121  
 weathering: biological 120–1; chemical 117–20; and climate 125–8; and climate change 35, 43; definition of 114; front 121, 122; historical buildings 129–30; and humans 129–30; landforms 123–5; mechanical (physical) 114–17; patterns 126–7; profile 121–2; local factors 127–8; products 121–5; and time 128; and topography 128  
 weather-pits (gnammas, rock-basins) 124  
 wents (gulls) 123  
 wet deposition 258  
 wet–dry weathering 117  
 wetting and drying (and weathering) 115, 117  
 whalebacks (rock drumlins) 218–19  
 Wind Erosion and European Light Soils (WEELS) 273  
 Wind Erosion Equation 274–5  
 Wind Erosion Prediction System (WEPS) 275

- wind: deposition 257–8; erosion 256, 273–4; erosion modelling 274; transport 256–7; velocity profile 255
- wineglass (funnel) valleys 105
- within-plate tectonics 74
- Wolman, M. G. 9, 189
- yardangs 260–1
- yawns 288
- zanjones* 144
- zetaform beaches (headland bay beaches, fishhook beaches) 291, 293
- Zeugen* (perched rocks, mushroom rocks) 261
- zibars 265, 267
- zone of lost fabric 121